

Project Manual:

**City of Centerville
Benham's Grove
Improvements Project**



PROJECT SITE: Event Center & Campus Improvements
166 N. Main Street
250 N. Main Street
Centerville, Ohio 45459

OWNER City of Centerville
100 W. Spring Valley Road
Centerville, Ohio 45458

ARCHITECT LWC Incorporated
434 E. First Street
Dayton, Ohio 45402

LWC Incorporated
712 E. Main Street
Richmond, Indiana 47374

VOLUME 1 (Division 00 – 14)

DATE 2023-11-21

TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

Exhibit	Formal Construction Bid Instructions to Bidders & General Provisions of the Contract
000500	Preliminary Project Schedule
000816	Modifications to General Conditions
001071	A201 – 2017 General Conditions
002113	Instructions to Bidders
002213	Supplementary Instructions to Bidders
002214	Prevailing Wage Rates
002215	Affidavit of Compliance – Prevailing Wages
002216	Certified Payroll Report - Sample
008150 .1	Supplementary Conditions
008150 .2	Modifications to General Conditions
Exhibit	Geotechnical Report

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

011000	Summary
011300	Delegated Design
012100	Allowances
012200	Unit Prices
012300	Alternates
012600	Contract Modification Procedures
012900	Payment Procedures
013100	Project Management and Coordination
013200	Construction Progress Documentation
013300	Submittal Procedures
014000	Quality Requirements
014200	References
015000	Temporary Facilities and Controls
U 016000	Product Requirements
017300	Execution
017419	Construction Waste Management and Disposal
017900	Demonstration and Training

DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS

024116	Structure Demolition
--------	----------------------

024119	Selective Demolition
--------	----------------------

DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

030130	Maintenance of Cast-In-Place Concrete
033000	Cast-In-Place Concrete
033543	Polished Concrete Finishing

DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

040110	Masonry Cleaning
040140.62	Stone Repointing
042200	Concrete Unit Masonry
044313.13	Anchored Stone Masonry Veneer

DIVISION 05 - METALS

051200	Structural Steel Framing
057300	Decorative Metal Railings

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

061000	Rough Carpentry
061516	Wood Roof Decking
061600	Sheathing
061715	Engineered Structural Wood
061800	Glued-Laminated Construction
062013	Exterior Finish Carpentry
064013	Exterior Architectural Woodwork
064023	Interior Architectural Woodwork
064113	Wood-Veneer-Faced Architectural Cabinets
066400	Plastic Paneling

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

071326	Self-Adhering Sheet Waterproofing
072100	Thermal Insulation
072500	Weather Barriers
072726	Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers
073113	Asphalt Shingles
074113.16	Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels
074200	Phenolic Wall Panels
074646	Fiber-Cement Siding
075323	Ethylene-Propylene-Diene-Monomer (EPDM) Roofing
076200	Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
077100	Roof Specialties
077200	Roof Accessories

d078443	Joint Firestopping
079200	Joint Sealants

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

081113	Residential Metal Doors and Wood Frames
081116	Cladded Aluminum Framed All Glass Entrances
081416	Flush Wood Doors
084113	Aluminum-Faced Entrances and Storefronts
084413	Glazed Aluminum Curtainwall
084433	Sloped Glazing Assemblies
087100	Panic Deadbolt For All Glass Entrances
087100	Door Hardware: Barn & Cottage
087100	Door Hardware: Event Center
087100	Door Hardware: Gerber House
088000	Glazing
088700	Window Films

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

092216	Non-Structural Metal Framing
092900	Gypsum Board
U 093013	Porcelain Tiling
093033	Stone Tiling
096400	Engineered Wood Flooring
096813	Tile Carpeting
096816	Sheet Carpeting
097200	Wall Coverings
098129	Sprayed Acoustic Insulation
098436	Sound Absorbing Ceiling Units
099113	Exterior Painting
099123	Interior Painting
099300	Staining and Transparent Finishing
099600	High-Performance Coatings

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

101423.16	Room Identification Panel Signage
102800	Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories
104413	Fire Protection Cabinets
104416	Fire Extinguishers
108113	Bird Control Devices

DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT

114000 Foodservice Equipment

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

122413 Roller Window Shades

123216 Manufactured Plastic-Laminate-Clad Casework

123530 Residential Casework

123661.16 Solid Surfacing Countertops

123661.19 Quartz Agglomerate Countertops

124813 Entrance Floor Mats and Frames

DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

----- Not Used

DIVISION 14 - CONVEYING EQUIPMENT

142123.16 Machine Room-Less Electric Traction Passenger Elevators

142400 Machine Room-Less Hydraulic Passenger Elevator

O

DIVISION

BIDDING AND CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS



City of Centerville

Formal Construction Bid

for contracts over \$50,000

Instructions to Bidders

&

General Provisions
of the Contract

City of Centerville Public Works
7970 South Suburban Road
Centerville, Ohio 45458
(937) 428-4782

publicworks@centervilleohio.gov

Revised 1/1/2023

Table of Contents

Section 1 – Instructions to Bidders	4
1.1 Bidder’s Pledge and Agreement	4
1.2 Examination of Contract Documents & Site Conditions & Reliance Upon Technical Data	4
1.3 Contract Documents	5
1.4 Preparation of Bids	6
1.5 Method of Award.....	7
1.6 Execution of Contract	9
1.7 Substitutions/Non-Specified Products.....	9
1.8 Alternates	10
1.9 Unit Prices	11
1.10 Addenda.....	11
1.11 Interpretation	12
1.12 State Sales and Use Taxes.....	12
1.13 Date for Substantial Completion/Liquidated Damages.....	13
1.14 Owner’s Right to Waive Defects and Irregularities	13
1.15 Modification/Withdrawal of Bids	14
1.16 Compliance with Applicable Laws.....	14
1.17 Findings for Recovery.....	15
1.18 Prevailing Wages.....	15
1.19 Ohio Public Works Commission Funding	15
1.20 Community Development Block Grant Funding.....	15
Section 2 – General Provisions of the Contract	16
2.1 Definitions.....	16
2.2 Work Embraced	16
2.3 Specifications	17
2.4 Modification of Contract.....	17
2.5 Interference with Existing Structures	17
2.6 Traffic Maintenance.....	18
2.7 Cleaning Up.....	18
2.8 Decisions	19
2.9 Orders to Contractor.....	19

2.10 Lines and Grades.....	20
2.11 Inspection and Material.....	20
2.12 Laws and Regulations	21
2.13 Liability of Contractor for Patents, Injuries, etc.....	21
2.14 Rights of Way	22
2.15 Stopping Work	22
2.16 Starting Work.....	23
2.17 Work Hours	23
2.18 Subletting or Assigning	23
2.19 Character of Workers.....	24
2.20 Date for Completion	24
2.21 Liquidated Damages	24
2.22 Termination of Contract	25
2.23 Contractor’s Liability Insurance	26
2.24 Payroll Records (Prevailing Wage Compliance).....	29
2.25 Measurements.....	30
2.26 Prices.....	30
2.27 Payments	30
2.28 No Estoppel.....	31
2.29 Work Guarantee	31
2.30 Claims and Disputes.....	32
2.31 Choice of Law/Forum.....	34
2.32 Amendments	34
2.33 Severability	34
2.34 Counterparts/Signatures	34
2.35 Bonding.....	34
2.36 State and Federal Guidelines	35
2.37 Cumulative Remedies	35

Section 1 – Instructions to Bidders

1.1 Bidder's Pledge and Agreement

- 1.1.1 Each Bidder acknowledges that this is a public project involving public funds and that the Owner expects and requires that each successful Bidder adhere to the highest ethical and performance standards. Each Bidder by submitting a bid pledges and agrees that (a) it will act at all times with absolute integrity and truthfulness in its dealings with the Owner and the Design Professional, (b) it will use its best efforts to cooperate with the Owner and the Design Professional and all other Contractors on the Project and at all times will act with professionalism and dignity in its dealings with the Owner, Design Professional, and other Contractors, (c) it will assign only competent supervisors and workers to the Project, each of whom is fully qualified to perform the tasks that are assigned to him/her, and (d) it has read, understands and will comply with the terms of the Contract Documents.
- 1.1.2 **QUALIFICATION OF BIDDERS:** The Owner requires that the bidder shall furnish satisfactory evidence that it has the necessary resources to fulfill the conditions of the Contract Documents. The evidence shall be listed in the form "Experience Statement". Contracts will be awarded only to responsible prospective Contractors who:
 - 1.1.2.1 Have adequate financial resources or the ability to obtain such resources as required during performance of the contract.
 - 1.1.2.2 Have a satisfactory record of performance. (Contractors who are delinquent in current Contract performance, when the number of Contracts and the extent of delinquencies of each are considered, shall be presumed to be unable to fulfill this requirement).
 - 1.1.3 Conform to the requirements of the Anti-Discrimination Clause.
 - 1.1.4 Are otherwise qualified and eligible to receive an award under applicable laws and regulations.

1.2 Examination of Contract Documents & Site Conditions & Reliance Upon Technical Data

- 1.2.1 Each Bidder shall have a competent person carefully and diligently review each part of the Contract Documents, including the project specifications. By submitting its bid, each Bidder represents and agrees, based upon its careful and diligent review of the Contract Documents, that it is not aware of any conflicts, inconsistencies, errors, or omissions in the Contract Documents for which it has not notified the Design Professional in writing at least seven (7) days prior to the bid opening. If there are any such conflicts, inconsistencies, errors, or omissions in the Contract Documents, the Bidder (i) will provide the labor, equipment, or materials of the better quality or greater quantity of Work and/or (ii) will comply with the more stringent requirements. The Bidder will not be entitled to any additional compensation for any conflicts, inconsistencies, errors, or omissions that would have been discovered by such careful and diligent review, unless it has given prior written notice to the Design Professional.
- 1.2.2 Each Bidder shall have a competent person carefully and diligently inspect and examine the entire site and the surrounding area, including all parts of the site applicable to the

Work for which it is submitting its bid, including location, condition, and layout of the site and the location of utilities, and carefully correlate the results of the inspection with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Bidder's bid shall include all costs attributable to site and surrounding area conditions that would have been discovered by such careful and diligent inspection and examination of the site and the surrounding area, and the Bidder shall not be entitled to any Change Order, additional compensation, or additional time on account of such conditions.

- 1.2.3 The Bidder may rely upon the general accuracy of any technical data included in the Project Manual (e.g., soils exploration reports, soil boring logs, site survey, or abatement reports) in preparing its bid, but such technical data are not part of the Contract Documents. Except for the limited reliance described in the preceding sentence, Bidder may not, if awarded a contract for the Work, rely upon or make any Claim against the Owner or Design Professional, or any of their agents or employees, with respect to any of the following:
 - 1.2.3.1 the completeness of such reports and drawings for Bidder's purposes, including, but not limited to, any aspects of the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction to be employed by the successful Bidder and safety precautions and programs incident thereto;
 - 1.2.3.2 other data, interpretations, opinions, and information contained in such reports or shown or indicated in such drawings; or
 - 1.2.3.3 any interpretation by the successful Bidder of or conclusion drawn from any technical data or any such other data, interpretations, opinions, or information. For example, all interpolations and extrapolations of data performed by the Bidder to estimate locations or quantities of subsurface strata are independent factual assumptions, which Owner does not warrant.
- 1.2.4 Each Bidder will be deemed to have actual knowledge of all information provided or discussed at the pre-bid meeting.
- 1.2.5 INTERPRETATION OF BID DOCUMENTS: If any Bidder needs additional information or is in doubt as to the true meaning of any part of the Drawings, Specifications, or other bid documents, it may submit to the City Engineer a written request for such information or an interpretation thereof no later than noon, three (3) working days prior to the bid opening. Any interpretations or revisions to the bid documents will be made only by an Addendum issued by the City Engineer. A copy of such Addendum will be sent to each person securing a set of bid documents on the City's plan holders list, provided that sufficient time is available for the issuance of such Addendum prior to the receipt of bids. Such Addendum shall become part of the bid documents and the costs of such revisions shall be included in the bids. The Owner and the City Engineer will not be responsible for any other explanations or interpretations of the bid documents made prior to the receipt of bids.

1.3 Contract Documents

- 1.3.1 The Contract Documents consist of the following:
 - 1.3.1.1 the legal advertisement
 - 1.3.1.2 Instructions to Bidders

- 1.3.1.3 General Provisions of the Contract
- 1.3.1.4 Sample Contract
- 1.3.1.5 Required and Applicable Attachments
- 1.3.1.6 Drawings, Specifications, Project-Specific Notes, etc.
- 1.3.1.7 Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract
- 1.3.2 Contract Documents shall be obtained utilizing the Bid Express Website at: <https://www.bidexpress.com/businesses/45950/home>. Registration with Bid Express is free and allows for the Bidder to review and print all project specifications. A digital ID along with a per bid fee or a monthly subscription will be required for the Bidder to submit an electronic bid. Contact information for Bid Express; Phone (888)-352-2439, Fax (888) 971-4191, Email support@bidexpress.com.
- 1.3.3 Bidders shall use complete sets of Contract Documents in preparing bids. Neither the Owner nor the Design Professional assumes any responsibility for errors or misinterpretations resulting from the use of incomplete sets of Contract Documents.
- 1.3.4 The Owner or the Design Professional, in making the Contract Documents available on the above terms, does so only for the purpose of obtaining bids on the Work and does not confer a license or grant for any other use.

1.4 Preparation of Bids

- 1.4.1 All bids must be submitted electronically through Bid Express prior to the bid opening date and time.
- 1.4.2 Complete all blank spaces on the electronic forms. Any change in the wording or omission of specified accompanying documents may cause the bid to be rejected.
- 1.4.3 Bidders shall note receipt of all Addenda. If the Bidder fails to acknowledge receipt of each Addendum, the Bid shall be deemed non-responsive, unless the Bid amount clearly and unambiguously reflects receipt of the Addendum or the Addendum involves only a matter of form and does not affect the price, quantity, or quality of the Work to be performed in any material manner.
- 1.4.4 The bid submission shall include all of the Contract Documents found on the Bid Express Solicitation, which could consist of:
 - 1.4.4.1 Bid Form
 - 1.4.4.2 Contract Affidavits
 - 1.4.4.3 Proposal Form Offer
 - 1.4.4.4 Bid Bond (Paper Bid Bond, Certified Check, Cashier's Check, or Contract Bond)
 - 1.4.4.5 Bidder's Principals
 - 1.4.4.6 Bidder's Proposed Subcontractors
 - 1.4.4.7 Certificate of Liability Insurance
 - 1.4.4.8 Experience and References
- 1.4.5 The Bidder shall take the following precautions in preparing its Bid:

- 1.4.5.1 Complete all blank spaces on Bid Express
- 1.4.5.2 Submit all required attachments with your bid on Bid Express
- 1.4.5.3 Obtain and sign bid with Digital ID issued through Bid Express
- 1.4.5.4 Ensure base bid and alternates (if applicable) are a part of the total Bond amount

1.5 Method of Award

- 1.5.1 All Bids shall remain open for acceptance for one-hundred and twenty (120) days following the day of the Bid opening, but the Owner may, in its sole discretion, release any bid and return the Bid Guaranty prior to that date. The Bid Guaranty shall be subject to forfeiture, as provided in the Ohio Revised Code, if a bid is withdrawn during the period when bids are being held.
- 1.5.2 The Owner reserves the right to reject any, part of any, or all bids and to waive any informalities and irregularities. The Bidder expressly acknowledges this right of the Owner to reject any or all bids or to reject any incomplete or irregular bid. The Owner will award a single contract for each of the bid packages listed above or one or more combined contracts for combinations of the Bid Packages, unless it determines to reject one or more bid packages. Bidders must furnish all information requested on or accompanying the Bid Form. Failure to do so may result in disqualification of the bid.
- 1.5.3 Subject to the right of the Owner to reject any or all bids, the Owner will award the Contract for the Work to the Bidder submitting the lowest and best bid, taking into consideration accepted alternates. In evaluating bids, the Owner may consider the qualifications of the Bidders, whether or not the bids comply with the prescribed requirements, and alternates and unit prices, if requested, on the Bid Form. The Owner may also consider the qualifications and experience of subcontractors and suppliers. The Owner may conduct such investigations as are deemed necessary to establish the qualifications and financial ability of the Bidder and its subcontractors and suppliers. The Owner may consider the factors set forth in Section 1.5.5 in determining which Bidder submitted the lowest and best bid. The Owner, in its discretion, may consider and give such weight to these criteria as it deems appropriate.
- 1.5.4 The Owner may consider the Bidder's prior experience on other projects with the Owner and Design Professional, including the Bidder's demonstrated ability to complete its work on these projects in accordance with the Contract Documents and on time, and will also consider its ability to work with the Owner and Design Professional as a willing, cooperative, and successful team member.
- 1.5.5 The Bidder authorizes the Owner and its representatives to contact the owners and design professionals (and construction managers, if applicable) on projects on which the Bidder has worked and authorizes and requests such owners and design professionals (and construction managers) to provide the Owner with a candid evaluation of the Bidder's performance. By submitting its bid, the Bidder agrees that if it or any person, directly or indirectly, on its behalf or for its benefit brings an action against any of such owners or design professionals (or construction managers) or the employees of any of them as a result of or related to such candid evaluation, the Bidder will indemnify and hold such owners, design professionals (and construction managers) and the employees of any of them from any claims, whether or not proven, that are part of or are related to

such action and from all legal fees and expenses incurred by any of them arising out of or related to such legal action. This obligation is expressly intended for the benefit of such owners, design professionals (and construction managers), and the employees of each of them.

- 1.5.5.1 The Bidder's financial ability to complete the Contract successfully and on time without resort to its Surety.
- 1.5.5.2 The Bidder's prior experience with similar work on comparable or more complex projects.
- 1.5.5.3 The Bidder's prior history for the successful and timely completion of projects, including the Bidder's history of filing and having claims filed against it.
- 1.5.5.4 The Bidder's equipment and facilities.
- 1.5.5.5 The adequacy, in numbers and experience, of the Bidder's work force to complete the Contract successfully and on time.
- 1.5.5.6 The Bidder's compliance with federal, state, and local laws, rules, and regulations, including, but not limited to, the Occupational Safety and Health Act, the Ohio Prevailing Wage laws, and Ohio ethics laws.
- 1.5.5.7 The foregoing information with respect to each of the Subcontractors and Suppliers that the Bidder intends to use on the Project.
- 1.5.5.8 The Bidder's participation in a drug-free workplace program acceptable to the Owner, and the Bidder's record for both resolved and unresolved findings of the Auditor of State for recovery as defined in Section 9.24 of the Ohio Revised Code.
- 1.5.5.9 The Owner's prior experience with the Bidder or the Bidder's surety.
- 1.5.5.10 The Bidder's interest in the Project as evidenced by its attendance at any pre-bid meetings or conferences for bidders.
- 1.5.5.11 Depending upon the type of the work, other essential factors, as the Owner may determine and as are included in the Specifications.
- 1.5.5.12 If any portion of the Bid is based upon unit prices, whether there are any unbalanced unit prices.
- 1.5.5.13 Additional criteria of the Bidder not referenced above: (none if blank).
- 1.5.6 Within 10 business days upon the Owner's request the successful bidder shall complete and submit to the Design Professional and Owner the following documents:
 - 1.5.6.1 Any necessary bonds
 - 1.5.6.2 Certificates of Insurance required by the Contract Documents;
 - 1.5.6.3 Any additional information as the Owner or Design Professional may request regarding the Bidder's responsibility;
 - 1.5.6.4 A list of all proposed Subcontractors, Suppliers and manufacturers;
- 1.5.7 The failure to submit requested information on a timely basis may result in the determination that the Bidder is not the lowest and best bidder.

- 1.5.8 By submitting its bid, the Bidder agrees that the Owner's determination of which bidder is the lowest and best bidder shall be final and conclusive, and that if the Bidder or any person on its behalf challenges such determination in any legal proceeding, the Bidder will indemnify and hold the Owner and its employees and agents harmless from any claims included or related to such legal proceeding, whether or not proven, and from legal fees and expenses incurred by the Owner, its employees, or agents that arise out of or are related to such challenge.
- 1.5.9 After approval by the Owner and Design Professional of the list of proposed Subcontractors, Suppliers, and manufacturers submitted by the successful Bidder, the list shall not be changed unless written approval of the change is authorized by the Owner and Design Professional.
- 1.5.10 No Bidder may withdraw its bid within one-hundred and twenty (120) days after the date bids are opened. The Owner reserves the right to waive any formalities or irregularities or to reject any or all bids.
- 1.5.11 The Owner reserves the right to disqualify bids, before or after opening, upon evidence of collusion with intent to defraud or other illegal practices on the part of the Bidder.

1.6 Execution of Contract

- 1.6.1 Within the time designated by either the Owner or the Design Professional after award of the Contract, the successful Bidder shall execute and deliver all accompanying documents requested, including, but not limited to, a Contract or Performance Bond (if applicable), insurance certificates, and a valid Workers' Compensation Certificate. The successful Bidder shall have no property interest or rights under the Owner-Contractor Agreement until the Agreement is executed by the Owner.
- 1.6.2 CONSTRUCTION AND MATERIAL SPECIFICATIONS: All work performed under this contract shall conform to the State of Ohio Department of Transportation (ODOT), Construction and Material Specifications, January 1, 2019 Edition or most recent edition, the City of Centerville Specifications, Montgomery County Sanitary Engineering Department Specifications dated August 1, 2007 or most recent edition, and all constructions plans and documents contained herein. Supplemental specifications are included in these bid documents.
 - 1.6.2.1 The ODOT Construction and Material Specifications shall be interpreted as follows: Where the word "STATE" occurs, it is to mean City of Centerville. Where the word "DEPARTMENT" occurs, it is to mean the Office of the City Engineer, and where the word "DIRECTOR" or "DEPUTY DIRECTOR" occurs, it is to mean the Centerville City Manager. Where the word "ENGINEER" occurs, it is to mean the City Engineer or his/her authorized representative.

1.7 Substitutions/Non-Specified Products

- 1.7.1 Certain brands of material or apparatus are specified. Each bid will be based on these brands, which may be referred to in the Contract Documents as Standards. The use of another brand (referred to as a substitution or proposed equal in the Contract Documents, when a bidder or the contractor seeks to have a different brand of material or apparatus than that specified approved by the Owner for use in the Project) may be requested as provided herein. Substitutions, however, will not be considered in determining the lowest and best bid.

- 1.7.2 The products specified in the Contract Documents establish a standard of required function, dimension, appearance, and quality.
- 1.7.3 Bidders wishing to obtain approval to bid non-specified products shall submit written requests to the Design Professional a minimum of five (5) working days before the bid date and hour. To facilitate the submission of requests, a Substitution Form is included in the Standard Documents section of the City's public home page on Bid Express. The Bidder shall include the name of the material or equipment for which it is to be substituted and a complete description of the proposed substitution, including the name of the proposed manufacturer and/or product and a complete description of the proposed product including manufacturer's name and model number or system proposed, drawings, product literature, performance and test data, color selections or limitations, and any other information necessary for evaluation. Include a statement including any changes in other materials, equipment, or other work that would be required if the proposed product is incorporated in the materials, equipment, or other work that would be required if the proposed product is incorporated in the work. The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed product is on the proposer. The Design Professional's decision on approval of a proposed product will be final.

The following will be cause for rejection of a proposed substitution:

- 1.7.3.1 Requests submitted by subcontractors, material suppliers, and individuals other than Bidders;
 - 1.7.3.2 Requests submitted without adequate documentation;
 - 1.7.3.3 Requests received after the specified cut-off date.
- 1.7.4 When the Design Professional approves a product submission before receipt of bids, the approval will be included in an Addendum, and Bidders may include the pricing of this product in their bid. Bidders shall not rely on approvals made in any other manner.
 - 1.7.5 In proposing a non-specified product or a substitution, the Bidder represents and warrants that each proposed product will not result in any changes to the Project, including changes to the Work of other contractors, or any decrease in the performance of any equipment or systems to be installed in the Project and agrees to pay any additional costs incurred by the Owner and the Owner's consultants as a result of a non-specified or substitute product that is accepted.
 - 1.7.6 Following the award of the Contract, there shall be no substitutions for specified products, except pursuant to a Change Order. The Owner in its sole discretion may decline to consider a substitution for a Change Order.

1.8 Alternates

- 1.8.1 The Owner may request bids on alternates. If the Owner requests bids on alternates, the Bidder should include the cost of the alternates requested on its Bid Form.
- 1.8.2 At the time of awarding the Contract, the Owner will select or reject alternates as it determines is in its best interest. A Bidder's failure to include on its Bid Form the cost of an alternate selected by the Owner and applicable to the Bidder's work shall render the bid non-responsive and be grounds for the rejection of the bid. Otherwise, the failure to include the cost of an alternate will not be deemed material.

- 1.8.3 The Bidder understands that the Owner may include alternates, which may include deduct alternates as well as add alternates, to give it flexibility to build the Project with the funds available. The Bidder further understands and acknowledges that use of add and deduct alternates is a long held customary practice in the construction industry in the State of Ohio. The Bidder also acknowledges that the Owner will not make a decision about the alternates on which to base the award of contracts until the bids are received, and the Owner can compare its available funds with the base bids and the cost or savings from selecting different alternates. The Bidder understands that the award to the Bidder submitting the lowest and best bid will be based on the lowest base bid plus selected alternates, and may result in an award to a Bidder other than the Bidder that submitted the lowest base bid.
- 1.8.4 If, during the progress of the Work, the Owner desires to reinstate any alternate not included in the Contract, the Owner reserves the right to reinstate the alternate at the price bid by the Contractor provided that such action is taken in sufficient time so as not to delay the progress of the Work or cause the Contractor additional expense.

1.9 Unit Prices

- 1.9.1 This proposal shall be a "Unit Price Bid". Measurements for payment shall conform to ODOT Construction and Material Specifications latest edition, Section 109.01. The "Unit Cost" breakdown amounts shown on the Bid Sheets shall also be used for the purpose of determining the bidder's compensation for additions or deletions, if any, to the project during construction.
- 1.9.2 Where unit prices are requested in the Bid Form for a Prime Contract on which the Bidder submits a bid, the Bidder should quote a unit price. Unless otherwise expressly provided in the Bid Documents, such unit prices shall include all labor, materials, and services necessary for the timely and proper installation of the item for which the unit prices are requested. The unit prices quoted in the bid shall be the basis for any Change Orders entered into under the Owner-Contractor Agreement, unless the Design Professional determines that the use of such unit prices will cause substantial inequity to either the Contractor or the Owner.

1.10 Addenda

- 1.10.1 The Owner reserves the right to issue Addenda changing, altering, or supplementing the Contract Documents prior to the time set for receiving bids. The Design Professional or Owner will issue the Addenda to clarify bidders' questions and/or to change, alter, or supplement the Contract Documents.
- 1.10.2 Any explanation, interpretation, correction, or modification of the Contract Documents will be issued in writing in the form of an Addendum, which shall be the only means considered binding; explanations, interpretations, etc., made by any other means shall NOT be legally binding. All Addenda shall become a part of the Contract Documents.
- 1.10.3 Bidders shall submit written questions to the Design Professional and Owner in sufficient time in advance of the bid opening to allow sufficient time for a response. All Addenda will be issued at least forty-eight (48) hours prior to the published time for the opening of bids, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays. If any Addendum is issued within such forty-eight (48) hour period, then the time for opening of bids shall be extended one (1) week with no further advertising of bids required.

- 1.10.4 Notices of Addendum will be sent only to planholders and posted on the Bid Express website. Receipt of Addenda shall be indicated by Bidders when submitting electronic bids. Bidders are responsible for acquiring issued Addenda in time to incorporate them into their bid.
- 1.10.5 Each Bidder shall carefully read and review the Contract Documents and immediately bring to the attention of the Design Professional any error, omission, inconsistency, or ambiguity therein.
- 1.10.6 If a Bidder fails to indicate receipt of all Addenda through the last Addendum issued by the Design Professional on its Bid Form, the bid of such Bidder will be deemed to be responsive only if:
 - 1.10.6.1 The bid received clearly indicates that the Bidder received the Addendum, such as where the Addendum added another item to be bid upon and the Bidder submitted a bid on that item; or
 - 1.10.6.2 The Addendum involves only a matter of form or is one which has either no effect or has merely a trivial or negligible effect on price, quantity, quality, or delivery of the item bid upon.

1.11 Interpretation

- 1.11.1 If a Bidder contemplating submitting a bid for the proposed Project is in doubt as to the true meaning of any part of the Contract Documents, it shall submit a written request for an interpretation thereof to the Design Professional's representative. Any interpretation of the proposed documents will be made by Addendum only, duly signed by the Design Professional. The Owner will not be responsible for any other explanation or interpretation of the proposed documents.
- 1.11.2 In interpreting the Contract Documents, words describing materials that have a well-known technical or trade meaning, unless otherwise specifically defined in the Contract Documents, shall be construed in accordance with the well-known meaning recognized by the trade.
- 1.11.3 Bidders are responsible for notifying the Design Professional in a timely manner of any ambiguities, inconsistencies, errors, or omissions in the Contract Documents. The Bidder shall not, at any time after the execution of the Contract, be compensated for a claim alleging insufficient data, incomplete Contract Documents, or incorrectly assumed conditions regarding the nature or character of the Work, if no request was made by the Bidder prior to the bid opening.

1.12 State Sales and Use Taxes

- 1.12.1 The Owner is a political subdivision of the State of Ohio and is exempt from taxation under the Ohio Sales Tax and Use Tax Laws. Building materials that the successful Bidder purchases for incorporation into the Project will be exempt from state sales and use taxes if the successful Bidder provides a properly completed Ohio Department of Taxation Construction Contract Exemption Certificate to the vendors or suppliers when the materials are acquired. The Owner will execute properly completed certificates on request.

1.13 Date for Substantial Completion/Liquidated Damages

- 1.13.1 Date for Substantial Completion. Each successful Bidder shall have its Work on the Project Substantially Complete (as Substantial Completion is defined in the Contract Documents) in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- 1.13.2 The Contract Time shall run from the date of the Notice to Proceed or if there is no Notice to Proceed from the Effective Date of the Owner-Contractor Agreement. The Date for Substantial Completion and the Contract Time may be extended only by Change Order, by other Modification, or by a Claim that is Finally Resolved. By submitting its Bid, each Bidder agrees that the period for performing its Work is reasonable.
- 1.13.3 Liquidated Damages. If the successful Bidder does not have its Work Substantially Complete by its Date for Substantial Completion and/or Finally Complete by its Date for Final Completion, whichever may be applicable, the successful Bidder shall pay the Owner and the Owner may set off from amounts otherwise due the successful Bidder Liquidated Damages. The daily amounts of Liquidated Damages are set forth in the tables included in the General Provisions. The total amounts of Liquidated Damages will be calculated based on the total number of calendar days beyond the Date for Substantial Completion that the Bidder's Work is not Substantially Complete and/or to the extent that its Work is not Finally Complete by Bidder's Date for Final Completion, i.e., number of late days times the per diem rate(s) for Liquidated Damages in the tables. In addition to such Liquidated Damages, the Bidder shall indemnify, defend, and hold the Owner and its employees and agents harmless from any and all claims, whether or not such claims are proven, and from all costs and expenses incurred as a result of such claims, including, but not limited to, attorneys' and consultants' fees and expenses, that arise out of or are related to the Bidder's failure to Substantially Complete its Work by its Date for Substantial Completion or to Finally Complete its Work by its Date for Final Completion, whichever may be applicable. The Bidder's obligations under this Section are joint and several.
- 1.13.4 The Bidder acknowledges and agrees, by submitting its bid for the Work and entering into a Contract with the Owner, that such amounts of Liquidated Damages represent a reasonable estimate of the actual damages for loss of or interference with the intended use of the Project that the Owner would incur if the Bidder's Work is not Substantially Complete by its Date for Substantial Completion and/or not Finally Complete by its Date for Final Completion. The Bidder further acknowledges, agrees, and understands that it may seek an extension of the Contract Time (and its Date for Substantial Completion) to avoid or reduce Liquidated Damages by properly following the Claim procedures in the Contract Documents.

1.14 Owner's Right to Waive Defects and Irregularities

- 1.14.1 The Owner reserves the right to waive any and all irregularities provided that the defects and irregularities do not affect the amount of the bid in any material respect or otherwise give the Bidder a competitive advantage.

1.15 Modification/Withdrawal of Bids

1.15.1 Modification or Withdrawal of Bid prior to Deadline: A Bidder may modify or withdraw its bid on Bid Express at any time for any reason prior to the bid deadline for the opening of bids

1.15.1.1 Withdrawal after Bid Deadline: All bids shall remain valid and open for acceptance for a period of at least one-hundred and twenty (120) days after the bid opening; provided, however, that a Bidder may withdraw its bid from consideration after the bid deadline when all of the following apply, to the acceptance of the Owner:

1.15.1.1.1 the price bid was substantially lower than the other bids;

1.15.1.1.2 the reason for the bid being substantially lower was a clerical mistake, rather than a mistake in judgment, and was due to an unintentional and substantial error in arithmetic or an unintentional omission of a substantial quantity of work, labor, or material;

1.15.1.1.3 the bid was submitted in good faith; and

1.15.1.1.4 the Bidder provides written notice to the Owner, to the attention of the Owner's Representative, within two (2) business days after the bid opening for which the right to withdraw is claimed.

1.15.1.2 No bid may be withdrawn under this provision if the result would be the awarding of the contract on another bid for the bid package from which the Bidder is withdrawing its bid to the same Bidder.

1.15.1.3 If a bid is withdrawn under this provision, the Owner may award the Contract to another Bidder determined by the Owner to be the lowest and best bidder or the Owner may reject all bids and advertise for other bids. In the event the Owner advertises for other bids, the withdrawing Bidder shall pay the costs incurred in connection with the rebidding by the Owner, including the cost of printing new Contract Documents, required advertising, and printing and mailing notices to prospective bidders, if the Owner finds that such costs would not have been incurred but for such withdrawal.

1.16 Compliance with Applicable Laws

1.16.1 By submitting a bid for Work on the Project, the Bidder acknowledges that it is in compliance with applicable federal, state, and local laws and regulations, including, but not limited to, the following:

1.16.1.1 Equal Employment Opportunity/Nondiscrimination. The Bidder agrees that if it is awarded a contract that in the hiring of employees for performance of work under the contract or any subcontract, neither it nor any subcontractor, or any person acting on its behalf or its subcontractor's behalf, by reason of race, creed, sex, disability as defined in Section 4112.01 of the Ohio Revised Code, or color, shall discriminate against any citizen of the state in the employment of labor or workers who are qualified and available to perform work to which the employment relates. The Bidder further agrees that neither it nor any subcontractor or any person on its behalf or on behalf of any subcontractor, in any manner, shall discriminate against or intimidate any employees hired for

the performance of the work under the contract on account of race, creed, sex, disability as defined in Section 4112.01 of the Ohio Revised Code, or color.

- 1.16.1.2 Ethics Laws. The Bidder represents that it is familiar with all applicable ethics law requirements, including, without limitation, Sections 102.04 and 3517.13 of the Ohio Revised Code, and certifies that it is in compliance with such requirements.

1.17 Findings for Recovery

- 1.17.1 By submitting its bid, each Bidder certifies for reliance of the Owner that it has no unresolved finding for recovery against it issued by the Auditor of the State of Ohio on or after January 1, 2001, except as permitted by Section 9.24 (F) of the Ohio Revised Code.

1.18 Prevailing Wages

- 1.18.1 Pursuant to Section 4115.03 of the Ohio Revised Code, the successful Bidder and all of its subcontractors, regardless of tier, will strictly comply with its obligation to pay a rate of wages on the Project not less than the rate of wages fixed for this Project under Section 4115.04 of the Ohio Revised Code. Additionally, the successful Bidder will comply with all other provisions of Chapter 4115 of the Ohio Revised Code.
- 1.18.2 Refer to the Prevailing Wage document in the Owner's Bid Express Public Home Page Standard Documents for current Prevailing Wage Threshold Levels.

1.19 Ohio Public Works Commission Funding

- 1.19.1 For projects funded in whole or in part by the Ohio Public Works Commission, the State of Ohio Equal Employment Opportunity Requirements and Bid Conditions for OPWC-Assisted Construction Projects shall apply and Bidders must conform to its requirements, including, but not limited to, furnishing the required certifications with Bidder's bid.

1.20 Community Development Block Grant Funding

- 1.20.1 For projects funded in whole or in part by the Community Development Block Grant Program, Bidders must conform to its requirements, including, but not limited to, furnishing the required certifications with Bidder's bid, if any, and compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act.

Section 2 – General Provisions of the Contract

2.1 Definitions

- 2.1.1 The term “City” or “Owner” wherever used in these specifications shall mean the City of Centerville acting through the Council-Manager form of government as set forth in the City Charter. City Council acts through its City Manager or the City Manager’s properly authorized agents, such agents acting severally within the scope of the particular duties entrusted to them.
- 2.1.2 The term “Director” where used shall mean the Director of Finance of the City of Centerville or the Director of Finance’s properly authorized agent.
- 2.1.3 The term “Engineer” where used, shall mean the City Engineer of said City or the City Engineer’s properly authorized agent(s) or the project engineer, as the context of the Articles of Agreement dictate.
- 2.1.4 The term “Contractor” wherever used in these specifications shall mean the party of the second part entering into contract with the City for the performance of this work, or the Contractor’s properly authorized agent.
- 2.1.5 Wherever abbreviations are used in these specifications or on the plans, they are to be construed the same as the respective expressions represented. Abbreviations shall be as indicated in the City of Centerville Standards and Specifications, the Construction and Material Specifications of the Ohio Department of Transportation, or as defined in these specifications.
- 2.1.6 Wherever in the specifications the words “directed,” “required,” “permitted,” “ordered,” “designated,” “prescribed,” or words of like import are used, it shall be understood that the directions, requirement, permission, order, designations, or prescription of the City is intended, and similarly the words “approved,” “acceptable,” “satisfactory,” or words of like import, shall mean approved by, acceptable or satisfactory to, the City, unless otherwise expressly stated.
- 2.1.7 The Term Design Professional, where used, shall mean the City Engineer or another entity hired by the City.
- 2.1.8 Defined terms will retain their meaning whether the term is capitalized.

2.2 Work Embraced

- 2.2.1 The Contractor shall do all the work and furnish all the materials and equipment, except as otherwise provided herein, necessary or proper for performing and completing the work specified, but in no case will any work in excess of such requirements be paid for unless ordered in writing by the City. The methods and appliances used therefore must be such as will produce a satisfactory quality of work and ensure safety to the public and to property.
- 2.2.2 SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS: It shall be the duty of the contractor to erect and maintain adequate lights, signs, and barricades to ensure the safety of the traveling public during the progress of the work, and same are to be maintained until final acceptance by the City Engineer. All construction warning devices shall be new or like new condition and their application shall comply with the Ohio Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices.

2.3 Specifications

- 2.3.1 The specifications are intended to be explanatory, but should any discrepancy appear, or any misunderstanding arise as to the import of anything contained therein, the explanation of the City shall be final and binding on the Contractor. Any correction of errors or omissions in the specifications may be made when such correction is necessary for the proper fulfillment of their intentions as construed by the City. Any correction in the specifications made pursuant to the provisions of this paragraph shall not be retroactive, but will take effect at the date of notification to the Contractor of such correction.

2.4 Modification of Contract

- 2.4.1 The City may make alterations and modifications in the specifications and plans for the work, or may omit from the work covered by this contract any portion thereof, or may order extra work performed, when deemed necessary. The price to be paid for the work to be performed under such altered and modified contract shall be agreed upon in writing, and attached to the original contract and signed by both parties to this contract. It is expressly agreed and understood that such alterations, additions, modifications or omissions shall not in any way violate or annul said contract and the Contractor hereby agrees not to claim or bring suit for any damages, whether for loss of profits or otherwise, on account of these changes. Whenever during the progress of the work, any additional work, change, or modification is required, it shall be considered and treated as though originally contracted for, and shall be subject to all the terms, conditions and provisions of the original contract, except that a material increase of work will be deemed proper ground for extending the time of completion according to the determination of the City.
- 2.4.2 CHANGE ORDERS: The City reserves the right to execute change orders to the contract based upon the unit prices quoted. All change order requests initiated by the Contractor must be submitted in writing and must be approved by the City before proceeding with the work.

2.5 Interference with Existing Structures

- 2.5.1 Subsurface structures encountered in the prosecution of the work shall be protected and maintained in complete operation, unless permission for their removal is given. In case the uncovering of subsurface structures necessitates a change in the alignment or grade of the proposed work, the Contractor shall give written notice of such obstruction, and shall cease work at such points until ordered to proceed.
- 2.5.2 The contractor is responsible to have all utilities located with OHIO811, and work around the utilities and/or coordinate with utility company in relocation. The contractor shall take caution not to damage private facilities (irrigation systems, underground pet fences, etc.) and work around them as necessary. Raising or lowering gas or water valves which are affected by the work must be initiated by the contractor; the actual work of raising or lowering will be performed either by the utility company or by this contractor.
- 2.5.3 SUB-SURFACE CONDITIONS: The Contractor shall notify the Engineer in writing of any unusual circumstances as soon as they become apparent. The Engineer will then indicate what additional work must be done (if any), and may authorize such work.

2.6 Traffic Maintenance

- 2.6.1 Roadways/corridors shall remain open to traffic (automobile, bicycle, pedestrian) at all times. The contractor shall not close a lane or sidewalk such that another reasonable option is not possible for automobile and pedestrian traffic. On a thoroughfare, a lane may only be closed if another lane is available for the same movement. On a thoroughfare, if a departing lane is closed, the approach lane shall be as well.
- 2.6.2 The contractor shall be responsible for coordinating the closing of lanes, driveways, and/or sidewalks with the City and the affected property owners so as to minimize inconvenience and provide for property access needs. Access must be provided at all times for businesses, as well as residences where the disabled or elderly reside. Driveway access must be maintained over holiday periods.
- 2.6.3 The contractor shall be responsible to post "NO PARKING" signs as the project requires. Parking is to be available for residents either in their driveways or on one side of the street. The posted signs shall not read: "BY POLICE ORDER".
- 2.6.4 For work on arterial roadways, the available hours for construction maintenance of traffic are Monday-Friday (excluding holidays) from 8:30 A.M. to 3:30 P.M. and Saturday from 8:00 A.M. to 4:30 P.M. For work on local streets or other construction activities that do not impact traffic on arterial roadways, the available hours for construction are Monday-Saturday (excluding holidays) from 7:00 A.M. to 7:00 P.M. No evidence of construction activity shall be present near the Americana Festival nor on any arterial roadways from July 2nd at 3:00 P.M. through July 5 at 7:00 A.M.
- 2.6.5 All traffic control, including barricades, signs and warning lights, shall be in accordance with the Ohio Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices. The Contractor is responsible for all traffic control.
- 2.6.6 All existing traffic control devices that are removed as part of the construction process shall be relocated or replaced immediately so as to adequately maintain traffic.
- 2.6.7 Maintenance of Traffic Control Devices: the Contractor shall provide the capability to maintain the traffic controls 24 hours, 7 days a week and shall provide the City with an emergency telephone number for such maintenance. The response time to correct a signing problem is to be a maximum of two (2) hours. If, in the opinion of the City proper maintenance of traffic and proper provisions for traffic control are not being provided by the Contractor, the City may take the necessary steps to place them in proper condition. The cost of such services will be deducted from any money which may be due or become due the Contractor.
- 2.6.8 The items above are general guidelines and may be supplemented or overridden by project-specific guidelines in the project's specifications.

2.7 Cleaning Up

- 2.7.1 The Contractor shall remove surplus excavated materials and materials for construction as the work progresses, and shall render the streets suitable, safe, and convenient for traffic. Before acceptance of the work, the Contractor shall clean the construction area and any adjacent areas affected during construction. The Contractor shall leave the work area in original or better condition than before construction, and shall work with adjacent property owners and the City on all restoration efforts.

- 2.7.2 REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF MATERIALS: Removal and the proper disposal of materials, as needed, is the sole responsibility of the contractor. The City shall be informed of locations and any associated agreements for disposal.

2.8 Decisions

- 2.8.1 All work under this contract shall be done to the satisfaction of the City which shall in all cases determine the amount, quality, acceptability and fitness of the several kinds of work and material which are to be paid for hereunder, and shall decide all questions which may arise as to the fulfillment of this contract on the part of the Contractor and the City's determination and decision there on shall be final and conclusive; and such determination and decision, in case any question shall arise, shall be a condition precedent to the right of the Contractor to receive any moneys hereunder.

2.9 Orders to Contractor

- 2.9.1 The street address, email address, or fax number given in the bid or proposal upon which this contract is founded is hereby designated as the place where all notices, letters and other communications to the Contractor shall be mailed or delivered. The delivering at the above named place or depositing in a postpaid wrapper directed to the above place in any post office box regularly maintained by the post office, of any notice, letter or other communication to the Contractor shall be deemed sufficient service thereof upon the Contractor, and the date of said service shall be the date of such delivery or mailing. Such address may be changed at any time by an instrument in writing executed and acknowledged by the Contractor and delivered to the City. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to preclude or render inoperative the service of any notice, letter or other communication upon the Contractor personally. The Contractor shall at all times have a foreman, superintendent, or other competent representative present on the job, to whom orders and instructions may be given. Such orders shall have the same force and effect as if given directly to the Contractor.
- 2.9.2 SUBCONTRACTORS: None of the work to be performed under this contract shall be sublet or assigned without the written consent of the City Engineer and of the contractor's surety. Any assignment of this contract will not release the contractor or his surety from the faithful performance of the contract. All contracts made by the contractors with subcontractors are to be covered by the terms and conditions of the General Contract. The contractor shall fully inform its subcontractors regarding these terms and conditions. The contractor is, and remains, fully responsible to the City of Centerville for the full and complete performance of the contract, and is fully responsible for the actions of any subcontractors.
- 2.9.3 ENGINEERING/SURVEYING WORK: All engineering work is to be performed by an Ohio-licensed Professional Engineer approved by the City Engineer. For work determined by the City Engineer, the contractor is responsible for construction staking, which must be performed by an Ohio-licensed professional surveyor prior to starting construction. Field adjustments may be necessary and are not to result in additional charge.
- 2.9.4 NOTIFICATION LETTERS: The City of Centerville will mail notification letters to affected residents and business owners prior to the start of construction. The contractor is responsible for additional, and more detailed, notifications in special circumstances (driveway closing, underdrain installation, prohibiting on-street parking, etc.). The

Contractor shall provide sufficient notice to the City Engineer (typically seven days in advance) prior to work.

- 2.9.5 SURVEYING MONUMENTS AND PINS: The contractor shall protect all monuments, pins, and/or markers of any type. If a monument, pin, or marker is disturbed, it shall be immediately restored to its original integrity and condition by an Ohio-licensed Professional Surveyor at the expense of the contractor. The contractor shall submit three copies of the surveyor's field notes documenting re-establishment of the monuments, pins, and/or markers.

2.10 Lines and Grades

- 2.10.1 All work to be performed under this Agreement must be in accordance with the lines, grades and instructions as given by the City. The Contractor will be required to furnish such materials and give such assistance as may be required and shall notify the City forty-eight (48) hours in advance of any need for its service in staking out work.

2.11 Inspection and Material

- 2.11.1 No material of any kind may be used or any work performed until it has been inspected and accepted by the City. The Contractor must furnish all labor necessary in handling such material for inspection. All materials rejected must be immediately hauled away from the vicinity of the work. Materials or workmanship found at any time to be defective shall be remedied immediately by the Contractor, regardless of previous inspections.
- 2.11.2 Products or materials not pre-approved by the City cannot be used on this project. In order to test and evaluate new products and materials a part of the project may be designated as a "test section" by the City. Products accepted for evaluation shall meet the required specifications and an independent laboratory shall submit test results to the City prior to incorporation into the project. The contractor or its subcontractor or their supplier shall be responsible for testing or additional reports as requested by the City. Acceptance or rejection by the City of the product or material will be made after sufficient time has lapsed to permit proper analysis of the "test section".
- 2.11.3 The Engineer, the Engineer's assistants and agents, together with other parties who may enter into contracts with the City for doing work within the territory covered by this contract, shall, for all purposes which may be required by their contracts, have access to the work and the premises used by the Contractor, and the Contractor shall provide safe and proper facilities therefor. Furthermore, the Engineer, the Engineer's assistants and agents shall at all times have immediate access to all places of manufacture where materials are being made for use under this contract and shall have full facilities for inspecting the same.
- 2.11.4 The field inspection of the work, field checking of materials, giving of lines and grades, together with the preparation of partial and final estimates, will be performed by the Engineer. The inspection and supervision by the Engineer is intended to aid the Contractor in supplying all material and in doing all work in accordance with specifications, but such inspection shall not operate to release Contractor from any of Contractor's contract obligations.

- 2.11.5 Where materials are required to be tested before incorporation into the work, said tests shall be made by a certified testing laboratory and a copy of the test report is to be provided to the Engineer before any use has been made thereof.
- 2.11.6 MATERIAL TICKETS: It is the contractor's responsibility to assure that the inspector receives a copy of all tickets showing the quantity and type of materials delivered to the site. Such material tickets are to be provided to the inspector at the end of each working day.
- 2.11.7 USE OF RECLAIMED MATERIALS: The City is specifying the use of virgin materials for all asphalt courses. All bids received must reflect those materials. A bidder may submit an alternate bid proposing the use of reclaimed materials as per ODOT Specifications 401 and will be given serious consideration if the use of such material is clearly described and found to be advantageous. The use of reclaimed materials will be restricted to intermediate asphalt courses only.

2.12 Laws and Regulations

- 2.12.1 The Contractor and Contractor's agents, employees, and subcontractors must keep fully informed of and comply with all federal, state, and local laws, rules and regulations related in any manner to performing the work and all orders and decrees of bodies or tribunals having any jurisdiction or authority over the same.
- 2.12.2 Contractor will protect and indemnify the City against any claim or liability arising from or based on the violation of such laws, ordinances, regulations, orders, or decrees.
- 2.12.3 The Contractor must not discriminate against any employees or applicants for employment because of race, color, religious creed, handicap, ancestry, sex, or political affiliation, and that Contractor will take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed and that employees are treated during employment without regard to race, color, religious creed, handicap, ancestry, sex, or political affiliation.
- 2.12.4 It is expressly agreed and understood by the Contractor that the forgoing clause with respect to equal opportunity employment constitutes a material condition to this Contract, and that failure to comply therewith shall constitute a breach thereof, entitling the City to terminate the Contract at its option.

2.13 Liability of Contractor for Patents, Injuries, etc.

- 2.13.1 The Contractor is solely responsible for the work, and must take all precautions for preventing injuries to persons and property on or about the work, shall bear all losses resulting to Contractor on account of the amount or character of the work, or because the nature of the ground on which the work is performed is different from what was estimated or expected, or on account of the weather, floods, elements, or other causes. Contractor shall assume the defense of, and indemnify and save harmless, the City and its individual officers, employees, and agents, from all claims and judgments relating to: (i) labor, equipment and materials furnished for the work; (ii) inventions, patents and patent rights used in doing the work; (iii) injuries to any person, property, or entity caused by, incident to, connected with, resulting or arising from the Contractor, subcontractor(s), and their employees and agents in doing the work, or in consequence of any improper materials, methods, implements, or labor used therein; and (iv) any act, omission, or neglect of the Contractor, subcontractor(s), and their employees and agents.

- 2.13.2 If the Contractor claims compensation for any damages sustained by reason of the acts of the City, Contractor shall, within five (5) days after the sustaining of such damage, make a written claim to the City detailing the nature of the damage sustained and include an itemized statement of the details and amount of such damage. Unless such claim is presented as required, Contractor's claim for compensation will be forfeited and invalidated, and Contractor shall not be entitled to any payment on account of such damage. The Contractor will also protect the public by such barricades, detour and/or other signs, lights, or safety personnel as may be necessary, and will guard and keep safe the City from all claims and judgments for damages arising from such neglect.
- 2.13.3 The mention of any specific duty or liability of the Contractor in any one section of the specifications shall not be construed as a limitation or restriction upon any general liability or duty imposed upon the Contractor by the specifications as a whole, said reference to any specific duty or liability being merely for purposes of explanation.

2.14 Rights of Way

- 2.14.1 The City will be responsible for the securing of all necessary rights of way. Any exceptions will be indicated in the contract. Wherever it is required as a part of the contract to perform work within the limits of private property, or in public or private rights of way, such work shall be performed in conformity with all agreements between the City and such owners, and whether or not such a condition be part of the agreement, care shall be taken to avoid injury to the premises entered. All such premises shall be left in neat and orderly condition.

2.15 Stopping Work

- 2.15.1 The City, on account of public necessity, adverse weather conditions, or for other reasons, may order all work suspended, and thereupon the Contractor shall cease operation and take means to protect the public and the work and to facilitate traffic. In case of such stoppage of work, the time allowed for the completion of the work shall be extended in an amount equal to that lost by the Contractor in such manner, but the Contractor shall be entitled to no additional claim for damages.
- 2.15.2 If the work to be performed under this contract shall be abandoned by the Contractor, or if this contract or any part thereof shall be assigned or the work sublet by Contractor without the previous consent of the City, or if at any time an official of the City or employee thereof shall become directly or indirectly interested in this contract or in furnishing the supplies or performing the work thereunder, or in any portion of the profit thereof; or if at any time the City shall be of the opinion that the performance of the contract is unnecessarily or unreasonably delayed, or that the Contractor is willfully violating any of the provisions of this contract; or if the work be not fully completed within the time named in this contract, then and in any such case the City may notify the Contractor in writing to discontinue all work or any part thereof, and thereupon the Contractor shall discontinue the work or such part thereof as may be designated.
- 2.15.3 If legal obstructions to the prosecution of the work arise, the delay shall operate to extend the time for the completion of the part or parts of the work obstructed for the length of time the obstruction continues, and no longer, but damages shall not be claimed or allowed the Contractor for any such delay.

2.16 Starting Work

2.16.1 The Contractor shall commence the construction when the City issues a Notice to Proceed. Work on this contract shall begin within twenty-eight (28) days after the signing of the contract, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer. Contract time will be charged beginning on the date of the notice to proceed. The work will be commenced at such points as the City may direct. Whenever, in the opinion of the City, it is necessary that certain portions of the work be performed immediately, the Contractor shall proceed with such work without delay. If the work performed under this contract conflicts with other work performed for or by the City, or with its consent, the City shall determine the time and manner or procedure of the operations carried on under this contract.

2.17 Work Hours

2.17.1 Subject to Section 2.6.4 above, the permitted work hours on residential roadways are Monday-Saturday from 7:00 A.M. to 7:00 P.M. For work on arterial roadways, permitted work hours are Monday-Friday from 8:30 A.M. to 3:30 P.M. and Saturday from 8:00 A.M. to 4:30 P.M.

No work shall occur on legal holidays as noted below.

New Year’s Day	Labor Day
Martin Luther King Day	Thanksgiving Day
President’s Day	Friday after Thanksgiving
Memorial Day	Christmas Eve
Independence Day	Christmas Day

2.17.2 Time will be charged for all working days regardless of weather conditions, material supplies, or other conditions not under the control of the Contractor, which could impede the prosecution of the work.

2.17.3 Work on Sunday and on the ten legal holidays listed above will not be permitted except in cases of extreme emergency and then only with the written permission of the Engineer. If Sunday work or work on the ten legal holidays listed above is permitted, working time will be charged on the same basis as described above.

2.17.4 Work shall not be permitted the day prior to the Independence Day Americana Festival.

2.18 Subletting or Assigning

2.18.1 The Contractor shall give personal attention to the faithful prosecution of the work, shall keep the same under personal control, and shall not assign by power of attorney or otherwise, nor sublet the work or any part thereof, without the previous consent of the City, in writing, and shall not, either legally or equitably, assign any of the Moneys payable under this agreement, or the Contractor’s claim thereto, unless by and with the consent of the City in writing.

2.18.2 Assigning or subletting the whole or any portion of this contract shall not operate to release the Contractor or the bonding agency hereunder from any of the contractual or statutory obligations.

2.19 Character of Workers

- 2.19.1 The Contractor shall at all times employ sufficient labor and equipment for prosecuting the several classes of work to full completion in the manner and time required by these specifications.
- 2.19.2 All workers shall have sufficient skill and experience to perform properly the work assigned to them. Workers engaged in special work or skilled work shall have sufficient experience in such work and in the operation of the equipment required to perform all work properly and satisfactorily.
- 2.19.3 Any person employed by the Contractor or by any subcontractor who, in the opinion of the Engineer, does not perform work in a proper and skillful manner or is intemperate or disorderly shall, at the written request of the Engineer, be removed forthwith by the Contractor or subcontractor employing such person, and shall not be employed again in any portion of the work without the approval of the Engineer.
- 2.19.4 Should the Contractor fail to remove such person or persons as required above, or fail to furnish suitable and sufficient personnel for the proper prosecution of the work, the Engineer may withhold all estimates, which are or may become due, or may suspend the work by written notice until the Contractor complies with such orders.

2.20 Date for Completion

- 2.20.1 The Contractor shall have completed the work on or before the date(s) specified in the Project Information Sheet, or on or before a later date(s) determined as specified herein, otherwise the City, through its City Manager, shall proceed as provided in Section 2.21 of this Agreement.
- 2.20.2 If the contract is revised in any material respect and it is determined by the City that said revision will cause delay in the completion of the work, the City will postpone the completion date by the number of days it determines to be equitable.
- 2.20.3 If the Contractor finds it impossible, for unforeseeable reasons beyond the Contractor's control, to complete the work by the date as specified or as extended in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the contractor may, at any time prior to the expiration of the contract or contract time as extended, make a written request to the City for an extension of time setting forth therein the reasons that may justify the granting of the request. The insufficiency of time as specified in proposal and agreement is not a valid reason for any extension. If the City finds that the work was delayed because of unforeseeable conditions beyond the control and without the fault of the Contractor, it may extend the time for completion in such amount as the conditions justify. The extended time for completion shall be postponed the number of days that the suspension directly or indirectly delays the completion of the work. Whether or not the extension of time shall be compensable shall be at the discretion of the City.
- 2.20.4 If the City specifies a particular start date for all or any portion of the work, Contractor shall comply with such start date.

2.21 Liquidated Damages

- 2.21.1 FAILURE TO PERFORM WORK PER CONTRACT: Work performed deficient of the contract and its intent will be required to be corrected (if possible) or payment may be fully or

partially withheld, at the discretion of the City Engineer. The contractor shall perform the required work within the timeframes specified.

Work performed outside of the timeframes specified will cause the contractor to be charged at the rate indicated in Table 108.07-1 below, from the ODOT Constructions and Materials Specifications manual, unless otherwise stated. The amount shall be deducted from any money due the Contractor.

- 2.21.2 FAILURE TO COMPLETE WORK: The contractor shall complete the work on or before the Completion Date. For any delay beyond the completion date of this contract not approved by the City, the Contractor shall be charged at the rate indicated in Table 108.07-1 below, from the ODOT Constructions and Materials Specifications manual. The amount shall be deducted from any money due the Contractor.

TABLE 108.07-1 SCHEDULE OF LIQUIDATED DAMAGES

Original Contract Amount (Total Amount of the Bid)		Amount of Liquidated Damages to be Deducted for each Calendar Day of Overrun in Time
From More Than	To and Including	
\$0.00	\$500,000	\$400
\$500,000	\$2,000,000	\$600
\$2,000,000	\$10,000,000	\$900
\$10,000,000	\$50,000,000	\$1,500
Over \$50,000,000		\$3,200

- 2.21.3 INSPECTION AND MATERIALS TESTING: The contractor is required to work closely with the inspector concerning the scheduling of work items. A 24-48-hour notice is required to allow the inspector and materials testing firm an opportunity to schedule their time onsite. If the inspector is not notified of a significant work item, the City may require the work to be redone at the contractor's expense. If the work to be inspected and/or tested is delayed and the contractor does not properly notify the inspector, the City shall subtract the value of wasted time of the inspector and/or material testing firm from the money due the Contractor.
- 2.21.4 TRAFFIC CONTROL: If traffic control, or signage, is not maintained, each instance of non-compliance will result in a \$100 deduction from the money due the Contractor.
- 2.21.5 PROFESSIONAL WORK ETHIC: Contractor is to maintain a professional work ethic on the project as they are seen by the public as an extension of the City of Centerville. This includes communications, attitude, as well as maintaining a clean work site free of trash and debris. Each instance of non-compliance may result in a \$100 deduction from the money due the contractor, or other appropriate action.
- 2.21.6 DISPOSAL OF MATERIALS: If the contractor fails to properly dispose of materials as cited above, the City will deduct three (3) times the cost to the City to dispose of the materials from the money due the Contractor.

2.22 Termination of Contract

- 2.22.1 If the work to be performed under this contract shall be abandoned by the Contractor, or if this contract shall be assigned or the work under this contract sublet by the Contractor, otherwise than herein specified; or if before the completion of the work under this contract, the Contractor shall become financially unable to meet Contractor's

current obligations or shall become bankrupt or shall make a general assignment for the benefit of the creditors or shall have a receiver appointed for Contractor or to take charge of Contractor's affairs or shall have Contractor's property levied upon or taken in execution or under attachment; or if, at any time, the City shall be of the opinion that the performance of the Contract is unnecessarily or unreasonably delayed or that the Contractor is violating any of the conditions or agreements of this Contract, or is executing the same in bad faith or is not fulfilling the terms thereof, or is not making such progress in the execution of the Contract, or within the time to which the completion of the Contract may have been extended by the City, then the City at its discretion may at any time declare this Contract or any portion thereof, terminated by a written notice served upon the Contractor, a copy of which shall be provided to the Surety or the authorized agent of the Surety.

- 2.22.2 Upon the service of such notice, the Contractor shall discontinue the work or such part thereof as the City shall designate, whereupon the Surety may, at its option, assume this Contract or that portion thereof on which the City has ordered the Contractor to discontinue work and proceed to perform the same and may, with the written consent of the City, sublet the work, or portion of same taken over, provided, however, that the Surety shall exercise its option, if at all, within two weeks after written notice to discontinue work has been served upon the Surety or its authorized agent. The Surety, in such event, shall take the Contractor's place in all respects and shall be paid by the City for all work performed by it in accordance with the terms of this contract and if the Surety under the provisions hereof, shall assume said entire Contract, all moneys remaining due the Contractor or at the time of Contractor's default, shall thereupon become due and payable to the Surety as the work progresses, subject to all of the terms of this Contract.
- 2.22.3 In case the Surety does not, within the specified time, exercise its right and option to assume this Contract or that portion thereof on which the City has ordered the Contractor to discontinue work, then the City shall have the power to perform the work itself and to complete the work herein described furnishing the necessary labor and material therefor, without advertising for bids or letting a contract, or to contract to complete the same as herein provided for, in the manner provided by law for the letting of contracts by the City, or to procure other materials, tools, machinery and appliances for the completion of the same and to charge the expense of said labor, materials, tools, machinery and appliances, for the completion of same and to charge the expense of said labor, materials, tools, machinery and appliances, or of the new contract, to the Contractor, and the expense so charged shall be deducted and paid out of such money as may then be due or thereafter at any time to become due to the Contractor, and in case such expense is less than the sum which would have been payable under this Contract, if the same had been completed by the Contractor, Contractor shall be entitled to receive the difference, and in case such expense is greater, the Contractor, or, in case of Contractor's default, Contractor's Surety shall, upon notice from the City, pay the amount of such excess to the Director of Finance for the City.

2.23 Contractor's Liability Insurance

- 2.23.1 Insurance: Contractor shall procure and maintain for the duration of the contract, and for three (3) years thereafter, insurance against claims for injuries to persons or damage(s) to property which may arise from or in connection with the performance of

the work performed by the Contractor, Contractor's agents, representatives, employees, or subcontractors.

2.23.1.1 Minimum Scope and Limit of Insurance – Coverage shall be at least as broad as:

2.23.1.1.1 Commercial General Liability (CGL): Insurance Services Office (ISO) Form CG 00 01 covering CGL on an “occurrence” basis, including products-completed operations, with limits no less than \$2,000,000 per occurrence for bodily injury, property damage, personal & advertising injury. If a general aggregate limit applies, either the general aggregate limit shall apply separately to this project/location (ISO form CG 25 03 or CG 25 04) or the general aggregate limit shall be twice the required occurrence limit.

2.23.1.1.2 Automobile Liability: Insurance Services Office Form Number CA 0001 covering any auto (Code 1) , or if Contractor has no owned autos, hired (Code 8), and non-owned autos (Code 9), with limit no less than \$1,000,000 per accident for bodily injury and property damage.

2.23.1.1.3 Workers' Compensation insurance as required by the State of Ohio, and Employers' Liability insurance with a limit of no less than \$1,000,000 per accident for bodily injury or disease. If coverage is through The Ohio Bureau of Workers' Compensation, Employers' Liability coverage must be endorsed on the Commercial General Liability policy.

2.23.1.2 Other Insurance Provisions – The policies are to contain or be endorsed to contain, the following provisions:

2.23.1.2.1 Additional Insured: “The City of Centerville, its officials, agents, employees and volunteers” are to be covered as Additional Insureds on the Commercial General Liability, Automobile Liability and Contractor's Pollution Liability policies as respects liability arising out of work or operations performed by or on behalf of the Contractor including materials, parts, or equipment furnished in connection with such work or operations and automobiles owned, leased, hired, or borrowed by or on behalf of the Contractor.

To provide appropriate Additional Insured coverage for general liability, including liability arising out of the products-completed operations hazard, Contractor agrees to use the following endorsement(s), or similar endorsements providing equal or broader Additional Insured coverage:

ISO Form CG 20 10 11 85, OR if later revisions are used;

ISO Form CG 20 10, CG 20 26, CG 20 33, or CG 20 38; AND ISO Form CG 20 37 10 01.

2.23.1.2.2 Primary Coverage: For claims related to this project, the Contractor's insurance coverage shall be primary as respects the

City, its officials, agents, employees, and volunteers. Any insurance or self-insurance maintained by the City, its officials, agents, employees, and volunteers shall be excess of Contractor's insurance and shall not contribute with it.

- 2.23.1.3 Umbrella or Excess Liability – Contractor may satisfy the minimum liability limits required above for Commercial General Liability or Business Auto Liability under an Umbrella or Excess Liability policy. Contractor agrees to endorse the City, its officials, agents, employees and volunteers, as an Additional Insured on the Umbrella or Excess policy, unless the Certificate of Insurance states the Umbrella or Excess policy provides coverage on a “Follow Form” basis.
- 2.23.1.4 If the Contractor maintains higher limits than the minimums shown above, the City requires and shall be entitled to coverage for the higher limits maintained by the Contractor. Any available insurance proceeds in excess of the specified minimum limits of insurance and coverage shall be available to the City.
- 2.23.1.5 Deductibles and Self-Insured Retentions: Any deductibles or self-insured retentions must be declared to and approved by the City. At the option of the City, either: the Contractor shall cause the insurer to reduce or eliminate such deductibles or self-insured retentions as respects the City, its officers, officials, employees, and volunteers; or the Contractor shall provide a financial guarantee satisfactory to the City guaranteeing payment of losses and related investigations, claim administration, and defense expenses. Deductibles shall not exceed \$25,000.00.
- 2.23.1.6 No Reduction or Limit of Obligation: By requiring insurance, the City does not represent that the required insurance coverage and limits will necessarily be adequate to protect the Contractor. Insurance affected or procured by the Contractor will not reduce or limit the Contractor's contractual obligation to indemnify and defend the City for claims or suits which result from or are connected with the performance of the contract.
- 2.23.1.7 Waiver of Subrogation: Contractor hereby agrees to waive rights of subrogation which any insurer of Contractor may acquire from Contractor by virtue of the payment of any loss. Contractor agrees to secure endorsements necessary to affect this waiver of subrogation.
- 2.23.1.8 Acceptability of Insurers – Insurance is to be placed with insurers with a current A.M. Best rating of no less than A:VII, unless otherwise acceptable to the City.
- 2.23.1.9 Verification of Coverage: The Contractor shall furnish the City with Certificates of Insurance and amendatory endorsements, or copies of the applicable insurance language, effecting coverage required herein. All certificates and endorsements shall be received by the City before work commences. However, failure to obtain the required documents prior to the beginning of work shall not waive the Contractor's obligation to provide them. The City reserves the right to require complete, certified copies of all required insurance policies, including endorsements, required by these specifications, at any time.

The Contractor and all Subcontractors shall furnish the City one (1) unaltered copy of the official certificate of the Ohio Industrial Commission indicating that he has paid the premiums required under the Ohio Workers' Compensation Act evidencing that these workers are covered by Workers' Compensation during the Contract term. If the Contractor is legally permitted and qualified to be a self-insurer, such self-insurer shall furnish proof of such status to the City.

- 2.23.1.10 Non-renewal, Cancellation, or Material Change of Coverage. Each insurance policy required above shall state that coverage shall not be cancelled, except with notice to the City. If the Contractor receives a non-renewal or cancellation notice from an insurance carrier providing coverage required herein, or receives notice that coverage no longer complies with the requirements herein, Contractor agrees to notify the City by fax or email within five (5) business days with a copy of the non-renewal or cancellation notice, or written explanation of how coverage is no longer in compliance. The Contractor shall cease operations on the occurrence of any such non-renewal, cancellation, or material change and shall not resume operations until insurance is in force that complies with these requirements.
- 2.23.1.11 Subcontractors Insurance: The Contractor shall require and verify that all Subcontractors maintain insurance meeting all the requirements stated herein, and the Contractor shall ensure that there is an additional insured on insurance required from subcontractors. For CGL coverage, subcontractors shall provide coverage with a format at least as broad as CG 20 38 04 13.
- 2.23.1.12 Special Risks or Circumstances: City reserves the right to modify these requirements, including limits, based on the nature of the risk, prior experience, insurer, coverage, or other circumstances.

2.24 Payroll Records (Prevailing Wage Compliance)

- 2.24.1 If Contractor's Bid exceeds the applicable prevailing wage threshold as established by the Ohio Department of Commerce, Wage and Hour Bureau, the Contractor represents and warrants that its Bid is based upon the then prevailing rates of wages as determined by the Ohio Department of Commerce, Wage and Hour Bureau.
- 2.24.2 The Contractor and Contractor's subcontractors must pay the prevailing wage rates of the project locality, as determined by the Ohio Department of Commerce, Wage and Hour Bureau, to laborers and mechanics performing work on the project. The prevailing wage rates are available at the Ohio Department of Commerce's web site (<https://ohio.gov/wps/portal/gov/site/jobs/resources/prevailing-wage>) and can also be found in Bid Express for this project. The Contractor and its subcontractors must pay any revised wage rates issued by the Ohio Department of Commerce, Wage and Hour Bureau during the term of the Contract.
- 2.24.3 The Contractor and its subcontractors shall fully comply with the provisions, duties, and obligations, and is subject to the remedies and penalties of O.R.C. Chapter 4115. If the Contractor or its subcontractors fail to comply with O.R.C. Chapter 4115, the City may withhold payment. The Contractor is liable for and violation(s) committed by the Contractor or its subcontractors.

- 2.24.4 The Contractor and its subcontractors shall submit all payroll reports and affidavits in compliance with the requirements of Chapter 4115 for all of the employees of the Contractor and of the Contractor's subcontractors, for all payments.
- 2.24.5 If this is a Federally Funded Project, the Contractor and all subcontractors shall comply with all Federal Labor Standards.
- 2.24.6 Contractor shall indemnify, defend, and hold the City and the City's elected officials, officers, employees, and volunteers harmless from all claims, costs, and causes of action, including, but not limited to attorneys' fees, which flow from or relate to Contractor's or any of Contractor's subcontractors failure to fully and or timely comply with any applicable requirement under the Federal Labor Standards and/or Ohio Revised Code Chapter 4115 and any related law, rule, or regulation.

2.25 Measurements

- 2.25.1 Where the computation of areas or volumes by exact geometric methods is unduly laborious or refined, a current method of appropriate measurement as determined by the City will be used in the determination of quantities upon which payments are based. The measurements of the City as to the amount of the work performed shall be final and conclusive.
- 2.25.2 Payments will be made for work performed within the lines prescribed by the specifications, and in accordance with the unit prices for the items under which the work is performed.

2.26 Prices

- 2.26.1 The City shall pay, and the Contractor shall receive, the prices herein stipulated as full compensation for everything furnished and performed by the Contractor under this contract, including all incidental work required but not specifically mentioned; also for all loss or damage arising out of the nature of the work or from action of the weather, floods, or from any unforeseen obstruction or difficulty encountered in the prosecution of the work for all risks of every description connected with the work; for all expense incurred by or in consequence of the suspension or discontinuance of the work as herein provided, together with the remedying of all defects developing during the period for which the work is guaranteed.

2.27 Payments

- 2.27.1 The payment for work performed under any item contained in the proposal or in any supplementary contract shall cover the furnishing of all labor, equipment and materials necessary to the construction and completion of such item.
- 2.27.2 PARTIAL PAYMENTS: Not more than one (1) payment per month will be made on this Contract by the City of Centerville. A 6% retainer shall be withheld by the City from each payment until the job is complete. Close coordination of requests for payment will be required to minimize any delay in payments for work completed. For Prevailing Wage jobs, certified payroll reports must be submitted for the period of work in the partial payment request before payment is made. Payment will be made upon attainment of item specification. At the discretion of the Owner, lump sum items partially completed may be paid pro-rata. The contractor will not be reimbursed for stored materials unless otherwise stated.

- 2.27.3 FINAL PAYMENT: One final payment shall be made to the Contractor within 31 days after all work is completed and accepted by the City and after all provisions are complied with as outlined in the contract. An invoice shall be submitted to and certified as correct by the City Engineer. The Contractor will be required to sign the Contractor's Affidavit of Compliance with Prevailing Wages and have the same properly notarized. Refer to Section 2.35 below for Maintenance Bond requirements.
- 2.27.4 The City shall have all of its contractual, common law, equitable, and statutory rights of set-off. These rights shall include, but not limited to, the City's option to withhold for the purposes of set-off (a) any monies due or that may become due to the Contractor under this Contract; (b) any monies due or owing under any other contract with the City Department that holds or funds this Contract; or (c) any monies due or owing the Contractor under any other contract with the City for tax delinquencies, fee delinquencies, or monetary penalties relative thereto. The City shall exercise its setoff rights pursuant to audit by the Director of Finance, or its representative.
- 2.27.5 OVERTIME: If Contractor chooses to work on weekends, holidays, before or after hours, it shall so notify the City 48 hours in advance. Unless compelling reasons exist, permission for such work will be given; however, the Contractor may be required to pay the City for the Inspector's overtime at the actual current rate. Work requiring Montgomery County inspection requires direct coordination with Montgomery County including all overtime arrangements.
- 2.27.6 TAX EXEMPTION: The Contractor may furnish a sales tax exemption certificate for completion by the City of Centerville, Ohio.

2.28 No Estoppel

- 2.28.1 The City shall not be precluded or estopped by any return or certificate made or given by it, from at any time, either before or after the final completion and acceptance of the work and payment made therefor, showing true and correct amount and character of the work performed and materials furnished by the Contractor or any other person under this Agreement, or from showing at any time that any such return or certificate is untrue and incorrect or improperly made in any particular, or that the work or materials or any part thereof, do not in fact conform to the specifications; and the City shall not be precluded or estopped, notwithstanding any such return or certificate and payment in accordance therewith, from demanding and recovering from the Contractor such damages as it may sustain by reason of Contractor's failure to comply with the specifications.
- 2.28.2 Neither the acceptance by the City, nor any order, measurements, or certificate by the City, nor any order for payment of money, nor any payment for, nor acceptance of the whole or any part of the work by the City, nor any possession taken by the City, or its employees, shall operate as a waiver of any portion of this contract or of any power herein reserved to the City, or any rights to damages herein provided; nor shall any waiver of any breach of this contract be held to be a waiver of any other or subsequent breach.

2.29 Work Guarantee

- 2.29.1 The Contractor shall guarantee all work for a period of one year from the date set forth in the certificate of completion against defects resulting from the use of inferior

materials, equipment or workmanship. The six percent (6%) retainer held by the City shall be used as a Maintenance Bond. See Section 2.35 for Maintenance Bond information. The Contractor will be required during the life of this guarantee to make all repairs or changes in the guaranteed work, which in the opinion of the Owner, are necessary as the result of the use of materials, equipment or workmanship which are inferior, defective or not in accordance with the terms of the contract. The Contractor shall promptly, upon receipt of notice from the City, remove and replace all unsatisfactory work with suitable material and equipment. An inspection of the entire job will be made eleven (11) months after the last and final payment and if no corrections are needed, then the 6% retainer becomes payable at the end of the twelve (12) months time period.

2.30 Claims and Disputes

- 2.30.1 **DEFINITION:** A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, adjustment or interpretation of Contract terms, payment of money, extension of time or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the City and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. Claims must be made by written notice. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim. A Claim excludes Contractor claims for compensation for acts of the City under Section 2.13 and liquidated damages under Section 2.21.
- 2.30.2 **TIME LIMITS ON CLAIMS:** Claims by either party must be made within twenty-one (21) DAYS after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within twenty-one (21) days after the claimant first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later. Claims must be made by written notice. An additional Claim made after the initial Claim has been implemented by Change Order will not be considered unless submitted in a timely manner. Other terms and conditions in the Contract Documents may set other time limits for specific types of claims, and such other time limits shall prevail over the general time rules of this Section.
- 2.30.3 **CONTINUING CONTRACT PERFORMANCE:** Pending final resolution of a Claim, unless otherwise agreed in writing or unless the claim is made the subject of a court action filed by either PARTY, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the City shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- 2.30.4 **WAIVER OF CLAIMS:** Final Payment. The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the City except those arising from:
- 2.30.4.1 Liens, Claims, security interests or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
 - 2.30.4.2 Failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents; or
 - 2.30.4.3 Terms of warranties required by law or the Contract Documents.
- Acceptance of final payment by Contractor shall constitute waiver of claims by the Contractor.
- 2.30.5 **Claims for Concealed or Unknown Conditions:** If conditions are encountered at the site which are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions which differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) such conditions which

differ materially from those that would have been revealed by diligent site inspection and testing by the Contractor (“Conditions”), the Contractor shall give notice to the Owner promptly before such conditions are disturbed and in no event later than five calendar (5) days after first observance of the conditions. The Owner will promptly investigate such Conditions and, if Owner determines, in Owner’s sole discretion, that they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, the Owner will make equitable adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both, or terminate or cancel the Contract. If the Owner determines that Conditions at the site are not materially different and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Owner shall so notify the Contractor in writing. Claims in opposition to such determination must be made within five (5) days after the Owner has given notice of the decision.

- 2.30.6 Claims for Additional Cost: If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, written notice shall be given to the Owner before proceeding to execute the Work. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property. If the Contractor believes additional cost is involved for reasons including but not limited to (1) a written interpretation from the Owner, (2) an order by the Owner to stop the Work where the Contractor was not at fault, (3) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Owner, (4) failure of payment by the Owner, (5) termination of the Contract by the Owner, or (6) Owner's suspension, Claim shall be filed in accordance with the procedure established in the Time Limits on Claims Section above.
- 2.30.7 Claims for Additional Time: If the Contractor wishes to make Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, written notice as provided herein shall be given as provided in the Time Limits on Claims Section above. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of cost and of probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.
- 2.30.8 Injury or Damage to Person or Property: If either party to the Contract suffers injury or damage to person or property (of some type other than claims referred to earlier in this section) because of an act or omission of the other party, of any of the other party's employees or agents, or of others for whose acts such party is legally liable, written notice of such injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding twenty-one (21) days after first observance. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter. If a Claim for additional cost or time related to this Claim is to be asserted, it shall be filed as provided in the Time Limits on Claims Section above.
- 2.30.9 RESOLUTION OF CLAIMS AND DISPUTES: The party against or to whom a Claim is made shall review that Claim within ten (10) days after receiving it and will take one or more of the following actions within that time: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant; (2) notify the claimant that a decision can be expected within some additional time, not to exceed fifteen (15) more days; (3) reject the claim in whole or in part, stating reasons for the rejection; or (4) suggest a compromise. The Contractor's surety may be notified by the Owner as to any Claim against or to the Contractor. If any claim is not settled after following the procedures listed above, the claimant may make the claim the subject of a court action against the other party. The remedies provided in this Agreement are cumulative. Delay or forbearance in the enforcement of any right

under this Agreement shall not be deemed a waiver of, or estoppel against the exercise of, such right.

2.31 Choice of Law/Forum

2.31.1 The existence, validity and construction of the contract shall be governed by the laws of the State of Ohio, without giving effect to conflict of law provisions. The exclusive jurisdiction for litigation between the parties shall be vested in the federal and state courts of Montgomery County, Ohio. Each party agrees that such courts shall have personal jurisdiction over it and waives, fully and completely, any right to dismiss the action for forum non conveniens, and/or transfer the venue of the action.

2.32 Amendments

2.32.1 The contract fully expresses the entire understanding of City and Contractor. Any and all prior understandings are cancelled. No future changes in the terms of the contract shall be valid, except when and if reduced to writing and signed by the party to be bound.

2.33 Severability

2.33.1 If any term of the contract is found to be unenforceable in any jurisdiction, then such term shall be enforced to the maximum extent permitted by law, rather than voided, and the remaining terms of this contract shall remain in full force and effect.

2.34 Counterparts/Signatures

2.34.1 The contract may be executed in multiple copies, each of which shall be deemed to be an original and all of which shall constitute but one and the same instrument. Telecopy, pdf, facsimile signatures or other electronic means by the parties will be regarded as valid and binding signatures of the parties.

2.35 Bonding

The bonds described below explain the types of bonds that may be required. For bid-specific bonding requirements, see the Project Information Sheet included in the bid documents.

2.34.2 **BID BOND:** Each proposal must be accompanied by a bid bond for the full amount of the bid or a Cashier's Check or a certified check on a United States of America National Bank for 10% of the amount bid, as prescribed in Sections 153.54, 153.57, and 153.571 of the Ohio Revised Code. This amount is agreed to by the bidder as liquidated damages due to the City of Centerville should the bidder fail to execute the contract and furnish the required bonds within ten days after the acceptance of the proposal and the awarding of the contract by the City. The Bid amount shall be the total of all sums bid, including all add alternates with no deduction for any deduct alternates. NOTE: AIA Bid Bond forms are not acceptable.

2.34.3 **CONTRACT BOND:** The successful Bidder, who, as a Bid Guaranty, submits a certified check, cashier's check, or irrevocable letter of credit in an amount equal to 10% of the bid (including all alternates), shall furnish a Contract Bond using the Contract Bond form included in the Contract Documents in an amount equal to 100% of the Contract Sum. NOTE: AIA Bond forms are not acceptable.

2.34.4 **PERFORMANCE BOND:** The successful bidder shall be required to post a performance bond in an amount equal to 100% of the total contract price. The performance bond

shall be executed by the Contractor and approved surety company authorized to do business in Ohio. The American Institute of Architects (AIA) performance bond is NOT an acceptable document. If, at any time after execution and approval of this Contract and the Performance Bond required by the Contract Documents, the City of Centerville should deem any of the sureties upon such bond to be unsatisfactory or if, for any reason, such bond shall cease to be adequate surety for the City of Centerville, the Contractor shall within five days after notice of the City of Centerville to do so, furnish a new or additional bond, in form, sum and signed by such sureties as shall be satisfactory to the City of Centerville. No further payment shall be deemed due nor made to the Contractor unless and until such new or additional bond shall be furnished and approved.

- 2.34.5 **MAINTENANCE BOND:** If the Contractor prefers to give a Maintenance Bond, in lieu of the retained percentage, same may be given, provided it is executed in form as prescribed herein, designated "Improvement Maintenance Bond". Same shall be executed by the Contractor and approved surety company authorized to do business in Ohio. A Maintenance Bond Form is included in the Standard Documents section of the City's public home page on Bid Express.
- 2.34.6 The bond must be issued by a surety company ("Surety") authorized by the Ohio Department of Insurance to transact business in the State of Ohio and acceptable to the Owner. The bond must be issued by a Surety capable of demonstrating a record of competent underwriting, efficient management, adequate reserves, and sound investments. These criteria will be deemed to be met if the Surety currently has an A.M. Best Company Policyholders Rating of "A-" or better and has or exceeds the Best Financial Size Category of Class VI. Other Sureties may be acceptable to the Owner, in its sole discretion.
- 2.34.7 All bonds shall be signed by an authorized agent of an acceptable Surety and by the Bidder.
- 2.34.8 Surety bonds shall be supported by credentials showing the Power of Attorney of the agent, a certificate showing the legal right of the Surety to do business in the State of Ohio, and a financial statement of the Surety.
- 2.34.9 The Bid Guaranty, as applicable, shall be in the name of or payable to the order of the Owner.
- 2.34.10 The name, address, and telephone and fax numbers of the Surety and the Surety's Agent should be typed or printed on each bond.

2.36 State and Federal Guidelines

- 2.35.1 The Contractor shall adhere to all applicable Federal and State guidelines and regulations.

2.37 Cumulative Remedies

- 2.36.1 The duties and obligations imposed by these General Conditions and the rights and remedies available hereunder to the parties hereto are in addition to, and are not to be construed in any way as a limitation of, any rights and remedies available to any or all of them which are otherwise imposed or available by Laws or Regulations, by special warranty or guarantee, or by other provisions of the Contract Documents. The

provisions of this Paragraph will be as effective as if repeated specifically in the Contract Documents in connection with each particular duty, obligation, right, and remedy to which they apply.

SECTION 000500 – PRELIMINARY PROJECT SCHEDULE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 PROJECT SCHEDULE

- A. First Advertisement: Thursday, **November 23, 2023**
- B. Second Advertisement: Thursday, **November 30, 2023**
- C. Pre-bid Meeting: Tuesday, **November 28, 2023 at 2pm (non-mandatory)**
- D. Last Day for Bidder Questions: Thursday, **December 7, 2023**
- E. Date of Last Addendum: Friday, **December 8, 2023**
- F. Bids Due: Wednesday, **December 13, 2023 – via Bid Express online, at 2pm**
- G. **December 14-15, 2023:** Meetings with Lowest and Best Responsive Bidders to evaluate and determine Lowest and/or Best Responsible Bidder.
- H. Recommendations to City Council: Monday, **December 18, 2023**
- I. Notice of Award: Tuesday, **December 19, 2023**
- J. Issue Notice to Proceed: by Tuesday, **December 19, 2023**
 - 1. Prepare Contracts, obtain signatures
- K. Pre-Construction Conference: Within 15 Days of Contract Execution:
 - 1. **No later than Friday, January 12, 2024**
- L. Informational Submittals: Friday, **January 12, 2024**
 - 1. List of Key Personnel Assignments: Superintendent, Managers contact information.
 - 2. Submittals Schedule: Prepare list of all required submittals, including submission date for each. Critical path submittals shall be identified and scheduled accordingly, allowing 15days for Architects initial review.
- M. Construction Start: **January 2, 2024**
 - 1. Prepare critical path shop drawings for submission to A/E

- N. Mobilization: No later than, **February 5, 2024**

- O. **Base Bid - Event Center & Site: January 2, 2024 – February 3, 2025**
 - 1. Substantial Completion Date: **January 6, 2025**

- P. **Parking Alternate: July, 2024 – August, 2024** (coordinated with Owner)
 - 1. Substantial Completion Date: **August 12, 2024**

- Q. Final Completion: **February 3, 2025**

- R. Contractor Warranty Period: one year from the date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 000816 – MODIFICATION TO GENERAL CONDITIONS

These Supplementary Conditions modify, change, delete from or add to the "General conditions of the Contract for Construction" AIA Document A201 / 2007 Edition, and are hereby made a part of the Contract. Where any Article of the General Conditions is modified or any Paragraph, Subparagraph, or Clause thereof is modified or deleted by these Supplementary Conditions, the unaltered provisions of that Article, paragraph, Subparagraph or Clause shall remain in effect.

ARTICLE 1 – GENERAL PROVISIONS

1.2.4 The limits of the Work shall not be restricted because of the arrangement of the Specifications. Where responsibility for particular work is required of a particular trade or contract, that trade or contract shall not be released from that responsibility by reason of the location of the specification working or drawing information which establishes the responsibility.

1.2.5 Should the Contract Drawings and Specifications be in disagreement with each other relative to quality or quantity of Work required, the better quality and/or the greater quantity shall govern, and shall be provided, unless instructions are otherwise furnished to the Contractor by the Architect in writing. If an item is shown on the Drawings, but not specified, the Contractor shall provide the item of a similar quality to other items specified, as determined by the Architect. If an item is specified but not shown on the Drawings, it shall be located as directed by the Architect.

ARTICLE 3 - CONTRACTOR

Add the following Subparagraph 3.2.2.1:

3.2.2.1 The Drawings shall not be scaled. Indicated or figured dimensions shall be followed: In case of any discrepancy in the figures, the Contractor shall bring the matter to the attention of the Architect for decision before proceeding with the Work. Failure to follow this procedure shall be at the Contractor's own risk.

To Subparagraph 3.4.1 add the following Clause 3.4.1.1:

3.4.1.1 The Contractor shall place orders for materials and equipment to be incorporated in the Work as soon as possible after award of the Contract and receipt of approvals where applicable. The Contractor shall keep the Architect informed as to availability of all specified materials and equipment.

3.4.5 The Contract Sum will not be increased because of increases in labor rates, increases in material and equipment costs, and/or increases in equipment rental charges.

3.5.2 As part of the Work, the Contractor shall properly adjust and regulate all systems and equipment so that such systems and equipment will function as intended; and it is understood that such systems and equipment cannot be properly regulated or adjusted until they are in actual use or operation.

3.5.3 The Contractor shall not be relieved of his general warranty obligation by the specification of a particular product or procedure.

3.5.4 The Contractor shall warrant all Work for a period of two years after the date established for substantial completion. Determination of this date shall be at the Architect's sole and absolute discretion and shall be final.

The Contractor shall replace, without cost to the Owner or interference with Owner's operation, any defective workmanship or materials. All work shall be completed to the satisfaction of the Owner and Architect.

3.5.5 Manufacturers and fabricators of materials and products shall warrant their materials or products for a minimum period of one year after the date of substantial completion unless otherwise indicated in the Specifications. Owner may request such warranties in writing.

3.5.6 The responsibility for defective work shall not terminate at the end of the guarantee period. The Contractor shall continue to provide even beyond the two-year period, without limitation, such additional replacements or repairs required to correct all defective workmanship and materials for which written notice of the failure of compliance with Contract Documents has been given prior to the expiration of the two-year period.

3.5.7 The provisions contained in this paragraph 3.5 shall not be construed as restricting the Contractor's liability (or the Owner's right to recover damages) for breach of Contract by reason of non-conformance with the specifications or defects or faulty workmanship.

3.7.1.1 The Contractor shall obtain and pay for a Certificate of Occupancy as required by governing authorities prior to final acceptance of the Project. Certificate shall be forwarded to the Owner.

3.7.1.2 LWC Incorporated will submit documents to the State and the Contractor shall obtain and pay for the General Building Permit as required by authorities having jurisdiction. All other permits, fees required by local authorities of the Contractor or his Sub-contractors shall be included with the Contractor's Bid. The Contractor shall obtain and pay for the "Occupancy Permit".

3.7.1.3 The Contractor shall obtain and pay for required "Tap in Fees".

3.7.1.4 The Contractor shall pay for the "Aid to Construction" charge.

Add the following Paragraph 3.10.4 and Subparagraphs 3.10.4.1 through 3.10.4.4:

3.10.4 When it becomes apparent from the weekly progress meeting that any activity completion date may not be met, the Contractor shall take some or all of the following actions at no additional cost to the Owner or the Architect:

3.10.4.1 Increase construction manpower in such quantities as will eliminate the backlog of work and put the Project back on schedule.

3.10.4.2 Increase the number of working hours per shift, shifts per working day, working days per week, or the amount of construction equipment, or any combination of the foregoing as will substantially eliminate the backlog of work and put the project back on schedule.

3.10.4.3 Reschedule activities to achieve maximum practical concurrency of accomplishment of activities and put the Project back on schedule.

3.10.4.4 If a Contractor fails to take any of the above actions within forty-eight (48) hours after receiving written notice, the Owner may take action to attempt to put the Project back on schedule, and deduct the cost of such actions from the moneys due or to become due the Contractor.

3.12.2.1 All Work shall be furnished and installed in accordance with the Drawings, Specifications, and as additionally required by the manufacturer's printed instructions. The Contractor shall review the manufacturer's instructions, and where conflict occurs between the Drawings or Specifications and the manufacturer's instructions, the Contractor shall request clarification from the Architect prior to commencing the work.

3.12.8.1 The Contractor shall provide full information to the manufacturer as to the relevant performance requirements and conditions under which materials, systems, or equipment will be expected to operate. Certifications received shall be in the form of a presentation or assurance of performance at the Project site.

3.18.3 The Contractor shall be obligated to report errors or inconsistencies to the Architect and shall be liable for extra costs resulting from failure to give adequate notice of errors and inconsistencies.

3.19 LABOR DISPUTES

3.19.1 The Contractor agrees to indemnify and hold the Owner and the Architect harmless from any and all losses or damages arising out of jurisdictional labor disputes or other labor troubles of any kind that may occur during performance of the Contract.

ARTICLE 4

4.2.16 The Architect will not be responsible for specified construction procedures. The Contractor shall be responsible for all construction means, methods, materials, and procedures. The Specifications may indicate or specify means, methods, and materials (including manufacturer's instructions, and reference codes and standards). Where the Architect makes such reference, it is merely to indicate a standard by which Work may be judged and to indicate means, methods, materials, and systems whose suitability has been demonstrated by "Rules of the Trade", by certified test data, industry standards, governing regulations, and manufacturer's recommendations. The Contractor shall be responsible for making timely objections, proposing alternative, or making discrepancies known to the Architect when procedures and materials are specified.

ARTICLE 6 – CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

6.1.5 Any use of the premises and partial occupancy by the Owner shall not be construed as an acceptance of any portion of the Work nor a waiver of any claims.

ARTICLE 7 - CHANGES IN THE WORK

7.1.5 The Contractor shall verify all information given prior to beginning his work. The Contractor shall make careful investigation to establish the exact location of items indicated on the Drawings. The Contractor shall be responsible for all costs arising out of damage to such items which result from his work.

AIA[®] Document A201[®] – 2017

General Conditions of the Contract for Construction

for the following PROJECT:

(Name and location or address)

City of Centerville
Benham's Grove Event Center and Campus Improvements

THE OWNER:

(Name, legal status and address)

City of Centerville
100 W. Spring Valley Road
Centerville, OH 45458

THE ARCHITECT:

(Name, legal status and address)

LWC Incorporated
434 East First Street
Dayton, OH 45402

TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS
- 2 OWNER
- 3 CONTRACTOR
- 4 ARCHITECT
- 5 SUBCONTRACTORS
- 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS
- 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK
- 8 TIME
- 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION
- 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY
- 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS
- 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK
- 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
- 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

For guidance in modifying this document to include supplementary conditions, see AIA Document A503[™], Guide for Supplementary Conditions.

15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

INDEX

(Topics and numbers in bold are Section headings.)

Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

9.6.6, 9.9.3, 12.3

Acceptance of Work

9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.3

Access to Work

3.16, 6.2.1, 12.1

Accident Prevention

10

Acts and Omissions

3.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.8, 3.18, 4.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 10.2.5, 10.2.8, 13.3.2, 14.1, 15.1.2, 15.2

Addenda

1.1.1

Additional Costs, Claims for

3.7.4, 3.7.5, 10.3.2, 15.1.5

Additional Inspections and Testing

9.4.2, 9.8.3, 12.2.1, 13.4

Additional Time, Claims for

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 8.3.2, 15.1.6

Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, 4.2, 9.4, 9.5

Advertisement or Invitation to Bid

1.1.1

Aesthetic Effect

4.2.13

Allowances

3.8

Applications for Payment

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.5.4, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.10

Approvals

2.1.1, 2.3.1, 2.5, 3.1.3, 3.10.2, 3.12.8, 3.12.9, 3.12.10.1, 4.2.7, 9.3.2, 13.4.1

Arbitration

8.3.1, 15.3.2, 15.4

ARCHITECT

4

Architect, Definition of

4.1.1

Architect, Extent of Authority

2.5, 3.12.7, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.3, 7.1.2, 7.3.4, 7.4, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.8, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.1, 12.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.4, 15.2.1

Architect, Limitations of Authority and Responsibility

2.1.1, 3.12.4, 3.12.8, 3.12.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.10, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 5.2.1, 7.4, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6.4, 15.1.4, 15.2

Architect's Additional Services and Expenses

2.5, 12.2.1, 13.4.2, 13.4.3, 14.2.4

Architect's Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, 3.7.4, 15.2, 9.4.1, 9.5

Architect's Approvals

2.5, 3.1.3, 3.5, 3.10.2, 4.2.7

Architect's Authority to Reject Work

3.5, 4.2.6, 12.1.2, 12.2.1

Architect's Copyright

1.1.7, 1.5

Architect's Decisions

3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 4.2.14, 6.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2, 15.2

Architect's Inspections

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

Architect's Instructions

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 13.4.2

Architect's Interpretations

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Architect's Project Representative

4.2.10

Architect's Relationship with Contractor

1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.9.3, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.3.2, 13.4, 15.2

Architect's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 11.3

Architect's Representations

9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1

Architect's Site Visits

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

Asbestos

10.3.1

Attorneys' Fees

3.18.1, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3

Award of Separate Contracts

6.1.1, 6.1.2

Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

5.2

Basic Definitions

1.1

Bidding Requirements

1.1.1

Binding Dispute Resolution

8.3.1, 9.7, 11.5, 13.1, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6.1, 15.3.1, 15.3.2, 15.3.3, 15.4.1

Bonds, Lien

7.3.4.4, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

Bonds, Performance, and Payment

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, 11.1.2, 11.1.3, 11.5

Building Information Models Use and Reliance

1.8

Building Permit

3.7.1

Capitalization

1.3

Certificate of Substantial Completion

9.8.3, 9.8.4, 9.8.5

Init.

/

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 08:38:38 ET on 10/11/2023 under Order No.4104244916 which expires on 08/30/2024, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

User Notes:

(3B9ADA41)

Certificates for Payment
4.2.1, 4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.4

Certificates of Inspection, Testing or Approval
13.4.4

Certificates of Insurance
9.10.2

Change Orders
1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.8.2.3, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 5.2.3, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, 7.2, 7.3.2, 7.3.7, 7.3.9, 7.3.10, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 9.10.3, 10.3.2, 11.2, 11.5, 12.1.2

Change Orders, Definition of
7.2.1

CHANGES IN THE WORK
2.2.2, 3.11, 4.2.8, 7, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 11.5

Claims, Definition of
15.1.1

Claims, Notice of
1.6.2, 15.1.3

CLAIMS AND DISPUTES
3.2.4, 6.1.1, 6.3, 7.3.9, 9.3.3, 9.10.4, 10.3.3, 15, 15.4

Claims and Timely Assertion of Claims
15.4.1

Claims for Additional Cost
3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 7.3.9, 9.5.2, 10.2.5, 10.3.2, 15.1.5

Claims for Additional Time
3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 6.1.1, 8.3.2, 9.5.2, 10.3.2, 15.1.6

Concealed or Unknown Conditions, Claims for
3.7.4

Claims for Damages
3.2.4, 3.18, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.3, 11.3.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.7

Claims Subject to Arbitration
15.4.1

Cleaning Up
3.15, 6.3

Commencement of the Work, Conditions Relating to
2.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12.6, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 6.2.2, 8.1.2, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 11.1, 11.2, 15.1.5

Commencement of the Work, Definition of
8.1.2

Communications
3.9.1, 4.2.4

Completion, Conditions Relating to
3.4.1, 3.11, 3.15, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 8.2, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10, 12.2, 14.1.2, 15.1.2

COMPLETION, PAYMENTS AND
9

Completion, Substantial
3.10.1, 4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 15.1.2

Compliance with Laws
2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14.1.1, 14.2.1.3, 15.2.8, 15.4.2, 15.4.3

Concealed or Unknown Conditions
3.7.4, 4.2.8, 8.3.1, 10.3

Conditions of the Contract
1.1.1, 6.1.1, 6.1.4

Consent, Written
3.4.2, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 13.2, 15.4.4.2

Consolidation or Joinder
15.4.4

CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS
1.1.4, 6

Construction Change Directive, Definition of
7.3.1

Construction Change Directives
1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1.1, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, 7.3, 9.3.1.1

Construction Schedules, Contractor's
3.10, 3.11, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts
5.4, 14.2.2.2

Continuing Contract Performance
15.1.4

Contract, Definition of
1.1.2

CONTRACT, TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE
5.4.1.1, 5.4.2, 11.5, 14

Contract Administration
3.1.3, 4, 9.4, 9.5

Contract Award and Execution, Conditions Relating to
3.7.1, 3.10, 5.2, 6.1

Contract Documents, Copies Furnished and Use of
1.5.2, 2.3.6, 5.3

Contract Documents, Definition of
1.1.1

Contract Sum
2.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.8, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 7.3, 7.4, 9.1, 9.2, 9.4.2, 9.5.1.4, 9.6.7, 9.7, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.1.2, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, 15.1.5, 15.2.5

Contract Sum, Definition of
9.1

Contract Time
1.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 6.1.5, 7.2.1.3, 7.3.1, 7.3.5, 7.3.6, 7, 7, 7.3.10, 7.4, 8.1.1, 8.2.1, 8.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 12.1.1, 12.1.2, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, 15.1.6.1, 15.2.5

Contract Time, Definition of
8.1.1

CONTRACTOR
3

Contractor, Definition of
3.1, 6.1.2

Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules
3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 4.2.3, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

Contractor's Employees

2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6,
10.2, 10.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1
Contractor's Liability Insurance
11.1
Contractor's Relationship with Separate Contractors
and Owner's Forces
3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 6, 11.3, 12.2.4
Contractor's Relationship with Subcontractors
1.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.18.1, 3.18.2, 4.2.4, 5, 9.6.2,
9.6.7, 9.10.2, 11.2, 11.3, 11.4
Contractor's Relationship with the Architect
1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2,
3.5.1, 3.7.4, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.2, 5.2,
6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6,
10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.4, 15.1.3, 15.2.1
Contractor's Representations
3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.6, 6.2.2, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.8.2
Contractor's Responsibility for Those Performing the
Work
3.3.2, 3.18, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 9.5.1, 10.2.8
Contractor's Review of Contract Documents
3.2
Contractor's Right to Stop the Work
2.2.2, 9.7
Contractor's Right to Terminate the Contract
14.1
Contractor's Submittals
3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8.2,
9.8.3, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3
Contractor's Superintendent
3.9, 10.2.6
Contractor's Supervision and Construction
Procedures
1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4,
7.1.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.6, 8.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4
Coordination and Correlation
1.2, 3.2.1, 3.3.1, 3.10, 3.12.6, 6.1.3, 6.2.1
Copies Furnished of Drawings and Specifications
1.5, 2.3.6, 3.11
Copyrights
1.5, 3.17
Correction of Work
2.5, 3.7.3, 9.4.2, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 12.1.2, 12.2, 12.3,
15.1.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1
Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents
1.2
Cost, Definition of
7.3.4
Costs
2.5, 3.2.4, 3.7.3, 3.8.2, 3.15.2, 5.4.2, 6.1.1, 6.2.3,
7.3.3.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.8, 7.3.9, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 10.3.6,
11.2, 12.1.2, 12.2.1, 12.2.4, 13.4, 14
Cutting and Patching
3.14, 6.2.5
Damage to Construction of Owner or Separate
Contractors
3.14.2, 6.2.4, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4
Damage to the Work
3.14.2, 9.9.1, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4
Damages, Claims for
3.2.4, 3.18, 6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.3.3, 11.3.2,
11.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.7
Damages for Delay
6.2.3, 8.3.3, 9.5.1.6, 9.7, 10.3.2, 14.3.2
Date of Commencement of the Work, Definition of
8.1.2
Date of Substantial Completion, Definition of
8.1.3
Day, Definition of
8.1.4
Decisions of the Architect
3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 6.3, 7.3.4,
7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2,
14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1, 15.2
Decisions to Withhold Certification
9.4.1, 9.5, 9.7, 14.1.1.3
Defective or Nonconforming Work, Acceptance,
Rejection and Correction of
2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.3, 9.5.1, 9.5.3, 9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3,
9.10.4, 12.2.1
Definitions
1.1, 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.5, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 3.12.3, 4.1.1, 5.1,
6.1.2, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.1, 9.1, 9.8.1, 15.1.1
Delays and Extensions of Time
3.2, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7,
10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.6, 15.2.5
Digital Data Use and Transmission
1.7
Disputes
6.3, 7.3.9, 15.1, 15.2
Documents and Samples at the Site
3.11
Drawings, Definition of
1.1.5
Drawings and Specifications, Use and Ownership of
3.11
Effective Date of Insurance
8.2.2
Emergencies
10.4, 14.1.1.2, 15.1.5
Employees, Contractor's
3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2,
10.3.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1
Equipment, Labor, or Materials
1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,
4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3,
9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2
Execution and Progress of the Work
1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.2.2, 2.3.4, 2.3.6, 3.1, 3.3.1, 3.4.1, 3.7.1,
3.10.1, 3.12, 3.14, 4.2, 6.2.2, 7.1.3, 7.3.6, 8.2, 9.5.1,
9.9.1, 10.2, 10.3, 12.1, 12.2, 14.2, 14.3.1, 15.1.4
Extensions of Time
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3, 7.4, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2,
10.4, 14.3, 15.1.6, 15.2.5

Failure of Payment
 9.5.1.3, 9.7, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2
 Faulty Work
 (See Defective or Nonconforming Work)
 Final Completion and Final Payment
 4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.8.2, 9.10, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3
 Financial Arrangements, Owner's
 2.2.1, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4
GENERAL PROVISIONS
 1
 Governing Law
 13.1
 Guarantees (See Warranty)
 Hazardous Materials and Substances
 10.2.4, 10.3
 Identification of Subcontractors and Suppliers
 5.2.1
 Indemnification
 3.1.7, 3.18, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3
 Information and Services Required of the Owner
 2.1.2, 2.2, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10.1, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5,
 9.6.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2,
 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4
 Initial Decision
 15.2
 Initial Decision Maker, Definition of
 1.1.8
 Initial Decision Maker, Decisions
 14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5
 Initial Decision Maker, Extent of Authority
 14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5
 Injury or Damage to Person or Property
 10.2.8, 10.4
 Inspections
 3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3,
 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 12.2.1, 13.4
 Instructions to Bidders
 1.1.1
 Instructions to the Contractor
 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.8.1, 5.2.1, 7, 8.2.2, 12, 13.4.2
 Instruments of Service, Definition of
 1.1.7
 Insurance
 6.1.1, 7.3.4, 8.2.2, 9.3.2, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.2.5,
 11
Insurance, Notice of Cancellation or Expiration
11.1.4, 11.2.3
 Insurance, Contractor's Liability
 11.1
 Insurance, Effective Date of
 8.2.2, 14.4.2
 Insurance, Owner's Liability
 11.2
 Insurance, Property
 10.2.5, 11.2, 11.4, 11.5
 Insurance, Stored Materials
 9.3.2

INSURANCE AND BONDS
 11
 Insurance Companies, Consent to Partial Occupancy
 9.9.1
 Insured loss, Adjustment and Settlement of
 11.5
 Intent of the Contract Documents
 1.2.1, 4.2.7, 4.2.12, 4.2.13
 Interest
 13.5
 Interpretation
 1.1.8, 1.2.3, 1.4, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 15.1.1
 Interpretations, Written
 4.2.11, 4.2.12
 Judgment on Final Award
 15.4.2
 Labor and Materials, Equipment
 1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,
 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1,
 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2
 Labor Disputes
 8.3.1
 Laws and Regulations
 1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4,
 9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8,
 15.4
 Liens
 2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8
 Limitations, Statutes of
 12.2.5, 15.1.2, 15.4.1.1
 Limitations of Liability
 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.10, 3.12.10.1, 3.17, 3.18.1, 4.2.6,
 4.2.7, 6.2.2, 9.4.2, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 9.6.8, 10.2.5, 10.3.3,
 11.3, 12.2.5, 13.3.1
 Limitations of Time
 2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2.7,
 5.2, 5.3, 5.4.1, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3,
 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15,
 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5
 Materials, Hazardous
 10.2.4, 10.3
 Materials, Labor, Equipment and
 1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4.1, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,
 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2,
 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2
 Means, Methods, Techniques, Sequences and
 Procedures of Construction
 3.3.1, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 9.4.2
 Mechanic's Lien
 2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8
 Mediation
 8.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6, 15.3, 15.4.1,
 15.4.1.1
 Minor Changes in the Work
 1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1, 7.4
MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
 13

Modifications, Definition of	Separate Contracts
1.1.1	6.1
Modifications to the Contract	Owner's Right to Stop the Work
1.1.1, 1.1.2, 2.5, 3.11, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 5.2.3, 7, 8.3.1, 9.7, 10.3.2	2.4
Mutual Responsibility	Owner's Right to Suspend the Work
6.2	14.3
Nonconforming Work, Acceptance of	Owner's Right to Terminate the Contract
9.6.6, 9.9.3, 12.3	14.2, 14.4
Nonconforming Work, Rejection and Correction of	Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications and Other Instruments of Service
2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2	1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.1.7, 1.5, 2.3.6, 3.2.2, 3.11, 3.17, 4.2.12, 5.3
Notice	Partial Occupancy or Use
1.6, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 2.1.2, 2.2.2., 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.5, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 5.2.1, 7.4, 8.2.2, 9.6.8, 9.7, 9.10.1, 10.2.8, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1, 14.2.2, 14.4.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.4.1	9.6.6, 9.9
Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Insurance	Patching, Cutting and
11.1.4, 11.2.3	3.14, 6.2.5
Notice of Claims	Patents
1.6.2, 2.1.2, 3.7.4, 9.6.8, 10.2.8, 15.1.3, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.2.8, 15.3.2, 15.4.1	3.17
Notice of Testing and Inspections	Payment, Applications for
13.4.1, 13.4.2	4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.8.5, 9.10.1, 14.2.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3
Observations, Contractor's	Payment, Certificates for
3.2, 3.7.4	4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4
Occupancy	Payment, Failure of
2.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.8	9.5.1.3, 9.7, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2
Orders, Written	Payment, Final
1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9.2, 7, 8.2.2, 11.5, 12.1, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.2, 14.3.1	4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.10, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3
OWNER	Payment Bond, Performance Bond and
2	7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, 11.1.2
Owner, Definition of	Payments, Progress
2.1.1	9.3, 9.6, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4
Owner, Evidence of Financial Arrangements	PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION
2.2, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4	9
Owner, Information and Services Required of the	Payments to Subcontractors
2.1.2, 2.2, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.3.2, 9.6.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4	5.4.2, 9.5.1.3, 9.6.2, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 14.2.1.2
Owner's Authority	PCB
1.5, 2.1.1, 2.3.32.4, 2.5, 3.4.2, 3.8.1, 3.12.10, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.9, 5.2.1, 5.2.4, 5.4.1, 6.1, 6.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 9.3.2, 9.5.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 11.4, 11.5, 12.2.2, 12.3, 13.2.2, 14.3, 14.4, 15.2.7	10.3.1
Owner's Insurance	Performance Bond and Payment Bond
11.2	7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, 11.1.2
Owner's Relationship with Subcontractors	Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws
1.1.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 9.6.4, 9.10.2, 14.2.2	2.3.1, 3.7, 3.13, 7.3.4.4, 10.2.2
Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work	PERSONS AND PROPERTY, PROTECTION OF
2.5, 14.2.2	10
Owner's Right to Clean Up	Polychlorinated Biphenyl
6.3	10.3.1
Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award	Product Data, Definition of
	3.12.2
	Product Data and Samples, Shop Drawings
	3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7
	Progress and Completion
	4.2.2, 8.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 14.1.4, 15.1.4
	Progress Payments
	9.3, 9.6, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4
	Project, Definition of
	1.1.4
	Project Representatives

4.2.10
Property Insurance
10.2.5, 11.2
Proposal Requirements
1.1.1
PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY
10
Regulations and Laws
1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 9.9.1,
10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8,
15.4
Rejection of Work
4.2.6, 12.2.1
Releases and Waivers of Liens
9.3.1, 9.10.2
Representations
3.2.1, 3.5, 3.12.6, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1
Representatives
2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.9, 4.1.1, 4.2.10, 13.2.1
Responsibility for Those Performing the Work
3.3.2, 3.18, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 6.3, 9.5.1, 10
Retainage
9.3.1, 9.6.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3
Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions
by Contractor
3.2, 3.12.7, 6.1.3
Review of Contractor's Submittals by Owner and
Architect
3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2, 5.2, 6.1.3, 9.2, 9.8.2
Review of Shop Drawings, Product Data and
Samples by Contractor
3.12
Rights and Remedies
1.1.2, 2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.15.2, 4.2.6, 5.3, 5.4, 6.1,
6.3, 7.3.1, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.2.5, 10.3, 12.2.1, 12.2.2,
12.2.4, 13.3, 14, 15.4
Royalties, Patents and Copyrights
3.17
Rules and Notices for Arbitration
15.4.1
Safety of Persons and Property
10.2, 10.4
Safety Precautions and Programs
3.3.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 5.3, 10.1, 10.2, 10.4
Samples, Definition of
3.12.3
Samples, Shop Drawings, Product Data and
3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7
Samples at the Site, Documents and
3.11
Schedule of Values
9.2, 9.3.1
Schedules, Construction
3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2
Separate Contracts and Contractors
1.1.4, 3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.7, 6, 8.3.1, 12.1.2
Separate Contractors, Definition of

6.1.1
Shop Drawings, Definition of
3.12.1
Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples
3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7
Site, Use of
3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1
Site Inspections
3.2.2, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 3.7.4, 4.2, 9.9.2, 9.4.2, 9.10.1, 13.4
Site Visits, Architect's
3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4
Special Inspections and Testing
4.2.6, 12.2.1, 13.4
Specifications, Definition of
1.1.6
Specifications
1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.2.2, 1.5, 3.12.10, 3.17, 4.2.14
Statute of Limitations
15.1.2, 15.4.1.1
Stopping the Work
2.2.2, 2.4, 9.7, 10.3, 14.1
Stored Materials
6.2.1, 9.3.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4
Subcontractor, Definition of
5.1.1
SUBCONTRACTORS
5
Subcontractors, Work by
1.2.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.1, 3.18, 4.2.3, 5.2.3, 5.3, 5.4,
9.3.1.2, 9.6.7
Subcontractual Relations
5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6, 9.10, 10.2.1, 14.1, 14.2.1
Submittals
3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 7.3.4, 9.2, 9.3,
9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3
Submittal Schedule
3.10.2, 3.12.5, 4.2.7
Subrogation, Waivers of
6.1.1, 11.3
Substances, Hazardous
10.3
Substantial Completion
4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3,
12.2, 15.1.2
Substantial Completion, Definition of
9.8.1
Substitution of Subcontractors
5.2.3, 5.2.4
Substitution of Architect
2.3.3
Substitutions of Materials
3.4.2, 3.5, 7.3.8
Sub-subcontractor, Definition of
5.1.2
Subsurface Conditions
3.7.4
Successors and Assigns

13.2
 Superintendent
 3.9, 10.2.6
 Supervision and Construction Procedures
 1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4,
 7.1.3, 7.3.4, 8.2, 8.3.1, 9.4.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4
 Suppliers
 1.5, 3.12.1, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 5.2.1, 9.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6,
 9.10.5, 14.2.1
 Surety
 5.4.1.2, 9.6.8, 9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.1.2, 14.2.2,
 15.2.7
 Surety, Consent of
 9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3
 Surveys
 1.1.7, 2.3.4
 Suspension by the Owner for Convenience
 14.3
 Suspension of the Work
 3.7.5, 5.4.2, 14.3
 Suspension or Termination of the Contract
 5.4.1.1, 14
 Taxes
 3.6, 3.8.2.1, 7.3.4.4
 Termination by the Contractor
 14.1, 15.1.7
 Termination by the Owner for Cause
 5.4.1.1, 14.2, 15.1.7
 Termination by the Owner for Convenience
 14.4
 Termination of the Architect
 2.3.3
 Termination of the Contractor Employment
 14.2.2

TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

14
 Tests and Inspections
 3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3,
 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 10.3.2, 12.2.1, 13.4
 TIME
 8
 Time, Delays and Extensions of
 3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7,
 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.6, 15.2.5
 Time Limits

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2,
 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3,
 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14,
 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.4
 Time Limits on Claims
 3.7.4, 10.2.8, 15.1.2, 15.1.3
 Title to Work
 9.3.2, 9.3.3
 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK
 12
 Uncovering of Work
 12.1
 Unforeseen Conditions, Concealed or Unknown
 3.7.4, 8.3.1, 10.3
 Unit Prices
 7.3.3.2, 9.1.2
 Use of Documents
 1.1.1, 1.5, 2.3.6, 3.12.6, 5.3
 Use of Site
 3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1
 Values, Schedule of
 9.2, 9.3.1
 Waiver of Claims by the Architect
 13.3.2
 Waiver of Claims by the Contractor
 9.10.5, 13.3.2, 15.1.7
 Waiver of Claims by the Owner
 9.9.3, 9.10.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.2.1, 13.3.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.7
 Waiver of Consequential Damages
 14.2.4, 15.1.7
 Waiver of Liens
 9.3, 9.10.2, 9.10.4
 Waivers of Subrogation
 6.1.1, 11.3
 Warranty
 3.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 12.2.2,
 15.1.2
 Weather Delays
 8.3, 15.1.6.2
 Work, Definition of
 1.1.3
 Written Consent
 1.5.2, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.12.8, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.3.2, 9.10.3,
 13.2, 13.3.2, 15.4.4.2
 Written Interpretations
 4.2.11, 4.2.12
 Written Orders
 1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9, 7, 8.2.2, 12.1, 12.2, 13.4.2, 14.3.1

ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

§ 1.1 Basic Definitions

§ 1.1.1 The Contract Documents

The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive, or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's bid or proposal, or portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements.

§ 1.1.2 The Contract

The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor, (3) between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect's duties.

§ 1.1.3 The Work

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project.

§ 1.1.4 The Project

The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner and by Separate Contractors.

§ 1.1.5 The Drawings

The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.

§ 1.1.6 The Specifications

The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

§ 1.1.7 Instruments of Service

Instruments of Service are representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Instruments of Service may include, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials.

§ 1.1.8 Initial Decision Maker

The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2. The Initial Decision Maker shall not show partiality to the Owner or Contractor and shall not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

§ 1.2 Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents

§ 1.2.1 The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent

consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

§ 1.2.1.1 The invalidity of any provision of the Contract Documents shall not invalidate the Contract or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Contract Documents violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Contract Documents shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties' intentions and purposes in executing the Contract.

§ 1.2.2 Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.

§ 1.2.3 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

§ 1.3 Capitalization

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles, or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

§ 1.4 Interpretation

In the interest of brevity the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

§ 1.5 Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications, and Other Instruments of Service

§ 1.5.1 The Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and retain all common law, statutory, and other reserved rights in their Instruments of Service, including copyrights. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the Instruments of Service. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with the Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Architect's or Architect's consultants' reserved rights.

§ 1.5.2 The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce the Instruments of Service provided to them, subject to any protocols established pursuant to Sections 1.7 and 1.8, solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Instruments of Service. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers may not use the Instruments of Service on other projects or for additions to the Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect, and the Architect's consultants.

§ 1.6 Notice

§ 1.6.1 Except as otherwise provided in Section 1.6.2, where the Contract Documents require one party to notify or give notice to the other party, such notice shall be provided in writing to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed and shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person, by mail, by courier, or by electronic transmission if a method for electronic transmission is set forth in the Agreement.

§ 1.6.2 Notice of Claims as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be provided in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly served only if delivered to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed by certified or registered mail, or by courier providing proof of delivery.

§ 1.7 Digital Data Use and Transmission

The parties shall agree upon protocols governing the transmission and use of Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form. The parties will use AIA Document E203™-2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, to establish the protocols for the development, use, transmission, and exchange of digital data.

§ 1.8 Building Information Models Use and Reliance

Any use of, or reliance on, all or a portion of a building information model without agreement to protocols governing the use of, and reliance on, the information contained in the model and without having those protocols set forth in AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, and the requisite AIA Document G202™–2013, Project Building Information Modeling Protocol Form, shall be at the using or relying party's sole risk and without liability to the other party and its contractors or consultants, the authors of, or contributors to, the building information model, and each of their agents and employees.

ARTICLE 2 OWNER

§ 2.1 General

§ 2.1.1 The Owner is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Owner shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Owner with respect to all matters requiring the Owner's approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have such authority. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.

§ 2.1.2 The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor, within fifteen days after receipt of a written request, information necessary and relevant for the Contractor to evaluate, give notice of, or enforce mechanic's lien rights. Such information shall include a correct statement of the record legal title to the property on which the Project is located, usually referred to as the site, and the Owner's interest therein.

§ 2.2 Evidence of the Owner's Financial Arrangements

§ 2.2.1 Prior to commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Contractor shall have no obligation to commence the Work until the Owner provides such evidence. If commencement of the Work is delayed under this Section 2.2.1, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately.

§ 2.2.2 Following commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract only if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Contractor as the Contract Documents require; (2) the Contractor identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner's ability to make payment when due; or (3) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum. If the Owner fails to provide such evidence, as required, within fourteen days of the Contractor's request, the Contractor may immediately stop the Work and, in that event, shall notify the Owner that the Work has stopped. However, if the request is made because a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum under (3) above, the Contractor may immediately stop only that portion of the Work affected by the change until reasonable evidence is provided. If the Work is stopped under this Section 2.2.2, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 2.2.3 After the Owner furnishes evidence of financial arrangements under this Section 2.2, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Contractor.

§ 2.2.4 Where the Owner has designated information furnished under this Section 2.2 as "confidential," the Contractor shall keep the information confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person. However, the Contractor may disclose "confidential" information, after seven (7) days' notice to the Owner, where disclosure is required by law, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity, or by court or arbitrator(s) order. The Contractor may also disclose "confidential" information to its employees, consultants, sureties, Subcontractors and their employees, Sub-subcontractors, and others who need to know the content of such information solely and exclusively for the Project and who agree to maintain the confidentiality of such information.

§ 2.3 Information and Services Required of the Owner

§ 2.3.1 Except for permits and fees that are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, including those required under Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements,

assessments and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.

§ 2.3.2 The Owner shall retain an architect lawfully licensed to practice architecture, or an entity lawfully practicing architecture, in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. That person or entity is identified as the Architect in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

§ 2.3.3 If the employment of the Architect terminates, the Owner shall employ a successor to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the Architect.

§ 2.3.4 The Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.

§ 2.3.5 The Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services.

§ 2.3.6 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the Contract Documents for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

§ 2.4 Owner's Right to Stop the Work

If the Contractor fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity, except to the extent required by Section 6.1.3.

§ 2.5 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a ten-day period after receipt of notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such default or neglect. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect and the Architect may, pursuant to Section 9.5.1, withhold or nullify a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to reimburse the Owner for the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies, including Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure. If current and future payments are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. If the Contractor disagrees with the actions of the Owner or the Architect, or the amounts claimed as costs to the Owner, the Contractor may file a Claim pursuant to Article 15.

ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR

§ 3.1 General

§ 3.1.1 The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract. The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative.

§ 3.1.2 The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 3.1.3 The Contractor shall not be relieved of its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Architect in the Architect's administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

Init.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 08:38:38 ET on 10/11/2023 under Order No.4104244916 which expires on 08/30/2024, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiaccontracts.com.

User Notes:

(3B9ADA41)

§ 3.2 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor

§ 3.2.1 Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 3.2.2 Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.4, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are not for the purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; however, the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require. It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 3.2.3 The Contractor is not required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.

§ 3.2.4 If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall submit Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner, subject to Section 15.1.7, as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities.

§ 3.3 Supervision and Construction Procedures

§ 3.3.1 The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract. If the Contract Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and shall be solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Owner and Architect, and shall propose alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect shall evaluate the proposed alternative solely for conformance with the design intent for the completed construction. Unless the Architect objects to the Contractor's proposed alternative, the Contractor shall perform the Work using its alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures.

§ 3.3.2 The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

§ 3.3.3 The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work.

§ 3.4 Labor and Materials

§ 3.4.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

Init.

§ 3.4.2 Except in the case of minor changes in the Work approved by the Architect in accordance with Section 3.12.8 or ordered by the Architect in accordance with Section 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

§ 3.4.3 The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them.

§ 3.5 Warranty

§ 3.5.1 The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require or permit. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

§ 3.5.2 All material, equipment, or other special warranties required by the Contract Documents shall be issued in the name of the Owner, or shall be transferable to the Owner, and shall commence in accordance with Section 9.8.4.

§ 3.6 Taxes

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect.

§ 3.7 Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws

§ 3.7.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit as well as for other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded.

§ 3.7.2 The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.

§ 3.7.3 If the Contractor performs Work knowing it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear the costs attributable to correction.

§ 3.7.4 Concealed or Unknown Conditions

If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than 14 days after first observance of the conditions. The Architect will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect determines that they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, will recommend that an equitable adjustment be made in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify the Owner and Contractor, stating the reasons. If either party disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, that party may submit a Claim as provided in Article 15.

§ 3.7.5 If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner and Architect. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

§ 3.8 Allowances

§ 3.8.1 The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct, but the Contractor shall not be required to employ persons or entities to whom the Contractor has reasonable objection.

§ 3.8.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents,

- .1 allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts;
- .2 Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit, and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and
- .3 whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by Change Order. The amount of the Change Order shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.

§ 3.8.3 Materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected by the Owner with reasonable promptness.

§ 3.9 Superintendent

§ 3.9.1 The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor.

§ 3.9.2 The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor, stating whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 3.9.3 The Contractor shall not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed.

§ 3.10 Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules

§ 3.10.1 The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall contain detail appropriate for the Project, including (1) the date of commencement of the Work, interim schedule milestone dates, and the date of Substantial Completion; (2) an apportionment of the Work by construction activity; and (3) the time required for completion of each portion of the Work. The schedule shall provide for the orderly progression of the Work to completion and shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents. The schedule shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project.

§ 3.10.2 The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract and thereafter as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, shall submit a submittal schedule for the Architect's approval. The Architect's approval shall not be unreasonably delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Architect reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, or fails to provide submittals in accordance with the approved submittal schedule, the

Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

§ 3.10.3 The Contractor shall perform the Work in general accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner and Architect.

§ 3.11 Documents and Samples at the Site

The Contractor shall make available, at the Project site, the Contract Documents, including Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, and the approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar required submittals. These shall be in electronic form or paper copy, available to the Architect and Owner, and delivered to the Architect for submittal to the Owner upon completion of the Work as a record of the Work as constructed.

§ 3.12 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples

§ 3.12.1 Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

§ 3.12.2 Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

§ 3.12.3 Samples are physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment, or workmanship, and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.

§ 3.12.4 Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. Their purpose is to demonstrate how the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents for those portions of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittals. Review by the Architect is subject to the limitations of Section 4.2.7. Informational submittals upon which the Architect is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

§ 3.12.5 The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve, and submit to the Architect, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents, in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of Separate Contractors.

§ 3.12.6 By submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, the Contractor represents to the Owner and Architect that the Contractor has (1) reviewed and approved them, (2) determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and (3) checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.

§ 3.12.7 The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, until the respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.

§ 3.12.8 The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, unless the Contractor has specifically notified the Architect of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, by the Architect's approval thereof.

§ 3.12.9 The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions.

§ 3.12.10 The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures. The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law.

§ 3.12.10.1 If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials, or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the performance and design criteria provided in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by an appropriately licensed design professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings, and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings, and other submittals related to the Work, designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the services, certifications, and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals, provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor the performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review and approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

§ 3.12.10.2 If the Contract Documents require the Contractor's design professional to certify that the Work has been performed in accordance with the design criteria, the Contractor shall furnish such certifications to the Architect at the time and in the form specified by the Architect.

§ 3.13 Use of Site

The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, lawful orders of public authorities, and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment.

§ 3.14 Cutting and Patching

§ 3.14.1 The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly. All areas requiring cutting, fitting, or patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting, or patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.

§ 3.14.2 The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors by cutting, patching, or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner or a Separate Contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of the Separate Contractor. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold, from the Owner or a Separate Contractor, its consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

§ 3.15 Cleaning Up

§ 3.15.1 The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials and rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials from and about the Project.

§ 3.15.2 If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and the Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor.

§ 3.16 Access to Work

The Contractor shall provide the Owner and Architect with access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.

§ 3.17 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of copyrights and patent rights and shall hold the Owner and Architect harmless from loss on account thereof, but shall not be responsible for defense or loss when a particular design, process, or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents, or where the copyright violations are contained in Drawings, Specifications, or other documents prepared by the Owner or Architect. However, if an infringement of a copyright or patent is discovered by, or made known to, the Contractor, the Contractor shall be responsible for the loss unless the information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

§ 3.18 Indemnification

§ 3.18.1 To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), but only to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss, or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or reduce other rights or obligations of indemnity that would otherwise exist as to a party or person described in this Section 3.18.

§ 3.18.2 In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Section 3.18 by an employee of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under Section 3.18.1 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation, or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or a Subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.

ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT

§ 4.1 General

§ 4.1.1 The Architect is the person or entity retained by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.2 and identified as such in the Agreement.

§ 4.1.2 Duties, responsibilities, and limitations of authority of the Architect as set forth in the Contract Documents shall not be restricted, modified, or extended without written consent of the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld.

§ 4.2 Administration of the Contract

§ 4.2.1 The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be an Owner's representative during construction until the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment. The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.2 The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and to determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents. However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. The Architect will not have control over, charge of, or responsibility for the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.3 On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and promptly report to the Owner (1) known deviations from the

Init.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 08:38:38 ET on 10/11/2023 under Order No.4104244916 which expires on 08/30/2024, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiaccontracts.com.

User Notes:

(3B9ADA41)

Contract Documents, (2) known deviations from the most recent construction schedule submitted by the Contractor, and (3) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work. The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Architect will not have control over or charge of, and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of, the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

§ 4.2.4 Communications

The Owner and Contractor shall include the Architect in all communications that relate to or affect the Architect's services or professional responsibilities. The Owner shall promptly notify the Architect of the substance of any direct communications between the Owner and the Contractor otherwise relating to the Project. Communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Communications by and with Subcontractors and suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with Separate Contractors shall be through the Owner. The Contract Documents may specify other communication protocols.

§ 4.2.5 Based on the Architect's evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.

§ 4.2.6 The Architect has authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Architect will have authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Sections 13.4.2 and 13.4.3, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect to the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

§ 4.2.7 The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. The Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5, and 3.12. The Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

§ 4.2.8 The Architect will prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives, and may order minor changes in the Work as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect will investigate and make determinations and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4.

§ 4.2.9 The Architect will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion; issue Certificates of Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8; receive and forward to the Owner, for the Owner's review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor pursuant to Section 9.10; and issue a final Certificate for Payment pursuant to Section 9.10.

§ 4.2.10 If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more Project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect's responsibilities at the site. The Owner shall notify the Contractor of any change in the duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the Project representatives.

§ 4.2.11 The Architect will interpret and decide matters concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness.

§ 4.2.12 Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations

and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either, and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

§ 4.2.13 The Architect's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.14 The Architect will review and respond to requests for information about the Contract Documents. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information.

ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS

§ 5.1 Definitions

§ 5.1.1 A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include a Separate Contractor or the subcontractors of a Separate Contractor.

§ 5.1.2 A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Sub-subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

§ 5.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

§ 5.2.1 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the persons or entities proposed for each principal portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.2 The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.3 If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no reasonable objection. If the proposed but rejected Subcontractor was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor's Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required.

§ 5.2.4 The Contractor shall not substitute a Subcontractor, person, or entity for one previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitution.

§ 5.3 Subcontractual Relations

By appropriate written agreement, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor's Work that the Contractor, by these Contract Documents, assumes toward the Owner and Architect. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies, and redress against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the Owner. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor,

Init.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 08:38:38 ET on 10/11/2023 under Order No.4104244916 which expires on 08/30/2024, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

User Notes:

(3B9ADA41)

prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors will similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors.

§ 5.4 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts

§ 5.4.1 Each subcontract agreement for a portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that

- .1 assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to Section 14.2 and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor; and
- .2 assignment is subject to the prior rights of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract.

When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor's rights and obligations under the subcontract.

§ 5.4.2 Upon such assignment, if the Work has been suspended for more than 30 days, the Subcontractor's compensation shall be equitably adjusted for increases in cost resulting from the suspension.

§ 5.4.3 Upon assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity. If the Owner assigns the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all of the successor contractor's obligations under the subcontract.

ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

§ 6.1 Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts

§ 6.1.1 The term "Separate Contractor(s)" shall mean other contractors retained by the Owner under separate agreements. The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and with Separate Contractors retained under Conditions of the Contract substantially similar to those of this Contract, including those provisions of the Conditions of the Contract related to insurance and waiver of subrogation.

§ 6.1.2 When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor Agreement.

§ 6.1.3 The Owner shall provide for coordination of the activities of the Owner's own forces and of each Separate Contractor with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them. The Contractor shall participate with any Separate Contractors and the Owner in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to its construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner until subsequently revised.

§ 6.1.4 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces or with Separate Contractors, the Owner or its Separate Contractors shall have the same obligations and rights that the Contractor has under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6, and Articles 10, 11, and 12.

§ 6.2 Mutual Responsibility

§ 6.2.1 The Contractor shall afford the Owner and Separate Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.

§ 6.2.2 If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a Separate Contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work,

Init.

promptly notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that would render it unsuitable for proper execution and results of the Contractor's Work. Failure of the Contractor to notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects prior to proceeding with the Work shall constitute an acknowledgment that the Owner's or Separate Contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work. The Contractor shall not be responsible for discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that are not apparent.

§ 6.2.3 The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs that are payable to a Separate Contractor because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. The Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for costs the Contractor incurs because of a Separate Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities, damage to the Work or defective construction.

§ 6.2.4 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage that the Contractor wrongfully causes to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or Separate Contractor as provided in Section 10.2.5.

§ 6.2.5 The Owner and each Separate Contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14.

§ 6.3 Owner's Right to Clean Up

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the Owner may clean up and the Architect will allocate the cost among those responsible.

ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK

§ 7.1 General

§ 7.1.1 Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 7.1.2 A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. A Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor. An order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone.

§ 7.1.3 Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall proceed promptly with changes in the Work, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work.

§ 7.2 Change Orders

§ 7.2.1 A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor, and Architect stating their agreement upon all of the following:

- .1 The change in the Work;
- .2 The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; and
- .3 The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

§ 7.3 Construction Change Directives

§ 7.3.1 A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions, or other revisions, the Contract Sum and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.

§ 7.3.2 A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.

§ 7.3.3 If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:

Init.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 08:38:38 ET on 10/11/2023 under Order No.4104244916 which expires on 08/30/2024, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

User Notes:

(3B9ADA41)

- .1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;
- .2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon;
- .3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or
- .4 As provided in Section 7.3.4.

§ 7.3.4 If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Architect shall determine the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Architect may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.4 shall be limited to the following:

- .1 Costs of labor, including applicable payroll taxes, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, workers' compensation insurance, and other employee costs approved by the Architect;
- .2 Costs of materials, supplies, and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;
- .3 Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;
- .4 Costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use, or similar taxes, directly related to the change; and
- .5 Costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.

§ 7.3.5 If the Contractor disagrees with the adjustment in the Contract Time, the Contractor may make a Claim in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

§ 7.3.6 Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Architect of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

§ 7.3.7 A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.

§ 7.3.8 The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed by the Architect. When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.

§ 7.3.9 Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified. The Architect's interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of either party to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

§ 7.3.10 When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Architect will prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.

§ 7.4 Minor Changes in the Work

The Architect may order minor changes in the Work that are consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents and do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Sum or an extension of the Contract Time. The Architect's order for minor changes shall be in writing. If the Contractor believes that the proposed minor change in the Work will

affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor shall notify the Architect and shall not proceed to implement the change in the Work. If the Contractor performs the Work set forth in the Architect's order for a minor change without prior notice to the Architect that such change will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor waives any adjustment to the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time.

ARTICLE 8 TIME

§ 8.1 Definitions

§ 8.1.1 Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

§ 8.1.2 The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement.

§ 8.1.3 The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8.

§ 8.1.4 The term "day" as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

§ 8.2 Progress and Completion

§ 8.2.1 Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the Agreement, the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

§ 8.2.2 The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, commence the Work prior to the effective date of insurance required to be furnished by the Contractor and Owner.

§ 8.2.3 The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

§ 8.3 Delays and Extensions of Time

§ 8.3.1 If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work by (1) an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, of an employee of either, or of a Separate Contractor; (2) by changes ordered in the Work; (3) by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties, adverse weather conditions documented in accordance with Section 15.1.6.2, or other causes beyond the Contractor's control; (4) by delay authorized by the Owner pending mediation and binding dispute resolution; or (5) by other causes that the Contractor asserts, and the Architect determines, justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended for such reasonable time as the Architect may determine.

§ 8.3.2 Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

§ 8.3.3 This Section 8.3 does not preclude recovery of damages for delay by either party under other provisions of the Contract Documents.

ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

§ 9.1 Contract Sum

§ 9.1.1 The Contract Sum is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

§ 9.1.2 If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed so that application of such unit prices to the actual quantities causes substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices shall be equitably adjusted.

§ 9.2 Schedule of Values

Where the Contract is based on a stipulated sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Contractor shall submit a schedule of values to the Architect before the first Application for Payment, allocating the entire Contract Sum to the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in the form, and supported by the data to substantiate its accuracy, required by the Architect. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment. Any changes to the schedule of values shall be submitted to the Architect and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect may require, and

unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's subsequent Applications for Payment.

§ 9.3 Applications for Payment

§ 9.3.1 At least ten days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment prepared in accordance with the schedule of values, if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work. The application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by all data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment that the Owner or Architect require, such as copies of requisitions, and releases and waivers of liens from Subcontractors and suppliers, and shall reflect retainage if provided for in the Contract Documents.

§ 9.3.1.1 As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders.

§ 9.3.1.2 Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or supplier, unless such Work has been performed by others whom the Contractor intends to pay.

§ 9.3.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to the site, for such materials and equipment stored off the site.

§ 9.3.3 The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances, in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or entities that provided labor, materials, and equipment relating to the Work.

§ 9.4 Certificates for Payment

§ 9.4.1 The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either (1) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment in the full amount of the Application for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor; or (2) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in part as provided in Section 9.5.1; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Application for Payment, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole as provided in Section 9.5.1.

§ 9.4.2 The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect to the Owner, based on the Architect's evaluation of the Work and the data in the Application for Payment, that, to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion, and to specific qualifications expressed by the Architect. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Architect has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work; (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures; (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and suppliers and other data requested by the Owner to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment; or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.

§ 9.5 Decisions to Withhold Certification

§ 9.5.1 The Architect may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Architect's opinion the representations to the Owner required by Section 9.4.2 cannot be made. If the Architect is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Architect will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.4.1. If the Contractor and Architect cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Architect may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2, because of

- .1 defective Work not remedied;
- .2 third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims, unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;
- .3 failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or suppliers for labor, materials or equipment;
- .4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- .5 damage to the Owner or a Separate Contractor;
- .6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; or
- .7 repeated failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.5.2 When either party disputes the Architect's decision regarding a Certificate for Payment under Section 9.5.1, in whole or in part, that party may submit a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

§ 9.5.3 When the reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.

§ 9.5.4 If the Architect withholds certification for payment under Section 9.5.1.3, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or supplier to whom the Contractor failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If the Owner makes payments by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Contractor shall reflect such payment on its next Application for Payment.

§ 9.6 Progress Payments

§ 9.6.1 After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents, and shall so notify the Architect.

§ 9.6.2 The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor, no later than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner, the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner.

§ 9.6.3 The Architect will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Architect and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

§ 9.6.4 The Owner has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors and suppliers to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay, or to see to the payment of money to, a Subcontractor or supplier, except as may otherwise be required by law.

§ 9.6.5 The Contractor's payments to suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.

§ 9.6.6 A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.6.7 Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors or provided by suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust, or entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision.

§ 9.6.8 Provided the Owner has fulfilled its payment obligations under the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall defend and indemnify the Owner from all loss, liability, damage or expense, including reasonable attorney's fees and litigation expenses, arising out of any lien claim or other claim for payment by any Subcontractor or supplier of any tier. Upon receipt of notice of a lien claim or other claim for payment, the Owner shall notify the Contractor. If approved by the applicable court, when required, the Contractor may substitute a surety bond for the property against which the lien or other claim for payment has been asserted.

§ 9.7 Failure of Payment

If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, or if the Owner does not pay the Contractor within seven days after the date established in the Contract Documents, the amount certified by the Architect or awarded by binding dispute resolution, then the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and Architect, stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. The Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents.

§ 9.8 Substantial Completion

§ 9.8.1 Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use.

§ 9.8.2 When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.8.3 Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion.

§ 9.8.4 When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion; establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance; and fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

§ 9.8.5 The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in the Certificate. Upon such acceptance, and consent of surety if any, the Owner shall make payment of retainage applying to the Work or designated portion thereof. Such payment shall be adjusted for Work that is incomplete or not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 9.9 Partial Occupancy or Use

§ 9.9.1 The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with the Contractor, provided such occupancy or use is consented to by the insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Project. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Section 9.8.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect.

§ 9.9.2 Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the Owner, Contractor, and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

§ 9.9.3 Unless otherwise agreed upon, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 9.10 Final Completion and Final Payment

§ 9.10.1 Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will promptly make such inspection. When the Architect finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Architect will promptly issue a final Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, and on the basis of the Architect's on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents and that the entire balance found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Architect's final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled.

§ 9.10.2 Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) consent of surety, if any, to final payment, (5) documentation of any special warranties, such as manufacturers' warranties or specific Subcontractor warranties, and (6) if required by the Owner, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts and releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance. If a lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging the lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.

§ 9.10.3 If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Architect so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed, corrected, and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of the surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of Claims.

§ 9.10.4 The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from

- .1 liens, Claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
- .2 failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;
- .3 terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents; or
- .4 audits performed by the Owner, if permitted by the Contract Documents, after final payment.

§ 9.10.5 Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a supplier, shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

§ 10.1 Safety Precautions and Programs

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract.

§ 10.2 Safety of Persons and Property

§ 10.2.1 The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss to

- .1 employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby;
- .2 the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody, or control of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a Sub-subcontractor; and
- .3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, and utilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.

§ 10.2.2 The Contractor shall comply with, and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities, bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury, or loss.

§ 10.2.3 The Contractor shall implement, erect, and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards; promulgating safety regulations; and notifying the owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of the safeguards.

§ 10.2.4 When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment, or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

§ 10.2.5 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3 caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3. The Contractor may make a Claim for the cost to remedy the damage or loss to the extent such damage or loss is attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

§ 10.2.6 The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and Architect.

§ 10.2.7 The Contractor shall not permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

§ 10.2.8 Injury or Damage to Person or Property

If either party suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, notice of the injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 21 days after discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

§ 10.3 Hazardous Materials and Substances

§ 10.3.1 The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials or substances. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and notify the Owner and Architect of the condition.

§ 10.3.2 Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of the material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of the material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Owner and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shutdown, delay, and start-up.

§ 10.3.3 To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless the Contractor, Subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work in the affected area if in fact the material or substance presents the risk of bodily injury or death as described in Section 10.3.1 and has not been rendered harmless, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), except to the extent that such damage, loss, or expense is due to the fault or negligence of the party seeking indemnity.

§ 10.3.4 The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for hazardous materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances.

§ 10.3.5 The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.

§ 10.3.6 If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a government agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all cost and expense thereby incurred.

§ 10.4 Emergencies

In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.

ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS

§ 11.1 Contractor's Insurance and Bonds

§ 11.1.1 The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants shall be named as additional insureds under the Contractor's commercial general liability policy or as otherwise described in the Contract Documents.

§ 11.1.2 The Contractor shall provide surety bonds of the types, for such penal sums, and subject to such terms and conditions as required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

§ 11.1.3 Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall authorize a copy to be furnished.

§ 11.1.4 **Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Contractor's Required Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Contractor becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide notice to the Owner of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Upon receipt of notice from the Contractor, the Owner shall, unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Owner, have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by the Contractor. The furnishing of notice by the Contractor shall not relieve the Contractor of any contractual obligation to provide any required coverage.

§ 11.2 Owner's Insurance

§ 11.2.1 The Owner shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Owner shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

§ 11.2.2 **Failure to Purchase Required Property Insurance.** If the Owner fails to purchase and maintain the required property insurance, with all of the coverages and in the amounts described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall inform the Contractor in writing prior to commencement of the Work. Upon receipt of notice from the Owner, the Contractor may delay commencement of the Work and may obtain insurance that will protect the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-Subcontractors in the Work. When the failure to provide coverage has been cured or resolved, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted. In the event the Owner fails to procure coverage, the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent the loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance to have been procured by the Owner. The cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by a Change Order. If the Owner does not provide written notice, and the Contractor is damaged by the failure or neglect of the Owner to purchase or maintain the required insurance, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all reasonable costs and damages attributable thereto.

§ 11.2.3 **Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Owner's Required Property Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Owner becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any property insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall provide notice to the Contractor of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Contractor: (1) the Contractor, upon receipt of notice from the Owner, shall have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by either the Owner or the Contractor; (2) the Contract Time and Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted; and (3) the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent any loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance had it not expired or been cancelled. If the Contractor purchases replacement coverage, the cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by an appropriate Change Order. The furnishing of notice by the Owner shall not relieve the Owner of any contractual obligation to provide required insurance.

§ 11.3 Waivers of Subrogation

§ 11.3.1 The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, each of the other; (2) the Architect and Architect's consultants; and (3) Separate Contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, for damages caused by fire, or other causes of loss, to the extent those losses are covered by property insurance required by the Agreement or other property insurance applicable to the Project, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require similar written waivers in favor of the individuals and entities identified above from the Architect, Architect's consultants, Separate Contractors, subcontractors, and sub-subcontractors. The policies of insurance purchased and maintained by each person or entity agreeing to waive claims pursuant to this section 11.3.1 shall not prohibit this waiver of subrogation. This waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity (1) even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, (2) even though that person or entity did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, or (3) whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the damaged property.

§ 11.3.2 If during the Project construction period the Owner insures properties, real or personal or both, at or adjacent to the site by property insurance under policies separate from those insuring the Project, or if after final payment property insurance is to be provided on the completed Project through a policy or policies other than those insuring the Project during the construction period, to the extent permissible by such policies, the Owner waives all rights in accordance with the terms of Section 11.3.1 for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss covered by this separate property insurance.

§ 11.4 Loss of Use, Business Interruption, and Delay in Completion Insurance

The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain insurance that will protect the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations, due to fire or other causes of loss. The Owner waives all rights of action against the Contractor and Architect for loss of use of the Owner's property, due to fire or other hazards however caused.

§ 11.5 Adjustment and Settlement of Insured Loss

§ 11.5.1 A loss insured under the property insurance required by the Agreement shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of any applicable mortgagee clause and of Section 11.5.2. The Owner shall pay the Architect and Contractor their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Owner, and by appropriate agreements the Architect and Contractor shall make payments to their consultants and Subcontractors in similar manner.

§ 11.5.2 Prior to settlement of an insured loss, the Owner shall notify the Contractor of the terms of the proposed settlement as well as the proposed allocation of the insurance proceeds. The Contractor shall have 14 days from receipt of notice to object to the proposed settlement or allocation of the proceeds. If the Contractor does not object, the Owner shall settle the loss and the Contractor shall be bound by the settlement and allocation. Upon receipt, the Owner shall deposit the insurance proceeds in a separate account and make the appropriate distributions. Thereafter, if no other agreement is made or the Owner does not terminate the Contract for convenience, the Owner and Contractor shall execute a Change Order for reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work in the amount allocated for that purpose. If the Contractor timely objects to either the terms of the proposed settlement or the allocation of the proceeds, the Owner may proceed to settle the insured loss, and any dispute between the Owner and Contractor arising out of the settlement or allocation of the proceeds shall be resolved pursuant to Article 15. Pending resolution of any dispute, the Owner may issue a Construction Change Directive for the reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work.

ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK

§ 12.1 Uncovering of Work

§ 12.1.1 If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Architect's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Architect, be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

§ 12.1.2 If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Architect has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Architect may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment to

Init.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 08:38:38 ET on 10/11/2023 under Order No.4104244916 which expires on 08/30/2024, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiaccontracts.com.

User Notes:

(3B9ADA41)

the Contract Sum and Contract Time as may be appropriate. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the costs of uncovering the Work, and the cost of correction, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 12.2 Correction of Work

§ 12.2.1 Before Substantial Completion

The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, discovered before Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 12.2.2 After Substantial Completion

§ 12.2.2.1 In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1, or by terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of notice from the Owner to do so, unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition. During the one-year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty. If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time during that period after receipt of notice from the Owner or Architect, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Section 2.5.

§ 12.2.2.2 The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual completion of that portion of the Work.

§ 12.2.2.3 The one-year period for correction of Work shall not be extended by corrective Work performed by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 12.2.

§ 12.2.3 The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.

§ 12.2.4 The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors, whether completed or partially completed, caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 12.2.5 Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the one-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

§ 12.3 Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§ 13.1 Governing Law

The Contract shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located, excluding that jurisdiction's choice of law rules. If the parties have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Federal Arbitration Act shall govern Section 15.4.

§ 13.2 Successors and Assigns

§ 13.2.1 The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.

§ 13.2.2 The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate the assignment.

§ 13.3 Rights and Remedies

§ 13.3.1 Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

§ 13.3.2 No action or failure to act by the Owner, Architect, or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed upon in writing.

§ 13.4 Tests and Inspections

§ 13.4.1 Tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections, and approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections, and approvals. The Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. The Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections, or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded. The Owner shall directly arrange and pay for tests, inspections, or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations so require.

§ 13.4.2 If the Architect, Owner, or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection, or approval not included under Section 13.4.1, the Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection, or approval, by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.4.3, shall be at the Owner's expense.

§ 13.4.3 If procedures for testing, inspection, or approval under Sections 13.4.1 and 13.4.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure, including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 13.4.4 Required certificates of testing, inspection, or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect.

§ 13.4.5 If the Architect is to observe tests, inspections, or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

§ 13.4.6 Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

§ 13.5 Interest

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate the parties agree upon in writing or, in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.

ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

§ 14.1 Termination by the Contractor

§ 14.1.1 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 30 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, for any of the following reasons:

- .1 Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .2 An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .3 Because the Architect has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Section 9.4.1, or because the Owner has not made payment on a Certificate for Payment within the time stated in the Contract Documents; or
- .4 The Owner has failed to furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence as required by Section 2.2.

§ 14.1.2 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if, through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, repeated suspensions, delays, or interruptions of the entire Work by the Owner as described in Section 14.3, constitute in the aggregate more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less.

§ 14.1.3 If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, the Contractor may, upon seven days' notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, as well as reasonable overhead and profit on Work not executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination.

§ 14.1.4 If the Work is stopped for a period of 60 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work because the Owner has repeatedly failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work, the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and the Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner as provided in Section 14.1.3.

§ 14.2 Termination by the Owner for Cause

§ 14.2.1 The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

- .1 repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;
- .2 fails to make payment to Subcontractors or suppliers in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors or suppliers;
- .3 repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or
- .4 otherwise is guilty of substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents.

§ 14.2.2 When any of the reasons described in Section 14.2.1 exist, and upon certification by the Architect that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:

- .1 Exclude the Contractor from the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor;
- .2 Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and
- .3 Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work.

§ 14.2.3 When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished.

§ 14.2.4 If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance,

Init.

the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall be certified by the Initial Decision Maker, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

§ 14.3 Suspension by the Owner for Convenience

§ 14.3.1 The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work, in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.

§ 14.3.2 The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted for increases in the cost and time caused by suspension, delay, or interruption under Section 14.3.1. Adjustment of the Contract Sum shall include profit. No adjustment shall be made to the extent

- .1 that performance is, was, or would have been, so suspended, delayed, or interrupted, by another cause for which the Contractor is responsible; or
- .2 that an equitable adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

§ 14.4 Termination by the Owner for Convenience

§ 14.4.1 The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause.

§ 14.4.2 Upon receipt of notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall

- .1 cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;
- .2 take actions necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the Work; and
- .3 except for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice, terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts and purchase orders.

§ 14.4.3 In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Owner shall pay the Contractor for Work properly executed; costs incurred by reason of the termination, including costs attributable to termination of Subcontracts; and the termination fee, if any, set forth in the Agreement.

ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

§ 15.1 Claims

§ 15.1.1 Definition

A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, payment of money, a change in the Contract Time, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim. This Section 15.1.1 does not require the Owner to file a Claim in order to impose liquidated damages in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 15.1.2 Time Limits on Claims

The Owner and Contractor shall commence all Claims and causes of action against the other and arising out of or related to the Contract, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the binding dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement and within the period specified by applicable law, but in any case not more than 10 years after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work. The Owner and Contractor waive all Claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 15.1.2.

§ 15.1.3 Notice of Claims

§ 15.1.3.1 Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered prior to expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party and to the Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker. Claims by either party under this Section 15.1.3.1 shall be initiated within 21 days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 days after the claimant first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later.

§ 15.1.3.2 Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party. In such event, no decision by the Initial Decision Maker is required.

§ 15.1.4 Continuing Contract Performance

§ 15.1.4.1 Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7 and Article 14, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 15.1.4.2 The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted in accordance with the Initial Decision Maker's decision, subject to the right of either party to proceed in accordance with this Article 15. The Architect will issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decision of the Initial Decision Maker.

§ 15.1.5 Claims for Additional Cost

If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given before proceeding to execute the portion of the Work that is the subject of the Claim. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property arising under Section 10.4.

§ 15.1.6 Claims for Additional Time

§ 15.1.6.1 If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of cost and of probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.

§ 15.1.6.2 If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated, and had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction.

§ 15.1.7 Waiver of Claims for Consequential Damages

The Contractor and Owner waive Claims against each other for consequential damages arising out of or relating to this Contract. This mutual waiver includes

- .1 damages incurred by the Owner for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and
- .2 damages incurred by the Contractor for principal office expenses including the compensation of personnel stationed there, for losses of financing, business and reputation, and for loss of profit, except anticipated profit arising directly from the Work.

This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all consequential damages due to either party's termination in accordance with Article 14. Nothing contained in this Section 15.1.7 shall be deemed to preclude assessment of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 15.2 Initial Decision

§ 15.2.1 Claims, excluding those where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 or arising under Sections 10.3, 10.4, and 11.5, shall be referred to the Initial Decision Maker for initial decision. The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. Except for those Claims excluded by this Section 15.2.1, an initial decision shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation of any Claim. If an initial decision has not been rendered within 30 days after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker, the party asserting the Claim may demand mediation and binding dispute resolution without a decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.

§ 15.2.2 The Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant or a response with supporting data from the other party, (2) reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker concludes that, in the

Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.

§ 15.2.3 In evaluating Claims, the Initial Decision Maker may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Initial Decision Maker in rendering a decision. The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.

§ 15.2.4 If the Initial Decision Maker requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of the request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Initial Decision Maker when the response or supporting data will be furnished, or (3) advise the Initial Decision Maker that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.

§ 15.2.5 The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties but subject to mediation and, if the parties fail to resolve their dispute through mediation, to binding dispute resolution.

§ 15.2.6 Either party may file for mediation of an initial decision at any time, subject to the terms of Section 15.2.6.1.

§ 15.2.6.1 Either party may, within 30 days from the date of receipt of an initial decision, demand in writing that the other party file for mediation. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for mediation within 30 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

§ 15.2.7 In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.

§ 15.2.8 If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.

§ 15.3 Mediation

§ 15.3.1 Claims, disputes, or other matters in controversy arising out of or related to the Contract, except those waived as provided for in Sections 9.10.4, 9.10.5, and 15.1.7, shall be subject to mediation as a condition precedent to binding dispute resolution.

§ 15.3.2 The parties shall endeavor to resolve their Claims by mediation which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Mediation Procedures in effect on the date of the Agreement. A request for mediation shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the mediation. The request may be made concurrently with the filing of binding dispute resolution proceedings but, in such event, mediation shall proceed in advance of binding dispute resolution proceedings, which shall be stayed pending mediation for a period of 60 days from the date of filing, unless stayed for a longer period by agreement of the parties or court order. If an arbitration is stayed pursuant to this Section 15.3.2, the parties may nonetheless proceed to the selection of the arbitrator(s) and agree upon a schedule for later proceedings.

§ 15.3.3 Either party may, within 30 days from the date that mediation has been concluded without resolution of the dispute or 60 days after mediation has been demanded without resolution of the dispute, demand in writing that the other party file for binding dispute resolution. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for binding dispute resolution within 60 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

§ 15.3.4 The parties shall share the mediator's fee and any filing fees equally. The mediation shall be held in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. Agreements reached in mediation shall be enforceable as settlement agreements in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

§ 15.4 Arbitration

§ 15.4.1 If the parties have selected arbitration as the method for binding dispute resolution in the Agreement, any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation shall be subject to arbitration which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Arbitration Rules in effect on the date of the Agreement. The Arbitration shall be conducted in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. A demand for arbitration shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the arbitration. The party filing a notice of demand for arbitration must assert in the demand all Claims then known to that party on which arbitration is permitted to be demanded.

§ 15.4.1.1 A demand for arbitration shall be made no earlier than concurrently with the filing of a request for mediation, but in no event shall it be made after the date when the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. For statute of limitations purposes, receipt of a written demand for arbitration by the person or entity administering the arbitration shall constitute the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim.

§ 15.4.2 The award rendered by the arbitrator or arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

§ 15.4.3 The foregoing agreement to arbitrate and other agreements to arbitrate with an additional person or entity duly consented to by parties to the Agreement, shall be specifically enforceable under applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

§ 15.4.4 Consolidation or Joinder

§ 15.4.4.1 Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may consolidate an arbitration conducted under this Agreement with any other arbitration to which it is a party provided that (1) the arbitration agreement governing the other arbitration permits consolidation, (2) the arbitrations to be consolidated substantially involve common questions of law or fact, and (3) the arbitrations employ materially similar procedural rules and methods for selecting arbitrator(s).

§ 15.4.4.2 Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may include by joinder persons or entities substantially involved in a common question of law or fact whose presence is required if complete relief is to be accorded in arbitration, provided that the party sought to be joined consents in writing to such joinder. Consent to arbitration involving an additional person or entity shall not constitute consent to arbitration of any claim, dispute or other matter in question not described in the written consent.

§ 15.4.4.3 The Owner and Contractor grant to any person or entity made a party to an arbitration conducted under this Section 15.4, whether by joinder or consolidation, the same rights of joinder and consolidation as those of the Owner and Contractor under this Agreement.

DOCUMENT 002113 - INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

1.1 INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

- A. "Instructions to Bidders," is hereby incorporated into the Procurement and Contracting Requirements by reference.
1. "Instructions to Bidders," is bound in this Project Manual, as defined by City of Centerville's Formal Construction Bid.
 2. Please contact Lucas Lantz at llantz@lwcinspires.com for questions regarding clarifications and interpretations of bidding documents.
 3. Should this specification be in conflict with instructions and/or conditions and provisions of the contract, the Owner's discretion shall govern.

END OF DOCUMENT 002113

SECTION 001020 - SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

The "Instructions to Bidders", AIA Document A701-1997, are modified and amended as hereinafter described.

2.1.3 Add the following clause 2.1.3.1:

2.1.3.1 Bidders are to inform themselves of other work, if any, being performed at the site. Failure to visit the site and verify existing conditions and dimensions will in no way relieve the successful bidders from the necessity of furnishing any materials or performing any work that may be required to complete work in accordance with the Bidding Documents, (whether or not the existing conditions are accurately depicted on the Architect's drawings); without additional cost to the Owner. Access to the site can be obtained by contacting Winnie Logan, Director.

To Subparagraph 3.2.1 add the following Clause 3.2.1.1:

3.2.1.1 Failure of a Bidder to fully acquaint himself with the amount and nature of work required to complete the Work in conformity with all requirements for the project as a whole will not be considered subsequently as a basis for extra compensation.

To Subparagraph 3.2.2 add the following Clause 3.2.2.1:

3.2.2.1 Should any requirements of the Bidding Documents appear to a Bidder to be in conflict with the part of the work on which he proposes to bid, a written request for clarification should be addressed to the Architect prior to the date set for opening bids. The Architect shall reply to all such inquiries received no later than two days prior to bid. Verbal interpretations will not be honored. In the case of a discrepancy in the Bidding Documents, an Addendum will be issued to clarify the matter. The Architect will forward copy of same to all individuals of record holding Bidding Documents. If, in examining the Bidding Documents, the Bidder discovers an apparent violation of the Building Code or other applicable statute or regulation, he shall report such apparent violation to the Architect promptly. However, this provision shall not be construed as imposing responsibility on the Contractor to ensure conformity of the Bidding Documents to the State Building Code and other applicable regulations.

To Subparagraph 4.1.4 add the following Clause 4.1.4.1:

4.1.4.1 The wording of the Proposal shall be used without change, alteration, or addition except for signatures, filling in necessary blanks, and ruling out words not applicable in the "Alternate" section of the Proposal. Any other change in the wording will cause a Proposal to be rejected; however, the Owner reserves the right to waive any informalities not affecting the substance of the Proposal.

4.3 SUBMISSION OF BIDS

Add the following Subparagraph 4.3.5:

4.3.5 Should a discrepancy be discovered between plans and specifications or different scale details and no official interpretation or correction is issued by the Architect, the bidders shall be held to furnishing the more expensive of the items or methods in question. If ultimately, the Architect selects the lesser expensive item or method, a suitable credit is to be issued to the Owner.

5.2 REJECTION OF BIDS

Add the following Subparagraph 5.2.1:

5.2.1 No Bid(s) will be accepted from any Contractor who has failed in any respect to comply with every provision of any previous contract with the Owner, such failure will be construed as evidence of irresponsibility and will render the bid as irresponsible.

END OF SECTION 001020

Prevailing Wage Determination Cover Letter

County: 
Determination Date: 10/11/2023
Expiration Date: 01/11/2024

THE FOLLOWING PAGES ARE PREVAILING RATES OF WAGES ON PUBLIC IMPROVEMENTS FAIRLY ESTIMATED TO BE MORE THAN THE AMOUNT IN O.R.C. SEC. 4115.03 (b) (1) or (2), AS APPLICABLE.

Section 4115.05 provides, in part: "Where contracts are not awarded or construction undertaken within ninety days from the date of the establishment of the prevailing wages, there shall be a redetermination of the prevailing rate of wages before the contract is awarded." The expiration date of this wage schedule is listed above for your convenience only. This wage determination is not intended as a blanket determination to be used for all projects during this period without prior approval of this Department.

Section 4115.04, Ohio Revised Code provides, in part: "Such schedule of wages shall be attached to and made a part of the specifications for the work, and shall be printed on the bidding blanks where the work is done by contract..."

The contract between the letting authority and the successful bidder shall contain a statement requiring that mechanics and laborers be paid a prevailing rate of wage as required in Section 4115.06, Ohio Revised Code.

The contractor or subcontractor is required to file with the contracting public authority upon completion of the project and prior to final payment therefore an affidavit stating that he has fully complied with Chapter 4115 of the Ohio Revised Code.

The wage rates contained in this schedule are the "Prevailing Wages" as defined by Section 4115.03, Ohio Revised Code (the basic hourly rates plus certain fringe benefits). These rates and fringes shall be a minimum to be paid under a contract regulated by Chapter 4115 of the Ohio Revised Code by contractors and subcontractors. The prevailing wage rates contained in this schedule include the effective dates and wage rates currently on file. In cases where future effective dates are not included in this schedule, modifications to the wage schedule will be furnished to the Prevailing Wage Coordinator appointed by the public authority as soon as prevailing wage rates increases are received by this office.

"There shall be posted in a prominent and accessible place on the site of work a legible statement of the Schedule of Wage Rates specified in the contract to the various classifications of laborers, workmen, and mechanics employed, said statement to remain posted during the life of such contract." Section 4115.07, Ohio Revised Code.

Apprentices will be permitted to work only under a bona fide apprenticeship program if such program exists and if such program is registered with the Ohio Apprenticeship Council.

Section 4115.071 provides that no later than ten days before the first payment of wages is due to any employee of any contractor or subcontractor working on a contract regulated by Chapter 4115, Ohio Revised Code, the contracting public authority shall appoint one of his own employees to act as the prevailing wage coordinator for said contract. The duties of the prevailing wage coordinator are outlined in Section 4115.071 of the Ohio Revised Code.

Section 4115.05 provides for an escalator in the prevailing wage rate. Each time a new rate is established, that rate is required to be paid on all ongoing public improvement projects.

A further requirement of Section 4115.05 of the Ohio Revised Code is: "On the occasion of the first pay date under a contract, the contractor shall furnish each employee not covered by a collective bargaining agreement or understanding between employers and bona fide organizations of Labor with individual written notification of the job classification to which the employee is assigned, the prevailing wage determined to be applicable to that classification, separated into the hourly rate of pay and the fringe payments, and the identity of the prevailing wage Coordinator appointed by the public authority. The contractor or subcontractor shall furnish the same notification to each affected employee every time the job classification of the employee is changed."

Work performed in connection with the installation of modular furniture may be subject to prevailing wage.

THIS PACKET IS NOT TO BE SEPARATED BUT IS TO REMAIN COMPLETE AS IT IS SUBMITTED TO YOU. (Reference guidelines and forms are included in this packet to be helpful in the compliance of the Prevailing Wage law.)

wh1500

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Asbestos Local 207 OH

Change # : LCN01-2018fbLoc207OH

Craft : Asbestos Worker Effective Date : 08/23/2018 Last Posted : 08/23/2018

	BHR	Fringe Benefit Payments						Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate
		H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification											
Asbestos Abatement	\$25.50	\$7.25	\$6.45	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.07	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$39.92	\$52.67
Trainee	\$16.50	\$7.25	\$1.50	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.07	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$25.97	\$34.22

Special Calculation Note :

Ratio :

3 Journeymen to 1 Trainee

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, ASHLAND, ASHTABULA*, ATHENS, AUGLAIZE, BROWN, BUTLER*, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, COLUMBIANA, COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, CUYAHOGA, DARKE, DELAWARE, FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, GEAUGA, GREENE, GUERNSEY, HAMILTON, HARDIN, HARRISON, HIGHLAND, HOCKING, HOLMES, HURON, KNOX, LAKE, LICKING, LOGAN, LORAIN, MADISON, MAHONING, MARION, MEDINA, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MORROW, MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, PERRY, PICKAWAY, PORTAGE, PREBLE, RICHLAND, ROSS, SHELBY, STARK, SUMMIT, TRUMBULL, TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VINTON, WARREN*, WAYNE

Special Jurisdictional Note : Butler County:(townships of Fairfield,Hanover,Liberty,Milford,Morgan,Oxford,Ripley,Ross,StClair,Union & Wayne.) (Lemon & Madison) Warren County: (townships of: Deerfield, Hamilton, Harlan, Salem, Union & Washington). (Clear Creek, Franklin, Mossie, Turtle Creek & Wayney). Ashtabula County: (post offices & townships of Ashtabula, Austinburg, Geneva, Harperfield, Jefferson, Plymouth & Saybrook) (townships of Andover, Cherry Valley, Colbrook, Canneaut, Denmark, Dorset, East Orwell, Hartsgrove, Kingville, Lenox, Monroe,Morgan,New Lyme,North Kingsville, Orwell, Pierpoint, Richmond Rock Creek, Rome, Sheffield, Trumbull, Wayne, Williamsfield & Windsor) Erie County:(post offices & townships of Berlin, Berlin Heights,Birmingham,Florence ,Huron, Milan, Shinrock & Vermillion)

Details :

Asbestos & lead paint abatement including,but not limited to the removal or encapsulation of asbestos & lead paint,all work in conjunction with the preparation of the removal of same & all work in conjunction with the

clean up after said removal. The removal of all insulation materials, whether they contain asbestos or not, from mechanical systems (pipes, boilers, ducts, flues, breaching, etc.) is recognized as being the exclusive work of the Asbestos Abatement Workers.

On all mechanical systems (pipes, boilers, ducts, flues, breaching, etc.) that are going to be demolished, the removal of all insulating materials whether they contain asbestos or not shall be the exclusive work of the Laborers.

An Abatement Journeyman is anyone who has more than 300 hours in the Asbestos Abatement field.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Asbestos Local 50 Zone 2

Change # : LCN02-2023ibAsbLoc50Zone2

Craft : Asbestos Worker Effective Date : 07/05/2023 Last Posted : 07/05/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Asbestos Insulation Mechanic	\$34.35		\$8.45	\$8.35	\$0.50	\$0.00	\$3.75	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$55.50	\$72.67
Firestop Technician	\$34.35		\$8.45	\$8.35	\$0.50	\$0.00	\$3.75	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$55.50	\$72.67
Apprentice	Percent											
1st year	57.58	\$19.78	\$8.21	\$0.00	\$0.44	\$0.00	\$0.50	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$29.03	\$38.92
2nd year	69.73	\$23.95	\$8.45	\$0.95	\$0.44	\$0.00	\$0.85	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$34.74	\$46.72
3rd year	81.00	\$27.82	\$8.45	\$2.38	\$0.44	\$0.00	\$1.25	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$40.44	\$54.36
4th year	88.58	\$30.43	\$8.45	\$2.38	\$0.44	\$0.00	\$1.50	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$43.30	\$58.51

Special Calculation Note : *other is labor mgt training fund

Ratio :

1 Journeyman to 1 Apprentice
4 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice thereafter

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, DARKE, GREENE, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, PREBLE

Special Jurisdictional Note : In Butler County the following townships are included: (Lemon Twp, Madison Twp) In Warren County the following townships are included: (Clear Creek Twp, Franklin Twp, Massie Twp, Turtle Creek Twp, Wayne Twp)

Details :

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Boilermaker Local 105

Change # : LCN02-2013fbLoc 105

Craft : Boilermaker Effective Date : 10/01/2013 Last Posted : 09/25/2013

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments						Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification												
Boilermaker	\$35.26		\$7.07	\$13.28	\$0.89	\$0.00	\$3.00	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$60.05	\$77.68
Apprentice	Percent											
1st 6 months	70.03	\$24.69	\$7.07	\$11.30	\$0.89	\$0.00	\$2.10	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$46.60	\$58.95
2nd 6 months	75.02	\$26.45	\$7.07	\$11.30	\$0.89	\$0.00	\$2.25	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.51	\$61.74
3rd 6 months	80.00	\$28.21	\$7.07	\$11.30	\$0.89	\$0.00	\$2.40	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$50.42	\$64.52
4th 6 months	85.02	\$29.98	\$7.07	\$11.30	\$0.89	\$0.00	\$2.55	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.34	\$67.33
5th 6 months	87.52	\$30.86	\$7.07	\$13.28	\$0.89	\$0.00	\$2.63	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$55.28	\$70.71
6th 6 months	90.03	\$31.74	\$7.07	\$13.28	\$0.89	\$0.00	\$2.70	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$56.23	\$72.11
7th 6 months	92.50	\$32.62	\$7.07	\$13.28	\$0.89	\$0.00	\$2.78	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$57.19	\$73.49
8th 6 months	95.00	\$33.50	\$7.07	\$13.28	\$0.89	\$0.00	\$2.85	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$58.14	\$74.89

Special Calculation Note : Other is Supplemental Health and Welfare

Ratio :

5 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, ATHENS, BROWN, BUTLER, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, GALLIA, GREENE, GUERNSEY, HAMILTON, HIGHLAND, HOCKING, JACKSON, LAWRENCE, LICKING, MADISON, MEIGS, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, PERRY, PICKAWAY, PIKE, PREBLE, ROSS, SCIOTO, VINTON, WARREN

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Prevailing Wage Rate

Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Bricklayer Local 23 Heavy Hwy (A)

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLoc23HevHwyA

Craft : Bricklayer Effective Date : 06/07/2023 Last Posted : 06/07/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification												
Cement Mason Bricklayer Sewer Water Works A	\$32.40		\$9.75	\$9.03	\$0.52	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$51.70	\$67.90
Apprentice	Percent											
1st year	70.00	\$22.68	\$9.75	\$9.03	\$0.52	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$41.98	\$53.32
2nd year	80.00	\$25.92	\$9.75	\$9.03	\$0.52	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.22	\$58.18
3rd year	90.00	\$29.16	\$9.75	\$9.03	\$0.52	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.46	\$63.04

Special Calculation Note : NOT FOR BUILDING CONSTRUCTION.

Ratio :

- 3 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice
- 6 Journeymen to 2 Apprentice
- 9 Journeymen to 3 Apprentice
- 12 Journeymen to 4 Apprentice
- 15 Journeymen to 5 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

- ADAMS, ALLEN, ASHLAND, ASHTABULA, ATHENS, AUGLAIZE, BELMONT, BROWN, BUTLER, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, COLUMBIANA, COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, CUYAHOGA, DARKE, DEFIANCE, DELAWARE, ERIE, FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, FULTON, GALLIA, GEauga, GREENE, GUERNSEY, HAMILTON, HANCOCK, HARDIN, HARRISON, HENRY, HIGHLAND, HOCKING, HOLMES, HURON, JACKSON, JEFFERSON, KNOX, LAKE, LAWRENCE, LICKING, LOGAN, LORAIN, LUCAS, MADISON, MAHONING, MARION, MEDINA, MEIGS, MERCER, MIAMI, MONROE, MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MORROW, MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, OTTAWA, PAULDING, PERRY, PICKAWAY, PIKE, PORTAGE, PREBLE, PUTNAM, RICHLAND, ROSS, SANDUSKY, SCIOTO, SENECA, SHELBY, STARK, SUMMIT, TRUMBULL, TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VAN WERT, VINTON, WARREN, WASHINGTON, WAYNE

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

(A) Highway Construction, Sewer, Waterworks And Utility Construction, Industrial & Building Site Heavy Construction, Airport Construction Or Railroad Construction Work.

(B) Power Plant, Tunnels, Amusement Park, Athletic Stadium Site Work ,Pollution Control,Sewer Plant, Waste Plant, & Water Treatment Facilities, Construction.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Bricklayer Local 23 Heavy Hwy (B)

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLoc23HevHwyB

Craft : Bricklayer Effective Date : 06/07/2023 Last Posted : 06/07/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification												
Cement Mason Bricklayer Power Plants Tunnels Amusement Parks B	\$33.39		\$9.75	\$9.03	\$0.53	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.70	\$69.39
Apprentice	Percent											
1st year	70.00	\$23.37	\$9.75	\$9.03	\$0.53	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$42.68	\$54.37
2nd year	80.00	\$26.71	\$9.75	\$9.03	\$0.53	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$46.02	\$59.38
3rd year	90.00	\$30.05	\$9.75	\$9.03	\$0.53	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$49.36	\$64.39

Special Calculation Note : NOT FOR BUILDING CONSTRUCTION.

Ratio :

- 3 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice
- 6 Journeymen to 2 Apprentice
- 9 Journeymen to 2 Apprentice
- 12 Journeymen to 4 Apprentice
- 15 Journeymen to 5 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

- ADAMS, ALLEN, ASHLAND, ASHTABULA,
- ATHENS, AUGLAIZE, BELMONT, BROWN,
- BUTLER, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK,
- CLERMONT, CLINTON, COLUMBIANA,
- COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, CUYAHOGA, DARKE,
- DEFIANCE, DELAWARE, ERIE, FAIRFIELD,
- FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, FULTON, GALLIA,
- GEAUGA, GREENE, GUERNSEY, HAMILTON,
- HANCOCK, HARDIN, HARRISON, HENRY,
- HIGHLAND, HOCKING, HOLMES, HURON,
- JACKSON, JEFFERSON, KNOX, LAKE,
- LAWRENCE, LICKING, LOGAN, LORAIN, LUCAS,
- MADISON, MAHONING, MARION, MEDINA,
- MEIGS, MERCER, MIAMI, MONROE,
- MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MORROW,
- MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, OTTAWA, PAULDING,
- PERRY, PICKAWAY, PIKE, PORTAGE, PREBLE,
- PUTNAM, RICHLAND, ROSS, SANDUSKY,
- SCIOTO, SENECA, SHELBY, STARK, SUMMIT,

TRUMBULL, TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VAN WERT,
VINTON, WARREN, WASHINGTON, WAYNE

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

(A) Highway Construction, Sewer, Waterworks And Utility Construction, Industrial & Building Site Heavy Construction, Airport Construction Or Railroad Construction Work.

(B) Power Plant, Tunnels, Amusement Park, Athletic Stadium Site Work ,Pollution Control,Sewer Plant, Waste Plant, & Water Treatment Facilities, Construction.

First 90 Days	45.00	\$12.06	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$12.06	\$18.09
------------------	-------	---------	--------	--------	--------	--------	--------	--------	--------	--------	--------	---------	---------

Special Calculation Note : Classification title contains "Bricklayer" because contract originates within the Bricklayer Local.

Note that the classification description is clarified after the local union number at the top of the page.

*****Medical Savings Account***:** The Medical Savings Account can only be deducted providing employee shows proof voluntary enrollment in the program. Minimum contribution of \$1.00 per hourworked with no maximum.

Ratio :

- 1 Journeyman 1 Apprentice
- 5 Journeyman 1 Apprentice
- 10 Journeyman 2 Apprentice
- 15 Journeyman 3 Apprentice
- 20 Journeyman 4 Apprentice
- 25 Journeyman 5 Apprentice
- 8 Employees 1 Helper

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

- AUGLAIZE, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLINTON,
- DARKE, GREENE, HARDIN, HIGHLAND, LOGAN,
- MERCER, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, PREBLE*,
- SHELBY

Special Jurisdictional Note : In Preble County the following townships are included: (Jackson, Monroe, Harrison, Twin and Washington)

Details :

Tile Layer Finishers shall do mixing of mortars & adhesives, cleaning & grouting of tile, unloading of all trucks, unpacking & handling of all tile & materials such as sand, lime, cement, tile, & all types of tile panels, prefabricated on job site. Marble Setter Finishers shall do all cleaning, waxing & polishing, grouting and pointing.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Bricklayer Local 23 (Dayton Tile Mechanic)

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLoc23DaytonTM

Craft : Bricklayer Effective Date : 07/05/2023 Last Posted : 07/05/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Bricklayer Tile Marble Terrazzo Mechanics	\$30.00		\$8.31	\$6.44	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.30	\$60.30
Terrazzo Worker	\$30.00		\$8.31	\$6.44	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.30	\$60.30
Apprentice Percent												
1st 6 Months	60.00	\$18.00	\$8.31	\$0.00	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$26.86	\$35.86
2nd 6 Months	65.00	\$19.50	\$8.31	\$0.00	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$28.36	\$38.11
3rd 6 Months	70.00	\$21.00	\$8.31	\$6.44	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$36.30	\$46.80
4th 6 Months	75.00	\$22.50	\$8.31	\$6.44	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$37.80	\$49.05
5th 6 months	80.00	\$24.00	\$8.31	\$6.44	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$39.30	\$51.30
6th 6 months	85.00	\$25.50	\$8.31	\$6.44	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$40.80	\$53.55
7th 6 months	90.00	\$27.00	\$8.31	\$6.44	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$42.30	\$55.80
8th 6 months	95.00	\$28.50	\$8.31	\$6.44	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$43.80	\$58.05

Special Calculation Note : Classification title contains "Bricklayer" because contract originates within the Bricklayer Local.

Note that the classification description is clarified after the local union number at the top of the page.

Ratio :

- 5 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice
- 10 Journeymen to 2 Apprentice
- 15 Journeymen to 3 Apprentice
- 20 Journeymen to 4 Apprentice
- 25 Journeymen to 5 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

- CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLINTON, DARKE,
- GREENE, HIGHLAND, LOGAN, MIAMI,
- MONTGOMERY, PREBLE*, SHELBY

Special Jurisdictional Note : In Preble County the following townships are included: (Jackson, Jefferson, Monroe, Harrison, Twin and Washington)

Details :

** (Tile layers work) the laying, cutting or setting of all tile where used for floors, walls, ceilings, walks, promenade roofs, stair treads, stair risers, facings, hearths, fireplaces & decorative inserts together with any marble plinths, thresholds or window stools used in connection with any tile work. the building, shaping forming construction or repairing of all fireplace work, whether in connection with a mantel hearth facing or not, & the setting & preparing of all material such as cement, plaster, mortar, brickwork, iron work or other materials necessary for the proper, safe construction & completion of such work: except that a mantel made exclusively of brick, marble or stone shall be conceded to be bricklayers, marble setters or stonemasons' work respectively.

** Marble, mosaic, venetian enamel & terrazzo. Cutting and assembling of mosaics. all rolling of terrazzo work.

** Caulking of all expansion, perimeter & angle joints shall be the exclusive work of the tile mechanic.

** Marble masons shall consist of carving, cutting & setting of all marble, slate (including blackboards) stone, albereen, carrara, sanionyx, vitrolite & similar opaque glass, scagliola, what ever thickness or dimension.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Bricklayer Local 23 (Dayton)

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLoc23Dayton

Craft : Bricklayer Effective Date : 06/07/2023 Last Posted : 06/07/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Bricklayer Stone Mason Refractory	\$31.78		\$9.25	\$7.19	\$0.59	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.81	\$64.70
Pointer/Caulker/Cleaner	\$31.78		\$9.25	\$7.19	\$0.59	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.81	\$64.70
Improver Apprentices 25 day probationary period then												
1st 6 months	\$20.66		\$9.25	\$0.00	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$30.40	\$40.73
2nd 6 months	\$23.84		\$9.25	\$0.00	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$33.58	\$45.50
3rd 6 months	\$27.01		\$9.25	\$5.89	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$42.64	\$56.15
4th 6 months	\$30.19		\$9.25	\$5.89	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.82	\$60.92
Bricklayer Stone Mason Refractory and PCC Apprentice	Percent											
1st 6 months	60.00	\$19.07	\$9.25	\$0.00	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$28.81	\$38.34
2nd 6 months	65.00	\$20.66	\$9.25	\$0.00	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$30.40	\$40.73
3rd 6 months	70.02	\$22.25	\$9.25	\$5.89	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$37.88	\$49.01
4th 6 months	75.00	\$23.83	\$9.25	\$5.89	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$39.47	\$51.38
5th 6 months	80.00	\$25.42	\$9.25	\$5.89	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$41.05	\$53.77
6th 6 months	85.00	\$27.01	\$9.25	\$5.89	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$42.64	\$56.15
7th 6 months	90.00	\$28.60	\$9.25	\$5.89	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$44.23	\$58.53
8th 6 months	95.00	\$30.19	\$9.25	\$5.89	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.82	\$60.92
Mason Trainee-1-90 Days	45.00	\$14.30	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$14.30	\$21.45
91-365 Days	45.00	\$14.30	\$9.25	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$23.55	\$30.70
2nd Year	50.00	\$15.89	\$9.25	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$25.14	\$33.09

Special Calculation Note : Classification title contains "Bricklayer" because contract originates within the Bricklayer Local.

Note that the classification description is clarified after the local union number at the top of the page. Apprentice and Apprentice Improver, Health and Welfare after 30 days. Mason Trainees Health and

Welfare after 90 days.

Ratio :

Bricklayer Stone Mason Refractory Worker:
1-2 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice
3-4 Journeymen to 2 Apprentice
5-6 Journeymen to 2 Apprentice
7-10 Journeymen to 3 Apprentice

Mason Trainee Ratio:

1 Apprentice permits 1 Mason Trainee
2 Apprentice permits 1 Mason Trainee
3 Apprentice permits 2 Mason Trainee
4 Apprentice permits 2 Mason Trainee

In order to utilize a Pre-Apprentice, you must have 1 registered apprentice in your employ.

Ratio of Improver Apprentices to Journeymen in no case shall their be no more than 1 Improver Apprentice to 6 Journeymen

Special Jurisdictional Note : In Preble County the following townships are included: Jackson, Monroe, Harrison, Twin, Jefferson and Washington

Details :

Apprentice Ratio's covers: Bricklayer, Stone Mason, Refractory worker and Pointer, Cleaner, Caulker.

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLINTON, DARKE, GREENE, HIGHLAND, LOGAN, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, PREBLE*, SHELBY

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Carpenter Floorlayer SW District G

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLocSWG

Craft : Carpenter Effective Date : 09/20/2023 Last Posted : 09/20/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Carpenter Floorlayer	\$29.02		\$8.31	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.28	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$47.31	\$61.82
Apprentice	Percent											
1st 3 months	65.00	\$18.86	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$18.86	\$28.29
2nd 3 months	65.00	\$18.86	\$8.31	\$0.00	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.28	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$30.20	\$39.63
2nd 6 months	65.00	\$18.86	\$8.31	\$0.00	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.28	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$30.20	\$39.63
3rd 6 months	70.00	\$20.31	\$8.31	\$0.00	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.28	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$31.65	\$41.81
4th 6 months	75.00	\$21.76	\$8.31	\$0.00	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.28	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$33.11	\$43.99
5th 6 months	80.00	\$23.22	\$8.31	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.28	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$41.51	\$53.11
6th 6 months	85.00	\$24.67	\$8.31	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.28	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$42.96	\$55.29
7th 6 months	90.00	\$26.12	\$8.31	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.28	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$44.41	\$57.47
8th 6 months	95.00	\$27.57	\$8.31	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.28	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.86	\$59.64

Special Calculation Note : Other fs for UBC National Fund and Install

Ratio :

1 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

BROWN, BUTLER, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, DARKE, GREENE, HAMILTON, LOGAN, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, PREBLE, SHELBY, WARREN

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Scope of work shall include, but not be limited to: receiving,unloading,handling,distribution and installation of all carpeting materials,carpet padding or matting materials and all resilient materials whether for use on walls,

floors, counter, sink, table and all preparation work necessary in connection therewith, including sanding work. the installation of nonstructural under-layment and the work of removing, cleaning waxing of any of the above. Carpeting shall include any floor covering composed of either natural or synthetic fibers that are made in breadths to be sewed, fastened or directly glued to floors or over cushioning sound-proofing materials. Resilient Floors shall consist of and include the laying of all special designs of wood, wood block, wood composition, cork, linoleum, asphalt, mastic, plastic, rubber tile, whether nailed or glued.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Carpenter Millwright Local 1090 SW Zone II

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLoc1090SW2

Craft : Carpenter Effective Date : 09/20/2023 Last Posted : 09/20/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Carpenter Millwright	\$33.50		\$8.13	\$6.95	\$0.62	\$0.00	\$7.47	\$0.18	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$56.85	\$73.60
Apprentice	Percent											
1st 6 months	60.00	\$20.10	\$8.13	\$4.27	\$0.62	\$0.00	\$4.48	\$0.18	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$37.78	\$47.83
2nd 6 months	65.00	\$21.78	\$8.13	\$4.61	\$0.62	\$0.00	\$4.86	\$0.18	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$40.17	\$51.06
3rd 6 months	70.00	\$23.45	\$8.13	\$4.94	\$0.62	\$0.00	\$5.23	\$0.18	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$42.55	\$54.28
4th 6 months	75.00	\$25.12	\$8.13	\$5.28	\$0.62	\$0.00	\$5.60	\$0.18	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$44.94	\$57.50
5th 6 months	80.00	\$26.80	\$8.13	\$5.61	\$0.62	\$0.00	\$5.98	\$0.18	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$47.32	\$60.72
6th 6 months	85.00	\$28.47	\$8.13	\$5.95	\$0.62	\$0.00	\$6.35	\$0.18	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$49.71	\$63.94
7th 6 months	90.00	\$30.15	\$8.13	\$6.28	\$0.62	\$0.00	\$6.72	\$0.18	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.08	\$67.16
8th 6 months	95.00	\$31.82	\$8.13	\$6.62	\$0.62	\$0.00	\$7.10	\$0.18	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$54.47	\$70.39

Special Calculation Note : Other (\$0.18) \$0.13 National Fund and \$0.05 for National Millwright Fund.

Ratio :

3 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, DARKE, GREENE, LOGAN, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, PREBLE, SHELBY

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Carpenter NE District Industrial Dock & Door

Change # : LCN01-2014fbCarpNEStatewide

Craft : Carpenter Effective Date : 03/05/2014 Last Posted : 03/05/2014

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments						Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification												
Carpenter	\$19.70		\$5.05	\$1.00	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$25.90	\$35.75
Trainee	Percent											
1st Year	60.00	\$11.82	\$5.05	\$1.00	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$18.02	\$23.93
2nd Year	80.20	\$15.80	\$5.05	\$1.00	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$22.00	\$29.90

Special Calculation Note : No special calculations for this skilled craft wage rate are required at this time.

Ratio :

1 Journeymen to 1 Trainee

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, ALLEN, ASHLAND, ASHTABULA, ATHENS, AUGLAIZE, BELMONT, BROWN, BUTLER, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, COLUMBIANA, COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, CUYAHOGA, DARKE, DEFIANCE, DELAWARE, ERIE, FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, FULTON, GALLIA, GEAUGA, GREENE, GUERNSEY, HAMILTON, HANCOCK, HARDIN, HARRISON, HENRY, HIGHLAND, HOCKING, HOLMES, HURON, JACKSON, JEFFERSON, KNOX, LAKE, LAWRENCE, LICKING, LOGAN, LORAIN, LUCAS, MADISON, MAHONING, MARION, MEDINA, MEIGS, MERCER, MIAMI, MONROE, MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MORROW, MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, OTTAWA, PAULDING, PERRY, PICKAWAY, PIKE, PORTAGE, PREBLE, PUTNAM, RICHLAND, ROSS, SANDUSKY, SCIOTO, SENECA, SHELBY, STARK, SUMMIT, TRUMBULL, TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VAN WERT, VINTON, WARREN, WASHINGTON, WAYNE, WILLIAMS, WOOD, WYANDOT

Special Jurisdictional Note : Industrial Dock and Door is the installation of overhead doors, roll up doors and dock leveling equipment

Details :

10/27/10 New Contract jc

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Carpenter & Pile Driver
SW Zone 1

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLoc136SWZone1

Craft : Carpenter Effective Date : 06/07/2023 Last Posted : 06/07/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification												
Carpenter	\$30.22		\$8.00	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.60	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.52	\$63.63
Pile Driver	\$30.22		\$8.00	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.60	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.52	\$63.63
Apprentice	Percent											
1st 3 Months	60.00	\$18.13	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$18.13	\$27.20
2nd 3 Months	60.00	\$18.13	\$8.00	\$0.00	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.60	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$29.48	\$38.55
2rd 6 Months	60.00	\$18.13	\$8.00	\$0.00	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.60	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$29.48	\$38.55
3th 6 Months	65.00	\$19.64	\$8.00	\$0.00	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.60	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$30.99	\$40.81
4th 6 Months	65.00	\$19.64	\$8.00	\$0.00	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.60	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$30.99	\$40.81
5th 6 Months	70.00	\$21.15	\$8.00	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.60	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$39.45	\$50.03
6th 6 Months	75.00	\$22.66	\$8.00	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.60	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$40.97	\$52.30
7th 6 Months	80.00	\$24.18	\$8.00	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.60	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$42.48	\$54.56
8th 6 Months	85.02	\$25.69	\$8.00	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$2.60	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$43.99	\$56.84

Special Calculation Note : Other is for UBC National Fund

Ratio :

1 Journeyman to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, DARKE, GREENE, LOGAN, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, PREBLE, SHELBY

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Carpenter duties shall include but not limited to: Pile driving, milling, fashioning, joining, assembling, erecting, fastening, or dismantling of all material of

wood, plastic, metal, fiber, cork, and composition, and all other substitute materials: pile driving, cutting, fitting, and placing of lagging, and the handling, cleaning, erecting, installing, and dismantling of machinery, equipment, and erecting pre-engineered metal buildings.

Pile Drivers work but not limited to: unloading, assembling, erection, repairs, operation, signaling, dismantling, and reloading all equipment that is used for pile driving including pile butts. pile butts is defined as sheeting or scrap piling. Underwater work that may be required in connection with the installation of piling. The diver and his tender work as a team and shall arrive at their own financial arrangements with the contractor. Any configuration of wood, steel, concrete, or composite that is jettied, driven, or vibrated onto the ground by conventional pile driving equipment for the purpose of supporting a future load that may be permanent or temporary.

Driving bracing, plumbing, cutting off and capping of all piling whether wood, metal, pipe piling or composite. loading, unloading, erecting, framing, dismantling, moving, and handling of pile driving equipment. piling used in the construction and repair of all wharves, docks, piers, trestles, caissons, cofferdams, and the erection of all sea walls and breakwaters. All underwater and marine work on bulkheads, wharves, docks, shipyards, caissons, piers, bridges, pipeline work, viaducts, marine cable and trestles, as well as salvage and reclamation work where divers are employed.

Rate shall include carpenters, acoustic, and ceiling installers, drywall installers, pile drivers, and floorlayers.

Prevailing Wage Rate

Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Carpenter & Pile Driver SW District HevHwy

Change # : LCN01-2023ibCarpSWHevHwy

Craft : Carpenter Effective Date : 05/03/2023 Last Posted : 05/03/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification												
Journeyman	\$33.28		\$8.44	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$4.57	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$53.99	\$70.63
Apprentice	Percent											
1st 6 Months	60.00	\$19.97	\$8.44	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$4.57	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$40.68	\$50.66
2nd 6 Months	65.00	\$21.63	\$8.44	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$4.57	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$42.34	\$53.16
3rd 6 Months	70.00	\$23.30	\$8.44	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$4.57	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$44.01	\$55.65
4th 6 Months	75.00	\$24.96	\$8.44	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$4.57	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.67	\$58.15
5th 6 Months	80.00	\$26.62	\$8.44	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$4.57	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$47.33	\$60.65
6th 6 Months	85.00	\$28.29	\$8.44	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$4.57	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$49.00	\$63.14
7th 6 Months	90.00	\$29.95	\$8.44	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$4.57	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$50.66	\$65.64
8th 6 Months	95.00	\$31.62	\$8.44	\$6.95	\$0.60	\$0.00	\$4.57	\$0.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.33	\$68.13

Special Calculation Note : Other is UBC National Fund.

Ratio :

1 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice

An employer shall have the right to employ one (1) Apprentice for one (1) Journeyman Carpenter in its employment for the first Apprentice employed, and 1 (1) Apprentice for two (2) Journeyman Carpenter for additional Apprentices employed.

Thereafter, every third additional carpenter hired shall be an apprentice, if available, and if practical for the type of work being performed.

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

BROWN, BUTLER, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, DARKE, GREENE, HAMILTON, LOGAN, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, PREBLE, SHELBY, WARREN

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Highway Construction, Airport Construction, Heavy Construction but not limited to:(tunnels,subways,drainage projects,flood control,reservoirs). Railroad Construction,Sewer Waterworks & Utility Construction but not limited to: (storm sewers, waterlines, gaslines). Industrial & Building Site, Power Plant, Amusement Park, Athletic Stadium Site, Sewer and Water Plants.

When the Contractor furnishes the necessary underwater gear for the Diver, the Diver shall be paid one and one half (1&1/2) times the journeyman rate for the time spent in the water.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Cement Mason Local 132 (Dayton)

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLoc132

Craft : Cement Effective Date : 06/01/2023 Last Posted : 05/31/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Cement Mason	\$28.32		\$8.05	\$7.35	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$2.35	\$0.06	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$46.98	\$61.14
Apprentice	Percent											
1st Six Months	70.00	\$19.82	\$8.05	\$7.35	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$2.35	\$0.06	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$38.48	\$48.40
2nd Six Months	80.00	\$22.66	\$8.05	\$7.35	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$2.35	\$0.06	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$41.32	\$52.64
3rd Six Months	90.00	\$25.49	\$8.05	\$7.35	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$2.35	\$0.06	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$44.15	\$56.89

Special Calculation Note : No special calculations for this skilled craft wage rate are required at this time. *Other is International Training

Ratio :

2 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLINTON, DARKE,
GREENE, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, PREBLE,
SHELBY

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Other: Is Industry Promotion: Cement Masons on outrigger, swing, scaffolds, manlifts -\$.75 per hour above scale up to (25) feet and \$.75 per hour for each additional (25) feet or part of same. A Cement Mason operating a grinder- \$.30 per hour above the journeyman scale.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Cement Mason Statewide HevHwy

Change # : LCN01-2023ibCementHevHwy

Craft : Cement Mason Effective Date : 05/01/2023 Last Posted : 04/26/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Cement Mason	\$33.74		\$8.50	\$7.55	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$2.25	\$0.07	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.76	\$69.63
Apprentice	Percent											
1st Year	70.00	\$23.62	\$8.50	\$7.55	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$2.25	\$0.07	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$42.64	\$54.45
2nd Year	80.00	\$26.99	\$8.50	\$7.55	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$2.25	\$0.07	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$46.01	\$59.51
3rd Year	90.00	\$30.37	\$8.50	\$7.55	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$2.25	\$0.07	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$49.39	\$64.57

Special Calculation Note : Other \$0.07 is for International Training Fund

Ratio :

1 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice
2 to 1 thereafter

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, ALLEN, ASHLAND, ASHTABULA*,
 ATHENS, AUGLAIZE, BELMONT, BROWN,
 BUTLER, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK,
 CLERMONT, CLINTON, COLUMBIANA,
 COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, CUYAHOGA*,
 DARKE, DEFIANCE, DELAWARE, ERIE,
 FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, FULTON*,
 GALLIA, GEauga*, GREENE, GUERNSEY,
 HAMILTON, HANCOCK*, HARDIN, HARRISON,
 HENRY*, HIGHLAND, HOCKING, HOLMES,
 HURON, JACKSON, JEFFERSON, KNOX, LAKE*,
 LAWRENCE, LICKING, LOGAN, LORAIN,
 LUCAS*, MADISON, MAHONING, MARION,
 MEDINA, MEIGS, MERCER, MIAMI, MONROE,
 MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MORROW,
 MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, OTTAWA, PAULDING,
 PERRY, PICKAWAY, PIKE, PORTAGE, PREBLE,
 PUTNAM*, RICHLAND, ROSS, SANDUSKY,
 SCIOTO, SENECA, SHELBY, STARK, SUMMIT,
 TRUMBULL, TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VAN WERT,
 VINTON, WARREN, WASHINGTON, WAYNE,
 WILLIAMS, WOOD*, WYANDOT

Special Jurisdictional Note : (A) Highway Construction, Sewer, Waterworks And Utility Construction, Industrial & Building Site, Heavy

Construction, Airport Construction Or Railroad Construction Work, Power Plant, Tunnels, Amusement Park, Athletic Stadium Site Work, Pollution Control, Sewer Plant, Waste & Water Plant, Water Treatment Facilities Construction.

*For Power Plant, Tunnels, Amusement Park, Athletic Stadium Site Work, Pollution Control, Sewer Plant, Waste & Water Plant, Water Treatment Facility Construction work in the following Counties: Ashtabula, Cuyahoga, Fulton, Geauga, Hancock, Henry, Lake, Lucas, Putnam and Wood Counties, those counties will use the Cement Mason Statewide Heavy Highway Exhibit B District 1 Wage Rate.

Details :

This rate replaces the previous Cement Mason Heavy Highway Statewide Rates (Exhibit A and Exhibit B rates), except for Cement Mason Statewide Heavy Highway Exhibit B Dist 1. sks

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Electrical Local 71 DOT Traffic Signal Highway Lighting American Line Builders

Change # : LCNO1-2023ibLoc71DOTClev

Craft : Lineman Effective Date : 03/01/2023 Last Posted : 03/01/2023

	BHR	Fringe Benefit Payments						Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate
		H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification											
Electrical Lineman	\$43.02	\$7.00	\$1.29	\$0.43	\$0.00	\$8.60	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$60.90	\$82.41
Traffic Signal & Lighting Journeyman	\$41.43	\$7.00	\$1.24	\$0.41	\$0.00	\$8.29	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$58.93	\$79.64
Equipment Operator	\$37.78	\$7.00	\$1.13	\$0.38	\$0.00	\$7.56	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$54.41	\$73.30
Groundman 0 to 12 months (W/O CDL)	\$22.91	\$7.00	\$0.69	\$0.23	\$0.00	\$4.58	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$35.97	\$47.42
Groundman 0 to 12 Months (W CDL)	\$25.03	\$7.00	\$0.75	\$0.25	\$0.00	\$5.01	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$38.60	\$51.12
Groundman greater than 1 year (W CDL)	\$27.71	\$7.00	\$0.81	\$0.28	\$0.00	\$5.43	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$41.79	\$55.65
Traffic Apprentice											
1st 1000 hrs	\$24.86	\$7.00	\$0.75	\$0.25	\$0.00	\$4.97	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$38.39	\$50.82
2nd 1000 hrs	\$26.93	\$7.00	\$0.81	\$0.27	\$0.00	\$5.39	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$40.96	\$54.43
3rd 1000 hrs	\$29.00	\$7.00	\$0.87	\$0.29	\$0.00	\$5.80	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$43.52	\$58.02
4th 1000 hrs	\$31.01	\$7.00	\$0.99	\$0.31	\$0.00	\$6.21	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$46.08	\$61.59
5th 1000 hrs	\$33.14	\$7.00	\$0.99	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$6.63	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.65	\$65.22
6th 1000 hrs	\$37.29	\$7.00	\$1.12	\$0.37	\$0.00	\$7.46	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$53.80	\$72.45

Lineman Apprentice	Percent											
	1st 1,000 Hours	60.00	\$25.81	\$7.00	\$0.77	\$0.26	\$0.00	\$5.16	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$39.56
2nd 1,000 Hours	65.00	\$27.96	\$7.00	\$0.84	\$0.28	\$0.00	\$5.59	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$42.23	\$56.21
3rd 1,000 Hours	70.00	\$30.11	\$7.00	\$0.90	\$0.30	\$0.00	\$6.02	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$44.89	\$59.95
4th 1,000 Hours	75.00	\$32.27	\$7.00	\$0.97	\$0.32	\$0.00	\$6.54	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$47.66	\$63.79
5th 1,000 Hours	80.00	\$34.42	\$7.00	\$1.03	\$0.34	\$0.00	\$6.88	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$50.23	\$67.43
6th 1,000 Hours	85.00	\$36.57	\$7.00	\$1.10	\$0.37	\$0.00	\$7.31	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.91	\$71.19
7th 1,000 Hours	90.00	\$38.72	\$7.00	\$1.16	\$0.39	\$0.00	\$7.74	\$0.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$55.57	\$74.93

Special Calculation Note : Other is for Safety and Education Fund (\$0.06) And HRA (\$0.50).

Ratio :

1 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

AUGLAIZE, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLINTON, DARKE, GREENE, LOGAN, MERCER, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, PREBLE, SHELBY

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

A groundman when directed shall assist a Journeymen in the performance of his/her work on the ground, including the use of hand tools. Under no circumstances shall this classification climb poles, towers, ladders, or work from an elevated platform or bucket truck. This classification shall not perform work normally assigned to an apprentice lineman. No more than three (3) Groundmen shall work alone. Jobs with more that three Groundmen shall be supervised by a Groundcrew Foreman, Journeyman Lineman, Journeyman Traffic Signal Technician or an Equipment Operator.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Electrical Local 71 High Tension Pipe Type Cable

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLoc7

Craft : Lineman Effective Date : 03/01/2023 Last Posted : 03/01/2023

	BHR	Fringe Benefit Payments						Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate
		H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification											
Electrical Lineman	\$48.59	\$7.00	\$1.46	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$11.66	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$69.95	\$94.24
Certified Lineman Welder	\$48.59	\$7.00	\$1.46	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$11.66	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$69.95	\$94.24
Certified Cable Splicer	\$48.59	\$7.00	\$1.46	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$11.66	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$69.95	\$94.24
Operator A	\$43.54	\$7.00	\$1.31	\$0.44	\$0.00	\$10.45	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$63.49	\$85.26
Operator B	\$38.54	\$7.00	\$1.16	\$0.39	\$0.00	\$9.25	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$57.09	\$76.36
Operator C	\$30.97	\$7.00	\$0.93	\$0.31	\$0.00	\$7.43	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$47.39	\$62.88
Groundman 0-12 months Exp	\$24.30	\$7.00	\$0.73	\$0.24	\$0.00	\$5.83	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$38.85	\$51.00
Groundman 0-12 months Exp w/CDL	\$26.72	\$7.00	\$0.80	\$0.27	\$0.00	\$6.41	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$41.95	\$55.31
Groundman 1 yr or more	\$26.72	\$7.00	\$0.80	\$0.27	\$0.00	\$6.41	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$41.95	\$55.31
Groundman 1 yr or more w/CDL	\$31.58	\$7.00	\$0.95	\$0.32	\$0.00	\$7.58	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.18	\$63.97
Equipment Mechanic A	\$38.54	\$7.00	\$1.16	\$0.39	\$0.00	\$9.25	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$57.09	\$76.36
Equipment Mechanic B	\$34.75	\$7.00	\$1.04	\$0.35	\$0.00	\$8.34	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.23	\$69.60
Equipment Mechanic C	\$30.97	\$7.00	\$0.93	\$0.31	\$0.00	\$7.43	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$47.39	\$62.88

X-Ray Technician	\$48.59	\$7.00	\$1.46	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$11.66	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$69.95	\$94.24	
Apprentice	Percent											
1st 1000 hrs	60.00	\$29.15	\$7.00	\$0.87	\$0.29	\$0.00	\$7.00	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.06	\$59.64
2nd 1000 hrs	65.00	\$31.58	\$7.00	\$0.95	\$0.32	\$0.00	\$7.58	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.18	\$63.98
3rd 1000 hrs	70.00	\$34.01	\$7.00	\$1.02	\$0.34	\$0.00	\$8.16	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$51.28	\$68.29
4th 1000 hrs	75.00	\$36.44	\$7.00	\$1.09	\$0.36	\$0.00	\$8.75	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$54.39	\$72.61
5th 1000 hrs	80.00	\$38.87	\$7.00	\$1.17	\$0.39	\$0.00	\$9.33	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$57.51	\$76.95
6th 1000 hrs	85.00	\$41.30	\$7.00	\$1.24	\$0.41	\$0.00	\$9.91	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$60.61	\$81.26
7th 1000 hrs	90.00	\$43.73	\$7.00	\$1.31	\$0.44	\$0.00	\$10.50	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$63.73	\$85.60

Special Calculation Note : Other is Health Retirement Account

Operator "A"

John Henry Rock Drill, D-6 (or equivalent) and above, Trackhoe Digger, (320 Track excavator), Cranes (greater then 25 tons and less than 45 tons).

Operator "B"

Cranes (greater than 6 tons and up to 25 tons), Backhoes, Road Tractor, Dozer up to D-5, Pressure Digger- wheeled or tracked, all Tension wire Stringing equipment.

Operator "C"

Trench, Backhoe, Riding type vibratory Compactor, Ground Rod Driver, Boom Truck (6 ton & below), Skid Steer Loaders, Material Handler.

*All Operators of cranes 45 ton or larger shall be paid the journeyman rate of pay. \$0.30 is for Health Retirement Account.

Ratio :

1 Journeyman to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, ASHLAND, ASHTABULA, ATHENS, AUGLAIZE, BELMONT, BROWN, BUTLER, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, COLUMBIANA, COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, CUYAHOGA, DARKE, DELAWARE, FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, GALLIA, GEAUGA, GREENE, GUERNSEY, HAMILTON, HARRISON, HIGHLAND, HOCKING, HOLMES, JACKSON, JEFFERSON, KNOX, LAKE, LAWRENCE, LICKING, LOGAN, LORAIN, MADISON, MAHONING, MARION, MEDINA, MEIGS, MERCER, MIAMI, MONROE, MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MORROW, MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, PERRY, PICKAWAY, PIKE, PORTAGE, PREBLE, RICHLAND, ROSS, SCIOTO,

SHELBY, STARK, SUMMIT, TRUMBULL,
TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VINTON, WARREN,
WASHINGTON, WAYNE

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Heli - Arc Welding will be paid \$.30 above Journeyman rate. Additional compensation of 10% over the Journeyman Lineman and Journeyman Technician for performing work on structures outside of buildings such as water towers, smoke stacks, radio and television towers, more than 75' above the ground.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Electrical Local 71 Outside Utility Power

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLoc7

Craft : Lineman Effective Date : 03/01/2023 Last Posted : 03/01/2023

	BHR	Fringe Benefit Payments						Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate
		H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification											
Electrical Lineman	\$46.03	\$7.00	\$1.38	\$0.46	\$0.00	\$11.05	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$66.67	\$89.68
Substation Technician	\$46.03	\$7.00	\$1.38	\$0.46	\$0.00	\$11.05	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$66.67	\$89.68
Cable Splicer	\$48.21	\$7.00	\$1.45	\$0.48	\$0.00	\$11.57	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$69.46	\$93.56
Operator A	\$41.26	\$7.00	\$1.24	\$0.41	\$0.00	\$9.90	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$60.56	\$81.19
Operator B	\$36.47	\$7.00	\$1.09	\$0.36	\$0.00	\$8.75	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$54.42	\$72.65
Operator C	\$29.28	\$7.00	\$0.88	\$0.29	\$0.00	\$7.03	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.23	\$59.87
Groundman 0-12 months Exp	\$23.02	\$7.00	\$0.69	\$0.23	\$0.00	\$5.52	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$37.21	\$48.72
Groundman 0-12 months Exp w/CDL	\$25.32	\$7.00	\$0.76	\$0.25	\$0.00	\$6.08	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$40.16	\$52.82
Groundman 1 yr or more	\$25.32	\$7.00	\$0.76	\$0.25	\$0.00	\$6.08	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$40.16	\$52.82
Groundman 1 yr or more w/CDL	\$29.92	\$7.00	\$0.90	\$0.30	\$0.00	\$7.18	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$46.05	\$61.01
Equipment Mechanic A	\$36.47	\$7.00	\$1.09	\$0.36	\$0.00	\$8.75	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$54.42	\$72.65
Equipment Mechanic B	\$32.88	\$7.00	\$0.99	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$7.89	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$49.84	\$66.28
Equipment Mechanic C	\$29.28	\$7.00	\$0.88	\$0.29	\$0.00	\$7.03	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.23	\$59.87
Line Truck w/uuger	\$32.28	\$7.00	\$0.97	\$0.32	\$0.00	\$7.75	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$49.07	\$65.21

Apprentice	Percent											
1st 1000 hrs	60.00	\$27.62	\$7.00	\$0.83	\$0.28	\$0.00	\$6.63	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$43.11	\$56.92
2nd 1000 hrs	65.00	\$29.92	\$7.00	\$0.90	\$0.30	\$0.00	\$7.18	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$46.05	\$61.01
3rd 1000 hrs	70.00	\$32.22	\$7.00	\$0.97	\$0.32	\$0.00	\$7.73	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.99	\$65.10
4th 1000 hrs	75.00	\$34.52	\$7.00	\$1.04	\$0.35	\$0.00	\$8.28	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$51.94	\$69.20
5th 1000 hrs	80.00	\$36.82	\$7.00	\$1.10	\$0.37	\$0.00	\$8.84	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$54.88	\$73.30
6th 1000 hrs	85.00	\$39.13	\$7.00	\$1.17	\$0.39	\$0.00	\$9.39	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$57.83	\$77.39
7th 1000 hrs	90.00	\$41.43	\$7.00	\$1.24	\$0.41	\$0.00	\$9.94	\$0.75	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$60.77	\$81.48

Special Calculation Note : Other is Health Retirement Account

Operator "A"

John Henry Rock Drill, D-6 (or equivalent) and above, Trackhoe Digger, (320 Track excavator), Cranes (greater then 25 tons and less than 45 tons).

Operator "B"

Cranes (greater than 6 tons and up to 25 tons), Backhoes, Road Tractor, Dozer up to D-5, Pressure Digger- wheeled or tracked, all Tension wire Stringing equipment.

Operator "C"

Trench, Backhoe, Riding type vibratory Compactor, Ground Rod Driver, Boom Truck (6 ton & below), Skid Steer Loaders, Material Handler.

Ratio :

(1) Journeyman Lineman to (1) Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, ASHLAND, ASHTABULA, ATHENS, AUGLAIZE, BELMONT, BROWN, BUTLER, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, COLUMBIANA, COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, CUYAHOGA, DARKE, DELAWARE, FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, GALLIA, GEAUGA, GREENE, GUERNSEY, HAMILTON, HARRISON, HIGHLAND, HOCKING, HOLMES, JACKSON, JEFFERSON, KNOX, LAKE, LAWRENCE, LICKING, LOGAN, LORAIN, MADISON, MAHONING, MARION, MEDINA, MEIGS, MERCER, MIAMI, MONROE, MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MORROW, MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, PERRY, PICKAWAY, PIKE, PORTAGE, PREBLE, RICHLAND, ROSS, SCIOTO, SHELBY, STARK, SUMMIT, TRUMBULL, TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VINTON, WARREN, WASHINGTON, WAYNE

Special Jurisdictional Note : 0.30 is for Health Retirement Account.

Details :

Heli - Arc Welding will be paid \$.30 above Journeyman rate. Additional compensation of 10% over the

Journeyman Lineman and Journeyman Technician for performing work on structures outside of buildings such as water towers, smoke stacks, radio and television towers, more than 75' above the ground.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Electrical Local 71 Voice Data Video Outside

Change # : LCR01-2017fbLoc71VDV

Craft : Voice Data Video Effective Date : 10/18/2017 Last Posted : 10/18/2017

	BHR	Fringe Benefit Payments						Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate
		H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification											
Electrical Installer Technician I	\$23.46	\$5.50	\$0.70	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.30	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$29.96	\$41.69
Installer Technician II	\$22.37	\$5.50	\$0.67	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.30	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$28.84	\$40.03
Equipment Operator I	\$22.37	\$5.50	\$0.67	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.30	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$28.84	\$40.03
Equipment Operator II	\$18.43	\$5.50	\$0.55	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.30	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$24.78	\$33.99
Installer /Repair Outside	\$22.37	\$5.50	\$0.67	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.30	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$28.84	\$40.03
Ground Driver W/CDL	\$15.83	\$5.50	\$0.47	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.30	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$22.10	\$30.01
Groundman	\$13.24	\$5.50	\$0.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.30	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$19.44	\$26.06
Cable Splicer	\$23.46	\$5.50	\$0.70	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.30	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$29.96	\$41.69

Special Calculation Note :

Ratio :

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, ASHLAND, ASHTABULA, ATHENS, AUGLAIZE, BELMONT, BROWN, BUTLER, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, COLUMBIANA, COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, CUYAHOGA, DARKE, DELAWARE, FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, GALLIA, GEAUGA, GREENE, GUERNSEY, HAMILTON, HARRISON, HIGHLAND, HOCKING, HOLMES, JACKSON, JEFFERSON, KNOX, LAKE, LAWRENCE, LICKING, LOGAN, LORAIN, MADISON, MAHONING, MARION, MEDINA, MEIGS, MERCER, MIAMI, MONROE, MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MORROW,

MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, PERRY, PICKAWAY, PIKE,
PORTAGE, PREBLE, RICHLAND, ROSS, SCIOTO,
SHELBY, STARK, SUMMIT, TRUMBULL,
TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VINTON, WARREN,
WASHINGTON, WAYNE

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Cable Splicer: Inspect and test lines or cables, analyze results, and evaluate transmission characteristics. Cover conductors with insulation or seal splices with moisture-proof covering. Install, splice, test, and repair cables using tools or mechanical equipment. This will include the splicing of fiber.

Journeyman Technician I: Must know all aspects of telephone and cable work. This is to include aerial, underground, and manhole work. Must know how to climb and run bucket. Must have all the tools required to perform these tasks. Must be able to be responsible for the safety of the crew at all times. Must also have CDL license and have at least 5 years experience.

Installer/Repairman: Perform tasks of repairing, installing, and testing phone and CATV services.

Technician II: Have at least three years of telephone and CATV experience. Must have the knowledge of underground, aerial, and manhole work. Must be able to climb and operate bucket. Must have CDL. Must have all tools needed to perform these tasks.

Equipment Operator I: Able to operate a digger derrick or bucket truck. Have at least 5 years of experience and must have a valid CDL license.

Equipment Operator II: Able to operate a digger derrick or bucket truck. Have at least 3 years of experience and must have a valid CDL license.

Groundman W/CDL: Must have a valid CDL license and be able to perform tasks such as: climbing poles, pulling downguys, making up material, and getting appropriate tools for the job. Must have at least 5 year's experience.

Groundman: Perform tasks such as: climbing poles, pulling downguys, making up material, and getting appropriate tools for the job. Experience 0-5 years.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Electrical Local 82 Inside

Change # : LCN01-2022ibLoc82in

Craft : Electrical Effective Date : 12/05/2022 Last Posted : 11/23/2022

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Electrician	\$34.25		\$7.45	\$9.63	\$0.58	\$0.00	\$3.60	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$55.51	\$72.63
Apprentice	Percent											
1st period 0 - 1000 hrs	42.00	\$14.39	\$4.07	\$0.63	\$0.24	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$19.32	\$26.52
2nd period 1001-2000 hrs	42.00	\$14.39	\$4.07	\$0.63	\$0.24	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$19.32	\$26.52
3rd period 2001-3500 hrs	47.00	\$16.10	\$6.92	\$4.52	\$0.27	\$0.00	\$1.69	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$29.50	\$37.55
4th period 3501-5000 hrs	52.00	\$17.81	\$6.97	\$5.00	\$0.30	\$0.00	\$1.87	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$31.95	\$40.85
5th period 5001-6500 hrs	62.02	\$21.24	\$7.07	\$5.97	\$0.36	\$0.00	\$2.23	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$36.87	\$47.49
6th period 6501-8000 hrs	77.00	\$26.37	\$7.22	\$7.41	\$0.45	\$0.00	\$2.77	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$44.22	\$57.41

Special Calculation Note : No special calculations for this skilled craft wage rate are required at this time.

Ratio :

1 to 3 Journeymen to 3 Apprentices
4 to 6 Journeymen to 6 Apprentices
per job site

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

CLINTON, DARKE, GREENE, MIAMI,
MONTGOMERY, PREBLE, WARREN*

Special Jurisdictional Note : The following townships in Warren County are included: Clearcreek, Franklin and Wayne.

Details :

Only correction made on 6-19-19 was the 5th year Apprentice fb.

Prevailing Wage Rate

Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Electrical Local 82 Inside Lt Commercial South West

Change # : LCNO1-2021sksLoc82in

Craft : Electrical Effective Date : 03/30/2022 Last Posted : 03/30/2022

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Electrician	\$33.25		\$6.47	\$9.35	\$0.72	\$0.00	\$3.50	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$53.29	\$69.91
CE-3 12,001-14,000	\$24.66		\$6.47	\$0.74	\$0.72	\$0.00	\$0.74	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$33.43	\$45.76
CE-2 10,001-12,000 Hrs	\$19.56		\$6.47	\$0.59	\$0.72	\$0.00	\$0.59	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$28.03	\$37.81
CE-1 8,001-10,000 Hrs	\$17.86		\$6.47	\$0.54	\$0.72	\$0.00	\$0.54	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$26.23	\$35.16
CW-4 6,001-8,000 Hrs	\$16.16		\$6.47	\$0.48	\$0.72	\$0.00	\$0.48	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$24.41	\$32.49
CW-3 4,001-6,000 Hrs	\$14.46		\$6.47	\$0.43	\$0.72	\$0.00	\$0.43	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$22.61	\$29.84
CW-2 2,001-4,000 Hrs	\$13.61		\$6.47	\$0.41	\$0.72	\$0.00	\$0.41	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$21.72	\$28.52
CW-1 0-2,000 Hrs	\$12.76		\$6.47	\$0.38	\$0.72	\$0.00	\$0.38	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$20.81	\$27.19
Apprentice	Percent											
1st period 0 - 1000 hrs	42.00	\$13.97	\$4.07	\$0.62	\$0.24	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$18.89	\$25.88
2nd period 1001-2000 hrs	42.00	\$13.97	\$4.07	\$0.62	\$0.24	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$18.89	\$25.88
3rd period 2001-3500 hrs	47.00	\$15.63	\$6.92	\$4.39	\$0.27	\$0.00	\$1.65	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$28.86	\$36.67
4th period 3501-5000 hrs	52.00	\$17.29	\$6.97	\$4.86	\$0.29	\$0.00	\$1.82	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$31.23	\$39.88
5th period 5001-6500	62.00	\$20.61	\$7.07	\$5.80	\$0.35	\$0.00	\$2.17	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$36.01	\$46.31

hrs												
6th period 6501-8000 hrs	77.00	\$25.60	\$7.22	\$7.20	\$0.44	\$0.00	\$2.70	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$43.16	\$55.96

Special Calculation Note : *Misc amount is Administrative Fees

Ratio :

1 to 3 Journeymen to 3 Apprentices
 4 to 6 Journeymen to 6 Apprentices
 per job site

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

CLINTON, DARKE, GREENE, MIAMI,
 MONTGOMERY, PREBLE, WARREN*

Construction Electrician and Construction Wireman Ratio

There shall be a minimum ratio of one inside Journeyman to every (4) employees of different classification per jobsite. An inside Journeyman Wireman is required on the project as the fifth (5th) worker or when apprentices are used.

Special Jurisdictional Note : The following townships in Warren County are included: Clearcreek, Franklin and Wayne.

The scope of work for the light commercial agreement shall apply to the following facilities not to exceed 200,000 square feet; office buildings, shopping centers, auto sales agencies and garages, churches, funeral homes, nursing homes, hotels, retail and wholesale facilities, small stand-alone manufacturing facilities when free standing and not part of a larger facility (not to exceed 50,000 square fee), solar projects (500 panels or less) unless otherwise covered under the agreement, lighting retrofits (when not associated with remodels involving branch re-circuiting) lighting retrofits shall be defined as the changing of lamps and ballasts in existing light fixtures and shall also include the one for one replacement of existing fixtures, warehouses, gas stations, food service centers, restaurants, entertainment facilities, hospitals, clinics, motels, residential buildings.

Details :

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Electrical Local 82 Lightning Rod

Change # : LCN02-2022ibLoc82

Craft : Electrical Effective Date : 12/05/2022 Last Posted : 11/23/2022

	BHR	Fringe Benefit Payments						Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate
		H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification											
Electrical Lightning Rod Technican	\$32.79	\$7.45	\$9.58	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$3.50	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$53.32	\$69.71

Special Calculation Note : No Apprentice approved by OSAC.

Ratio :

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

CLINTON, DARKE, GREENE, MIAMI,
MONTGOMERY, PREBLE, WARREN*

Special Jurisdictional Note : The following townships in Warren County are included: (Clearcreek, Franklin and Wayne)

Details :

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Electrical Local 82 Voice Data Video

Change # : LCN01-2022ibLoc82VDV

Craft : Voice Data Video Effective Date : 11/28/2022 Last Posted : 11/23/2022

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Electrical Installer Technician A	\$26.20		\$6.60	\$6.79	\$0.50	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$40.09	\$53.19
Electrical Installer Technician B	\$24.89		\$6.60	\$6.75	\$0.47	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$38.71	\$51.16
JW Installer Technician	\$23.58		\$6.60	\$6.71	\$0.45	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$37.34	\$49.13
NON BICSI Installer	\$17.03		\$3.87	\$0.51	\$0.32	\$0.00	\$2.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$23.73	\$32.25
Apprentice Indentured After 09-03-2018	Percent											
1st 0-1000 hours	55.00	\$14.41	\$3.87	\$3.73	\$0.27	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$22.28	\$29.49
2nd 1001-2000 hours	55.00	\$14.41	\$3.87	\$3.73	\$0.27	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$22.28	\$29.49
3rd 2001-3000 hours	65.00	\$17.03	\$6.55	\$6.51	\$0.32	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$30.41	\$38.92
4th 3001-4000 hours	65.00	\$17.03	\$6.55	\$6.51	\$0.32	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$30.41	\$38.92
5th 4001-5000 hours	75.00	\$19.65	\$6.56	\$6.59	\$0.37	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$33.17	\$43.00
6th 5001-6000 hours	75.00	\$19.65	\$6.56	\$6.59	\$0.37	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$33.17	\$43.00
7th 6001-7000 hours	80.00	\$20.96	\$6.57	\$6.63	\$0.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$34.56	\$45.04
8th 7001 hours	80.00	\$20.96	\$6.57	\$6.63	\$0.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$34.56	\$45.04

Cable Puller	50.00	\$13.10	\$3.87	\$0.39	\$0.25	\$0.00	\$0.25	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$17.86	\$24.41
--------------	-------	---------	--------	--------	--------	--------	--------	--------	--------	--------	---------	---------

Special Calculation Note : No special calculations for this skilled craft wage rate are required at this time.

Ratio :

1 Journeymen to 2 Apprentice
(Indentured After 9-4-2018)

1 Journeymen to 2 Apprentice
(Indentured Before 9--03-2018)

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

CLINTON, DARKE, GREENE, MIAMI,
MONTGOMERY, PREBLE, WARREN*

Special Jurisdictional Note : The following townships in Warren County are included: (Clearcreek, Franklin and Wayne)

Details :

Work covered but not limited to: installation which utilize transmission and/or transference of voice, sound, vision or digital for commercial, education, security and entertainment purposes for the following:

TV monitoring and surveillance, background-foreground music, intercom and telephone interconnect, inventory control systems, microwave transmission, multimedia, multiplex, nurse call system, radio page, school intercom, sound and low voltage master clock systems.

Fire Alarm work is excluded on all new construction sites or wherever the fire alarm system is installed in conduit.

All HVAC control work is not covered by this wage rate but by the Inside Electrical wage rate.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Elevator Local 11

Change # : LCN01-2020fbLoc11

Craft : Elevator Effective Date : 01/05/2021 Last Posted : 01/05/2021

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Elevator Mechanic	\$48.82		\$15.88	\$10.46	\$0.64	\$3.91	\$8.85	\$1.56	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$90.12	\$114.53
Probationary Apprentice	50.00	\$24.41	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$1.46	\$0.00	\$0.78	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$26.65	\$38.86
1st year	55.00	\$26.85	\$15.88	\$10.46	\$0.64	\$1.61	\$8.85	\$0.86	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$65.15	\$78.58
2nd year	65.00	\$31.73	\$15.88	\$10.46	\$0.64	\$1.90	\$8.85	\$1.02	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$70.48	\$86.35
3rd year	70.00	\$34.17	\$15.88	\$10.46	\$0.64	\$2.05	\$8.85	\$1.09	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$73.14	\$90.23
4th year	80.00	\$39.06	\$15.88	\$10.46	\$0.64	\$2.34	\$8.85	\$1.25	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$78.48	\$98.00
Helper	70.00	\$34.17	\$15.88	\$10.46	\$0.64	\$2.05	\$8.85	\$1.09	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$73.14	\$90.23
Assistant Mechanic	80.00	\$39.06	\$15.88	\$10.46	\$0.64	\$2.34	\$8.85	\$1.25	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$78.48	\$98.00

Special Calculation Note : Other is Holiday Pay. Vacation calculated at 6%.

Ratio :

The total number of Helpers & Apprentices employed shall not exceed the number of Mechanics on any one job, except on jobs where (2) teams or more are working, (1) extra Helper or Apprentice may be employed for the first (2) teams and an extra Helper or Apprentice for each additional (3) teams.

- 1 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice
- 2 Journeymen to 5 Apprentice
- 3 Journeymen to 6 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, BROWN, BUTLER, CLERMONT, CLINTON, DARKE, GREENE, HAMILTON, HIGHLAND, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, PREBLE, SCIOTO, SHELBY, WARREN

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Prevailing Wage Rate

Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Glazier Local 387

Change # : LCN01-2020fbLoc387

Craft : Glazier Effective Date : 11/01/2020 Last Posted : 10/28/2020

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Glazier	\$27.93		\$5.67	\$10.10	\$0.25	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$43.95	\$57.92
Apprentice	Percent											
1st 6 months	53.70	\$15.00	\$5.67	\$0.00	\$0.25	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$20.92	\$28.42
2nd 6 months	65.00	\$18.15	\$5.67	\$6.19	\$0.25	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$30.26	\$39.34
3rd 6 months	70.00	\$19.55	\$5.67	\$6.71	\$0.25	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$32.18	\$41.96
4th 6 months	75.00	\$20.95	\$5.67	\$6.85	\$0.25	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$33.72	\$44.19
5th 6 months	80.00	\$22.34	\$5.67	\$7.43	\$0.25	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$35.69	\$46.87
6th 6 months	85.00	\$23.74	\$5.67	\$7.57	\$0.25	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$37.23	\$49.10
7th 6 months	90.00	\$25.14	\$5.67	\$8.09	\$0.25	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$39.15	\$51.72
8th 6 months	95.00	\$26.53	\$5.67	\$8.68	\$0.25	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$41.13	\$54.40

Special Calculation Note : No special calculations for this skilled craft wage rate are required at this time.

Ratio :

Each employer may employ and train Apprentices in the following ratio to journeymen workers employed.
1 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, BROWN, BUTLER, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, DARKE, FAYETTE*, GREENE, HAMILTON, HIGHLAND, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, PREBLE, SHELBY*, WARREN

Special Jurisdictional Note : Fayette County: Eastern portion of route #41 being the dividing line between locals 372 and 387. Local 387 has jurisdiction of projects built on property which borders route #41 East. Shelby County: Southern portion of routes #47 & 29.

Details :

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Ironworker Local 290

Change # : LCN01-2021fbLoc290

Craft : Ironworker Effective Date : 01/27/2021 Last Posted : 01/27/2021

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification												
Ironworker Structural	\$29.68		\$8.30	\$9.50	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$4.45	\$0.02	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.60	\$67.44
Welder	\$29.68		\$8.30	\$9.50	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$4.45	\$0.02	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.60	\$67.44
Fence Erector	\$29.68		\$8.30	\$9.50	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$4.45	\$0.02	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.60	\$67.44
Reinforcing Rods	\$29.68		\$8.30	\$9.50	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$4.45	\$0.02	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.60	\$67.44
Machinery Mover	\$29.68		\$8.30	\$9.50	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$4.45	\$0.02	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.60	\$67.44
Sheeter	\$29.68		\$8.30	\$9.50	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$4.45	\$0.02	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.60	\$67.44
Metal Building Erector	\$29.68		\$8.30	\$9.50	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$4.45	\$0.02	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.60	\$67.44
Rigger & Erector	\$29.68		\$8.30	\$9.50	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$4.45	\$0.02	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.60	\$67.44
Apprentice	Percent											
1st year	65.05	\$19.31	\$8.30	\$9.50	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$2.95	\$0.02	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$40.73	\$50.38
2nd year	75.07	\$22.28	\$8.30	\$9.50	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$2.95	\$0.02	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$43.70	\$54.84
3rd year	85.05	\$25.24	\$8.30	\$9.50	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$2.95	\$0.02	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$46.66	\$59.28
4th year	95.05	\$28.21	\$8.30	\$9.50	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$2.95	\$0.02	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$49.63	\$63.74

Special Calculation Note : Other is for Industry Fund.

Ratio :

3 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ALLEN*, AUGLAIZE, BUTLER*, CHAMPAIGN*, CLARK, CLINTON, DARKE, FAYETTE*, GREENE, HARDIN*, HIGHLAND*, LOGAN*, MADISON*, MERCER*, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, PREBLE, SHELBY, VAN WERT*, WARREN*

Special Jurisdictional Note : Allen County Twps included are: Auglaize, Perry, Shawnee, Amanda, Spencer, Marion, Sugar Creek, American, Bath, Jackson. Butler County Twps included are: Milford, Wayne, Madison, Lemon. Champaign Cnty Twps included are: Union, Urbana, Jackson, Concord, Salem, Mad River, Johnson, Harrison, Adams. Fayette County Twps included are: Green, Jasper,

Concord, Jefferson. Hardin County Twps included are: Round Head, Marion, Liberty. Highland County Twps included are: Fairfield, Penn, Union, Marshall, Liberty, Paint, Brush Creek. Logan County Twps included are: Richland, Stokes, Bloomfield, Washington, Harrison, McArthur, Lake, Liberty, Pleasant, Miami. Madison County Twps included are: Stokes. Mercer County Twps included are: Dublin, Washington, Jefferson, Recovery, Gibson, Union, Liberty, Butler, Granville, Center, Hopewell, Franklin, Marion. VanWert County Twps included are: Jennings. Warren County Twps included are: Franklin, Clear Creek, Turtle Creek, Wayne, Massie, Washington, Salem, Union.

Details :

Structural Iron Work but not limited to:field fabrication, all loading to and including the erecting,rigging,assembly,dismantling, placing, temporary and permanent securing by any means of all structural iron,steel,ornamental lead,bronze,brass,copper,aluminum,glass all ferrous and non ferrous metal and composite material, precast prestressed and post-stressed concrete structures. Bridges and bridge rails,bridge viaducts,bucks bulkheads,bumper and bumper post,canopies and unistrut canopies,corrugated ferrous and non ferrous sheets when attached to steel frames,columns,beams,bar-joists,trusses,grinders,roof decking,electrical supports,elevator cars,elevator fronts and enclosures,erection of steel towers,flag poles, gymnasium equipment,stadium and arena seating,jail cell work,jail cell beds,benches,bunks,chairs,tables,mirrors,jail cell access doors,rigging and installation of machinery and equipment(erecting,aligning,anchoring and dismantling, erection and dismantling of tower cranes,derrick monorail systems, Chicago booms,overhead cranes,gantries,material and personnel hoists,tanks,hoppers and conveyors. All pre-engineered metal buildings and their entirety including siding,roofing, gutters, downspouts and erection of all.

Ornamental Iron Work but not limited to:all work in connection with field fabrication,handling including loading/off loading,sorting,cutting,fastening,anchoring,bending,hoisting,placing,burning,welding,and tying,dismantling of all materials used in miscellaneous iron or steel, for stairs,hand railings,rolling doors, rolling gates,rolling shutters,fence,windows,curtain wall,erection and welding of all metal, sash,architectural and ornamental treatments, but not necessarily limited to all sizes and types of ornamental,steel iron,lead,bronze,brass,copper,aluminum,all ferrous and non ferrous metals and composite materials

Fence Erector Iron Worker but not limited to: All work in connection with the field fabrication and erection of chain link fence,which includes but not limited to the loading and of the fence fabric and posts also the installation of the above.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Labor HevHwy 3

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLocalHevHwy3

Craft : Laborer Group 1 Effective Date : 05/01/2023 Last Posted : 04/26/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Laborer Group 1	\$34.62		\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.45	\$0.00	\$1.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$48.42	\$65.73
Group 2	\$34.79		\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.45	\$0.00	\$1.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$48.59	\$65.98
Group 3	\$35.12		\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.45	\$0.00	\$1.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$48.92	\$66.48
Group 4	\$35.57		\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.45	\$0.00	\$1.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$49.37	\$67.15
Watch Person	\$27.35		\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.45	\$0.00	\$1.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$41.15	\$54.83
Apprentice	Percent											
0-1000 hrs	60.00	\$20.77	\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.45	\$0.00	\$1.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$34.57	\$44.96
1001-2000 hrs	70.00	\$24.23	\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.45	\$0.00	\$1.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$38.03	\$50.15
2001-3000 hrs	80.00	\$27.70	\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.45	\$0.00	\$1.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$41.50	\$55.34
3001-4000 hrs	90.00	\$31.16	\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.45	\$0.00	\$1.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$44.96	\$60.54
More than 4000 hrs	100.00	\$34.62	\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.45	\$0.00	\$1.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$48.42	\$65.73

Special Calculation Note : Watchmen have no Apprentices. Tunnel Laborer rate with air-pressurized add \$1.00 to the above wage rate.

Ratio :

1 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice
3 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice thereafter

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, ALLEN, ASHLAND, ATHENS, AUGLAIZE, BELMONT, BROWN, BUTLER, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, COLUMBIANA, COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, DARKE, DEFIANCE, DELAWARE, FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, FULTON, GALLIA, GREENE, GUERNSEY, HAMILTON, HANCOCK, HARDIN, HARRISON, HENRY, HIGHLAND, HOCKING, HOLMES, JACKSON, JEFFERSON, KNOX, LAWRENCE, LICKING, LOGAN, MADISON, MARION, MEIGS, MERCER, MIAMI, MONROE, MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MORROW,

MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, PAULDING, PERRY,
PICKAWAY, PIKE, PREBLE, PUTNAM, RICHLAND,
ROSS, SCIOTO, SENECA, SHELBY,
TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VAN WERT, VINTON,
WARREN, WASHINGTON, WAYNE, WILLIAMS,
WYANDOT

Special Jurisdictional Note : Hod Carriers and Common Laborers - Heavy, Highway, Sewer, Waterworks, Utility, Airport, Railroad, Industrial and Building Site, Sewer Plant, Waste Water Treatment Facilities Construction

Details :

Group 1

Laborer (Construction); Plant Laborer or Yardman, Right-of-way Laborer, Landscape Laborer, Highway Lighting Worker, Signalization Worker, (Swimming) Pool Construction Laborer, Utility Man, *Bridge Man, Handyman, Joint Setter, Flagperson, Carpenter Helper, Waterproofing Laborer, Slurry Seal, Seal Coating, Surface Treatment or Road Mix Laborer, Riprap Laborer & Grouter, Asphalt Laborer, Dump Man (batch trucks), Guardrail & Fence Installer, Mesh Handler & Placer, Concrete Curing Applicator, Scaffold Erector, Sign Installer, Hazardous Waste (level D), Diver Helper, Zone Person and Traffic Control.

*Bridge Man will perform work as per the October 31, 1949, memorandum on concrete forms, by and between the United Brotherhood of Carpenters and Joiners of America and the Laborers' International Union of North America, which states in; "the moving, cleaning, oiling and carrying to the next point of erection, and the stripping of forms which are not to be re-used, and forms on all flat arch work shall be done by members of the Laborers' International Union of North America."

Group 2

Asphalt Raker, Screwman or Paver, Concrete Puddler, Kettle Man (pipeline), All Machine-Driven Tools (Gas, Electric, Air), Mason Tender, Brick Paver, Mortar Mixer, Skid Steer, Sheeting & Shoring Person, Surface Grinder Person, Screedperson, Water Blast, Hand Held Wand, Power Buggy or Power Wheelbarrow, Paint Striper, Plastic fusing Machine Operator, Rodding Machine Operator, Pug Mill Operator, Operator of All Vacuum Devices Wet or Dry, Handling of all Pumps 4 inches and under (gas, air or electric), Diver, Form Setter, Bottom Person, Welder Helper (pipeline), Concrete Saw Person, Cutting with Burning Torch, Pipe Layer, Hand Spiker (railroad), Underground Person (working in sewer and waterline, cleaning, repairing and reconditioning). Tunnel Laborer (without air), Caisson, Cofferdam (below 25 feet deep), Air Track and Wagon Drill, Sandblaster Nozzle Person, Hazardous Waste (level B), ***Lead Abatement, Hazardous Waste (level C)

***Includes the erecting of structures for the removal, including the encapsulation and containment of Lead abatement process.

Group 3

Blast and Powder Person, Muckers will be defined as shovel men working directly with the miners, Wrencher (mechanical joints & utility pipeline), Yarner, Top Lander, Hazardous Waste (level A), Concrete Specialist, Curb Setter and Cutter, Grade Checker, Concrete Crew in Tunnels. Utility pipeline Tappers, Waterline, Caulker, Signal Person will receive the rate equal to the rate paid the Laborer classification for which the Laborer is signaling.

Group 4

Miner, Welder, Gunitite Nozzle Person

A.) The Watchperson shall be responsible to patrol and maintain a safe traffic zone including but not limited to barrels, cones, signs, arrow boards, message boards etc.

The responsibility of a watchperson is to see that the equipment, job and office trailer etc. are secure.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Labor Local 1410 Building

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLoc1410

Craft : Laborer Effective Date : 04/05/2023 Last Posted : 04/05/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Laborer Group 1	\$30.35		\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$43.10	\$58.28
Group 2	\$30.95		\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$43.70	\$59.17
Group 3	\$31.45		\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$44.20	\$59.92
Apprentice	Percent											
Building Laborer 1-1000 hrs	60.00	\$18.21	\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$30.96	\$40.07
1001-2000	70.02	\$21.25	\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$34.00	\$44.63
2001-3000	80.00	\$24.28	\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$37.03	\$49.17
3001-4000	89.99	\$27.31	\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$40.06	\$53.72
More than 4000 hrs	100.00	\$30.35	\$8.20	\$4.05	\$0.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$43.10	\$58.28

Special Calculation Note : \$0.10 LECET is for Labor Management.

Ratio :

1 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice
4 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, DARKE, GREENE, LOGAN, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, PREBLE

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Group 1

Building & Construction Laborer, Railroad Laborer, Asbestos & Hazardous Waste (Levels A,B,C, & D), Concrete Crew, Form Setter, Pipelayer, Bottom Man, Burner (Cutting Torch), Welder Helper, All Machine & Power Driven Tools, Sandblaster

Yardman-Landscaping, Sewer Jet, Waterperson, Tool Cage Laborer, Unloading Furniture & Fixtures, Final Clean-Up

Watchman, Residential Construction, Signal Men

Group 2

Mason Tender For Bricklayers, Flexcore, Firebrick Tender (Blast Furnaces, Soaking Pits, Stoves & Stacks), Plasterer Tenders & Lathers

Group 3 Tender Operator

Asbestos, Lead and Hazardous Material:

The removal, abatement or encapsulation of asbestos, lead and/or toxic and hazardous waste or materials is defined as all work included in the erection, moving servicing and dismantling of all enclosures, scaffolding, barricades, etc. and the operation of all tools and equipment (including generators, compressors and vacuums) normally used in the removal or abatement or asbestos, lead and toxic and hazardous waste or materials; the labeling, bagging, cartoning, crating or otherwise packaging of materials for disposal; as well as the clean-up of the work site and all other work incidental to the removal, abatement or encapsulation of asbestos, lead or toxic and hazardous waste materials.

Level A

Protective equipment is required when the area has been determined to contain extremely toxic contaminants or contaminants unknown but may be expected to be extremely toxic and/or immediately dangerous to life and health. This ensemble includes a fully encapsulated chemical suit, self contained breathing apparatus (SCBA) or airline fed respirator, and various types and numbers of boots and gloves.

Level B

Protective equipment includes a chemically resistant splash suit and a SCBA or airline respirator. This ensemble is required when the situation is very hazardous, such as oxygen deficient atmospheres, IDLH atmospheres, or confined space entries.

Level C

Protective equipment includes a protective suit and an air purifying respirator (APR) with the appropriate filter canisters.

Level D

To be worn only in established "safe zones" may consist of, from normal work clothes to normal skin protection such as gloves, face shields goggles, coveralls and occasionally respiratory protection.

1st Year	50.00	\$20.75	\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$37.00	\$47.37
2nd Year	60.00	\$24.89	\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$41.14	\$53.59
3rd Year	70.00	\$29.04	\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$45.29	\$59.81
4th Year	80.00	\$33.19	\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$49.44	\$66.04

Special Calculation Note : Other: Education & Safety \$0.09; *Misc is National Training

Ratio :

For every (3) Operating Engineer Journeymen employed by the company there may be employed (1) Registered Apprentice or trainee Engineer through the referral when they are available. An apprentice, while employed as part of a crew per Article VIII, paragraph 78, will not be subject to the apprenticeship ratios in this collective bargaining agreement

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, ALLEN, ASHLAND, ATHENS, AUGLAIZE, BELMONT, BROWN, BUTLER, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, DARKE, DEFIANCE, DELAWARE, FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, FULTON, GALLIA, GREENE, GUERNSEY, HAMILTON, HANCOCK, HARDIN, HARRISON, HENRY, HIGHLAND, HOCKING, HOLMES, JACKSON, JEFFERSON, KNOX, LAWRENCE, LICKING, LOGAN, MADISON, MARION, MEIGS, MERCER, MIAMI, MONROE, MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MORROW, MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, OTTAWA, PAULDING, PERRY, PICKAWAY, PIKE, PREBLE, PUTNAM, RICHLAND, ROSS, SANDUSKY, SCIOTO, SENECA, SHELBY, STARK, TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VAN WERT, VINTON, WARREN, WASHINGTON, WAYNE, WILLIAMS, WYANDOT

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Note: There will be a 10% increase for the apprentices on top of the percentages listed above provided they are operating mobile equipment. Mechanic Trainees will receive 10% increase if required to have CDL

Group A- Barrier Moving Machines; Boiler Operators or Compressor Operators, when compressor or boiler is mounted on crane (Piggyback Operation); Boom Trucks (all types); Cableways Cherry Pickers; Combination - Concrete Mixers & Towers; All Concrete Pumps with Booms; Cranes (all types); Compact Cranes, track or rubber over 4,000 pounds capacity; Cranes self-erecting, stationary, track or truck (all configurations); Derricks (all types); Draglines; Dredges (dipper, clam or suction) 3-man crew; Elevating Graders or Euclid Loaders; Floating Equipment; Forklift (rough terrain with winch/hoist); Gradalls; Helicopter Operators, hoisting building materials; Helicopter Winch Operators, Hoisting building materials; Hoes (All types); Hoists (with two or more drums in use); Horizontal Directional Drill; Hydraulic Gantry (lift system); Laser Finishing Machines; Laser Scream and like equipment; Lift Slab or Panel Jack Operators; Locomotives (all types); Maintenance Operator/Technician(Mechanic Operator/Technician and/or Welder); Mixers, paving (multiple drum); Mobile Concrete Pumps, with booms; Panelboards, (all types on site); Pile Drivers; Power Shovels; Prentice Loader; Rail Tamper (with automatic lifting and aligning device); Rotary Drills (all), used on caissons for foundations and sub-structure; Side Booms; Slip Form Pavers; Straddle Carriers (Building Construction on site); Trench Machines (over 24" wide); Tug Boats.

Group B - Articulating/end dumps (minus \$4.00/hour from Group B rate); Asphalt Pavers; Bobcat-type and/or skid steer loader with hoe attachment greater than 7000 lbs.; Bulldozers; CMI type Equipment; Concrete Saw, Vermeer-type; Endloaders; Hydro Milling Machine; Kolman-type Loaders (Dirt Loading); Lead Greasemen; Mucking Machines; Pettibone-Rail Equipment; Power Graders; Power Scoops; Power Scrapers; Push Cats; Rotomills (all), grinders and planers of all types.

Group C - A-Frames; Air Compressors, Pressurizing Shafts or Tunnels; All Asphalt Rollers; Bobcat-type and/or Skid Steer Loader with or without attachments; Boilers (15 lbs. pressure and over); All Concrete Pumps (without booms with 5 inch system); Fork Lifts (except masonry); Highway Drills - all types (with integral power); Hoists (with one drum); House Elevators (except those automatic call button controlled), Buck Hoists, Transport Platforms, Construction Elevators; Hydro Vac/Excavator (when a second person is needed, the rate of pay will be "Class E"); Man Lifts; Material hoist/elevators; Mud Jacks; Pressure Grouting; Pump Operators (installing or operating Well Points or other types of Dewatering Systems); Pumps (4 inches and over discharge); Railroad Tie (Inserter/Remover); Rotovator (Lime-Soil Stabilizer); Submersible Pumps (4" and over discharge); Switch & Tie Tampers (without lifting and aligning device); Trench Machines (24" and under); Utility Operators.

Group D - Backfillers and Tampers; Ballast Re-locator; Batch Plant Operators; Bar and Joint Installing Machines; Bull Floats; Burlap and Curing Machines; Clefplanes; Compressors, on building construction; Concrete Mixers, more than one bag capacity; Concrete Mixers, one bag capacity (side loaders); All Concrete Pumps (without boom with 4" or smaller system); Concrete Spreader; Conveyors, used for handling building materials; Crushers; Deckhands; Drum Fireman (in asphalt plants); Farm type tractors pulling attachments; Finishing Machines; Form Trenchers; Generators; Guniting Machines; Hydro-seeders; Pavement Breakers (hydraulic or cable); Post Drivers; Post Hole Diggers; Pressure Pumps (over 1/2" discharge); Road Widening Trenchers; Rollers (except asphalt); Self-propelled sub-graders; Shotcrete Machines; Tire Repairmen; Tractors, pulling sheepsfoot post roller or grader; VAC/ALLS; Vibratory Compactors, with integral power; Welders.

Group E – Allen Screed Paver (concrete); Boilers (less than 15 lbs. pressure); Cranes-Compact, track or rubber (under 4,000 pounds capacity); Directional Drill "Locator"; Fueling and greasing +\$3.00; Inboard/outboard Motor Boat Launches; Light Plant Operators; Masonry Fork Lifts; Oilers/Helpers; Power Driven Heaters (oil fired); Power Scrubbers; Power Sweepers; Pumps (under 4 inch discharge); Signalperson, Submersible Pumps (under 4" discharge).

Master Mechanics - Master Mechanic

Cranes 150' – 180' - Boom & Jib 150 - 180 feet

Cranes 180' – 249' - Boom & Jib 180 - 249 feet

Cranes 250' and over - Boom & Jib 250-feet or over

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Operating Engineers - HevHwy Zone II

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLoc18hevhwyll

Craft : Operating Engineer Effective Date : 05/01/2023 Last Posted : 04/26/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification												
Operator Class A	\$41.49		\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$57.74	\$78.48
Operator Class B	\$41.37		\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$57.62	\$78.30
Operator Class C	\$40.33		\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$56.58	\$76.74
Operator Class D	\$39.15		\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$55.40	\$74.97
Operator Class E	\$33.69		\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$49.94	\$66.78
Master Mechanic	\$41.74		\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$57.99	\$78.86
Apprentice Percent												
1st Year	50.00	\$20.75	\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$37.00	\$47.37
2nd Year	60.00	\$24.89	\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$41.14	\$53.59
3rd Year	70.00	\$29.04	\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$45.29	\$59.81
4th Year	80.00	\$33.19	\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$49.44	\$66.04
Field Mech Trainee Class 2												
1st year	50.00	\$20.75	\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$37.00	\$47.37
2nd year	60.00	\$24.89	\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$41.14	\$53.59
3rd year	70.00	\$29.04	\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$45.29	\$59.81
4th year	80.00	\$33.19	\$9.01	\$6.25	\$0.85	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.09	\$0.00	\$0.05	\$49.44	\$66.04

Special Calculation Note : Other: Education & Safety Fund is \$0.09 per hour. *Misc is National Training

Ratio :

For every (3) Operating Engineer Journeymen employed by the company, there may be employed (1) Registered Apprentice or Trainee Engineer through the referral when they are available. An Apprentice, while

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, ALLEN, ASHLAND, ATHENS, AUGLAIZE, BELMONT, BROWN, BUTLER, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, DARKE, DEFIANCE,

employed as part of a crew per Article VIII, paragraph 65 will not be subject to the apprenticeship ratios in this collective bargaining agreement

DELAWARE, FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, FULTON, GALLIA, GREENE, GUERNSEY, HAMILTON, HANCOCK, HARDIN, HARRISON, HENRY, HIGHLAND, HOCKING, HOLMES, HURON, JACKSON, JEFFERSON, KNOX, LAWRENCE, LICKING, LOGAN, LUCAS, MADISON, MARION, MEIGS, MERCER, MIAMI, MONROE, MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MORROW, MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, OTTAWA, PAULDING, PERRY, PICKAWAY, PIKE, PREBLE, PUTNAM, RICHLAND, ROSS, SANDUSKY, SCIOTO, SENECA, SHELBY, STARK, TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VAN WERT, VINTON, WARREN, WASHINGTON, WAYNE, WILLIAMS, WOOD, WYANDOT

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

**Apprentices will receive a 10% increase on top of the percentages listed above provided they are operating mobile equipment. Mechanic Trainees will receive 10% increase if they are required to have CDL.

Class A - Air Compressors on Steel Erection; Asphalt Plant Engineers (Cleveland District Only); Barrier Moving Machine; Boiler Operators, Compressor Operators, or Generators, when mounted on a rig; Boom Trucks (all types); Cableways; Cherry Pickers; Combination- Concrete Mixers & Towers; Concrete Plants (over 4 yd capacity); Concrete Pumps; Cranes (all types); Compact Cranes track or rubber over 4,000 pounds capacity; Cranes self-erecting stationary, track or truck; Derricks (all types); Draglines; Dredges dipper, clam or suction; Elevating Graders or Euclid Loaders; Floating Equipment (all types); Gradalls; Helicopter Crew (Operator- hoist or winch); Hoes (all types); Hoisting Engines; Hoisting Engines, on shaft or tunnel work; Hydraulic Gantry (lifting system); Industrial-type Tractors; Jet Engine Dryer (D8 or D9) diesel Tractors; Locomotives (standard gauge); Maintenance Operators/Technicians (class A); Mixers, paving (single or double drum); Mucking Machines; Multiple Scrapers; Piledriving Machines (all types); Power Shovels, Prentice Loader; Quad 9 (double pusher); Rail Tamper (with automatic lifting and aligning device); Refrigerating Machines (freezer operation); Rotary Drills, on caisson work; Rough Terrain Fork Lift with winch/hoist; Side Booms; Slip Form Pavers; Survey Crew Party Chiefs; Tower Derricks; Tree Shredders; Trench Machines (over 24" wide); Truck Mounted Concrete Pumps; Tug Boats; Tunnel Machines and /or Mining Machines; Wheel Excavators.

Class B - Asphalt Pavers; Automatic Subgrade Machines, self-propelled (CMI-type); Bobcat-type and /or Skid Steer Loader with hoe attachment greater than 7000 lbs.; Boring Machine Operators (more than 48 inches); Bulldozers; Concrete Saws, Vermeer type; Endloaders; Horizontal Directional Drill (50,000 ft. lbs. thrust and over); Hydro Milling Machine; Kolman-type Loaders (production type-dirt); Lead Greasemen; Lighting and Traffic Signal Installation Equipment includes all groups or classifications; Maintenance Operators/Technicians, Class B; Material Transfer Equipment (shuttle buggy) Asphalt; Pettibone-Rail Equipment; Power Graders; Power Scrapers; Push Cats; Rotomills (all), Grinders and Planners of all types, Groovers (excluding walk-behinds); Trench Machines (24 inch wide and under).

Class C - A-Frames; Air Compressors, on tunnel work (low Pressure); Articulating/straight bed end dumps if assigned (minus \$4.00 per hour); Asphalt Plant Engineers (Portage and Summit Counties only); Bobcat-type and/or skid steer loader with or without attachments; Drones; Highway Drills (all types); HydroVac/Excavator (when a second person is needed, the rate of pay will be "Class E"); Locomotives (narrow gauge); Material Hoist/Elevators; Mixers, concrete (more than one bag capacity); Mixers, one bag capacity (side loader); Power Boilers (over 15 lbs. pressure); Pump Operators (installing or operating well Points); Pumps (4 inch and over discharge); Railroad Tie Inserter/Remover; Rollers, Asphalt; Rotovator (lime-soil Stabilizer); Switch & Tie Tampers (without lifting and aligning device); Utilities Operators, (small equipment); Welding Machines and

Generators.

Class D – Backfillers and Tampers; Ballast Re-locator; Bar and Joint Installing Machines; Batch Plant Operators; Boring Machine Operators (48 inch or less); Bull Floats; Burlap and Curing Machines; Concrete Plants (capacity 4 yds. and under); Concrete Saws (multiple); Conveyors (highway); Crushers; Deckhands; Farm type tractors, with attachments (highway); Finishing Machines; Firemen, Floating Equipment (all types); Fork Lifts (highway), except masonry; Form Trenchers; Hydro Hammers; Hydro Seeders; Pavement Breakers (hydraulic or cable); Plant Mixers; Post Drivers; Post Hole Diggers; Power Brush Burners; Power Form Handling Equipment; Road Widening Trenchers; Rollers (brick, grade, macadam); Self-Propelled Power Spreaders; Self-Propelled Sub-Graders; Steam Firemen; Survey Instrument men; Tractors, pulling sheepsfoot rollers or graders; Vibratory Compactors, with integral power.

Class E - Compressors (portable, Sewer, Heavy and Highway); Cranes-Compact, track or rubber under 4,000 pound capacity; Drum Firemen (asphalt plant); Fueling and greasing (Primary Operator with Specialized CDL Endorsement Add \$3.00/hr); Generators; Inboard-Outboard Motor Boat Launches; Masonry Fork Lifts; Oil Heaters (asphalt plant); Oilers/Helpers; Power Driven Heaters (oil fired); Power Scrubbers; Power Sweepers; Pumps (under 4 inch discharge); Signalperson; Survey Rodmen or Chairmen; Tire Repairmen; VAC/ALLS. Master Mechanic - Master Mechanic

Prevailing Wage Rate

Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Painter Local 249

Change # : LCN02-2023ibLoc249

Craft : Drywall Finisher Effective Date : 05/10/2023 Last Posted : 05/10/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification												
Painter Drywall Finisher	\$26.23		\$5.87	\$6.69	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$39.12	\$52.23
Apprentice	Percent											
30 Day Probationary	50.00	\$13.12	\$5.87	\$0.45	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$19.76	\$26.32
1st Year	65.00	\$17.05	\$5.87	\$0.45	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$23.70	\$32.22
2nd Year	65.00	\$17.05	\$5.87	\$0.45	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$23.70	\$32.22
3rd Year	75.00	\$19.67	\$5.87	\$0.45	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$26.32	\$36.16
4th Year	85.00	\$22.30	\$5.87	\$0.45	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$28.95	\$40.09

Special Calculation Note :

Ratio :

1 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

CLARK, DARKE, GREENE, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, PREBLE

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Industrial work but not limited to: work done on industrial plants, repair garages, processing plants, storage tanks, warehouses, skeleton structures, bridges, whether new or old construction, office buildings in industrial sites and interior of shopping malls.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Painter Local 249

Change # : LCN02-2023ibLoc249

Craft : Painter Effective Date : 05/10/2023 Last Posted : 05/10/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Painter Brush Roll	\$26.23		\$5.87	\$6.69	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$39.12	\$52.23
Paper Hanger	\$26.23		\$5.87	\$6.69	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$39.12	\$52.23
Spray Commercial	\$26.23		\$5.87	\$6.69	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$39.12	\$52.23
Spray Industrial	\$26.23		\$5.87	\$6.69	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$39.12	\$52.23
Sandblasting, Steam Cleaning-Lead Abatement	\$26.98		\$5.87	\$6.69	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$39.87	\$53.36
Special Coating (Coal Tar) Spray Applied	\$27.73		\$5.87	\$6.69	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$40.62	\$54.48
Steeplejack Work	\$27.18		\$5.87	\$6.69	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$40.07	\$53.66
Elevated Tanks	\$29.87		\$5.87	\$6.69	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$42.76	\$57.69
Water Blasting	\$26.98		\$5.87	\$6.69	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$39.87	\$53.36
Apprentice	Percent											
30 Day Probationary	50.00	\$13.12	\$5.87	\$0.45	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$19.76	\$26.32
1st Year	65.00	\$17.05	\$5.87	\$0.45	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$23.70	\$32.22
2nd Year	65.00	\$17.05	\$5.87	\$0.45	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$23.70	\$32.22
3rd Year	75.00	\$19.67	\$5.87	\$0.45	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$26.32	\$36.16
4th Year	85.00	\$22.30	\$5.87	\$0.45	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$28.95	\$40.09

Special Calculation Note :

Ratio :

1 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

CLARK, DARKE, GREENE, MIAMI,
MONTGOMERY, PREBLE

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Industrial work but not limited to:work done on industrial plants, repair garages, processing plants,storage tanks, warehouses, skeleton structures,bridges,whether new or old construction, office buildings in industrial sites and interior of shopping malls.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Painter Local 249 HevHwy

Change # : LCN02-2023ibLoc249

Craft : Painter Effective Date : 05/10/2023 Last Posted : 05/10/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification												
Painter Bridge Blaster Class 1	\$37.94		\$5.87	\$6.69	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$50.83	\$69.80
Bridge Painter, Rigger, Containment Builder, Spot Blaster Class 2	\$34.94		\$5.87	\$6.69	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$47.83	\$65.30
Equipment Operator/Field Mechanic, Grit Reclamation, Paint Mixer, Traffic Control, Boat Person, Driver Class 3	\$32.94		\$5.87	\$6.69	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.83	\$62.30
Concrete Sealing, Concrete Blasting/Power Washing/Etc. Class 4	\$30.97		\$5.87	\$6.69	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$43.86	\$59.34
Quality Control/Quality Assurance, Traffic safety, Competent Person Class 5	\$30.94		\$5.87	\$6.69	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$43.83	\$59.30
Apprentice												
	Percent											
30 day Probationary	50.00	\$18.97	\$5.87	\$0.45	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$25.62	\$35.10
1st Year	65.02	\$24.67	\$5.87	\$0.45	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$31.32	\$43.65
2nd Year	65.02	\$24.67	\$5.87	\$0.45	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$31.32	\$43.65
3rd Year	75.02	\$28.46	\$5.87	\$0.45	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$35.11	\$49.34
4th Year	85.00	\$32.25	\$5.87	\$0.45	\$0.33	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$38.90	\$55.02

Special Calculation Note :

Ratio :

1 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

CLARK, DARKE, GREENE, MIAMI,
MONTGOMERY, PREBLE

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Painter Local 639

Change # : LCNO1-2015fbLoc639

Craft : Painter Effective Date : 06/10/2015 Last Posted : 06/10/2015

	BHR	Fringe Benefit Payments						Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate
		H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification											
Painter Metal Finisher/Helpers											
Top Helper Class A	\$19.09	\$3.65	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.66	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$23.40	\$32.94
Top Helper Class B	\$19.09	\$3.65	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$1.03	\$0.00	\$0.37	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$24.79	\$34.33
Top Helper Class C	\$19.09	\$3.65	\$1.00	\$0.00	\$1.76	\$0.00	\$0.37	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$25.87	\$35.41
Helper Class A	\$14.69	\$3.65	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.51	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$18.85	\$26.19
Helper Class B	\$14.69	\$3.65	\$0.65	\$0.00	\$0.79	\$0.00	\$0.28	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$20.06	\$27.40
Helper Class C	\$14.69	\$3.65	\$1.00	\$0.00	\$1.64	\$0.00	\$0.28	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$21.26	\$28.60
New Hire 90 Days	\$11.00	\$3.65	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$14.65	\$20.15

Special Calculation Note : Other is Sick and Personal Time

Ratio :

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, ALLEN, ASHLAND, ASHTABULA, ATHENS, AUGLAIZE, BELMONT, BROWN, BUTLER, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, COLUMBIANA, COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, CUYAHOGA, DARKE, DEFIANCE, DELAWARE, ERIE, FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, FULTON, GALLIA, GEAUGA, GREENE, GUERNSEY, HAMILTON, HANCOCK, HARDIN, HARRISON, HENRY, HIGHLAND, HOCKING, HOLMES, HURON, JACKSON, JEFFERSON, KNOX, LAKE, LAWRENCE, LICKING, LOGAN, LORAIN, LUCAS, MADISON, MAHONING, MARION, MEDINA, MEIGS, MERCER, MIAMI, MONROE, MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MORROW, MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, OTTAWA, PAULDING, PERRY, PICKAWAY, PIKE, PORTAGE, PREBLE, PUTNAM, RICHLAND, ROSS, SANDUSKY,

SCIOTO, SENECA, SHELBY, STARK, SUMMIT,
TRUMBULL, TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VAN WERT,
VINTON, WARREN, WASHINGTON, WAYNE,
WILLIAMS, WOOD, WYANDOT

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Top Helper: Shall perform the responsibilities of a Helper and be responsible for the setup, break down, safety and quality of the company's product.

Helper : Shall be responsible for performing tasks in refinishing, compliance with safety procedures, setting up and breaking down job sites, scaffolding and swing stages and preparing surfaces for refinishing including but not limited to, masking and stripping and cleaning, oxidizing, polishing and scratch removal on various surfaces

Class A Workers: Less than 1 Year of Service.

Class B Workers: More than 1 and less than 8 Years of Service.

Class C Workers: More than 8 Years of Service.

Metal Polisher Scope of Work: Polishing, buffing, stripping, coloring, lacquering, spraying, cleaning and maintenance of ornamental and architectural metals, iron, bronze, nickel, aluminum and stainless steel and in mental specialty work, various stone finishes, stone specialty work and any other work pertaining to the finishing of metal, stones, woods, and any window washing/cleaning done in conjunction with this work, using chemicals, solvents, coatings and hand applied lacquer thinner, removing scratches from mirror finished metals, burnishing of bronze, statuary finishes on exterior and interior surfaces and the use of all tools required to perform such work, including but not limited to polishes, spray equipment and scaffolding.

Swing State Rate: All work on scaffold 4 sections or higher, including any boom lifts and swing stage scaffolds including the rigging and derigging of hanging/suspended swing stage systems and rappelling/bolson chair work, ADD \$1.50 per hour.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Painter Local 639 Zone 2 Sign

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLoc639

Craft : Painter Effective Date : 03/22/2023 Last Posted : 03/22/2023

	BHR	Fringe Benefit Payments						Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate
		H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification											
Painter Sign Journeyman Tech/Team Leader Class A	\$25.28	\$1.70	\$0.21	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.68	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$27.87	\$40.51
Painter Sign Journeyman Tech/Team Leader Class B	\$25.28	\$1.70	\$0.21	\$0.00	\$0.49	\$0.00	\$0.68	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$28.36	\$41.00
Painter Sign Journeyman Tech/Team Leader Class C	\$25.28	\$1.70	\$0.21	\$0.00	\$0.97	\$0.00	\$0.68	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$28.84	\$41.48
Painter Sign Journeyman Tech/Team Leader Class D	\$25.28	\$1.70	\$0.21	\$0.00	\$1.46	\$0.00	\$0.68	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$29.33	\$41.97
Sign Journeyman Class A	\$25.00	\$1.70	\$0.21	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.67	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$27.58	\$40.08
Sign Journeyman Class B	\$25.00	\$1.70	\$0.21	\$0.00	\$0.48	\$0.00	\$0.67	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$28.06	\$40.56
Sign Journeyman Class C	\$25.00	\$1.70	\$0.21	\$0.00	\$0.96	\$0.00	\$0.67	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$28.54	\$41.04
Sign Journeyman Class D	\$25.00	\$1.70	\$0.21	\$0.00	\$1.44	\$0.00	\$0.67	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$29.02	\$41.52
Tech Sign Fabrication/ Erector Class A	\$19.67	\$1.70	\$0.21	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.53	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$22.11	\$31.95

Tech Sign Fabrication/ Erector Class B	\$19.67	\$1.70	\$0.21	\$0.00	\$0.38	\$0.00	\$0.53	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$22.49	\$32.33
Tech Sign Fabrication/ Erector Class C	\$19.67	\$1.70	\$0.21	\$0.00	\$0.76	\$0.00	\$0.53	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$22.87	\$32.71
Tech Sign Fabrication/ Erector Class D	\$19.67	\$1.70	\$0.21	\$0.00	\$1.13	\$0.00	\$0.53	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$23.24	\$33.08

Special Calculation Note : Other is for paid holidays.

Ratio :

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, ALLEN, AUGLAIZE, BROWN, BUTLER, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, COLUMBIANA, COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, DARKE, DEFIANCE, DELAWARE, ERIE, FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, FULTON, GREENE, HAMILTON, HANCOCK, HARDIN, HENRY, HIGHLAND, HOLMES, HURON, JACKSON, KNOX, LICKING, LOGAN, LORAIN, LUCAS, MADISON, MAHONING, MARION, MERCER, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, MORROW, MUSKINGUM, OTTAWA, PAULDING, PERRY, PICKAWAY, PIKE, PREBLE, PUTNAM, ROSS, SANDUSKY, SCIOTO, SENECA, SHELBY, STARK, TRUMBULL, TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VAN WERT, WARREN, WAYNE, WILLIAMS, WOOD, WYANDOT

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Class A: less that 1 year.

Class B: 1-3 years.

Class C; 3-10 years.

Class D: More than 10 years.

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Plasterer Local 132 (Dayton)

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLoc132

Craft : Plaster Effective Date : 05/03/2023 Last Posted : 05/03/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Plasterer	\$27.39		\$7.80	\$7.35	\$0.70	\$0.00	\$3.45	\$0.06	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$46.75	\$60.45
Apprentice	Percent											
1st 6 months	70.00	\$19.17	\$7.80	\$0.00	\$0.70	\$0.00	\$3.45	\$0.06	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$31.18	\$40.77
2nd 6 months	74.00	\$20.27	\$7.80	\$0.00	\$0.70	\$0.00	\$3.45	\$0.06	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$32.28	\$42.41
3rd 6 months	78.00	\$21.36	\$7.80	\$7.35	\$0.70	\$0.00	\$3.45	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$40.66	\$51.35
4th 6 months	82.00	\$22.46	\$7.80	\$7.35	\$0.70	\$0.00	\$3.45	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$41.76	\$52.99
5th 6 months	86.00	\$23.56	\$7.80	\$7.35	\$0.70	\$0.00	\$3.45	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$42.86	\$54.63
6th 6 months	90.00	\$24.65	\$7.80	\$7.35	\$0.70	\$0.00	\$3.45	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$43.95	\$56.28
7th 6 months	94.00	\$25.75	\$7.80	\$7.35	\$0.70	\$0.00	\$3.45	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.05	\$57.92
8th 6 months	98.00	\$26.84	\$7.80	\$7.35	\$0.70	\$0.00	\$3.45	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$46.14	\$59.56

Special Calculation Note : *Other is International Training.

Ratio :

1 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLINTON, DARKE,
GREENE, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, PREBLE,
SHELBY

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

OTHER IS:Industry Fund

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Plumber Pipefitter Local 162

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLoc162

Craft : Plumber/Pipefitter Effective Date : 08/30/2023 Last Posted : 08/30/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments						Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification												
Plumber Pipefitter	\$40.00		\$11.75	\$10.87	\$0.90	\$0.00	\$3.35	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$66.87	\$86.87
Apprentice Indentured AFTER 6/1/2002												
Percent												
1st Year	51.00	\$20.40	\$11.75	\$3.26	\$0.50	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$35.91	\$46.11
2nd Year	55.90	\$22.36	\$11.75	\$5.69	\$0.54	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$40.34	\$51.52
3rd Year	60.80	\$24.32	\$11.75	\$8.53	\$0.58	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.18	\$57.34
4th Year	72.45	\$28.98	\$11.75	\$10.63	\$0.66	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.02	\$66.51
5th Year	80.40	\$32.16	\$11.75	\$10.87	\$0.74	\$0.00	\$3.35	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$58.87	\$74.95

Special Calculation Note :

Ratio :

- 1 Journeyman to 1 Apprentice
- 2 - 4 Journeymen to 2 Apprentices
- 5 - 7 Journeymen to 3 Apprentices
- 8 - 10 Journeymen to 4 Apprentices

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

- CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLINTON, DARKE,
- FAYETTE, GREENE, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY,
- PREBLE

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Wage rate covers: all plumbing, pipefitting, heating, refrigeration and air conditioning work.

Prevailing Wage Rate

Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Roofer Local 75

Change # : LCN01-2022sksLoc75

Craft : Roofer Effective Date : 08/26/2022 Last Posted : 08/26/2022

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Roofer	\$25.63		\$8.73	\$8.78	\$0.76	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$1.80	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.70	\$58.51
Slate and Tile	\$25.85		\$8.73	\$8.78	\$0.76	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$1.80	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.92	\$58.85
Apprentice												
	Percent											
1st term 1000 hrs	66.32	\$17.00	\$2.50	\$0.50	\$0.76	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$1.80	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$22.56	\$31.06
2nd term 1000 hrs	70.22	\$18.00	\$8.58	\$1.32	\$0.76	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$1.80	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$30.46	\$39.46
3rd term 1000 hrs	74.12	\$19.00	\$8.58	\$2.20	\$0.76	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$1.80	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$32.34	\$41.84
4th term 1000 hrs	78.02	\$20.00	\$8.58	\$3.07	\$0.76	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$1.80	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$34.21	\$44.20
5th term 1000 hrs	81.95	\$21.00	\$8.58	\$3.95	\$0.76	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$1.80	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$36.09	\$46.60
Tradesman	79.00	\$20.25	\$5.00	\$1.58	\$0.76	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$1.80	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$29.39	\$39.51

Special Calculation Note : Other is for National Roofing Industry Pension Plan.

Ratio :

3 Journeymen to 2 Apprentices

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ALLEN, AUGLAIZE, CLARK, CLINTON, DARKE, GREENE, MERCER, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY, PREBLE, SHELBY, VAN WERT

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Sheet Metal Local 24 (Dayton)

Change # : LCN01-2023ibLoc24(Day)

Craft : Sheet Metal Worker Effective Date : 06/07/2023 Last Posted : 06/07/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification												
Sheet Metal Worker	\$31.23		\$9.64	\$15.10	\$1.05	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$57.02	\$72.63
Apprentice	Percent											
Apprentice												
5th Year B	85.00	\$26.55	\$9.40	\$11.47	\$1.05	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.47	\$61.74
5th Year A	80.00	\$24.98	\$9.31	\$10.28	\$1.05	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.62	\$58.12
4th Year B	75.00	\$23.42	\$9.23	\$9.07	\$1.05	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$42.77	\$54.48
4th Year A	70.00	\$21.86	\$9.15	\$7.85	\$1.05	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$39.91	\$50.84
3rd year B	65.00	\$20.30	\$9.06	\$6.65	\$1.05	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$37.06	\$47.21
3rd Year A	60.00	\$18.74	\$8.98	\$5.44	\$1.05	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$34.21	\$43.58
2 Year B	57.52	\$17.96	\$8.94	\$4.84	\$1.05	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$32.79	\$41.78
2 Year A	55.00	\$17.18	\$8.90	\$4.23	\$1.05	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$31.36	\$39.94
Probationary 1 Year	52.50	\$16.40	\$8.86	\$3.63	\$1.05	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$29.94	\$38.13

Special Calculation Note : No special calculations for this skilled craft wage rate are required at this time.

Ratio :

1 Journeyman to 1 Apprentice then,
1 Apprentice for every 2 Journeymen thereafter

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ALLEN, AUGLAIZE, BUTLER, CHAMPAIGN,
CLARK, CLINTON, DARKE, GREENE, HARDIN,
LOGAN, MERCER, MIAMI, MONTGOMERY,
PREBLE, SHELBY, VAN WERT, WARREN,
WYANDOT

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Prevailing Wage Rate Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Sprinkler Fitter Local 669

Change # : LCN01-2022sksLoc669

Craft : Sprinkler Fitter Effective Date : 04/06/2022 Last Posted : 04/06/2022

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments						Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification												
Sprinkler Fitter	\$43.75		\$10.99	\$7.10	\$0.52	\$0.00	\$5.12	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$67.48	\$89.35
Apprentice Indentured after April 1, 2013												
	Percent											
CILASS 1	45.00	\$19.69	\$7.85	\$0.00	\$0.52	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$28.06	\$37.90
CLASS 2	50.02	\$21.88	\$7.85	\$0.00	\$0.52	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$30.25	\$41.20
CLASS 3	54.43	\$23.81	\$10.99	\$7.10	\$0.52	\$0.00	\$1.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$43.57	\$55.48
CLASS 4	59.43	\$26.00	\$10.99	\$7.10	\$0.52	\$0.00	\$1.15	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.76	\$58.76
CLASS 5	64.43	\$28.19	\$10.99	\$7.10	\$0.52	\$0.00	\$1.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.20	\$62.29
CLASS 6	69.43	\$30.38	\$10.99	\$7.10	\$0.52	\$0.00	\$1.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$50.39	\$65.57
CLASS 7	74.43	\$32.56	\$10.99	\$7.10	\$0.52	\$0.00	\$1.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$52.57	\$68.85
CLASS 8	79.42	\$34.75	\$10.99	\$7.10	\$0.52	\$0.00	\$1.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$54.76	\$72.13
CLASS 9	84.43	\$36.94	\$10.99	\$7.10	\$0.52	\$0.00	\$1.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$56.95	\$75.42
CLASS 10	89.44	\$39.13	\$10.99	\$7.10	\$0.52	\$0.00	\$1.40	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$59.14	\$78.70

Special Calculation Note :

Ratio :

1 Journeyman to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, ALLEN, ASHLAND, ASHTABULA, ATHENS, AUGLAIZE, BELMONT, BROWN, BUTLER, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, COLUMBIANA, COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, DARKE, DEFIANCE, DELAWARE, ERIE, FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, FULTON, GALLIA, GREENE, GUERNSEY, HAMILTON, HANCOCK, HARDIN, HARRISON, HENRY, HIGHLAND, HOCKING, HOLMES, HURON, JACKSON, JEFFERSON, KNOX, LAWRENCE, LICKING, LOGAN, LUCAS, MADISON, MAHONING, MARION, MEDINA, MEIGS, MERCER, MIAMI, MONROE, MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MORROW,

MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, OTTAWA, PAULDING,
PERRY, PICKAWAY, PIKE, PORTAGE, PREBLE,
PUTNAM, RICHLAND, ROSS, SANDUSKY,
SCIOTO, SENECA, SHELBY, STARK, SUMMIT,
TRUMBULL, TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VAN WERT,
VINTON, WARREN, WASHINGTON, WAYNE,
WILLIAMS, WOOD, WYANDOT

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Sprinkler Fitter work shall consist of the installation, dismantling, maintenance, repairs, adjustments, and corrections of all fire protection and fire control systems including the unloading, handling by hand, power equipment and installation of all piping or tubing, appurtenances and equipment pertaining thereto, including both overhead and underground water mains, fire hydrants and hydrant mains, standpipes and hose connections to sprinkler systems used in connection with sprinkler and alarm systems. Also all tanks and pumps connected thereto, also included shall be CO-2 and Cardox Systems, Dry Chemical Systems, Foam Systems and all other fire protection systems.

Prevailing Wage Rate

Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Truck Driver Bldg & HevHwy Class 1
 Locals 20,40,92,92b,100,175,284,438,377,637,908,957

Change # : LCN01-2023ibBldgHevHwy

Craft : Truck Driver Effective Date : 05/01/2023 Last Posted : 04/26/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification												
Truck Driver CLASS 1 4 wheel service, dump, and batch trucks; drivers on tandems; truck sweepers (not to include power sweepers & scrubbers)	\$31.24		\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.39	\$64.01
Apprentice	Percent											
First 6 months	80.00	\$24.99	\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$42.14	\$54.64
7-12 months	85.00	\$26.55	\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$43.70	\$56.98
13-18 months	90.00	\$28.12	\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.27	\$59.32
19-24 months	95.00	\$29.68	\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$46.83	\$61.67
25-30 months	100.00	\$31.24	\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.39	\$64.01

Special Calculation Note : No special calculations for this skilled craft wage rate are required at this time.

Ratio :

3 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, ALLEN, ASHLAND, ASHTABULA, ATHENS, AUGLAIZE, BELMONT, BROWN, BUTLER, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK,

CLERMONT, CLINTON, COLUMBIANA,
COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, DARKE, DEFIANCE,
DELAWARE, ERIE, FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE,
FRANKLIN, FULTON, GALLIA, GREENE,
GUERNSEY, HAMILTON, HANCOCK, HARDIN,
HARRISON, HENRY, HIGHLAND, HOCKING,
HOLMES, HURON, JACKSON, JEFFERSON,
KNOX, LAWRENCE, LICKING, LOGAN, LORAIN,
LUCAS, MADISON, MAHONING, MARION,
MEDINA, MEIGS, MERCER, MIAMI, MONROE,
MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MORROW,
MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, OTTAWA, PAULDING,
PERRY, PICKAWAY, PIKE, PORTAGE, PREBLE,
PUTNAM, RICHLAND, ROSS, SANDUSKY,
SCIOTO, SENECA, SHELBY, STARK, SUMMIT,
TRUMBULL, TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VAN WERT,
VINTON, WARREN, WASHINGTON, WAYNE,
WILLIAMS, WOOD, WYANDOT

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Prevailing Wage Rate

Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Truck Driver Bldg & Hwy Class 2
 Locals 20,40,92,92b,100,175,284,438,377,637,908,957

Change # : LCN01-2023ibBldgHwy

Craft : Truck Driver Effective Date : 05/01/2023 Last Posted : 04/26/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)			MISC (*)
Classification												
Truck Driver CLASS 2 Tractor Trailer-Semi Tractor Trucks; Pole Trailers; Ready Mix Trucks; Fuel Trucks; 5 Axle & Over; Belly Dumps; Low boys - Heavy duty Equipment(irrespective of load carried) when used exclusively for transportation; Truck Mechanics (when needed)	\$31.66		\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.81	\$64.64
Apprentice	Percent											
First 6 months	80.00	\$25.33	\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$42.48	\$55.14
7-12 months	85.00	\$26.91	\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$44.06	\$57.52
13-18 months	90.00	\$28.49	\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$45.64	\$59.89
19-24 months	95.00	\$30.08	\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$47.23	\$62.27
25-30 months	100.00	\$31.66	\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.81	\$64.64

Special Calculation Note : No special calculations for this skilled craft wage rate are required at this time.

Ratio :

3 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, ALLEN, ASHLAND, ASHTABULA, ATHENS, AUGLAIZE, BELMONT, BROWN, BUTLER, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, COLUMBIANA, COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, DARKE, DEFIANCE, DELAWARE, ERIE, FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, FULTON, GALLIA, GREENE, GUERNSEY, HAMILTON, HANCOCK, HARDIN, HARRISON, HENRY, HIGHLAND, HOCKING, HOLMES, HURON, JACKSON, JEFFERSON,

KNOX, LAWRENCE, LICKING, LOGAN, LORAIN,
LUCAS, MADISON, MAHONING, MARION,
MEDINA, MEIGS, MERCER, MIAMI, MONROE,
MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MORROW,
MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, OTTAWA, PAULDING,
PERRY, PICKAWAY, PIKE, PORTAGE, PREBLE,
PUTNAM, RICHLAND, ROSS, SANDUSKY,
SCIOTO, SENECA, SHELBY, STARK, SUMMIT,
TRUMBULL, TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VAN WERT,
VINTON, WARREN, WASHINGTON, WAYNE,
WILLIAMS, WOOD, WYANDOT

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :

Prevailing Wage Rate

Skilled Crafts

Name of Union: Truck Driver Bldg & HevHwy Class 3
 Locals 20,40,92,92b,100,175,284,438,377,637,908,957

Change # : LCN01-2023ibBldgHevHwy3

Craft : Truck Driver Effective Date : 05/01/2023 Last Posted : 04/26/2023

	BHR		Fringe Benefit Payments					Irrevocable Fund		Total PWR	Overtime Rate	
			H&W	Pension	App Tr.	Vac.	Annuity	Other	LECET (*)	MISC (*)		
Classification												
Truck Driver CLASS 3 Articulated Dump Trucks; Ridge-Frame Rock Trucks; Distributor Trucks)	\$32.66		\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$49.81	\$66.14
Apprentice	Percent											
First 6 months	80.00	\$26.13	\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$43.28	\$56.34
7-12 months	85.00	\$27.76	\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$44.91	\$58.79
13-18 months	90.00	\$29.39	\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$46.54	\$61.24
19-24 months	95.00	\$31.03	\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$48.18	\$63.69
25-30 months	100.00	\$32.66	\$7.75	\$9.20	\$0.20	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$49.81	\$66.14

Special Calculation Note : No special calculations for this skilled craft wage rate are required at this time.

Ratio :

3 Journeymen to 1 Apprentice

Jurisdiction (* denotes special jurisdictional note) :

ADAMS, ALLEN, ASHLAND, ASHTABULA, ATHENS, AUGLAIZE, BELMONT, BROWN, BUTLER, CARROLL, CHAMPAIGN, CLARK, CLERMONT, CLINTON, COLUMBIANA, COSHOCTON, CRAWFORD, DARKE, DEFIANCE, DELAWARE, ERIE, FAIRFIELD, FAYETTE, FRANKLIN, FULTON, GALLIA, GREENE,

GUERNSEY, HAMILTON, HANCOCK, HARDIN,
HARRISON, HENRY, HIGHLAND, HOCKING,
HOLMES, HURON, JACKSON, JEFFERSON,
KNOX, LAWRENCE, LICKING, LOGAN, LORAIN,
LUCAS, MADISON, MAHONING, MARION,
MEDINA, MEIGS, MERCER, MIAMI, MONROE,
MONTGOMERY, MORGAN, MORROW,
MUSKINGUM, NOBLE, OTTAWA, PAULDING,
PERRY, PICKAWAY, PIKE, PORTAGE, PREBLE,
PUTNAM, RICHLAND, ROSS, SANDUSKY,
SCIOTO, SENECA, SHELBY, STARK, SUMMIT,
TRUMBULL, TUSCARAWAS, UNION, VAN WERT,
VINTON, WARREN, WASHINGTON, WAYNE,
WILLIAMS, WOOD, WYANDOT

Special Jurisdictional Note :

Details :



Affidavit of Compliance

Prevailing Wages

I, _____ (Name of person signing affidavit) (Title)

do hereby certify that the wages paid to all employees of

_____ (Company Name)

for all hours worked on the

_____ (Project name and location)

project, during the period from _____ to _____ are in (Project Dates)

compliance with prevailing wage requirements of Chapter 4115 of the Ohio Revised Code. I further certify that no rebates or deductions have been or will be made, directly or indirectly, from any wages paid in connection with this project, other than those provided by law.

_____ (Signature of Officer or Agent)

Sworn to and subscribed in my presence this _____ day of _____, 20_____.

_____ (Notary Public)

The above affidavit must be executed and sworn to by the officer or agent of the contractor or subcontractor who supervises the payment of employees. This affidavit must be submitted to the owner (public authority) before the surety is released or final payment due under the terms of the contract is made.

U.S. Department of Labor
Wage and Hour Division

PAYROLL

(For Contractor's Optional Use; See Instructions at www.dol.gov/whd/forms/wh347instr.htm)



Persons are not required to respond to the collection of information unless it displays a currently valid OMB control number.

NAME OF CONTRACTOR OR SUBCONTRACTOR

ADDRESS

OMB No.: 1235-0008
Expires: 07/31/2024

PAYROLL NO.

FOR WEEK ENDING

PROJECT AND LOCATION

PROJECT OR CONTRACT NO.

(1) NAME AND INDIVIDUAL IDENTIFYING NUMBER (e.g., LAST FOUR DIGITS OF SOCIAL SECURITY NUMBER OF WORKER	(2) NO. OF WITHHOLDING EXEMPTIONS	(3) WORK CLASSIFICATION	OT. OR ST.	(4) DAY AND DATE							(5) TOTAL HOURS	(6) RATE OF PAY	(7) GROSS AMOUNT EARNED	(8) DEDUCTIONS			(9) NET WAGES PAID FOR WEEK			
																FICA		WITH- HOLDING TAX	OTHER	TOTAL DEDUCTIONS
			O										/							
			S										/							
			O										/							
			S										/							
			O										/							
			S										/							
			O										/							
			S										/							
			O										/							
			S										/							

While completion of Form WH-347 is optional, it is mandatory for covered contractors and subcontractors performing work on Federally financed or assisted construction contracts to respond to the information collection contained in 29 C.F.R. §§ 2.3, 5.5(a). The Copeland Act (40 U.S.C. § 3145) contractors and subcontractors performing work on Federally financed or assisted construction contracts to "turnish weekly a statement with respect to the wages paid each employee during the preceding week." U.S. Department of Labor (DOL) regulations at 29 C.F.R. § 5.5(a)(3)(ii) require contractors to submit weekly a copy of all payrolls to the Federal agency contracting for or financing the construction project, accompanied by a signed "Statement of Compliance" indicating that the payrolls are correct and complete and that each laborer or mechanic has been paid not less than the proper Davis-Bacon prevailing wage rate for the work performed. DOL and federal contracting agencies receiving this information review the information to determine that employees have received legally required wages and fringe benefits.

Public Burden Statement

We estimate that it will take an average of 55 minutes to complete this collection, including time for reviewing instructions, searching existing data sources, gathering and maintaining the data needed, and completing and reviewing the collection of information. If you have any comments regarding these estimates or any other aspect of this collection, including suggestions for reducing this burden, send them to the Administrator, Wage and Hour Division, U.S. Department of Labor, Room S3502, 200 Constitution Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20210

Date _____

I, _____ (Name of Signatory Party) _____ (Title)

do hereby state:

(1) That I pay or supervise the payment of the persons employed by _____ on the _____ (Contractor or Subcontractor) _____ (Building or Work); that during the payroll period commencing on the _____ day of _____, _____, and ending the _____ day of _____, _____, all persons employed on said project have been paid the full weekly wages earned, that no rebates have been or will be made either directly or indirectly to or on behalf of said _____ from the full _____ (Contractor or Subcontractor)

weekly wages earned by any person and that no deductions have been made either directly or indirectly from the full wages earned by any person, other than permissible deductions as defined in Regulations, Part 3 (29 C.F.R. Subtitle A), issued by the Secretary of Labor under the Copeland Act, as amended (48 Stat. 948, 63 Stat. 108, 72 Stat. 967, 78 Stat. 367, 40 U.S.C. § 3145), and described below.

(2) That any payrolls otherwise under this contract required to be submitted for the above period are correct and complete; that the wage rates for laborers or mechanics contained therein are not less than the applicable wage rates contained in any wage determination incorporated into the contract; that the classifications set forth therein for each laborer or mechanic conform with the work he performed.

(3) That any apprentices employed in the above period are duly registered in a bona fide apprenticeship program registered with a State apprenticeship agency recognized by the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training, United States Department of Labor, or if no such recognized agency exists in a State, are registered with the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training, United States Department of Labor.

(4) That: (a) WHERE FRINGE BENEFITS ARE PAID TO APPROVED PLANS, FUNDS, OR PROGRAMS _____ in addition to the basic hourly wage rates paid to each laborer or mechanic listed in the above referenced payroll, payments of fringe benefits as listed in the contract have been or will be made to appropriate programs for the benefit of such employees, except as noted in section 4(c) below.

(b) WHERE FRINGE BENEFITS ARE PAID IN CASH

— Each laborer or mechanic listed in the above referenced payroll has been paid, as indicated on the payroll, an amount not less than the sum of the applicable basic hourly wage rate plus the amount of the required fringe benefits as listed in the contract, except as noted in section 4(c) below.

(c) EXCEPTIONS

EXCEPTION (CRAFT)	EXPLANATION

REMARKS:

NAME AND TITLE	SIGNATURE
THE WILLFUL FALSIFICATION OF ANY OF THE ABOVE STATEMENTS MAY SUBJECT THE CONTRACTOR OR SUBCONTRACTOR TO CIVIL OR CRIMINAL PROSECUTION. SEE SECTION 1001 OF TITLE 18 AND SECTION 3729 OF TITLE 31 OF THE UNITED STATES CODE.	

SECTION 008150.1 - SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS

The following Supplementary Conditions modify, change, delete or add to the General Conditions of the contract for Construction.

1. OHIO SALES AND USE TAX:

The labor and materials furnished under this contract will be used, when the project is completed by the Owner for its tax exempt purposes. Accordingly, the Ohio Gross Retail and Use Tax (Sales and Use Tax) will not apply to the purchase of materials under this contract by the Owner from the Contractor. The Owner will issue an appropriate exemption certificate to the Contractor to that effect.

2. PREVAILING WAGE: This project shall be constructed using prevailing wage requirements found elsewhere in the Project Manual.

3. LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: Refer to Owner's Requirements for Liquidated Damages.

4. PAYMENTS TO CONTRACTORS:

Per Ohio Revised Code 153.13:

At the time named in the contract for payment to the person with whom it is made, the owner referred to in section [153.01](#) or [153.12](#) of the Revised Code shall approve a full, accurate, and detailed estimate of the various kinds of labor performed and material furnished under the contract, with the amount due for each kind of labor and material and the materials and amount due in the aggregate, which estimate shall be based upon actual measurement of such labor and materials, and shall give the amounts of the preceding estimate, and the amount of labor performed and materials furnished since the last estimate. From the date the contract is fifty per cent complete, as evidenced by payments in the amount of at least fifty per cent of the contract to the person with whom the owner has contracted, except in the case of contracts the total cost of which is less than fifteen thousand dollars, all funds retained pursuant to sections [153.12](#) and [153.14](#) of the Revised Code for the faithful performance of work shall be deposited in the escrow account designated in section [153.63](#) of the Revised Code. After the contract is fifty per cent complete, no further funds shall be retained. When the major portion of the project is substantially completed and occupied, or in use, or otherwise accepted, and there exists no other reason to withhold retainage, the retained percentages held in connection with such portion shall be released from escrow and paid to the contractor, withholding only that amount necessary to assure completion. Funds in the escrow account not heretofore paid, with accumulated interest, shall be paid to the person with whom the owner has contracted thirty days from the date of completion or either acceptance or occupancy by the owner. Such payments shall be in accordance with division (A)(2) of section [153.63](#) of the Revised Code. Nothing in this section shall be construed as a limitation upon the authority of the director of transportation granted in Chapter 5525. of the Revised Code.

5. INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS:

Add the following to Subparagraph 11.1.2 of Section 00700, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction.

OWNER'S LIABILITY INSURANCE:

The Owner shall be responsible for and at his option may maintain such insurance as will protect from his contingent liability to others for damages because of bodily injury, including death, which may arise from

operations under the Contract, and any other liability for damages which the Contractor is required to insure under any provision of the Contract.

CONTRACTOR'S LIABILITY INSURANCE:

- A. Each Contractor shall take out and maintain, in a company or companies lawfully authorized to do business in the jurisdiction in which the work is located, insurance of such types and in such amounts as are necessary to protect the Contractor from claims set forth below which may arise of or result from the Contractor's operations under the Contract and for which the Contractor may be legally liable whether such operations be by the Contractor or by a subcontractor or by anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable.
- B. No Contractor shall commence work under this contract until he has obtained all insurance required under this Section and such insurance has been approved by the Owner, nor shall any Contractor allow any subcontractor to commence work on his subcontract until the required insurance has been obtained by the subcontractor and approved by the Owner. Each and every Contractor and Subcontractor shall maintain all insurance required under paragraph E of this Section for not less than one year after completion of this contract.
- C. Contractor shall submit to the Architect four (4) copies of Certificates of Insurance for this review and the Owner's approval prior to commencement of the Work. The form of certificate preferred is AIA Document G705, Certificate of Insurance. Certificates shall include each and every type of coverage specified.

In the event the Contractor engages Subcontractor for all or a portion of the work required by this agreement, the Contractor will require any and all Subcontractors to also assume all of the duties, obligations and requirements in this Section. The Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to provide Certificates of Insurance evidencing the insurance required by this Section naming the Contractor and Owner (and Building Corporation if bid is assigned by Owner to Building Corporation) as Additional Insureds, except as respects Workers' Compensation Insurance and that insurance carried and maintained by the Subcontractor meets all the requirements of this Section.

- D. If requested by the Owner, Contractor shall furnish the Owner with true copies of each policy required of him or his subcontractors. Said policies will not be cancelled or materially altered, except after thirty (30) days advance written notice to the Owner and Architect, mailed to the addresses indicated herein.
- E. Liability insurance shall include all major divisions of coverage and be on a comprehensive basis including:
 - 1. Premises' Operations (deleting any X-C or U exclusions).
 - 2. Products and Completed Operations.
 - 3. Contractual, including specific provisions for the Contractor's obligations under Paragraph I.
 - 4. Owned, Non-Owned, and Hired motor vehicles.
 - 5. Broad Form Property Damage including Completed Operations.

Except with respect to bodily injury and property damage included within the products and completed operations hazards, the aggregate limit where applicable shall apply separately to each project under this Contract.

Coverage shall be written on an "Occurrence" form unless otherwise approved by the Owner.

The Architect and the Owner (and Building Corporation if bid is assigned by Owner to Building

Benham's Grove – City of Centerville
 Event Center & Campus Improvements
 LWC Project No. 22627.00

Corporation) shall be named as additional Insureds under the Comprehensive General Liability Insurance policy or the Commercial General Liability Policy.

- F. The insurance required by Paragraph E above shall be written for not less than any limits of liability shown on the "Schedule of Insurance Coverages Required" found herein, or required by law, whichever is greater.

SCHEDULE OF INSURANCE COVERAGES REQUIRED

<u>TYPE OF INSURANCE</u>		<u>LIMITS OF LIABILITY</u>	
		<u>EACH OCCURRENCE</u>	<u>AGGREGATE</u>
1. a) Workers' Compensation b) Employer's Liability	Statutory	\$ 1,000,000/\$500,000/\$100,000	
2. Comprehensive General Liability Including: (X) Premises/Operations (X) Underground Explosion & Collapse Hazard (X) Products/Completed Opr. (X) Contractual Liability (X) Independent Contractors (X) Broad Form Prop. Damage (X) Personal Injury (X) <u>Aggregate by Job Site</u> Endorsement	BODILY INJURY PROPERTY DAMAGE BI & PD COMBINED PERSONAL INJURY	\$ 1,000,000 \$ 1,000,000 \$ 1,000,000 \$ 1,000,000	\$ 1,000,000 \$ 1,000,000 \$ 1,000,000 \$ 1,000,000
3. Comprehensive Automobile Liability (X) Any Auto (X) All Owned Autos (X) Hired Autos (X) Non-Owned Autos () _____	BODILY INJURY (PER PERSON) BODILY INJURY (PER ACCIDENT) PROPERTY DAMAGE BI & PD	\$ 1,000,000 \$ 1,000,000 \$ 1,000,000 \$ 1,000,000	
4. Excess Liability (X) Umbrella Form () Other Than Umbrella Form	BI & PD COMBINED	\$ 1,000,000	\$ 1,000,000
5. Other (Specify)			

- H. If the Contractor's General Liability Insurance is provided by the Commercial Liability form (Occurrence Form), the Contractor's Automobile Liability Insurance shall include coverage for "Automobile Contractual Liability."

I. Hold Harmless Agreement

1. The Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, City of Centerville, and the Architect and their agents and employees from and against all claims, damages, losses and expenses including attorney's fee arising out of or resulting from the performance of the work, provided that any such claim, damage, loss or expense (1) is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (including but not limited to the work) including the loss of use resulting therefrom, and (b) is caused in whole or in part by any negligent act or omission of the Contractor, any subcontractor, any one directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, regardless of whether or not it is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder.
2. In any and all claims against the Owner, City of Centerville, and the Architect or any of their agents or employees by an employee of the Contractor, Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, the indemnification obligation under this Hold Harmless Agreement shall not be limited in any way by any limitation on the amount payable by or for the Contractor or any Subcontractor under workmen's compensation acts, disability benefit acts or other employee benefits acts.
1. The obligations of the Contractor under this Hold Harmless Agreement shall not extend to any claim, damage, loss or expense for which the Architect is legally liable arising out of professional services performed by the Architect, his agents, or employees, including (1) the preparation of maps, plans, opinions, reports, surveys, designs or specifications, and (b) periodic observation of the work or engineering services.

PROPERTY INSURANCE

- A. The Contractor shall provide insurance coverage for portions of the Work stored off the site after written approval of the Owner at the value established in the approval, and also for portions of the work in transit.
- B. Each Contractor shall make such provisions as he deems necessary to replace all items of his work missing by theft prior to acceptance of his work by the Owner.

BROAD FORM BUILDERS RISK COMPLETED VALUE INSURANCE

The Owner will effect and maintain Broad Form Builders Risk completed Value insurance or an equivalent coverage covering all risks of physical loss. This insurance is to be upon all the structures on which the work of all the Contracts is to be done to one hundred percent of the insurable value thereof, including items of labor and materials connected therewith whether in or adjacent to the structures insured, materials in place or to be used as part of the permanent construction including surplus materials, shanties, protective fences, bridges, temporary structures, miscellaneous materials and supplies incident to the work, and such scaffoldings, stagings, towers, and equipment as are not owned or rented by the Contractor, the cost of which is included in the cost of the work. EXCLUSIONS: This insurance does not cover any tools owned by mechanics, any tools, equipment, scaffolding, staging, towers, and forms owned or rented by the Contractor, the capital value of which is not included in the cost of the work, or any structures erected for housing of food service for the workmen.

Said insurance, to be furnished by the Owner, shall insure the Owner's interest, shall insure the interest of all Contractors having a contract with the Owner, and shall also include all Subcontractors of each

Contract. The Contractors shall be named or designated in such capacity as insured jointly with the Owner in all policies and all Subcontractors for each Contractor shall be included as insured jointly with the Contractors in all policies by designation, by name, or each of said Subcontractors, or by designation, "Subcontractors, as their respective interest may appear". Certificates of such insurance shall be filed with each of the Contractors and the Architect. If the Owner fails to effect or maintain insurance as above and so notifies the Contractor, the Contractor may insure his own interest and that of the subcontractors and charge the cost thereof to the Owner. If the Contractor is damaged by failure of the Owner to maintain such insurance or to so notify the Contractor he may recover as stipulated in the Contract for recovery of damages. If other special insurance not herein provided for is required by the Contractor, the Owner shall effect such insurance at the Contractor's expense by appropriate riders to his Builders Risk Insurance policy. The Owner, Contractors, and all subcontractors waive all rights, each against the other, for damages caused by fire or other perils covered by insurance provided under the terms of this article, except such rights as they may have to the proceeds of insurance held by the Owner as Trustee.

The loss, if any, is to be made adjustable with and payable to the Owner as Trustee for the insureds and Contractors and subcontractors as their interest may appear, except in such cases as may require payment of all or a portion of said insurance to be made to a mortgagee as his interest may appear.

The Owner shall be responsible for and at his option may insure against loss of use of his existing property, due to fire or otherwise however caused. If required in writing by any party in interest, the owner as Trustee shall, upon occurrence of loss, give bond for the proper performance of his duties. He shall deposit any money received from insurance in an account separate from all his other funds and he shall distribute it in accordance with such agreement as the parties in interest may reach. If after loss no special agreement is made, replacement of injured work shall be ordered and executed as provided under Subsection "CHANGES IN THE WORK".

The Trustee shall have power to adjust and settle any loss with the insurers unless one of the Contractors interested shall object in writing within three working days of the occurrence of loss.

6. CHANGES IN THE WORK:

1. Add the following to subparagraph 7.2.1:

In subparagraph 7.2.1 the allowance for overhead and profit combined, included in the total cost to the Owner, shall be based on the following schedule:

- a. For the contractor, for the work performed by the contractor's own forces, fifteen percent (15%) of the cost.
- b. For the contractor, for work performed by his subcontractor, five percent (5%) of the amount due the subcontractor.
- c. For each subcontractor or sub-subcontractor involved, for work performed by his own forces, fifteen percent (15%) of the cost.
- d. For each subcontractor, for work performed by his sub-subcontractor, for work performed by his sub-subcontractors, five percent (5%) of the amount due the sub-subcontractors.
- e. Cost to which overhead and profit is to be applied shall be determined in accordance with Section 012100 -Allowances.
- f. In order to facilitate checking of quotations for extras or credits, all proposals, except those so minor that their propriety can be seen by inspection, shall be accompanied by a complete itemization of costs including labor, materials and subcontractors. Labor and materials shall be itemized in the manner prescribed above. Where major cost items are subcontracts, they shall be itemized also. In no case will a change involving over \$500.00 be approved without such itemization.

7. GUARANTEE:

Contractor shall guarantee in writing for a period of one year from the date of final acceptance of the work against any and all defects in materials and/or workmanship that should manifest themselves within that period. Installations that are defective shall be removed and replaced without expense to the owner and to his satisfaction.

8. PERMITS:

The Owner will pay Permit Fees direct. The Contractor will responsible to secure all Permits.

9. ASBESTOS:

Contractors shall not use any asbestos containing materials for this project. At the end of the project, submit a certification to the A/E and Owner that no asbestos containing materials were used.

10. TOBACCO AND ALCOHOL:

Hobart Center has a strict policy prohibiting the use of tobacco of any kind or alcohol on project property. This policy extends to all construction personnel. Individuals who violate this policy will be asked to leave the jobsite.

11. NON-DISCRIMINTAION:

Ohio Revised Code 4112.01

(1) "Person" includes one or more individuals, partnerships, associations, organizations, corporations, legal representatives, trustees, trustees in bankruptcy, receivers, and other organized groups of persons. "Person" also includes, but is not limited to, any owner, lessor, assignor, builder, manager, broker, salesperson, appraiser, agent, employee, lending institution, and the state and all political subdivisions, authorities, agencies, boards, and commissions of the state.

(2) "Employer" means the state, any political subdivision of the state, or a person employing four or more persons within the state, and any agent of the state, political subdivision, or person.

(3) "Employee" means an individual employed by any employer but does not include any individual employed in the domestic service of any person.

(4) "Labor organization" includes any organization that exists, in whole or in part, for the purpose of collective bargaining or of dealing with employers concerning grievances, terms or conditions of employment, or other mutual aid or protection in relation to employment.

(5) "Employment agency" includes any person regularly undertaking, with or without compensation, to procure opportunities to work or to procure, recruit, refer, or place employees.

(6) "Commission" means the Ohio civil rights commission created by section [4112.03](#) of the Revised Code.

(7) "Discriminate" includes segregate or separate.

Benham's Grove – City of Centerville
Event Center & Campus Improvements
LWC Project No. 22627.00

- (8) "Unlawful discriminatory practice" means any act prohibited by section [4112.02](#), [4112.021](#), or [4112.022](#) of the Revised Code.
- (9) "Place of public accommodation" means any inn, restaurant, eating house, barbershop, public conveyance by air, land, or water, theater, store, other place for the sale of merchandise, or any other place of public accommodation or amusement of which the accommodations, advantages, facilities, or privileges are available to the public.
- (10) "Housing accommodations" includes any building or structure, or portion of a building or structure, that is used or occupied or is intended, arranged, or designed to be used or occupied as the home residence, dwelling, dwelling unit, or sleeping place of one or more individuals, groups, or families whether or not living independently of each other; and any vacant land offered for sale or lease. "Housing accommodations" also includes any housing accommodations held or offered for sale or rent by a real estate broker, salesperson, or agent, by any other person pursuant to authorization of the owner, by the owner, or by the owner's legal representative.
- (11) "Restrictive covenant" means any specification limiting the transfer, rental, lease, or other use of any housing accommodations because of race, color, religion, sex, military status, familial status, national origin, disability, or ancestry, or any limitation based upon affiliation with or approval by any person, directly or indirectly, employing race, color, religion, sex, military status, familial status, national origin, disability, or ancestry as a condition of affiliation or approval.
- (12) "Burial lot" means any lot for the burial of deceased persons within any public burial ground or cemetery, including, but not limited to, cemeteries owned and operated by municipal corporations, townships, or companies or associations incorporated for cemetery purposes.
- (13) "Disability" means a physical or mental impairment that substantially limits one or more major life activities, including the functions of caring for one's self, performing manual tasks, walking, seeing, hearing, speaking, breathing, learning, and working; a record of a physical or mental impairment; or being regarded as having a physical or mental impairment.
- (14) Except as otherwise provided in section [4112.021](#) of the Revised Code, "age" means an individual aged forty years or older.
- (15) "Familial status" means either of the following:
- (a) One or more individuals who are under eighteen years of age and who are domiciled with a parent or guardian having legal custody of the individual or domiciled, with the written permission of the parent or guardian having legal custody, with a designee of the parent or guardian;
 - (b) Any person who is pregnant or in the process of securing legal custody of any individual who is under eighteen years of age.
- (16)(a) Except as provided in division (A)(16)(b) of this section, "physical or mental impairment" includes any of the following:
- (i) Any physiological disorder or condition, cosmetic disfigurement, or anatomical loss affecting one or more of the following body systems: neurological; musculoskeletal; special sense organs; respiratory, including speech organs; cardiovascular; reproductive; digestive; genito-urinary; hemic and lymphatic; skin; and endocrine;

Benham's Grove – City of Centerville
Event Center & Campus Improvements
LWC Project No. 22627.00

(ii) Any mental or psychological disorder, including, but not limited to, intellectual disability, organic brain syndrome, emotional or mental illness, and specific learning disabilities;

(iii) Diseases and conditions, including, but not limited to, orthopedic, visual, speech, and hearing impairments, cerebral palsy, autism, epilepsy, muscular dystrophy, multiple sclerosis, cancer, heart disease, diabetes, human immunodeficiency virus infection, intellectual disability, emotional illness, drug addiction, and alcoholism.

(b) "Physical or mental impairment" does not include any of the following:

(i) Homosexuality and bisexuality;

(ii) Transvestism, transsexualism, pedophilia, exhibitionism, voyeurism, gender identity disorders not resulting from physical impairments, or other sexual behavior disorders;

(iii) Compulsive gambling, kleptomania, or pyromania;

(iv) Psychoactive substance use disorders resulting from the current illegal use of a controlled substance or the current use of alcoholic beverages.

(17) "Dwelling unit" means a single unit of residence for a family of one or more persons.

(18) "Common use areas" means rooms, spaces, or elements inside or outside a building that are made available for the use of residents of the building or their guests, and includes, but is not limited to, hallways, lounges, lobbies, laundry rooms, refuse rooms, mail rooms, recreational areas, and passageways among and between buildings.

(19) "Public use areas" means interior or exterior rooms or spaces of a privately or publicly owned building that are made available to the general public.

(20) "Controlled substance" has the same meaning as in section [3719.01](#) of the Revised Code.

(21) "Disabled tenant" means a tenant or prospective tenant who is a person with a disability.

(22) "Military status" means a person's status in "service in the uniformed services" as defined in section [5923.05](#) of the Revised Code.

(23) "Aggrieved person" includes both of the following:

(a) Any person who claims to have been injured by any unlawful discriminatory practice described in division (H) of section [4112.02](#) of the Revised Code;

(b) Any person who believes that the person will be injured by any unlawful discriminatory practice described in division (H) of section [4112.02](#) of the Revised Code that is about to occur.

(24) "Unlawful discriminatory practice relating to employment" means both of the following:

(a) An unlawful discriminatory practice that is prohibited by division (A), (B), (C), (D), (E), or (F) of section [4112.02](#) of the Revised Code;

(b) An unlawful discriminatory practice that is prohibited by division (I) or (J) of section [4112.02](#) of the Revised Code that is related to employment.

(25) "Notice of right to sue" means a notice sent by the commission to a person who files a charge under section [4112.051](#) of the Revised Code that states that the person who filed the charge may bring a civil action related to the charge pursuant to section [4112.052](#) or [4112.14](#) of the Revised Code, in accordance with section [4112.052](#) of the Revised Code.

(B) For the purposes of divisions (A) to (F) of section [4112.02](#) of the Revised Code, the terms "because of sex" and "on the basis of sex" include, but are not limited to, because of or on the basis of pregnancy, any illness arising out of and occurring during the course of a pregnancy, childbirth, or related medical conditions. Women affected by pregnancy, childbirth, or related medical conditions shall be treated the same for all employment-related purposes, including receipt of benefits under fringe benefit programs, as other persons not so affected but similar in their ability or inability to work, and nothing in division (B) of section [4111.17](#) of the Revised Code shall be interpreted to permit otherwise. This division shall not be construed to require an employer to pay for health insurance benefits for abortion, except where the life of the mother would be endangered if the fetus were carried to term or except where medical complications have arisen from the abortion, provided that nothing in this division precludes an employer from providing abortion benefits or otherwise affects bargaining agreements in regard to abortion.

Ohio Revised Code 4112.02

It shall be an unlawful discriminatory practice:

(A) For any employer, because of the race, color, religion, sex, military status, national origin, disability, age, or ancestry of any person, to discharge without just cause, to refuse to hire, or otherwise to discriminate against that person with respect to hire, tenure, terms, conditions, or privileges of employment, or any matter directly or indirectly related to employment.

(B) For an employment agency or personnel placement service, because of race, color, religion, sex, military status, national origin, disability, age, or ancestry, to do any of the following:

(1) Refuse or fail to accept, register, classify properly, or refer for employment, or otherwise discriminate against any person;

(2) Comply with a request from an employer for referral of applicants for employment if the request directly or indirectly indicates that the employer fails to comply with the provisions of sections [4112.01](#) to [4112.07](#) of the Revised Code.

(C) For any labor organization to do any of the following:

(1) Limit or classify its membership on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, military status, national origin, disability, age, or ancestry;

(2) Discriminate against, limit the employment opportunities of, or otherwise adversely affect the employment status, wages, hours, or employment conditions of any person as an employee because of race, color, religion, sex, military status, national origin, disability, age, or ancestry.

(D) For any employer, labor organization, or joint labor-management committee controlling apprentice training programs to discriminate against any person because of race, color, religion, sex, military status, national origin, disability, or ancestry in admission to, or employment in, any program established to provide apprentice training.

Benham's Grove – City of Centerville
Event Center & Campus Improvements
LWC Project No. 22627.00

(E) Except where based on a bona fide occupational qualification certified in advance by the commission, for any employer, employment agency, personnel placement service, or labor organization, prior to employment or admission to membership, to do any of the following:

- (1) Elicit or attempt to elicit any information concerning the race, color, religion, sex, military status, national origin, disability, age, or ancestry of an applicant for employment or membership;
- (2) Make or keep a record of the race, color, religion, sex, military status, national origin, disability, age, or ancestry of any applicant for employment or membership;
- (3) Use any form of application for employment, or personnel or membership blank, seeking to elicit information regarding race, color, religion, sex, military status, national origin, disability, age, or ancestry; but an employer holding a contract containing a nondiscrimination clause with the government of the United States, or any department or agency of that government, may require an employee or applicant for employment to furnish documentary proof of United States citizenship and may retain that proof in the employer's personnel records and may use photographic or fingerprint identification for security purposes;
- (4) Print or publish or cause to be printed or published any notice or advertisement relating to employment or membership indicating any preference, limitation, specification, or discrimination, based upon race, color, religion, sex, military status, national origin, disability, age, or ancestry;
- (5) Announce or follow a policy of denying or limiting, through a quota system or otherwise, employment or membership opportunities of any group because of the race, color, religion, sex, military status, national origin, disability, age, or ancestry of that group;
- (6) Utilize in the recruitment or hiring of persons any employment agency, personnel placement service, training school or center, labor organization, or any other employee-referring source known to discriminate against persons because of their race, color, religion, sex, military status, national origin, disability, age, or ancestry.

(F) For any person seeking employment to publish or cause to be published any advertisement that specifies or in any manner indicates that person's race, color, religion, sex, military status, national origin, disability, age, or ancestry, or expresses a limitation or preference as to the race, color, religion, sex, military status, national origin, disability, age, or ancestry of any prospective employer.

(G) For any proprietor or any employee, keeper, or manager of a place of public accommodation to deny to any person, except for reasons applicable alike to all persons regardless of race, color, religion, sex, military status, national origin, disability, age, or ancestry, the full enjoyment of the accommodations, advantages, facilities, or privileges of the place of public accommodation.

(H) Subject to section [4112.024](#) of the Revised Code, for any person to do any of the following:

- (1) Refuse to sell, transfer, assign, rent, lease, sublease, or finance housing accommodations, refuse to negotiate for the sale or rental of housing accommodations, or otherwise deny or make unavailable housing accommodations because of race, color, religion, sex, military status, familial status, ancestry, disability, or national origin;
- (2) Represent to any person that housing accommodations are not available for inspection, sale, or rental, when in fact they are available, because of race, color, religion, sex, military status, familial status, ancestry, disability, or national origin;

Benham's Grove – City of Centerville
Event Center & Campus Improvements
LWC Project No. 22627.00

(3) Discriminate against any person in the making or purchasing of loans or the provision of other financial assistance for the acquisition, construction, rehabilitation, repair, or maintenance of housing accommodations, or any person in the making or purchasing of loans or the provision of other financial assistance that is secured by residential real estate, because of race, color, religion, sex, military status, familial status, ancestry, disability, or national origin or because of the racial composition of the neighborhood in which the housing accommodations are located, provided that the person, whether an individual, corporation, or association of any type, lends money as one of the principal aspects or incident to the person's principal business and not only as a part of the purchase price of an owner-occupied residence the person is selling nor merely casually or occasionally to a relative or friend;

(4) Discriminate against any person in the terms or conditions of selling, transferring, assigning, renting, leasing, or subleasing any housing accommodations or in furnishing facilities, services, or privileges in connection with the ownership, occupancy, or use of any housing accommodations, including the sale of fire, extended coverage, or homeowners insurance, because of race, color, religion, sex, military status, familial status, ancestry, disability, or national origin or because of the racial composition of the neighborhood in which the housing accommodations are located;

(5) Discriminate against any person in the terms or conditions of any loan of money, whether or not secured by mortgage or otherwise, for the acquisition, construction, rehabilitation, repair, or maintenance of housing accommodations because of race, color, religion, sex, military status, familial status, ancestry, disability, or national origin or because of the racial composition of the neighborhood in which the housing accommodations are located;

(6) Refuse to consider without prejudice the combined income of both husband and wife for the purpose of extending mortgage credit to a married couple or either member of a married couple;

(7) Print, publish, or circulate any statement or advertisement, or make or cause to be made any statement or advertisement, relating to the sale, transfer, assignment, rental, lease, sublease, or acquisition of any housing accommodations, or relating to the loan of money, whether or not secured by mortgage or otherwise, for the acquisition, construction, rehabilitation, repair, or maintenance of housing accommodations, that indicates any preference, limitation, specification, or discrimination based upon race, color, religion, sex, military status, familial status, ancestry, disability, or national origin, or an intention to make any such preference, limitation, specification, or discrimination;

(8) Except as otherwise provided in division (H)(8) or (17) of this section, make any inquiry, elicit any information, make or keep any record, or use any form of application containing questions or entries concerning race, color, religion, sex, military status, familial status, ancestry, disability, or national origin in connection with the sale or lease of any housing accommodations or the loan of any money, whether or not secured by mortgage or otherwise, for the acquisition, construction, rehabilitation, repair, or maintenance of housing accommodations. Any person may make inquiries, and make and keep records, concerning race, color, religion, sex, military status, familial status, ancestry, disability, or national origin for the purpose of monitoring compliance with this chapter.

(9) Include in any transfer, rental, or lease of housing accommodations any restrictive covenant, or honor or exercise, or attempt to honor or exercise, any restrictive covenant;

(10) Induce or solicit, or attempt to induce or solicit, a housing accommodations listing, sale, or transaction by representing that a change has occurred or may occur with respect to the racial, religious, sexual, military status, familial status, or ethnic composition of the block, neighborhood, or other area in which the housing accommodations are located, or induce or solicit, or attempt to induce or solicit, a housing accommodations listing, sale, or transaction by representing that the presence or anticipated presence of persons of any race, color, religion, sex, military status, familial status, ancestry, disability, or national

Benham's Grove – City of Centerville
Event Center & Campus Improvements
LWC Project No. 22627.00

origin, in the block, neighborhood, or other area will or may have results including, but not limited to, the following:

(a) The lowering of property values;

(b) A change in the racial, religious, sexual, military status, familial status, or ethnic composition of the block, neighborhood, or other area;

(c) An increase in criminal or antisocial behavior in the block, neighborhood, or other area;

(d) A decline in the quality of the schools serving the block, neighborhood, or other area.

(11) Deny any person access to or membership or participation in any multiple-listing service, real estate brokers' organization, or other service, organization, or facility relating to the business of selling or renting housing accommodations, or discriminate against any person in the terms or conditions of that access, membership, or participation, on account of race, color, religion, sex, military status, familial status, national origin, disability, or ancestry;

(12) Coerce, intimidate, threaten, or interfere with any person in the exercise or enjoyment of, or on account of that person's having exercised or enjoyed or having aided or encouraged any other person in the exercise or enjoyment of, any right granted or protected by division (H) of this section;

(13) Discourage or attempt to discourage the purchase by a prospective purchaser of housing accommodations, by representing that any block, neighborhood, or other area has undergone or might undergo a change with respect to its religious, racial, sexual, military status, familial status, or ethnic composition;

(14) Refuse to sell, transfer, assign, rent, lease, sublease, or finance, or otherwise deny or withhold, a burial lot from any person because of the race, color, sex, military status, familial status, age, ancestry, disability, or national origin of any prospective owner or user of the lot;

(15) Discriminate in the sale or rental of, or otherwise make unavailable or deny, housing accommodations to any buyer or renter because of a disability of any of the following:

(a) The buyer or renter;

(b) A person residing in or intending to reside in the housing accommodations after they are sold, rented, or made available;

(c) Any individual associated with the person described in division (H)(15)(b) of this section.

(16) Discriminate in the terms, conditions, or privileges of the sale or rental of housing accommodations to any person or in the provision of services or facilities to any person in connection with the housing accommodations because of a disability of any of the following:

(a) That person;

(b) A person residing in or intending to reside in the housing accommodations after they are sold, rented, or made available;

(c) Any individual associated with the person described in division (H)(16)(b) of this section.

(17) Except as otherwise provided in division (H)(17) of this section, make an inquiry to determine whether an applicant for the sale or rental of housing accommodations, a person residing in or intending to reside in the housing accommodations after they are sold, rented, or made available, or any individual associated with that person has a disability, or make an inquiry to determine the nature or severity of a disability of the applicant or such a person or individual. The following inquiries may be made of all applicants for the sale or rental of housing accommodations, regardless of whether they have disabilities:

(a) An inquiry into an applicant's ability to meet the requirements of ownership or tenancy;

(b) An inquiry to determine whether an applicant is qualified for housing accommodations available only to persons with disabilities or persons with a particular type of disability;

(c) An inquiry to determine whether an applicant is qualified for a priority available to persons with disabilities or persons with a particular type of disability;

(d) An inquiry to determine whether an applicant currently uses a controlled substance in violation of section [2925.11](#) of the Revised Code or a substantively comparable municipal ordinance;

(e) An inquiry to determine whether an applicant at any time has been convicted of or pleaded guilty to any offense, an element of which is the illegal sale, offer to sell, cultivation, manufacture, other production, shipment, transportation, delivery, or other distribution of a controlled substance.

(18)(a) Refuse to permit, at the expense of a person with a disability, reasonable modifications of existing housing accommodations that are occupied or to be occupied by the person with a disability, if the modifications may be necessary to afford the person with a disability full enjoyment of the housing accommodations. This division does not preclude a landlord of housing accommodations that are rented or to be rented to a disabled tenant from conditioning permission for a proposed modification upon the disabled tenant's doing one or more of the following:

(i) Providing a reasonable description of the proposed modification and reasonable assurances that the proposed modification will be made in a workerlike manner and that any required building permits will be obtained prior to the commencement of the proposed modification;

(ii) Agreeing to restore at the end of the tenancy the interior of the housing accommodations to the condition they were in prior to the proposed modification, but subject to reasonable wear and tear during the period of occupancy, if it is reasonable for the landlord to condition permission for the proposed modification upon the agreement;

(iii) Paying into an interest-bearing escrow account that is in the landlord's name, over a reasonable period of time, a reasonable amount of money not to exceed the projected costs at the end of the tenancy of the restoration of the interior of the housing accommodations to the condition they were in prior to the proposed modification, but subject to reasonable wear and tear during the period of occupancy, if the landlord finds the account reasonably necessary to ensure the availability of funds for the restoration work. The interest earned in connection with an escrow account described in this division shall accrue to the benefit of the disabled tenant who makes payments into the account.

(b) A landlord shall not condition permission for a proposed modification upon a disabled tenant's payment of a security deposit that exceeds the customarily required security deposit of all tenants of the particular housing accommodations.

Benham's Grove – City of Centerville
Event Center & Campus Improvements
LWC Project No. 22627.00

- (19) Refuse to make reasonable accommodations in rules, policies, practices, or services when necessary to afford a person with a disability equal opportunity to use and enjoy a dwelling unit, including associated public and common use areas;
- Code; (20) Fail to comply with the standards and rules adopted under division (A) of section [3781.111](#) of the Revised Code;
- (21) Discriminate against any person in the selling, brokering, or appraising of real property because of race, color, religion, sex, military status, familial status, ancestry, disability, or national origin;
- (22) Fail to design and construct covered multifamily dwellings for first occupancy on or after June 30, 1992, in accordance with the following conditions:
- (a) The dwellings shall have at least one building entrance on an accessible route, unless it is impractical to do so because of the terrain or unusual characteristics of the site.
 - (b) With respect to dwellings that have a building entrance on an accessible route, all of the following apply:
 - (i) The public use areas and common use areas of the dwellings shall be readily accessible to and usable by persons with a disability.
 - (ii) All the doors designed to allow passage into and within all premises shall be sufficiently wide to allow passage by persons with a disability who are in wheelchairs.
 - (iii) All premises within covered multifamily dwelling units shall contain an accessible route into and through the dwelling; all light switches, electrical outlets, thermostats, and other environmental controls within such units shall be in accessible locations; the bathroom walls within such units shall contain reinforcements to allow later installation of grab bars; and the kitchens and bathrooms within such units shall be designed and constructed in a manner that enables an individual in a wheelchair to maneuver about such rooms.
- For purposes of division (H)(22) of this section, "covered multifamily dwellings" means buildings consisting of four or more units if such buildings have one or more elevators and ground floor units in other buildings consisting of four or more units.
- (I) For any person to discriminate in any manner against any other person because that person has opposed any unlawful discriminatory practice defined in this section or because that person has made a charge, testified, assisted, or participated in any manner in any investigation, proceeding, or hearing under sections [4112.01](#) to [4112.07](#) of the Revised Code.
- (J) For any person to aid, abet, incite, compel, or coerce the doing of any act declared by this section to be an unlawful discriminatory practice, to obstruct or prevent any person from complying with this chapter or any order issued under it, or to attempt directly or indirectly to commit any act declared by this section to be an unlawful discriminatory practice.
- (K) Nothing in divisions (A) to (E) of this section shall be construed to require a person with a disability to be employed or trained under circumstances that would significantly increase the occupational hazards affecting either the person with a disability, other employees, the general public, or the facilities in which the work is to be performed, or to require the employment or training of a person with a disability in a job that requires the person with a disability routinely to undertake any task, the performance of which is substantially and inherently impaired by the person's disability.

Benham's Grove – City of Centerville
Event Center & Campus Improvements
LWC Project No. 22627.00

(L) With regard to age, it shall not be an unlawful discriminatory practice and it shall not constitute a violation of division (A) of section [4112.14](#) of the Revised Code for any employer, employment agency, joint labor-management committee controlling apprenticeship training programs, or labor organization to do any of the following:

- (1) Establish bona fide employment qualifications reasonably related to the particular business or occupation that may include standards for skill, aptitude, physical capability, intelligence, education, maturation, and experience;
- (2) Observe the terms of a bona fide seniority system or any bona fide employee benefit plan, including, but not limited to, a retirement, pension, or insurance plan, that is not a subterfuge to evade the purposes of this section. However, no such employee benefit plan shall excuse the failure to hire any individual, and no such seniority system or employee benefit plan shall require or permit the involuntary retirement of any individual, because of the individual's age except as provided for in the "Age Discrimination in Employment Act Amendment of 1978," 92 Stat. 189, 29 U.S.C.A. 623, as amended by the "Age Discrimination in Employment Act Amendments of 1986," 100 Stat. 3342, 29 U.S.C.A. 623, as amended.
- (3) Retire an employee who has attained sixty-five years of age who, for the two-year period immediately before retirement, is employed in a bona fide executive or a high policymaking position, if the employee is entitled to an immediate nonforfeitable annual retirement benefit from a pension, profit-sharing, savings, or deferred compensation plan, or any combination of those plans, of the employer of the employee, which equals, in the aggregate, at least forty-four thousand dollars, in accordance with the conditions of the "Age Discrimination in Employment Act Amendment of 1978," 92 Stat. 189, 29 U.S.C.A. 631, as amended by the "Age Discrimination in Employment Act Amendments of 1986," 100 Stat. 3342, 29 U.S.C.A. 631, as amended;
- (4) Observe the terms of any bona fide apprenticeship program if the program is registered with the Ohio apprenticeship council pursuant to sections [4139.01](#) to [4139.06](#) of the Revised Code and is approved by the federal committee on apprenticeship of the United States department of labor.

(M) Nothing in this chapter prohibiting age discrimination and nothing in division (A) of section [4112.14](#) of the Revised Code shall be construed to prohibit the following:

- (1) The designation of uniform age the attainment of which is necessary for public employees to receive pension or other retirement benefits pursuant to Chapter 145., 742., 3307., 3309., or 5505. of the Revised Code;
- (2) The mandatory retirement of uniformed patrol officers of the state highway patrol as provided in section [5505.16](#) of the Revised Code;
- (3) The maximum age requirements for appointment as a patrol officer in the state highway patrol established by section [5503.01](#) of the Revised Code;
- (4) The maximum age requirements established for original appointment to a police department or fire department in sections [124.41](#) and [124.42](#) of the Revised Code;
- (5) Any maximum age not in conflict with federal law that may be established by a municipal charter, municipal ordinance, or resolution of a board of township trustees for original appointment as a police officer or firefighter;
- (6) Any mandatory retirement provision not in conflict with federal law of a municipal charter, municipal ordinance, or resolution of a board of township trustees pertaining to police officers and firefighters;

Benham's Grove – City of Centerville
Event Center & Campus Improvements
LWC Project No. 22627.00

(7) Until January 1, 1994, the mandatory retirement of any employee who has attained seventy years of age and who is serving under a contract of unlimited tenure, or similar arrangement providing for unlimited tenure, at an institution of higher education as defined in the "Education Amendments of 1980," 94 Stat. 1503, 20 U.S.C.A. 1141(a).

(N)(1)(a) Except as provided in division (N)(1)(b) of this section, for purposes of divisions (A) to (E) of this section, a disability does not include any physiological disorder or condition, mental or psychological disorder, or disease or condition caused by an illegal use of any controlled substance by an employee, applicant, or other person, if an employer, employment agency, personnel placement service, labor organization, or joint labor-management committee acts on the basis of that illegal use.

(b) Division (N)(1)(a) of this section does not apply to an employee, applicant, or other person who satisfies any of the following:

(i) The employee, applicant, or other person has successfully completed a supervised drug rehabilitation program and no longer is engaging in the illegal use of any controlled substance, or the employee, applicant, or other person otherwise successfully has been rehabilitated and no longer is engaging in that illegal use.

(ii) The employee, applicant, or other person is participating in a supervised drug rehabilitation program and no longer is engaging in the illegal use of any controlled substance.

(iii) The employee, applicant, or other person is erroneously regarded as engaging in the illegal use of any controlled substance, but the employee, applicant, or other person is not engaging in that illegal use.

(2) Divisions (A) to (E) of this section do not prohibit an employer, employment agency, personnel placement service, labor organization, or joint labor-management committee from doing any of the following:

(a) Adopting or administering reasonable policies or procedures, including, but not limited to, testing for the illegal use of any controlled substance, that are designed to ensure that an individual described in division (N)(1)(b)(i) or (ii) of this section no longer is engaging in the illegal use of any controlled substance;

(b) Prohibiting the illegal use of controlled substances and the use of alcohol at the workplace by all employees;

(c) Requiring that employees not be under the influence of alcohol or not be engaged in the illegal use of any controlled substance at the workplace;

(d) Requiring that employees behave in conformance with the requirements established under "The Drug-Free Workplace Act of 1988," 102 Stat. 4304, 41 U.S.C.A. 701, as amended;

(e) Holding an employee who engages in the illegal use of any controlled substance or who is an alcoholic to the same qualification standards for employment or job performance, and the same behavior, to which the employer, employment agency, personnel placement service, labor organization, or joint labor-management committee holds other employees, even if any unsatisfactory performance or behavior is related to an employee's illegal use of a controlled substance or alcoholism;

Benham's Grove – City of Centerville
Event Center & Campus Improvements
LWC Project No. 22627.00

(f) Exercising other authority recognized in the "Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990," 104 Stat. 327, 42 U.S.C.A. 12101, as amended, including, but not limited to, requiring employees to comply with any applicable federal standards.

(3) For purposes of this chapter, a test to determine the illegal use of any controlled substance does not include a medical examination.

(4) Division (N) of this section does not encourage, prohibit, or authorize, and shall not be construed as encouraging, prohibiting, or authorizing, the conduct of testing for the illegal use of any controlled substance by employees, applicants, or other persons, or the making of employment decisions based on the results of that type of testing.

(O) This section does not apply to a religious corporation, association, educational institution, or society with respect to the employment of an individual of a particular religion to perform work connected with the carrying on by that religious corporation, association, educational institution, or society of its activities.

The unlawful discriminatory practices defined in this section do not make it unlawful for a person or an appointing authority administering an examination under section [124.23](#) of the Revised Code to obtain information about an applicant's military status for the purpose of determining if the applicant is eligible for the additional credit that is available under that section.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 000816 – MODIFICATION TO GENERAL CONDITIONS

These Supplementary Conditions modify, change, delete from or add to the "General conditions of the Contract for Construction" AIA Document A201 / 2007 Edition, and are hereby made a part of the Contract. Where any Article of the General Conditions is modified or any Paragraph, Subparagraph, or Clause thereof is modified or deleted by these Supplementary Conditions, the unaltered provisions of that Article, paragraph, Subparagraph or Clause shall remain in effect.

ARTICLE 1 – GENERAL PROVISIONS

1.2.4 The limits of the Work shall not be restricted because of the arrangement of the Specifications. Where responsibility for particular work is required of a particular trade or contract, that trade or contract shall not be released from that responsibility by reason of the location of the specification working or drawing information which establishes the responsibility.

1.2.5 Should the Contract Drawings and Specifications be in disagreement with each other relative to quality or quantity of Work required, the better quality and/or the greater quantity shall govern, and shall be provided, unless instructions are otherwise furnished to the Contractor by the Architect in writing. If an item is shown on the Drawings, but not specified, the Contractor shall provide the item of a similar quality to other items specified, as determined by the Architect. If an item is specified but not shown on the Drawings, it shall be located as directed by the Architect.

ARTICLE 3 - CONTRACTOR

Add the following Subparagraph 3.2.2.1:

3.2.2.1 The Drawings shall not be scaled. Indicated or figured dimensions shall be followed: In case of any discrepancy in the figures, the Contractor shall bring the matter to the attention of the Architect for decision before proceeding with the Work. Failure to follow this procedure shall be at the Contractor's own risk.

To Subparagraph 3.4.1 add the following Clause 3.4.1.1:

3.4.1.1 The Contractor shall place orders for materials and equipment to be incorporated in the Work as soon as possible after award of the Contract and receipt of approvals where applicable. The Contractor shall keep the Architect informed as to availability of all specified materials and equipment.

3.4.5 The Contract Sum will not be increased because of increases in labor rates, increases in material and equipment costs, and/or increases in equipment rental charges.

3.5.2 As part of the Work, the Contractor shall properly adjust and regulate all systems and equipment so that such systems and equipment will function as intended; and it is understood that such systems and equipment cannot be properly regulated or adjusted until they are in actual use or operation.

3.5.3 The Contractor shall not be relieved of his general warranty obligation by the specification of a particular product or procedure.

3.5.4 The Contractor shall warrant all Work for a period of two years after the date established for substantial completion. Determination of this date shall be at the Architect's sole and absolute discretion and shall be final.

The Contractor shall replace, without cost to the Owner or interference with Owner's operation, any defective workmanship or materials. All work shall be completed to the satisfaction of the Owner and Architect.

3.5.5 Manufacturers and fabricators of materials and products shall warrant their materials or products for a minimum period of one year after the date of substantial completion unless otherwise indicated in the Specifications. Owner may request such warranties in writing.

3.5.6 The responsibility for defective work shall not terminate at the end of the guarantee period. The Contractor shall continue to provide even beyond the two-year period, without limitation, such additional replacements or repairs required to correct all defective workmanship and materials for which written notice of the failure of compliance with Contract Documents has been given prior to the expiration of the two-year period.

3.5.7 The provisions contained in this paragraph 3.5 shall not be construed as restricting the Contractor's liability (or the Owner's right to recover damages) for breach of Contract by reason of non-conformance with the specifications or defects or faulty workmanship.

3.7.1.1 The Contractor shall obtain and pay for a Certificate of Occupancy as required by governing authorities prior to final acceptance of the Project. Certificate shall be forwarded to the Owner.

3.7.1.2 LWC Incorporated will submit documents to the State and the Contractor shall obtain and pay for the General Building Permit as required by authorities having jurisdiction. All other permits, fees required by local authorities of the Contractor or his Sub-contractors shall be included with the Contractor's Bid. The Contractor shall obtain and pay for the "Occupancy Permit".

3.7.1.3 The Contractor shall obtain and pay for required "Tap in Fees".

3.7.1.4 The Contractor shall pay for the "Aid to Construction" charge.

Add the following Paragraph 3.10.4 and Subparagraphs 3.10.4.1 through 3.10.4.4:

3.10.4 When it becomes apparent from the weekly progress meeting that any activity completion date may not be met, the Contractor shall take some or all of the following actions at no additional cost to the Owner or the Architect:

3.10.4.1 Increase construction manpower in such quantities as will eliminate the backlog of work and put the Project back on schedule.

3.10.4.2 Increase the number of working hours per shift, shifts per working day, working days per week, or the amount of construction equipment, or any combination of the foregoing as will substantially eliminate the backlog of work and put the project back on schedule.

3.10.4.3 Reschedule activities to achieve maximum practical concurrency of accomplishment of activities and put the Project back on schedule.

3.10.4.4 If a Contractor fails to take any of the above actions within forty-eight (48) hours after receiving written notice, the Owner may take action to attempt to put the Project back on schedule, and deduct the cost of such actions from the moneys due or to become due the Contractor.

3.12.2.1 All Work shall be furnished and installed in accordance with the Drawings, Specifications, and as additionally required by the manufacturer's printed instructions. The Contractor shall review the manufacturer's instructions, and where conflict occurs between the Drawings or Specifications and the manufacturer's instructions, the Contractor shall request clarification from the Architect prior to commencing the work.

3.12.8.1 The Contractor shall provide full information to the manufacturer as to the relevant performance requirements and conditions under which materials, systems, or equipment will be expected to operate. Certifications received shall be in the form of a presentation or assurance of performance at the Project site.

3.18.3 The Contractor shall be obligated to report errors or inconsistencies to the Architect and shall be liable for extra costs resulting from failure to give adequate notice of errors and inconsistencies.

3.19 LABOR DISPUTES

3.19.1 The Contractor agrees to indemnify and hold the Owner and the Architect harmless from any and all losses or damages arising out of jurisdictional labor disputes or other labor troubles of any kind that may occur during performance of the Contract.

ARTICLE 4

4.2.16 The Architect will not be responsible for specified construction procedures. The Contractor shall be responsible for all construction means, methods, materials, and procedures. The Specifications may indicate or specify means, methods, and materials (including manufacturer's instructions, and reference codes and standards). Where the Architect makes such reference, it is merely to indicate a standard by which Work may be judged and to indicate means, methods, materials, and systems whose suitability has been demonstrated by "Rules of the Trade", by certified test data, industry standards, governing regulations, and manufacturer's recommendations. The Contractor shall be responsible for making timely objections, proposing alternative, or making discrepancies known to the Architect when procedures and materials are specified.

ARTICLE 6 – CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

6.1.5 Any use of the premises and partial occupancy by the Owner shall not be construed as an acceptance of any portion of the Work nor a waiver of any claims.

ARTICLE 7 - CHANGES IN THE WORK

7.1.5 The Contractor shall verify all information given prior to beginning his work. The Contractor shall make careful investigation to establish the exact location of items indicated on the Drawings. The Contractor shall be responsible for all costs arising out of damage to such items which result from his work.



**KOONTZ BRYANT
JOHNSON WILLIAMS**

July 7, 2023

LWC, Inc.
434 E. First St.
Dayton, Ohio 45402

Attn: Mr. Ed Soots, AIA, LEED, AP
Senior Associate

Re: Geotechnical Engineering Investigation for the Proposed New Facility and Parking Areas at the Benham's Grove Event Center, 166 N. Main St., Centerville, Ohio; KBJW Report No. 22-25632-001-01-0623

Mr. Soots:

Koontz Bryant Johnson Williams, Inc. (KBJW, formerly CBC Engineers & Associates, Ltd.) is pleased to submit our report of the geotechnical engineering investigation for the above-referenced project. The purpose of this study is to provide an evaluation of the physical characteristics of the soil strata and net allowable bearing capacities at the locations tested. Also noted are other conditions that might affect the design and/or construction of the proposed new facility and parking areas at the Benham's Grove Event Center, 166 N. Main St. in Centerville, Ohio based on the results of the testing.

For your convenience, the samples collected that were not used to perform the laboratory tests will be kept in our office for a period of three months. If you have any questions, or if we can be of further service, please call us.

Respectfully submitted,

Koontz Bryant Johnson Williams, Inc.

Deepa Nair, M.S., P.E.
Project Engineer

Mitchell T. Hardert, P.E.
Chief Engineer



DN/MTH/mt
ec: Client (esoots@lwcinspires.com)
ec: Lucas Lantz (llantz@lwcinspires.com)
1-File

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION	PAGE NO.
I	TEXT
1.0	INTRODUCTION1
2.0	WORK PERFORMED1
2.1	FIELD WORK1
2.2	LABORATORY WORK2
3.0	SOIL CONDITIONS AND GROUNDWATER LEVELS2
4.0	DISCUSSION AND RECOMMENDATIONS.....3
4.1	PROJECT DESCRIPTION.....3
4.2	BUILDING AREA4
4.2.1	LATERAL AND UPLIFT FORCES ON SHALLOW FOOTINGS.....6
4.2.2	LATERAL EARTH PRESSURES ON BELOW GRADE WALLS.....7
4.2.3	SLABS-ON-GRADE.....8
4.2.4	FOUNDATION EXCAVATIONS.....9
4.3	PAVEMENT AREAS.....9
5.0	SLOPE CONSIDERATIONS.....13
6.0	CONSTRUCTION DEWATERING.....13
7.0	SITE PREPARATION.....14
8.0	SOIL SWELLING POTENTIAL15
9.0	LIQUEFACTION15
10.0	BURIED UTILITY PIPES16
11.0	DRAINAGE.....17
12.0	CLOSURE17
12.1	BASIS OF RECOMMENDATIONS17
12.2	LIMITATIONS OF STUDY/RECOMMENDED ADDITIONAL SERVICES.....17
12.3	WARRANTY19
12.3.1	SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION.....19
12.3.2	LABORATORY AND FIELD TESTS19
12.3.3	ANALYSIS AND RECOMMENDATIONS20
12.3.4	CONSTRUCTION MONITORING.....20
12.3.5	GENERAL.....21
II	SPECIFICATIONS
III	BORING LOGS, LABORATORY TESTING RESULTS, & FIGURES

SECTION I

TEXT

1.0 INTRODUCTION

Authorization to proceed with this investigation was given by Mr. Ed Soots of LWC, Inc. Work was to proceed in accordance with KBJW Quotation No. 22-25632-001 Revision 2, dated April 28, 2023, and the terms and conditions of the contract attached thereto.

The proposed construction is to be located at 166 N. Main St., Centerville, Ohio. A Vicinity Map is presented in Figure 1 in Section III of this document.

2.0 WORK PERFORMED

2.1 FIELD WORK

Seven (7) borings were made in the relative positions shown on the Boring Location Plan (Figure 2) in Section III. The boring logs and resulting data are also included in Section III. The borings were made with an ATV mounted drilling rig using hollow-stem augers and employing standard penetration resistance methods (ASTM D-1586, which includes 140-pound hammer, 30-inch drop, and two-inch-O.D. split-spoon sampler) at maximum 2.5-foot intervals for 10 feet below the ground surface and at 5-foot intervals to the bottom of the borings. The disturbed split-spoon samples were visually classified, logged, sealed in moisture-proof jars, and taken to the KBJW laboratory for study. The depths where these "A"-type split-spoon samples were collected are noted on the boring logs. Two cores (Cores #1 and #2) were made in areas of existing asphalt pavement located as shown on the Boring Location Plan (Figure 2) in Section III. The asphalt core samples obtained were returned to KBJW lab where they were measured and photographed. ODOT 304 type subbase was observed below the asphalt at each core location and the subbase material visually appeared to be in a compacted state. The photographs of the core samples are included in Section III of this report. Table 1 below details the observed thickness of the asphalt and subbase material down to the subgrade soil at the core locations.

TABLE 1
SUMMARY OF CORING RESULTS

CORING NUMBER	ASPHALT THICKNESS (INCHES)	SUBBASE THICKNESS (INCHES)
C-1	5.0	10.0
C-2	4.5	10.0+

2.2 LABORATORY WORK

Five (5) natural moisture content determinations were made in accordance with ASTM D-4643. The results of these tests are tabulated in Table 2 as follows, and are also included in Section III of this report:

TABLE 2
RESULTS OF NATURAL MOISTURE CONTENT TESTS (ASTM D-4643)

BORING NO.	DEPTH INCREMENT, (FT.)	NATURAL MOISTURE CONTENT, %
KBJW-4	1.0 – 2.5	17.9
KBJW-4	3.5 – 4.6	18.4
KBJW-5	1.0 – 2.5	21.3
KBJW-6	1.0 – 2.5	15.5
KBJW-7	1.0 – 2.5	13.5

3.0 SOIL CONDITIONS AND GROUNDWATER LEVELS

Borings KBJW-1 through KBJW-5 were made within the footprint of the proposed facility, and borings KBJW-6 and KBJW-7 were made in proposed pavement areas as shown on the Boring Location Plan (Figure 2 in Section III). The borings showed the presence of approximately 2 to 3.5 inches of topsoil at the project site. The topsoil was generally underlain by weathered shale and limestone bedrock in borings KBJW-1 through KBJW-4. The topsoil was underlain in borings KBJW-5 through KBJW-7 by existing undocumented silty/sandy clay fill extending to an approximate depth of 2.5 to 3.5 feet below the existing site grade. The existing fill was underlain by weathered shale and limestone bedrock extending to the bottom of these borings. Auger refusal (presumably on competent bedrock) was encountered in all of the borings at an approximate depth of 2.5 to 7.3 feet below the existing site grade.

Table 3 below shows the approximate depths to the top of the weathered and competent bedrock below the existing site grade at the current boring locations.

TABLE 3
APPROXIMATE DEPTHS TO WEATHERED AND COMPETENT BEDROCK AT THE
CURRENT BORING LOCATIONS

BORING NO.	APPROXIMATE DEPTH TO WEATHERED BEDROCK (FT.)	APPROXIMATE DEPTH TO COMPETENT BEDROCK (FT.)
KBJW-1	0.2	7.3
KBJW-2	0.3	4.1
KBJW-3	0.3	2.5
KBJW-4	0.3	4.6
KBJW-5	2.5	4.0
KBJW-6	2.5	4.1
KBJW-7	3.5	4.0

Groundwater observations were made during the drilling operations (by noting the depth of water on the drilling tools) and in the open boreholes following withdrawal of the drilling augers. No free groundwater was encountered at the time of drilling activities. However, it should be noted that short-term water level readings are not necessarily a reliable indication of the groundwater level and that significant fluctuations may occur due to variations in rainfall and other factors. For specific information on the soil conditions, please refer to the individual boring logs in Section III.

Based on the encountered soil conditions at the project site, the site classification was determined to be "Site Class D" per the Ohio Building Code. In addition, a S_{DS} coefficient of 0.148g was calculated, and a S_{D1} coefficient of 0.113g was also calculated for design based on the aforementioned building code. A "Site Class D" suggests that the soil materials are stiff with standard penetration test "N-values" between 15 and 50.

4.0 DISCUSSION AND RECOMMENDATIONS

4.1 PROJECT DESCRIPTION

LWC, Inc. is currently developing information regarding a proposed facility and parking areas at Benham's Grove Event Center, 166 N. Main Street, Centerville, Ohio. No details of the proposed project regarding the structural loads of the proposed facility have been provided to us at this time. The following recommendations are based on the assumption that no unusual

loading conditions or special settlement restrictions apply to the proposed project and the foundations for the future construction are proposed to be shallow foundations. Consequently, if the above information is incorrect or if changes are made, KBJW should be notified so that the new data can be reviewed.

4.2 BUILDING AREA

All existing topsoil/deleterious existing fill materials should be stripped from the entire footprint of the proposed building area. The existing undocumented clayey fill soils encountered to an approximate depth 2.5 feet to 3.5 feet below the existing site grade at the project site (in boring KBJW-5) are not suitable for foundation or slab support. Therefore, all existing fill encountered within the building footprint should be excavated until native weathered bedrock material is reached (approximate depth of 2.5 feet below the existing grade in the vicinity of boring KBJW-5), and the excavation backfilled to the bottom of the slab-on-grade using engineered fill compacted to at least 95% of the maximum dry unit weight with a moisture content within 2% of the optimum moisture content as determined by the modified Proctor test. In order to ensure the presence of suitable bearing soil at the bottom of the excavation, the bottom of the excavation should be observed and tested by a representative of this office. All exposed subgrade at the bottom of the excavations should be compacted to at least 95% of the maximum dry unit weight with a moisture content within 2% of the optimum moisture content as determined by modified Proctor test before engineered fill placement.

Engineered fill placed at the project site should be compacted to at least 95% of the maximum dry unit weight with moisture content within 2% of the optimum moisture content as determined by the modified Proctor test. Excavated material that is free of organic or objectionable materials can be reused as fill. In general, any non-organic naturally-occurring soils can be used for structural fill. Cohesive soils with Liquid Limit (LL) greater than 50, a Plastic Index (PI) of greater than 25, or an organic content greater than 7 percent as determined by Loss-on-Ignition (ASTM D2974) should not be used for engineered fill. The fill should contain no fragments whose greatest dimension is larger than half the thickness of the lift being placed. The existing fill and native soils appear to be suitable for reuse as engineered fill but may require some moisture adjustments and screening for deleterious content. Once the building

pad is prepared according to these recommendations, the slab-on-grade can be supported on the new engineered fill, or on weathered rock or native soils. All of the spread footing elements for the proposed building must bear on weathered bedrock and can be designed for an allowable bearing capacity of 3,000 psf. If higher bearing capacities are desirable, the footings could be extended to bear on competent bedrock or the footings undercut until competent bedrock is reached and the excavation backfilled to the bottom of the footings using lean concrete with a 28-day unconfined compressive strength of at least 2,000 psi. The approximate depths to the competent bedrock across the project site are provided in Table 3 above. Such spread footing elements bearing on competent bedrock can be designed with a net allowable bearing pressure of 6000 psf. These net allowable bearing pressures can be increased by a factor of one-third when designing for transient loadings such as wind or earthquake ground motions. All foundations should bear at a depth of at least 32 inches below the final grade for frost heave considerations. Square and continuous footings for the structures should be designed at least 2.5 feet and 1.5 feet wide, respectively, even if the anticipated structure loadings would allow for smaller foundation element sizes. It is recommended that KBJW be retained to confirm the acceptability of the bearing materials at the recommended depths and verify the recommended bearing capacities once the excavation is completed before the footings are poured.

All soil bearing foundations settle as the result of the externally applied loads. Settlement of proposed foundations designed to the recommendation provided herein should be anticipated, although such movements are estimated (based upon our experience in similar soils) to be within the tolerable limits for conventional structures (i.e., the total settlement will be less than about 1 inch, while differential settlement will be limited to about one half of this value). **As mentioned above, the depth to competent bedrock varies widely across the proposed building site from as low as 2.5 feet to as deep as 7.3 feet and the building foundations should be designed to bear completely on weathered bedrock or completely on competent bedrock. If the new building structure is designed to rest partially on competent bedrock (non-yielding material) and partially on weathered rock (somewhat yielding), expansion joints would need to be placed across the building superstructure to control the effects of differential settlement. The footing sections between expansion joints should be designed to bear on**

the same foundation material for the entire footing length between the joints. The bearing depth of the footings may have to be accordingly increased in some areas.

Backfill for utility trenches, slab excavations, etc., within structures, driveways, or parking lot areas should be placed in successive, horizontal layers. Each layer should be compacted to 95% of the maximum modified Proctor dry unit weight within 2% of the optimum moisture content before the next layer is added. In no instance should puddling or jetting the backfill material be allowed as a compaction method. Any weathered materials at foundation depth will soften and the bearing capacity will be reduced if water ponds in the excavation. Weathered materials exposed in the bases of all satisfactory foundation excavations should be protected against any detrimental change in condition such as from disturbance, rain and freezing. Surface run-off water should be drained away from the excavation and not allowed to pond. If possible, all foundation concrete should be placed the same day the excavation is made. If this is not practical, the foundation excavations should be adequately protected. Also, for this reason, proper drainage should be maintained after construction.

All foundations should be located so that the least lateral clear distance between any two foundations will be at least equal to the difference in their bearing elevations (see Figure 3 in Section III of this document). If this distance cannot be maintained, the lower foundation should be designed to account for the load imparted by the upper foundation. If this condition occurs adjacent to a below-grade wall, the wall should be designed for the additional lateral earth pressure due to the upper foundation.

4.2.1 LATERAL AND UPLIFT FORCES ON SHALLOW FOOTINGS

Lateral forces on the foundation elements can be resisted by passive lateral earth pressures against the opposite vertical face of the foundation and by friction along the soil/foundation interface. An allowable resisting passive earth pressure of 200 lbs./sq. ft., and coefficient of friction of 0.35, respectively, can be used for design purposes. The passive resistance should only be used for that portion of the foundation located at a depth greater than 2.5 feet beneath the final grade (Please see Figure 4 in Section III of this text). A factor of safety

of 1.5 relative to the lateral capacity should be used in design. It should be noted that lateral movements, on the order of up to 0.5 inch, may occur to mobilize this lateral resisting force.

It is further recommended that only the weight of the footing and the total weight of the soil above and within the periphery of the footing be used for resisting uplift forces. A total soil unit weight of 120 lbs./cu. ft. should be used for these computations for backfill material compacted as recommended in Section 4.2 (Please see Figure 5 in Section III of this document). It is also recommended that a factor of safety of at least 1.5 be used in calculating uplift resistance due to the weight of the footing and the backfill soil.

4.2.2 LATERAL EARTH PRESSURES ON BELOW GRADE WALLS

The magnitude of lateral earth pressure against subsurface walls is dependent on the method of backfill placement, the type of backfill soil, drainage provisions and whether or not the wall is permitted to yield during and/or after placement of the backfill. When a wall is held rigidly against horizontal movement, the lateral pressure against the wall is greater than the "active" earth pressure that is typically used in the design of free-standing retaining walls. Therefore, rigid walls should be designed for higher, "at-rest" pressures (using an at-rest lateral earth pressure coefficient, K_o), while yielding walls can be designed for active pressures (using an active lateral earth pressure coefficient, K_a).

For use in these computations, a total soil unit weight of 130 lbs/cu. ft. should be used. For below-grade walls, a coefficient of earth pressure at-rest (K_o) of 0.5 and a coefficient of "active" earth pressure of 0.33 are recommended, provided a well-graded granular material is used for backfill (Please see Figure 6 in Section III of this document). Also, a passive earth pressure coefficient of 2.75 should be used in design. The granular backfill material should extend upward and outward from the base of the wall on a slope not steeper than about 1 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical). This method of computation presumes that there will be no hydrostatic pressure due to water build-up.

It is recommended that the static weight per axle of equipment utilized for the compaction of the backfill materials not exceed 2 tons per axle for non-vibratory equipment and

1 ton per axle for vibratory equipment. All heavy equipment, including compaction equipment heavier than recommended above, should not be allowed closer to the wall (horizontal distance) than the vertical distance from the backfill surface to the bottom of the wall. If it is desired to use heavier compaction equipment adjacent to the below grade wall, it is recommended that this office be contacted to determine the resulting earth pressures.

4.2.3 SLABS-ON-GRADE

The existing undocumented fill and any other deleterious materials encountered below any proposed floor slab should be excavated until all of these materials are completely removed, and the excavation backfilled to the bottom of the floor slab with compacted engineered fill. The exposed sub-grade at the base of the slab-on-grade excavation must be recompacted to at least 95% of the maximum dry unit weight within 2% of the optimum moisture content as determined by the modified Proctor test. Slabs-on-grade can then be supported on new compacted structural fill or native soils.

It is recommended that all slabs-on-grade be "floating", that is, fully ground supported and not structurally connected to walls or foundations. This is to minimize the possibility of cracking and displacement of the slabs-on-grade because of differential movements between the slab and the foundation. Although the movements are estimated to be within the tolerable limits for structural safety, such movements could be detrimental to the slabs if they were rigidly connected to the foundations.

It is furthermore recommended that the slabs-on-grade be supported on a 4 to 6-inch layer of relatively clean granular material such as sand and gravel or crushed stone. This is to help distribute concentrated loads and equalize moisture conditions beneath the slab. Proper drainage must be incorporated into this granular layer to preclude future wet areas in the finished slab-on-grade. However, all deleterious materials encountered during site preparation must be removed and replaced with select engineered fill that is compacted to the specifications previously outlined in Section 4.2 of this report. Provided that a minimum of 4 inches of granular material is placed below the new slab-on-grade, a modulus of subgrade reaction (k_{30}) of 100 lbs./cu. in. can be used for design of the slabs.

4.2.4 FOUNDATION EXCAVATIONS

Each foundation excavation should be inspected to insure that all loose, soft or otherwise undesirable material is removed and that the foundation will bear on satisfactory material.

If pockets of soft, loose or otherwise unsuitable material are encountered in the footing excavations and it is inconvenient to lower the footings, the proposed footing elevations may be re-established by backfilling after the undesirable material has been removed. The undercut excavation beneath each footing should extend to suitable bearing materials and the dimensions of the excavation base should be at least 1-foot wider than the width of the overlying footing element on all sides. The entire excavation should then be refilled with lean concrete up to the planned bottom of footing elevation. Special care should be exercised to remove any sloughed, loose or soft materials near the base of the excavation. All Federal, State, and Local regulations should be strictly adhered to relative to excavation side-slope geometry and any required shoring.

4.3 PAVEMENT AREAS

The existing topsoil and deleterious undocumented fill materials encountered underneath the proposed pavement should be excavated until all topsoil and other deleterious content is completely removed (to an approximate depth of 2.5 to 3.5 feet below the existing site grade), and the excavation backfilled to the bottom of the pavement with compacted engineered fill. All exposed subgrade at the bottom of the excavations should be compacted to 95% of the maximum modified Proctor dry unit weight within 2% of the optimum moisture content. Proposed pavement can then be supported on new compacted structural fill or stiff native soils/weathered bedrock.

The design of pavement sections at the project site is dependent on several major design considerations such as the support capability of the subgrade soil underneath including its drainage characteristics, and anticipated truck traffic in the pavement sections, and the type of asphalt/concrete and aggregate proposed to be utilized in the pavement sections.

Based on the results of this investigation and our experience with similar soils, a California Bearing Ratio (CBR) value of 3 has been estimated for use in pavement design for the

subgrade soils/weathered bedrock encountered at this site. The subgrade materials should be prepared and inspected as described in Section II of this report. CBR values are highly dependent on the moisture content of the subgrade materials. The moisture content of the subgrade can fluctuate/vary depending on climatic conditions such as precipitation, rate of evaporation, proper drainage, etc., and elevated moisture contents can significantly reduce the CBR value of the subgrade materials. Therefore, it is recommended that proper drainage (surface and sub-surface) be provided in all pavement areas so that water is not able to build-up in the granular base or the subgrade which could potentially result in subgrade softening and pavement distress. The paved area should have a minimum slope of 1.5 percent to provide adequate drainage. A means of draining the base material and/or surface of the pavement by the catch basins or draining through the subbase material must be provided. No undrained granular fill area should be allowed to exist in the pavement cross-section. This includes utility trenches, as well as the base course of the pavement. Prior to paving, the entire area should be thoroughly compacted, or recompacted to a dry unit weight of at least 95% of the maximum modified Proctor dry unit weight at no more than two percent below or over optimum moisture.

We have accordingly utilized a CBR value of 3.0 for the existing weathered bedrock and/or engineered fill at the project site, and a subgrade modulus of approximately 3,600 psi in the proposed pavement design. We have been requested to provide recommendations for asphalt pavement (standard duty and heavy-duty pavements), brick paver pavement (standard duty pavement), and Portland cement concrete pavement (heavy duty pavement) sections at various locations at the project site. According to the information provided by the client, we have considered the number of vehicles using the subject standard duty pavement areas to be a total of a maximum of 300 passenger vehicle per day at 5 days a week. This would result in an estimated total ESAL (Equivalent Single Axle Load) value of approximately 10,200 for a 25-year estimated service life of the standard duty pavement. Also as provided, we have considered the number of vehicles using the subject heavy duty pavement areas to be a total of a maximum of 300 passenger vehicles per day at 5 days a week, a maximum of 2 garbage/dumpster trucks per week, and a maximum of 10 delivery trucks per a week. This would result in an estimated total ESAL (Equivalent Single Axle Load) value of approximately 136,600 for a 25-year estimated

service life of the heavy duty pavement. The above data and design considerations have been utilized in the design of the proposed pavement sections.

Based on the subgrade support capability and estimated vehicle traffic for standard duty pavement (estimated ESAL of approximately 10,200 for 25-year estimated service life) at the project site, it has been determined based on the 1993 AASHTO Flexible Design Methodology that the required minimum total thickness of the proposed standard duty asphalt pavement section is 11 inches consisting of a minimum asphalt thickness of 3 inches and a minimum aggregate base course thickness of 8 inches supported on the prepared subgrade. Based on the subgrade support capability and estimated vehicle traffic for heavy duty pavement (estimated ESAL of approximately 136,600 for 25-year estimated service life) at the project site, it has been determined based on the 1993 AASHTO Flexible Design Methodology that the required minimum total thickness of the proposed heavy duty asphalt pavement section is 13 inches consisting of a minimum asphalt thickness of 5 inches and a minimum aggregate base course thickness of 8 inches supported on the prepared subgrade. The aggregate base course should consist of ODOT 304 crushed stone compacted to at least 95% of the maximum dry unit weight within 2% of the optimum moisture content as determined by the modified Proctor test. The aggregate base course should be placed directly on the prepared subgrade in layers as per ODOT specifications and each layer should be compacted to 95% of the maximum modified Proctor dry unit weight within 2% of the optimum moisture content before the next layer is added. The asphalt course immediately above the aggregate base course (initial course) should be ODOT Item 441 Type 2 asphalt concrete with PG 64-22 asphalt binder placed on top of the ODOT 304 stone aggregate base. This asphalt layer thickness should be placed in lifts as per ODOT specifications. The overlying asphalt surface (wearing) course should be ODOT Item 441 Type 1 surface asphalt concrete with a minimum thickness of 1.5 inches. A tack coat/bond coat (ODOT Item 407) should be applied between the asphalt courses and the tack coat should be CSS-1, SS-1, MC-70 or other equivalent alternative. The tack coat/bond coat should be applied only after the surface is cleaned of all dust, dirt or other loose particles.

Based on the subgrade support capability and estimated vehicle traffic for heavy duty pavement (estimated ESAL of approximately 136,600 for 25-year estimated service life) at the project site, it has been determined based on the 1993 AASHTO Rigid Design Methodology that

the required minimum total thickness of the proposed Portland Cement Concrete (PCC) heavy duty pavement section is 12 inches consisting of a minimum cement concrete thickness of 6 inches (ODOT Item 452) and a minimum aggregate base course thickness of 6 inches supported on the prepared subgrade. The pavement should be reinforced with 6x6 – W4xW4 welded wire mesh located 2" below the pavement surface. The aggregate base course should consist of ODOT 304 crushed stone compacted to at least 95% of the maximum dry unit weight within 2% of the optimum moisture content as determined by the modified Proctor test. The aggregate base course should be placed directly on the prepared subgrade in layers as per ODOT specifications and each layer should be compacted to 95% of the maximum modified Proctor dry unit weight within 2% of the optimum moisture content before the next layer is added. The concrete pavement should have saw-cut control joints as per ODOT specifications with a maximum joint spacing of 12 feet.

Based on the subgrade support capability and estimated vehicle traffic for standard duty pavement (estimated ESAL of approximately 10,200 for 25-year estimated service life) at the project site, the proposed standard duty brick paver pavement section has been determined to consist of traffic rated brick pavers placed on a 1.5 inch thick mortar bed bearing on a Portland Cement Concrete (PCC) base of thickness of 4 inches (ODOT Item 452). The cement concrete base must be placed on an aggregate base course of a minimum thickness of 6 inches supported on the prepared subgrade. The aggregate base course should consist of ODOT 304 crushed stone compacted to at least 95% of the maximum dry unit weight within 2% of the optimum moisture content as determined by the modified Proctor test. The aggregate base course should be placed directly on the prepared subgrade in layers as per ODOT specifications and each layer should be compacted to 95% of the maximum modified Proctor dry unit weight within 2% of the optimum moisture content before the next layer is added. All edges of the paver areas should be bounded by concrete headers to preclude lateral displacement of the pavers.

Details regarding site grading in pavement areas are not available at this time; however, depending upon grading requirements and seasonal conditions, it is possible that the pavement subgrade in some areas will be wet or spongy at the time of construction. If at the time of construction the subgrade is found to be excessively wet and spongy, it is recommended that the

subgrade materials be stabilized by discing, aerating and recompacting. However, if it is not possible to suitably dry the subgrade materials they should be stabilized using hydrated lime or a biaxial/triaxial geogrid with additional crushed stone placed over the subgrade and/or perforated pipe subdrains should be added to the pavement system. In any case, the subgrade surface should be uniformly sloped to facilitate drainage through the granular base and to avoid any ponding of water beneath the pavement. The storm water catch basins in pavement areas should be designed to allow water to drain from the aggregate base into the catch basins.

5.0 SLOPE CONSIDERATIONS

A detailed slope stability analysis is beyond the scope of this study. However, it is recommended that fill slopes less than 10 feet in height be designed for slopes not steeper than 2.5 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical). For any fill greater than 10 feet in height, it is recommended that slopes be not steeper than 3 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical).

In general, temporary cut slopes of 2 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical) should remain stable during a reasonable construction period provided they are not higher than about 10 feet and are not subjected to excessive vibration from construction equipment and are protected from surface erosion. The need for temporary bracing of utility trenches should be anticipated. In general, any permanent cut slopes should be no steeper than about 3 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical).

6.0 CONSTRUCTION DEWATERING

At the time of our investigation, the free groundwater level was generally encountered below anticipated footing excavation depths at the boring locations. However, significant quantities of groundwater should be anticipated in the proposed foundation excavations due to the possible presence of sand and gravel zones common to this area. In order to maintain proper bearing support for the foundations, the entire foundation excavation area must be dewatered (groundwater level lowered) to at least 2 feet below the deepest footing excavation elevation prior to the placement of the foundations, and the dewatering of the area maintained until the foundations are fully constructed. Sump pumping is generally a suitable method of dewatering in such areas where the required depth of groundwater to be lowered is generally less. Extra care must be exercised when pumping from sumps that extend into silts and other granular soils as

observed at this site, as a general deterioration of the bearing materials and a localized "quick" condition could result. Extra care must also be exercised during pumping to ensure that the loss of fines does not occur and filter fabric should be used as necessary to maintain a soil-tight system. It is imperative that the dewatering of the excavations and subgrade materials be continually maintained until the foundations are fully constructed, and they are providing confinement of the underlying materials. If the groundwater level is allowed to rise to the surface of the excavation areas without the surface being confined, detrimental softening and degradation of the foundation and subgrade materials should be expected that will require remedial measures in order to provide adequate support for the structure. The evaluation and design of any required temporary or permanent dewatering measures to facilitate proper construction and proper in-service conditions is the responsibility of others than KBJW.

7.0 SITE PREPARATION

All areas that will support foundations and slabs-on-grade should be properly prepared. After rough grade has been established in cut areas and prior to placement of fill in all fill areas, the exposed subgrade should be carefully inspected by probing and testing as needed. Any topsoil or other organic material/fill still in place, frozen, wet, soft or loose soil, and other undesirable existing fill should be removed and replaced with engineered fill. Aeration of the near-surface in-situ materials should be anticipated prior to their placement as engineered fill (or chemical stabilization can also be used). The exposed subgrade should furthermore be inspected by proofrolling with a loaded tandem axle truck or other suitable equipment to check for pockets of soft material hidden beneath a thin crust of better material. Any unsuitable materials thus exposed should be removed and replaced with well-compacted, engineered fill as outlined in the specifications of this document. However, it may also become necessary (due to the presence of soft exposed materials) to employ chemical stabilization or to locally incorporate ODOT No. 2 aggregate into the subgrade to increase its stiffness.

In general, care should be exercised during the grading operations at the site. Due to the nature of the near surface materials, the traffic of heavy equipment, including heavy compaction equipment, may create pumping and general deterioration of the shallower materials, especially if excess surface water is present. If this occurs, it may be necessary to utilize a biaxial/triaxial

geogrid, chemical stabilization, or other methodology (such as the incorporation of ODOT No. 2 aggregate into the subgrade) to stabilize the disturbed subgrade. The grading, therefore, should be done during a dry season, if at all possible.

In addition, it must be emphasized that once engineered fill is properly placed on the project site, that these materials can also degrade significantly due to the effects of heavy construction traffic and wet weather. This degradation may in some cases require the excavation and replacement of the engineered fill with aerated, chemically-stabilized fill materials; hence, caution should be exercised to avoid such degradation of these materials.

It should be noted that when vibratory rollers are utilized on certain soils types (such as fine grain sands or silts), that shear induced pore water pressures may be developed within these materials which will result in significant "pumping" of these materials (even though these materials may be stiff and pass moisture density tests on engineered fills). Therefore (in these types of materials), it is imperative that the vibrator not be utilized and that these materials be statically rolled in order to preclude the development of such shear induced pore water pressures. These shear induced pore water pressures dissipate over a number of days (depending on the permeability of the materials); however, in the short term, significant "pumping" of these materials can be witnessed in the field.

8.0 SOIL SWELLING POTENTIAL

Based upon the laboratory tests performed for this study and the mineralogy of typical materials from the general vicinity of the project site, no significant soil swelling is anticipated. To our knowledge, there are no instances of problems associated with soil swelling in the project vicinity.

9.0 LIQUEFACTION

When certain soils (generally only granular soils) below the groundwater table are subjected to dynamic loads, such as those produced by earthquakes, a sudden increase in pore water pressure occurs as the result of shearing of the soil particles past one another. In extreme cases, when these shear induced pore water pressures exceed the strength of the soil, the soil

strength can reduce to zero thereby resulting in a phenomenon known as "liquefaction." Conditions at this site have been examined to determine the likelihood for liquefaction of the natural soils during earthquake ground motions.

Soil type, relative density, initial confining pressure (i.e., the depth of the potentially liquefiable soil below the ground surface) and the magnitude of potential ground motions are the most important factors in determining the liquefaction potential of a soil mass. It is generally agreed that saturated, relatively loose (with blow counts or "N" values typically less than about 13) in the upper 50 feet or so are most susceptible to liquefaction.

Clayey soils are generally considered to be non-vulnerable to liquefaction. It is, therefore, concluded that liquefaction (or any significant loss of strength) of the materials underlying the project site during earthquake ground motions is extremely unlikely. To our knowledge, there are no recorded cases of liquefaction of subsurface materials similar to those at this project site. Therefore, no special design measures relative to soil liquefaction appear to be warranted.

10.0 BURIED UTILITY PIPES

Excavations for buried utility pipelines should follow the guidelines set forth previously in this report. Depending on the pipeline material, a minimum thickness of at least 0.5 foot of select fine-grained granular bedding material should be used beneath all below-grade pipes, with a minimum cover thickness of at least 3 feet to afford an "arching" effect and reduce stresses on the pipe. The cover thickness may be reduced if the external loading condition on the pipe is relatively light or if the pipe is designed to withstand the external loading condition. It is not recommended that "pea-gravel" or other "open-work" aggregates be used for trench backfill since these materials are nearly impossible to compact and have a tendency to pond water within their interstices.

11.0 DRAINAGE

Adequate drainage should be provided at the site to minimize any increase in moisture content of the foundation materials. The exterior grade (including all parking areas) should be sloped away from all facility structures to prevent ponding of water.

12.0 CLOSURE

12.1 BASIS OF RECOMMENDATIONS

The evaluations, conclusions, and recommendations in this report are based on our interpretation of the field and laboratory data obtained during the exploration, our understanding of the project and our experience with similar sites and subsurface conditions. Data used during this exploration included, but were not necessarily limited to:

- Seven (7) exploratory borings performed during this study,
- observations of the project site by our staff,
- results of the laboratory soil tests,
- site plans and drawings furnished by the client,
- supportive interaction with the client; and
- published soil or geologic data of this area.

In the event that changes in the project characteristics are planned, or if additional information or differences from the conditions anticipated in this report become apparent, KBJW, should be notified so that the conclusions and recommendations contained in this report can be reviewed and, if necessary, modified or verified in writing.

12.2 LIMITATIONS OF STUDY/RECOMMENDED ADDITIONAL SERVICES

The subsurface conditions discussed in this report and those shown on the boring logs represent an estimate of the subsurface conditions based on interpretation of the boring data using normally accepted geotechnical engineering judgments. Although individual test borings are representative of the subsurface conditions at the boring locations on the dates shown, they are not necessarily indicative of subsurface conditions at other locations or at other times.

Regardless of the thoroughness of a subsurface exploration, there is the possibility that conditions between borings will differ from those at the boring locations, that conditions are not as anticipated by designers, or that the construction process has altered the soil conditions. As variations in the soil profile are encountered, additional subsurface sampling and testing may be necessary to provide data required to re-evaluate the recommendations of this report. Consequently, after submission of this report it is recommended that KBJW be authorized to perform additional services to work with the designer(s) to minimize errors and omissions regarding the interpretation and implementation of this report.

Prior to construction, we recommend that KBJW:

- work with the designers to implement the recommended geotechnical design parameters into plans and specifications,
- consult with the design team regarding interpretation of this report,
- establish criteria for the construction observation and testing for the soil/rock conditions encountered at this site; and
- review final plans and specifications pertaining to geotechnical aspects of design.

During construction, we recommend that KBJW:

- observe the construction, particularly the site preparation, fill placement, and foundation excavation or installation,
- perform in-place density testing of all compacted fill,
- perform materials testing of soil and other materials as required; and
- consult with the design team to make design changes in the event that differing subsurface conditions are encountered.

If KBJW is not retained for these services, we shall assume no responsibility for construction compliance with the design concepts, specifications or recommendations.

12.3 WARRANTY

Our professional services have been performed, our findings obtained and our recommendations prepared in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering principles and practices. No other warranty, expressed or implied, is made.

While the services of KBJW are a valuable and integral part of the design and construction teams, we do not warrant, guarantee, or insure the quality or completeness of services provided by other members of those teams, the quality, completeness, or satisfactory performance of construction plans and specifications which we have not prepared, nor the ultimate performance of building site materials.

12.3.1 SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION

Subsurface exploration is normally accomplished by test borings, although test pits are sometimes employed. The method of determining the boring location and the surface elevation at the boring is noted in the report, and is presented on the Boring Location Plan or on the boring log. The location and elevation of the boring should be considered accurate only to the degree inherent with the method used.

The boring log includes sampling information, description of the materials recovered, approximate depth of boundaries between soil and rock strata and groundwater data. The boring log represents conditions specifically at the location and time the boring was made. The boundaries between different strata are indicated at specific depths; however, these depths are in fact approximate and are somewhat dependent upon the frequency of sampling (the transition between soil strata is often gradual). Free groundwater level readings are made at the times and under conditions stated on the boring logs (groundwater levels change with time and season). The borehole does not always remain open sufficiently long enough for the measured water level to coincide with the groundwater table.

12.3.2 LABORATORY AND FIELD TESTS

Laboratory and field tests are performed in accordance with specific ASTM standards unless otherwise indicated. All determinations included in a given ASTM standard are not

always required and performed. Each test report indicates the measurements and determinations actually made.

12.3.3 ANALYSIS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

The geotechnical report is prepared primarily to aid in the engineering design of site work and structural foundations. Although the information in the report is expected to be sufficient for these purposes, it is not intended to determine the cost of construction or to stand alone as a construction specification.

Our engineering report recommendations are based primarily on data from test borings made at the locations shown on a boring location plan included in this report. Soil/rock variations may exist between borings and these variations may not become evident until construction. If significant variations are then noted, the geotechnical engineer should be contacted so that field conditions can be examined and recommendations revised if necessary.

The geotechnical engineering report states our understanding as to the location, dimensions and structural features proposed for the site. Any significant changes in the nature, design, or location of the site improvements MUST be communicated to the geotechnical engineer such that the geotechnical analysis, conclusions, and recommendations can be appropriately adjusted. The geotechnical engineer should be given the opportunity to review all drawings that have been prepared based on their recommendations.

12.3.4 CONSTRUCTION MONITORING

Construction monitoring is a vital element of complete geotechnical services. The field engineer/inspector is the owner's "representative" observing the work of the contractor, performing tests as required in the specifications, and reporting data developed from such tests and observations. The field engineer or inspector does not direct the contractor's construction means, methods, operations or personnel. The field inspector/engineer does not interfere with the relationship between the owner and the contractor and, except as an observer, does not become a substitute owner on site. The field inspector/engineer is responsible for his own safety but has no responsibility for the safety of other personnel at the site. The field inspector/engineer is an important member of a team whose responsibility is to watch and test the work being done

and report to the owner whether that work is being carried out in general conformance with the plans and specifications.

12.3.5 GENERAL

The scope of our services did not include an environmental assessment for the presence or absence of hazardous or toxic materials in the soil, surface water, groundwater or air, on, within or beyond the site studied. Any statements in the report or on the boring logs regarding odors, staining of soils or other unusual items or conditions observed are strictly for the information of our client.

To evaluate the site for possible environmental liabilities, we recommend an environmental assessment, consisting of a detailed site reconnaissance, a record review, and report of findings. Additional subsurface drilling and samplings, including groundwater sampling, may be required. KBJW can provide this service and would be pleased to provide a cost proposal to perform such a study, if requested.

This report has been prepared for the exclusive use of LWC, Inc., and its designees, for specific application to the proposed new facility and parking areas at the Benham's Grove Event Center at 166 N. Main Street, Centerville, Ohio (see Figure 1 in Section III of this report). Specific design and construction recommendations have been provided in the various sections of the report. The report shall, therefore, be used in its entirety. This report is not a bidding document and shall not be used for that purpose. Anyone reviewing this report must interpret and draw their own conclusions regarding specific construction techniques and methods chosen. KBJW is not responsible for the independent conclusions, opinions or recommendations made by others based on the field exploratory and laboratory test data presented in this report.

SECTION II
SPECIFICATIONS

I - ENGINEERED FILL BENEATH STRUCTURES

CLEARING AND GRADING SPECIFICATIONS

1.0 GENERAL CONDITIONS

The Contractor shall furnish all labor, materials, and equipment, and perform all work and services necessary to complete in a satisfactory manner the site preparation, excavation, filling, compaction and grading as shown on the plans and as described therein.

This work shall consist of all clearing and grading, removal of existing structures unless otherwise stated, preparation of the land to be filled, filling of the land, spreading and compaction of the fill, and all subsidiary work necessary to complete the grading of the cut and fill areas to conform with the lines, grades, slopes, and specifications.

This work is to be accomplished under the constant and continuous supervision of the Owner or his designated representative.

In these specifications the terms "approved" and "as directed" shall refer to directions to the Contractor from the Owner or his designated representative.

2.0 SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS

Prior to bidding the work, the Contractor shall examine, investigate and inspect the construction site as to the nature and location of the work, and the general and local conditions at the construction site, including without limitation, the character of surface or subsurface conditions and obstacles to be encountered on and around the construction site; and shall make such additional investigation as he may deem necessary for the planning and proper execution of the work. Borings and/or soil investigations shall have been made. Results of these borings and studies will be made available by the Owner to the Contractor upon his request, but the Owner is not responsible for any interpretations or conclusions with respect thereto made by the Contractor on the basis of such information, and the Owner further has no responsibility for the accuracy of the borings and the soil investigations.

If conditions other than those indicated are discovered by the Contractor, the Owner should be notified immediately. The material which the Contractor believes to be a changed condition should not be disturbed so that the Owner can investigate the condition.

3.0 SITE PREPARATION

Within the specified areas, all trees, brush, stumps, logs, tree roots, and structures scheduled for demolition shall be removed and disposed of.

All cut and fill areas shall be properly stripped. Topsoil will be removed to its full depth and stockpiled for use in finish grading. Any rubbish, organic and other objectionable soils, and

other deleterious material shall be disposed of off the site, or as directed by the Owner or his designated representative if on site disposal is provided. In no case shall such objectionable material be allowed in or under the fill unless specifically authorized in writing.

Prior to the addition of fill, the original ground shall be compacted to job specifications as outlined below. Special notice shall be given to the proposed fill area at this time. If wet spots, spongy conditions, or groundwater seepage is found, corrective measures must be taken before the placement of fill.

4.0 FORMATION OF FILL AREAS

Fills shall be formed of satisfactory materials placed in successive horizontal layers of not more than eight (8) inches in loose depth for the full width of the cross-section. The depth of lift may be increased if the Contractor can demonstrate the ability to compact a larger lift. If compaction is accomplished using hand-tamping equipment, lifts will be limited to 4-inch loose lifts. Engineered fill placed shall be compacted to at least 95% of the maximum dry unit weight with a moisture content within 2% of the optimum moisture content as determined by the modified Proctor test.

All material entering the fill shall be free of organic matter such as leaves, grass, roots, and other objectionable material.

The operations on earth work shall be suspended at any time when satisfactory results cannot be obtained because of rain, freezing weather, or other unsatisfactory conditions. The Contractor shall keep the work areas graded to provide the drainage at all times.

The fill material shall be of the proper moisture content before compaction efforts are started. Wetting or drying of the material and manipulation to secure a uniform moisture content throughout the layer shall be required. Should the material be too wet to permit proper compaction or rolling, all work thus affected shall be delayed until the material has dried to the required moisture content. The moisture content of the fill material should be no more than two (2) percentage points higher or lower than optimum unless otherwise authorized. Sprinkling shall be done with equipment that will satisfactorily distribute the water over the disced area. Any areas inaccessible to a roller shall be consolidated and compacted by mechanical tampers. The equipment shall be operated in such a manner that hardpan, cemented gravel, clay or other chunky soil material will be broken up into small particles and become incorporated with the other material in the layer. The fill shall contain no fragments whose greatest dimension is larger than 1/2 of the thickness of the lift being placed.

In the construction of filled areas, starting layers shall be placed in the deepest portion of the fill, and as placement progresses, additional layers shall be constructed in horizontal planes. Original slopes shall be continuously, vertically benched to provide horizontal fill planes. The size of the benches shall be formed so that the base of the bench is horizontal and the back of the bench is vertical. As many benches as are necessary to bring the site to final grade shall be constructed. Filling operations shall begin on the lowest bench, with the fill being placed in horizontal eight (8) inch thick loose lifts unless otherwise authorized. The filling shall progress

in this manner until the entire first bench has been filled, before any fill is placed on the succeeding benches. Proper drainage shall be maintained at all times during benching and filling of the benches, to insure that all water is drained away from the fill area.

Frozen material shall not be placed in the fill nor shall the fill be placed upon frozen material.

The Contractor shall be responsible for the stability of all fills made under the contract, and shall replace any portion, which in the opinion of the Owner or his designated representative, has become displaced due to carelessness or negligence on the part of the Contractor. Fill damaged by inclement weather shall be repaired at the Contractor's expense.

5.0 SLOPE RATIO AND STORM WATER RUN-OFF

Slopes shall not be greater than 3 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical) in both cut and fill, or as illustrated on the construction drawings. Excavations shall be constructed in accordance with all Federal, State and local codes relative to slope geometry.

6.0 GRADING

The Contractor shall furnish, operate, and maintain such equipment as is necessary to construct uniform layers, and control smoothness of grade for maximum compaction and drainage.

7.0 COMPACTING

The compaction equipment shall be approved equipment of such design, weight, and quantity to obtain the required density in accordance with these specifications.

8.0 TESTING AND INSPECTION SERVICES

Testing and inspection services will be provided by the Owner.

SECTION III

BORING LOGS, LAB TESTING RESULTS, & FIGURES

BORING LOG TERMINOLOGY

STRATUM DEPTH

Distance in feet and/or inches below ground surface.

STRATUM ELEVATION

Elevation in feet below ground surface elevation.

DESCRIPTION OF MATERIALS

Major types of soil material existing at boring location. Soil classification based on one of the following systems: Unified Soil Classification System, Ohio State Highway Classification System, Highway Research Board Classification System, Federal Aviation Authority Classification System, Visual Classification.

SAMPLE NO.

Sample numbers are designated consecutively, increasing with depth for each boring.

SAMPLE TYPE

“A” Split spoon, 2” O.D., 1-3/8” I.D., 18” in length.

“B” One of the following:

- Power Auger Sample
- Piston Sample
- Diamond Bit NX: BX: AX:
- Housel Sample
- Wash Sample
- Denison Sample

“C” Shelby Tube 3” O.D. except where noted.

SAMPLE DEPTH

Depth below top of ground at which appropriate sample was taken.

BLOWS PER 6” ON SAMPLER

The number of blows required to drive a 2” O.D., 1-3/8” I.D., split spoon sampler, using a 140 pound hammer with a 30 inch free fall, is recorded for 6” drive increments. (Example: 3/8/9)

“N” BLOWS/FT.

Standard penetration resistance. This value is based on the total number of blows required for the last 12” of penetration. (Example: 3/8/9 ∴ N = 8 + 9 = 17)

WATER OBSERVATIONS

Depth of water recorded in test boring is measured from top of ground to top of water level. Initial depth indicates water level during boring, completion depth indicates water level immediately after boring, and depth of “X” number hours indicates water level after letting water rise or fall over a time period. Water observations in pervious soil are considered reliable ground water levels for that date. Water observations in impervious soils can not be considered accurate ground water measurements for that date unless records are made over several days’ time. Factors such as weather, soil porosity, etc., will cause the ground water level to fluctuate for both pervious and impervious soils.

SOIL DESCRIPTION

COLOR

When the color of the soil is uniform throughout, the color recorded will be such as brown, gray, black and may be modified by adjectives such as light and dark. If the soil’s predominant color is shaded by a secondary color, the secondary color precedes the primary color, such as: gray-brown, yellow-brown. If two major and distinct colors are swirled throughout the soil, the colors will be modified by the term mottled, such as: mottled brown and gray.

PARTICLE SIZE	VISUAL	SOIL COMPONENTS	
Boulders	Larger than 8”	Major Component	Minor Component Term
Cobbles	8” to 3”	Gravel	Trace 1-10%
Gravel—Coarse	3” to ¾”	Sand	Some 11-35%
Fine	2 mm. To ¾”	Silt	And 36-50%
Sand —Coarse	2 mm.-0.6 mm. (Pencil lead size)	Clay	
—Medium	0.6 mm.-0.2 mm.	Moisture Content	
—Fine	(Table sugar and salt size)	Term	Relative Moisture
	0.2 mm.-0.06 mm.	Dry	Powdery
	(Powdered sugar and human hair size)	Damp	Moisture content below plastic limit
Silt	0.06 mm.-0.002 mm.	Moist	Moisture content
Clay	0.002 and smaller (Particle size of both Silt and Clay not visible to naked eye)		above plastic limit but below liquid limit
		Wet	Moisture content above liquid limit
Condition of Soil Relative to Compactness Granular Material		Condition of Soil Relative to Consistency Cohesive Material	
Very Loose	5 blows/ft. or less	Very Soft	3 blows/ft. or less
Loose	6 to 10 blows/ft.	Soft	4 to 5 blows/ft.
Medium Dense	11 to 30 blows/ft.	Medium Stiff	6 to 10 blows/ft.
Dense	31 to 50 blows/ft.	Stiff	11 to 15 blows/ft.
Very Dense	51 blows/ft. or more	Very Stiff	16 to 30 blows/ft.
		Hard	31 blows/ft. or more

STANDARD PENETRATION RESISTANCE (ASTM D1586)

The purpose of this test is to determine the relative consistency of the soils in a boring, or from boring to boring over the site. This method consists of making a hole in the ground and driving a 2 inch O.D. split spoon sampler into the soil with a 140 pound hammer dropped from a height of 30 inches. The sampler is driven 18 inches and the number of blows recorded for each 6 inches of penetration. Values of standard penetration (N) are determined in blows per foot, summarizing the blows required for the last two 6 inch increments of penetration. (Example: 2-6-8; N = 14)

THIN-WALLED SAMPLER (ASTM D1587)

The purpose of the thin-walled sampler is to recover a relatively undisturbed soil sample for laboratory tests. The sampler is a thin-walled seamless tube with a 3 inch outside diameter, which is hydraulically pressed into the ground, at a constant rate. The ends are then sealed to prevent moisture loss, and the tube is returned to the laboratory for tests.

UNCONFINED COMPRESSION OR TRIAXIAL TESTS (ASTM D2166)

The unconfined compression test and the triaxial tests are performed to determine the shearing strength of the soil, to use in establishing its safe bearing capacity. In order to perform the unconfined compression tests, it is necessary that the soil exhibit sufficient cohesion to stand in an unsupported cylinder. These tests are normally performed on samples which are 6.0 inches in height and 2.85 inches in diameter. In the triaxial test, various lateral stresses can be applied to more closely simulate the actual field conditions. There are several different types of triaxial tests. These are, however, normally performed on constant strain apparatus with a deformation rate of 0.05 inches per minute.

CONSOLIDATION TEST (ASTM D2435)

The purpose of this test is to determine the compressibility of the soil. This test is performed on a sample of soil which is 2.5 inches in diameter and 1.0 inch in height, and has been trimmed from relatively "undisturbed" samples. The test is performed with a level system or an air activated piston for applying load. The loads are applied in increments and allowed to remain on the sample for a period of 24 hours. The consolidation of the sample under each individual load is measured and a curve of void ratio vs. Pressure is obtained. From the information obtained in this manner and the column loads of the structure, it is possible to calculate the settlement of each individual building column. This information, together with the shearing strength of the soil, is used to determine the safe bearing capacity for a particular structure.

REVISED TO ASTM D4318

ATTERBERG LIMITS (ASTM D423 AND D424)

These tests determine the liquid and plastic limits of soils having a predominant percentage of fine particle (silt and clay) sizes. The liquid limit of a soil is the moisture content expressed as a percent at which the soil changes from a liquid to a plastic state, and the plastic limit is the moisture content at which the soil changes from a plastic to a semi-solid state. Their difference is defined as the plasticity index ($P.I. = L.L. - P.L.$), which is the change in moisture content required to change the soil from a "semi-solid" to a liquid. These tests furnish information about the soil properties which is important in determining their relative swelling potential and their classifications.

MECHANICAL ANALYSIS (ASTM D422)

This test determines the percent of each particle size of a soil. A sieve analysis is conducted on particle sizes greater than a No. 20 sieve (0.074 mm), and a hydrometer test on particles smaller than the No. 200 sieve. The gradation curve is drawn through the points of cumulative per cent of particle size, and plotted on semi-logarithmic paper for the combined sieve and hydrometer analysis. This test, together with the Atterberg Limits tests, is used to classify a soil.

NATURAL MOISTURE CONTENT (ASTM D2216)

The purpose of this test is to indicate the range of moisture contents present in the soil. A wet sample is weighed, placed in the constant temperature oven at 105° for 24 hours, and re-weighed. The moisture content is the change in weight divided by the dry weight.

PROCTOR TESTS

The purpose of these tests is to determine the maximum density and optimum moisture content of a soil. The Modified Proctor test is performed in accordance with ASTM D1557-70. The test is performed by dropping a 10 pound hammer 25 times from an 18 inch height on each of 5 equal layers of soil in a 1/30 cubic foot mold, which represents a compaction effort of 56,250 foot pounds per cubic foot. The moisture content is then raised, and this procedure is repeated. A moisture density curve is then plotted, with the density on the ordinate axis and the moisture content on the abscissa axis. The moisture content at which the maximum density requirement can be achieved with a minimum compactive effort is designated as the optimum moisture content (O.M.C.). The Standard Proctor test is performed in accordance with ASTM D698-70. This test is similar to the Modified Proctor test and is performed by dropping a 5.5 pound hammer 25 times from a height of 12 inches on 3 equal layers of soil in a 1/30 cubic foot mold, which represents a compaction effort of 12,375 foot pounds per cubic foot. This test gives proportionately lower results than the Modified Proctor test.

FIELD CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM FOR ROCK EXPLORATION

Saprolite

A transitional material between soil and rock retains the relic structure of the parent rock and exhibits penetration resistance between 60 blows per foot and 100 blows/2 inches of penetration.

R.Q.D.

Rock Quality Designation; Ratio of the core lengths greater than four inches to the total length of the core run.

<u>Description</u>	<u>Percentage Core Recovered</u>	<u>RQD Rock Quality Description</u>	<u>Description of Rock Quality</u>
Incompetent	Less than 40	0 - 25	very poor
Competent	40 - 70	25 - 50	poor
Fairly Competent	70 - 80	50 - 75	fair
Fairly Continuous	80 - 90	75 - 90	good
Continuous	90 - 100	90 - 100	excellent

FIELD HARDNESS:

(A measure of resistance to scratching or abrasion)

Very Hard	Cannot be scratched with knife or sharp pick, breaking of hand specimens requires several hard blows of geologist's pick.
Hard	Can be scratched with knife or pick only with difficulty. Hard blow of a hammer required to detach hand specimen.
Moderately Hard	Can be scratched with knife or pick. Gouges or grooves to ¼ inch deep can be excavated by hard blow of point of a geologist's pick. Hand specimens can be detached by moderate blow.
Medium	Can be grooved or gouged 1/16 inch deep by firm pressure on knife or pick point. Can be excavated in small chips to pieces about 1 inch maximum size by hard blows of the point of a geologist's pick.
Soft	Can be gouged or grooved readily with knife or pick point. Can be excavated in chips and pieces several inches in size by moderate blows of a pick point.
Very soft	Small thin pieces can be broken by finger pressure. Can be carved with knife. Can be excavated with point of pick. Pieces 1 inch or more in thickness can be broken with finger pressure. Can be scratched readily by fingernail.

WEATHERING:

(The action of the elements in altering the color, texture, and composition of the rock)

Very slightly	Rock generally fresh, joints stained, some joints may contain thin clay coatings, crystals in broken face show bright. Rock rings under hammer if crystalline.
Slightly	Rock generally fresh, joints stained, and discoloration extends into rock up to 1 inch. Joints may contain clay. In granitoid rocks some occasional feldspar crystals are dull and discolored. Crystalline rocks ring under hammer.
Moderately	Significant portions of rock show discoloration and weathering effects. In granitoid rocks, most feldspars are dull and discolored; some may be decomposed to clay. Rock as dull sound under hammer and has a significant loss of strength compared with fresh rock.
Severely	All rock except quartz discolored or stained. Rock "fabric" clear and evident but reduced in strength to strong soil. In granitoid rocks all feldspars kaolinized to some extent. Some fragments of strong rock usually left.
Very severely	All rock except quartz discolored or stained. Rock "fabric" discernible, but mass effectively reduces to "soil" with only fragments of strong rock usually left.
Completely	All rock completely altered to soil-like material.

ROCK FRACTURE

FREQUENCY: (Any break in a rock whether or not it has undergone relative displacement.)

<u>Description</u>	<u>Spacing Between Fractures</u>
Extremely fractured	Less than 1 inch
Moderately fractured	1 inch to 4 inches
Slightly fractured	4 inches to 8 inches
Sound	More than 8 inches

Note: Fracture frequency terms are generalized to described the average condition of the rock obtained from the core run. Portions of the rock within the run described may vary from the generalized descriptions. Where a core break appears to be due to drilling and not to natural causes, it has not been considered as a break for accessing fracture frequency. Frequency shown on Record of Soil Exploration represents condition of core as removed from the core barrel.

JOINTS BEDDING, AND FOLIATION:

<u>Joints</u>	<u>Bedding & Foliation</u>	<u>Spacing</u>
Very close	Very thin	Less than 2 inches
Close	Thin	2 inches - 1 foot
Moderately close	Medium	1 foot - 3 feet
Wide	Thick	3 feet - 10 feet
Very wide	Very Thick	More than 10 feet

Notes: Refers to perpendicular distance between discontinuities

<u>Attitude</u>	<u>Angle (degrees)</u>
Horizontal	0 to 5
Shallow to low angle	5 to 35
Moderately dipping	35 to 55
Steep or high angle	55 to 85
Vertical	85 to 90

Koontz Bryant Johnson Williams, Inc.

125 Westpark Road
 Centerville, OH 45459
 (P) (937) 428-6150 / (F) (937) 428-6154

BORING LOG

CLIENT: LWC, Inc. Dayton, OH	REPORT NO.: 25632	BORING NO.: KBJW-1
PROJECT: GEI – Benham’s Grove Event Center	DATE STD.: 6/14/23	DATE FINISHED: 6/14/23
LOCATION: As Shown on the Boring Location Plan	DRILLERS: EnviroCore	GROUND ELEV.: --
	METHOD: 2 ¼” HSA	

SCALE, FT.	STRATUM DEPTH, FT.	CLASSIFICATION OF MATERIAL			SAMPLE NUMBER & SAMPLE TYPE	DEPTH OF SAMPLE, FT.		BLOWS ON SAMPLER PER SPT (6" INTER-VAL)	SPT "N", OR RECOVERY (IN. FOR SHELBY TUBES, % FOR ROCK CORE)
		Major Soil Components:		Minor Component Term		FROM	TO		
0.0	0.0	Gravel	Silt	Trace 1-10%					
	2"	Sand	Clay	Some 11-35% And 36-50%					
		TOPSOIL							
		ORIGINAL, LIMESTONE bedrock with shale partings (weathered on top)							
1.0					1A	1.0	2.5	26-24-10	34
2.0									
3.0									
4.0					2A	3.5	5.0	11-10-11	21
5.0									
6.0					3A	6.0	7.3	31-36-50/3"	100+
7.0		BOTTOM OF BORING AT 7.3 FEET AUGER REFUSAL AT 7.3 FEET							
8.0									
9.0									
10.0									
11.0									
12.0									
13.0									
14.0									
15.0									
16.0									
17.0									
18.0									
19.0									
20.0									

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	BORING METHOD	TYPE SAMPLE	*These Shelby Tube
Noted on rods <u> </u> Dry <u> </u> ft.	HSA Hollow Stem Auger MD Mud Drilling	A - Split Spoon	Samples Obtained In An
At completion <u> </u> Dry <u> </u> ft.	CFA Continuous Flight Auger RC Rock Coring	B - Rock Core	Auxiliary Boring Drilled A
After <u> </u> hours <u> </u> ft.	DC Driven Casing CA Casing Advancer	C - Shelby Tube	Few Feet From This Boring
		D - Other	

Koontz Bryant Johnson Williams, Inc.

125 Westpark Road
 Centerville, OH 45459
 (P) (937) 428-6150 / (F) (937) 428-6154

BORING LOG

CLIENT: LWC, Inc. Dayton, OH	REPORT NO.: 25632	BORING NO.: KBJW-2
PROJECT: GEI – Benham’s Grove Event Center	DATE STD.: 6/14/23	DATE FINISHED: 6/14/23
LOCATION: As Shown on the Boring Location Plan	DRILLERS: EnviroCore	GROUND ELEV.: --
	METHOD: 2 ¼” HSA	

SCALE, FT.	STRATUM DEPTH, FT.	CLASSIFICATION OF MATERIAL		SAMPLE NUMBER & SAMPLE TYPE	DEPTH OF SAMPLE, FT.		BLOWS ON SAMPLER PER SPT (6" INTER-VAL)	SPT "N", OR RECOVERY (IN. FOR SHELBY TUBES, % FOR ROCK CORE)
		Major Soil Components:	Minor Component Term		FROM	TO		
0.0	0.0	Gravel	Silt					
	3.5"	Sand	Clay					
		TOPSOIL						
1.0		ORIGINAL, LIMESTONE bedrock with clay partings (weathered on top)		1A	1.0	2.5	20-36-34	70
2.0								
3.0								
				2A	3.5	4.1	32-50/1"	100+
4.0		BOTTOM OF BORING AT 4.1 FEET AUGER REFUSAL AT 4.1 FEET						
5.0								
6.0								
7.0								
8.0								
9.0								
10.0								
11.0								
12.0								
13.0								
14.0								
15.0								
16.0								
17.0								
18.0								
19.0								
20.0								

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	BORING METHOD	TYPE SAMPLE	*These Shelby Tube
Noted on rods Dry ___ ft.	HSA Hollow Stem Auger MD Mud Drilling	A - Split Spoon	Samples Obtained In An
At completion Dry ___ ft.	CFA Continuous Flight Auger RC Rock Coring	B - Rock Core	Auxiliary Boring Drilled A
After ___ hours ___ ft.	DC Driven Casing CA Casing Advancer	C - Shelby Tube	Few Feet From This Boring
		D - Other	

Koontz Bryant Johnson Williams, Inc.

125 Westpark Road
 Centerville, OH 45459
 (P) (937) 428-6150 / (F) (937) 428-6154

BORING LOG

CLIENT: LWC, Inc. Dayton, OH PROJECT: GEI – Benham’s Grove Event Center LOCATION: As Shown on the Boring Location Plan	REPORT NO.: 25632 DATE STD.: 6/14/23 DRILLERS: EnviroCore METHOD: 2 ¼” HSA	BORING NO.: KBJW-3 DATE FINISHED: 6/14/23 GROUND ELEV.: --
---	---	--

SCALE, FT.	STRATUM DEPTH, FT.	CLASSIFICATION OF MATERIAL		SAMPLE NUMBER & SAMPLE TYPE	DEPTH OF SAMPLE, FT.		BLOWS ON SAMPLER PER SPT (6" INTER-VAL)	SPT "N", OR RECOVERY (IN. FOR SHELBY TUBES, % FOR ROCK CORE)
		Major Soil Components: Gravel Silt Sand	Minor Component Term Trace 1-10% Some 11-35% And 36-50%		FROM	TO		
0.0	0.0	TOPSOIL						
	3.5"	ORIGINAL, LIMESTONE bedrock with shale partings						
1.0		(weathered on top)		1A	1.0	2.2	8-26-50/2"	100+
2.0								
3.0		BOTTOM OF BORING AT 2.5 FEET AUGER REFUSAL AT 2.5 FEET						
4.0								
5.0								
6.0								
7.0								
8.0								
9.0								
10.0								
11.0								
12.0								
13.0								
14.0								
15.0								
16.0								
17.0								
18.0								
19.0								
20.0								

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS Noted on rods <u> </u> Dry <u> </u> ft. At completion <u> </u> Dry <u> </u> ft. After <u> </u> hours <u> </u> <u> </u> ft.	BORING METHOD HSA Hollow Stem Auger CFA Continuous Flight Auger DC Driven Casing	MD Mud Drilling RC Rock Coring CA Casing Advancer	TYPE SAMPLE A - Split Spoon B - Rock Core C - Shelby Tube D - Other	*These Shelby Tube Samples Obtained In An Auxiliary Boring Drilled A Few Feet From This Boring
--	--	---	--	--

Koontz Bryant Johnson Williams, Inc.

125 Westpark Road
Centerville, OH 45459
(P) (937) 428-6150 / (F) (937) 428-6154

BORING LOG

CLIENT: LWC, Inc. Dayton, OH	REPORT NO.: 25632	BORING NO.: KBJW-4
PROJECT: GEI – Benham’s Grove Event Center	DATE STD.: 6/14/23	DATE FINISHED: 6/14/23
LOCATION: As Shown on the Boring Location Plan	DRILLERS: EnviroCore	GROUND ELEV.: --
	METHOD: 2 ¼” HSA	

SCALE, FT.	STRATUM DEPTH, FT.	CLASSIFICATION OF MATERIAL			SAMPLE NUMBER & SAMPLE TYPE	DEPTH OF SAMPLE, FT.		BLOWS ON SAMPLER PER SPT (6" INTER-VAL)	SPT "N", OR RECOVERY (IN. FOR SHELBY TUBES, % FOR ROCK CORE)
		Major Soil Components:	Minor Component Term			FROM	TO		
0.0	0.0								
	3.5"	ORIGINAL, SHALE bedrock with limestone partings (weathered on top)							
1.0					1A	1.0	2.5	7-9-9	18
2.0									
3.0									
4.0					2A	3.5	4.6	10-37-50/1"	100+
		BOTTOM OF BORING AT 4.6 FEET							
5.0		AUGER REFUSAL AT 4.6 FEET							
6.0									
7.0									
8.0									
9.0									
10.0									
11.0									
12.0									
13.0									
14.0									
15.0									
16.0									
17.0									
18.0									
19.0									
20.0									

<u>WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS</u>	<u>BORING METHOD</u>	<u>TYPE SAMPLE</u>	*These Shelby Tube
Noted on rods <u>Dry</u> ft.	HSA Hollow Stem Auger MD Mud Drilling	A - Split Spoon	Samples Obtained In An
At completion <u>Dry</u> ft.	CFA Continuous Flight Auger RC Rock Coring	B - Rock Core	Auxiliary Boring Drilled A
After <u>--</u> hours <u>--</u> ft.	DC Driven Casing CA Casing Advancer	C - Shelby Tube	Few Feet From This Boring
		D - Other	

Koontz Bryant Johnson Williams, Inc.

125 Westpark Road
 Centerville, OH 45459
 (P) (937) 428-6150 / (F) (937) 428-6154

BORING LOG

CLIENT: LWC, Inc. Dayton, OH	REPORT NO.: 25632	BORING NO.: KBJW-5
PROJECT: GEI – Benham’s Grove Event Center	DATE STD.: 6/14/23	DATE FINISHED: 6/14/23
LOCATION: As Shown on the Boring Location Plan	DRILLERS: EnviroCore	GROUND ELEV.: --
	METHOD: 2 ¼” HSA	

SCALE, FT.	STRATUM DEPTH, FT.	CLASSIFICATION OF MATERIAL		SAMPLE NUMBER & SAMPLE TYPE	DEPTH OF SAMPLE, FT.		BLOWS ON SAMPLER PER SPT (6" INTER-VAL)	SPT "N", OR RECOVERY (IN. FOR SHELBY TUBES, % FOR ROCK CORE)
		Major Soil Components:	Minor Component Term		FROM	TO		
0.0	0.0							
	3.5"	TOPSOIL						
1.0		FILL, stiff, brown, silty/sandy CLAY (moist)		1A	1.0	2.5	4-4-6	10
2.0								
	2.5	ORIGINAL, SHALE bedrock with limestone partings (weathered on top)						
3.0				2A	3.5	4.0	37-50/0"	100+
4.0		BOTTOM OF BORING AT 4.0 FEET AUGER REFUSAL AT 4.0 FEET						
5.0								
6.0								
7.0								
8.0								
9.0								
10.0								
11.0								
12.0								
13.0								
14.0								
15.0								
16.0								
17.0								
18.0								
19.0								
20.0								

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	BORING METHOD	TYPE SAMPLE	*These Shelby Tube
Noted on rods <u> </u> Dry <u> </u> ft.	HSA Hollow Stem Auger MD Mud Drilling	A - Split Spoon	Samples Obtained In An
At completion <u> </u> Dry <u> </u> ft.	CFA Continuous Flight Auger RC Rock Coring	B - Rock Core	Auxiliary Boring Drilled A
After <u> </u> hours <u> </u> ft.	DC Driven Casing CA Casing Advancer	C - Shelby Tube	Few Feet From This Boring
		D - Other	

Koontz Bryant Johnson Williams, Inc.

125 Westpark Road
 Centerville, OH 45459
 (P) (937) 428-6150 / (F) (937) 428-6154

BORING LOG

CLIENT: LWC, Inc. Dayton, OH	REPORT NO.: 25632	BORING NO.: KBJW-6
PROJECT: GEI – Benham’s Grove Event Center	DATE STD.: 6/14/23	DATE FINISHED: 6/14/23
LOCATION: As Shown on the Boring Location Plan	DRILLERS: EnviroCore	GROUND ELEV.: --
	METHOD: 2 ¼” HSA	

SCALE, FT.	STRATUM DEPTH, FT.	CLASSIFICATION OF MATERIAL			SAMPLE NUMBER & SAMPLE TYPE	DEPTH OF SAMPLE, FT.		BLOWS ON SAMPLER PER SPT (6" INTER-VAL)	SPT "N", OR RECOVERY (IN. FOR SHELBY TUBES, % FOR ROCK CORE)
		Major Soil Components:		Minor Component Term		FROM	TO		
0.0	0.0								
	3.0"	FILL, stiff, brown, silty/sandy CLAY (moist)							
1.0					1A	1.0	2.5	6-7-13	20
2.0									
	2.5	ORIGINAL, LIMESTONE bedrock with shale partings (weathered on top)							
3.0					2A	3.5	4.1	22-50/1"	100+
4.0									
5.0		BOTTOM OF BORING AT 4.1 FEET AUGER REFUSAL AT 4.1 FEET							
6.0									
7.0									
8.0									
9.0									
10.0									
11.0									
12.0									
13.0									
14.0									
15.0									
16.0									
17.0									
18.0									
19.0									
20.0									

<u>WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS</u>	<u>BORING METHOD</u>	<u>TYPE SAMPLE</u>	*These Shelby Tube
Noted on rods <u>Dry</u> ft.	HSA Hollow Stem Auger MD Mud Drilling	A - Split Spoon	Samples Obtained In An
At completion <u>Dry</u> ft.	CFA Continuous Flight Auger RC Rock Coring	B - Rock Core	Auxiliary Boring Drilled A
After <u>--</u> hours <u>--</u> ft.	DC Driven Casing CA Casing Advancer	C - Shelby Tube	Few Feet From This Boring
		D - Other	

Koontz Bryant Johnson Williams, Inc.

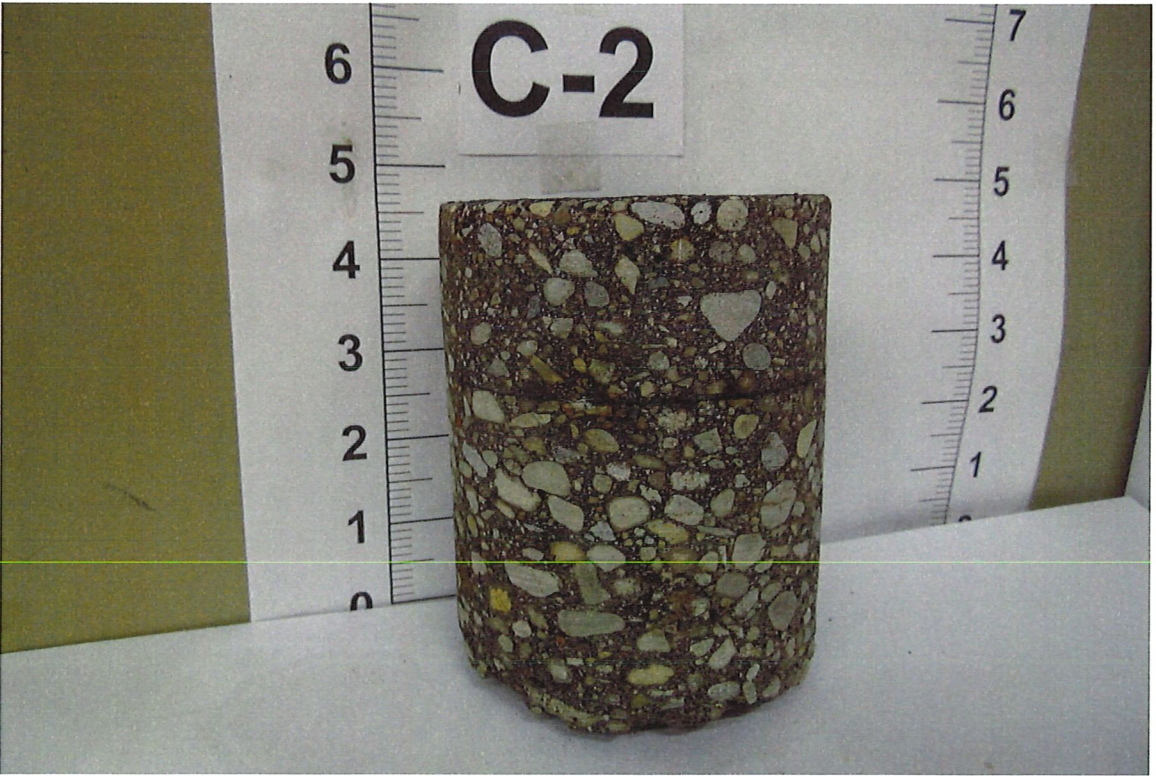
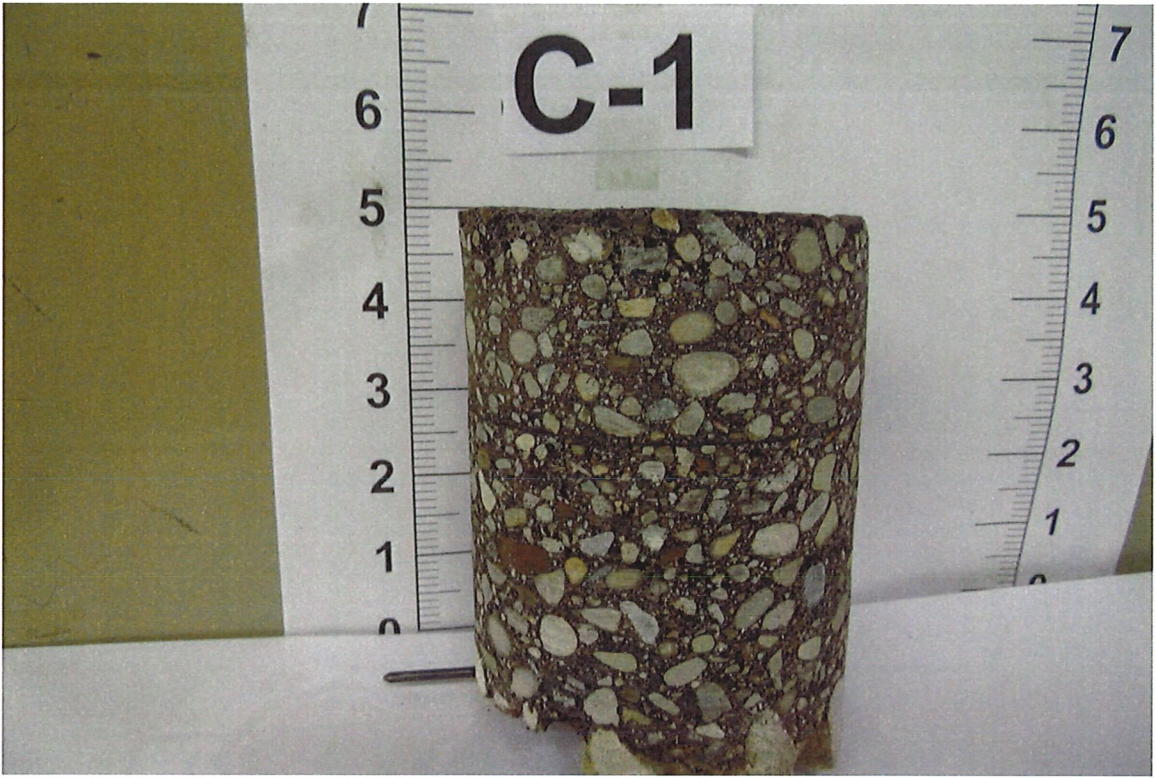
125 Westpark Road
Centerville, OH 45459
(P) (937) 428-6150 / (F) (937) 428-6154

BORING LOG

CLIENT: LWC, Inc. Dayton, OH	REPORT NO.: 25632	BORING NO.: KBJW-7
PROJECT: GEI – Benham’s Grove Event Center	DATE STD.: 6/14/23	DATE FINISHED: 6/14/23
LOCATION: As Shown on the Boring Location Plan	DRILLERS: EnviroCore	GROUND ELEV.: --
	METHOD: 2 ¼” HSA	

SCALE, FT.	STRATUM DEPTH, FT.	CLASSIFICATION OF MATERIAL			SAMPLE NUMBER & SAMPLE TYPE	DEPTH OF SAMPLE, FT.		BLOWS ON SAMPLER PER SPT (6" INTER-VAL)	SPT "N", OR RECOVERY (IN. FOR SHELBY TUBES, % FOR ROCK CORE)
		Major Soil Components:	Minor Component Term			FROM	TO		
0.0	0.0	TOPSOIL							
	3.5"	FILL, stiff, brown, silty/sandy CLAY (moist)							
1.0			Gravel	Silt	1A	1.0	2.5	7-5-7	12
2.0			Sand	Clay					
3.0				Trace 1-10%					
				Some 11-35%					
				And 36-50%					
	3.5	ORIGINAL, LIMESTONE bedrock with shale partings			2A	3.5	3.7	50/2"	100+
4.0		(weathered on top)							
		BOTTOM OF BORING AT 4.0 FEET							
5.0		AUGER REFUSAL AT 4.0 FEET							
6.0									
7.0									
8.0									
9.0									
10.0									
11.0									
12.0									
13.0									
14.0									
15.0									
16.0									
17.0									
18.0									
19.0									
20.0									

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	BORING METHOD	TYPE SAMPLE	*These Shelby Tube
Noted on rods <u> </u> Dry <u> </u> ft.	HSA Hollow Stem Auger MD Mud Drilling	A - Split Spoon	Samples Obtained In An
At completion <u> </u> Dry <u> </u> ft.	CFA Continuous Flight Auger RC Rock Coring	B - Rock Core	Auxiliary Boring Drilled A
After <u> </u> hours <u> </u> ft.	DC Driven Casing CA Casing Advancer	C - Shelby Tube	Few Feet From This Boring
		D - Other	



RESULTS OF NATURAL MOISTURE CONTENT TESTS (ASTM D-4643)

BORING NO.	DEPTH INCREMENT, (FT.)	NATURAL MOISTURE CONTENT, %
KBJW-4	1.0 – 2.5	17.9
KBJW-4	3.5 – 4.6	18.4
KBJW-5	1.0 – 2.5	21.3
KBJW-6	1.0 – 2.5	15.5
KBJW-7	1.0 – 2.5	13.5



VICINITY MAP

GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING INVESTIGATION
 FOR THE PROPOSED NEW FACILITY AND PARKING
 AREAS AT THE BENHAM'S GROVE EVENT CENTER,
 166 N.MAIN STREET,
 CENTERVILLE, OHIO

Project No.
 22-25632-001

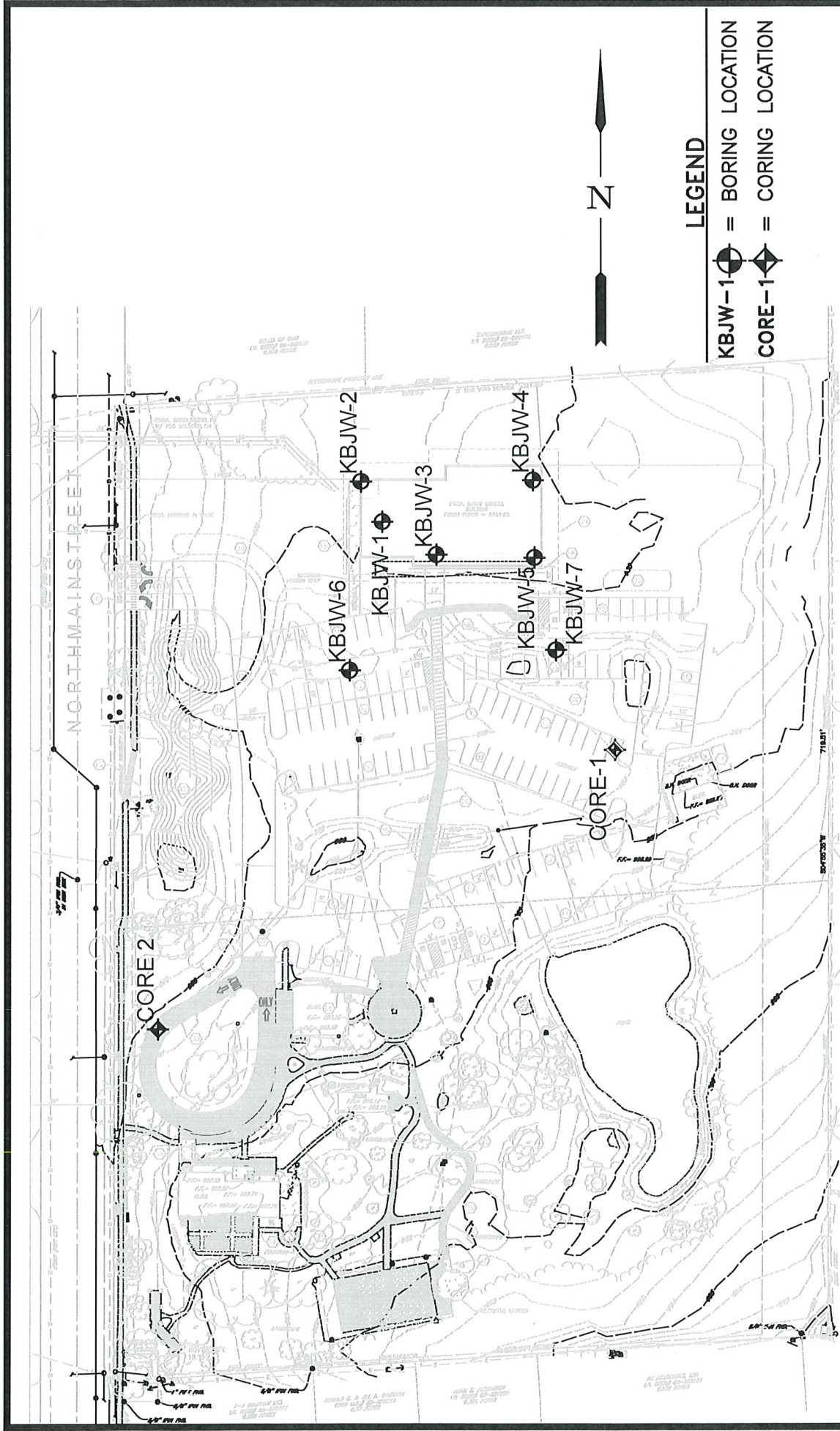
Scale
 1" = 1600'

Date:
 7/7/23



Formerly CBC Engineers

Figure No.
 1



LEGEND

- KBJW-1 = BORING LOCATION
- CORE-1 = CORING LOCATION

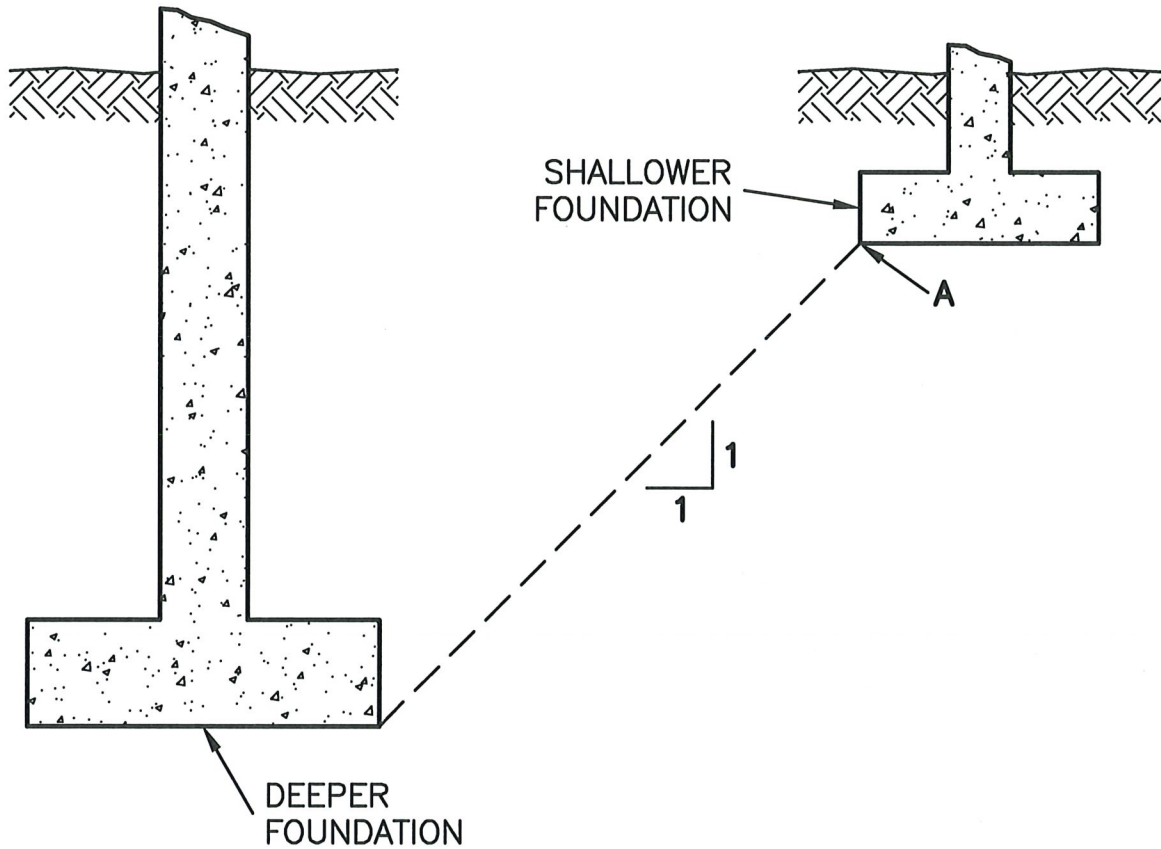
BORING / CORING LOCATION PLAN

GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING INVESTIGATION
 FOR THE PROPOSED NEW FACILITY AND PARKING AREAS AT THE BENHAM'S GROVE EVENT CENTER,
 166 N.MAIN STREET, CENTERVILLE, OHIO

Project No. 22-25632-001
Scale 1" = 100'
Date: 7/7/23

	Formerly CBC Engineers
	2

Figure No.



NOTE: POINT "A" OF SHALLOWER FOOTING MUST BE SITUATED BELOW THE DASHED LINE SHOWING THE FOOTING LOCATION LIMIT.

DESIGN ILLUSTRATION:

ADJACENT FOOTINGS



**KOONTZ
BRYANT
JOHNSON
WILLIAMS**

Formerly CBC Engineers

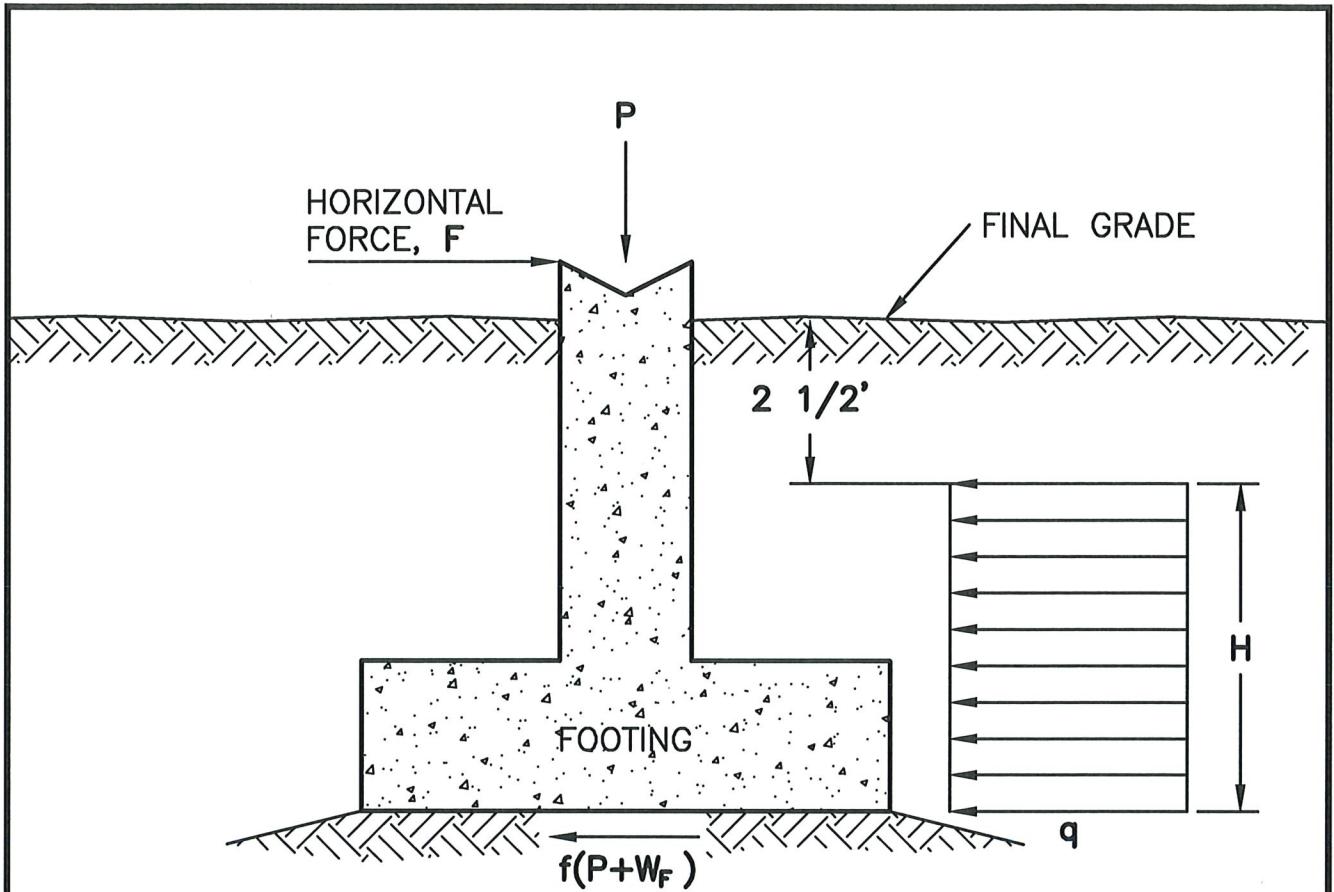
PROJECT NO:

SCALE:

FIGURE NO.

NONE

3



LEGEND:

P = MINIMUM DOWNWARD LOAD

f = COEFFICIENT OF FRICTION
AT CONCRETE/SOIL INTERFACE

F = MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL FORCE

W_F = WEIGHT OF FOOTING BELOW FINAL GRADE

q = RESISTING PASSIVE PRESSURE

DESIGN ILLUSTRATION:

RESISTING LATERAL FORCES FOR
SHALLOW FOOTINGS



Formerly CBC Engineers

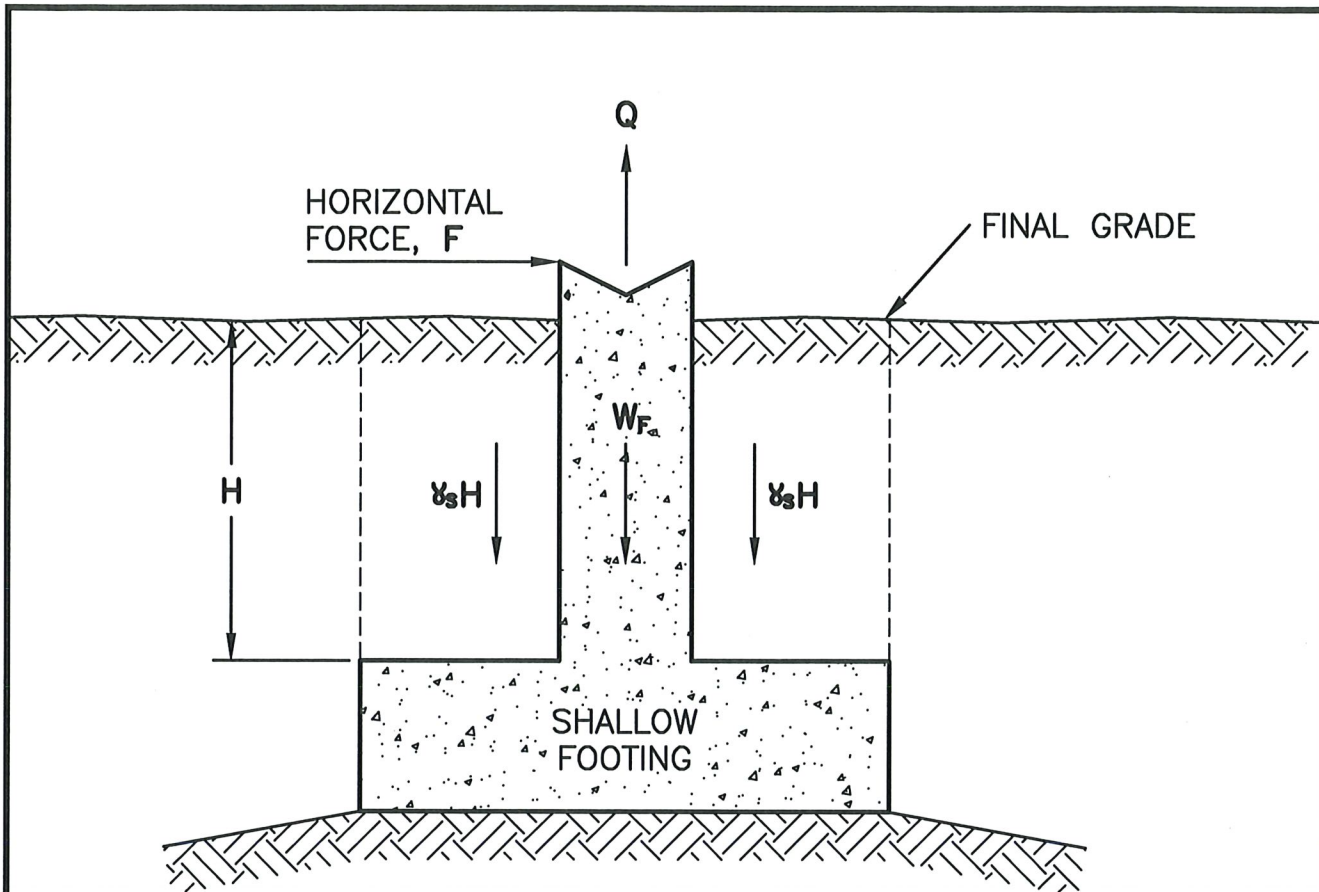
PROJECT NO.

SCALE:

FIGURE NO.

NONE

4



LEGEND:

Q = MAXIMUM UPLIFT LOAD

γ_s = TOTAL SOIL UNIT WEIGHT

W_f = WEIGHT OF FOOTING BELOW FINAL GRADE

DESIGN ILLUSTRATION:

RESISTING UPLIFT FORCES FOR SHALLOW FOOTINGS



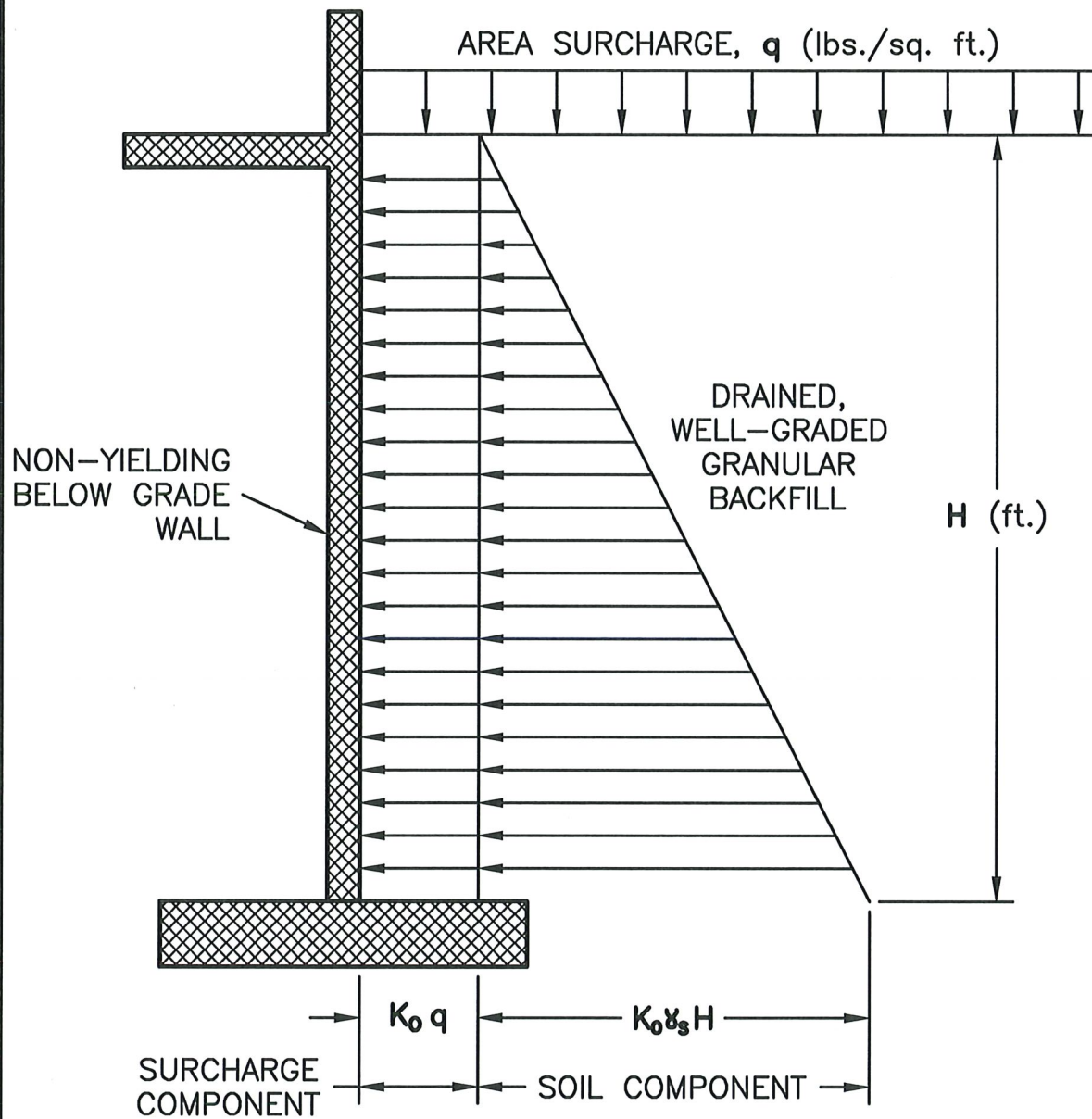
PROJECT NO.:

SCALE:

FIGURE NO.

NONE

5



LEGEND:

γ_s = TOTAL SOIL UNIT WEIGHT, (lbs./cu. ft.)

K_0 = AT REST EARTH PRESSURE COEFFICIENT

DESIGN ILLUSTRATION:

LATERAL EARTH PRESSURE AGAINST NON-YIELDING BELOW-GRADE WALL ASSUMING DRAINED BACKFILL WITH NON-HYDROSTATIC PRESSURE



Formerly CBC Engineers

PROJECT NO.

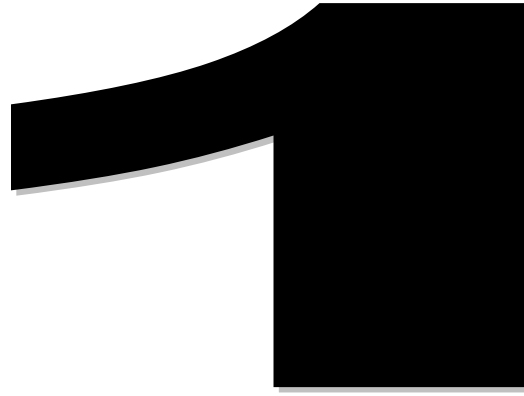
SCALE:

NONE

FIGURE NO.

6

DIVISION



GENERAL CONDITIONS

SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Project information.
2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
3. Published Estimate.
4. Work performed by Owner.
5. Work under Owner's separate contracts.
6. Future work not part of this Project.
7. Owner's product purchase contracts.
8. Owner-furnished/Contractor-installed (OFCI) products.
9. Owner-furnished/Owner-installed (OFOI) products.
10. Contractor-furnished/Owner-installed (CFOI) products.
11. Contractor's use of site and premises.
12. Coordination with occupants.
13. Work restrictions.
14. Specification and Drawing conventions.
15. Miscellaneous provisions.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.
2. Section 017300 "Execution" for coordination of Owner-installed products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Work Package: A group of specifications, drawings, and schedules prepared by the design team to describe a portion of the Project Work for pricing, permitting, and construction.

1.4 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: Benham's Grove Event Center & Campus Improvements.

1. Project Location: 250 N Main St, Centerville, OH 45459.

- B. Owner: City of Centerville.

1. Owner's Representative: Taylor Schindler, TSchindler@centervilleohio.gov

- C. Architect: LWC Incorporated, 434 East 1st Street, Dayton, OH 45402.
 - 1. Architect's Representative: Lucas Lantz, llantz@lwcinspires.com
- D. Architect's Consultants: Architect has retained design professionals, who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents. These are listed on the Drawings.

1.5 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - 1. **BASE BID:** This project includes the new construction for an Event Center of approximately 6000 s.f. including slab on grade, steel framed, engineered mass timber frame, glass curtain wall, corten metal roof & veil, and its associated site improvements. This project includes sitework of the undeveloped north portion of site to provide new entrance & parking to serve the Event Center including paver walkways, site lighting, landscaping, and irrigation.
 - 2. **PARKING ALTERNATE:** This additive alternate includes improvements of the existing parking including paver walkways, site lighting, and landscaping, and irrigation.
- B. Type of Contract:
 - 1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

1.6 FUTURE WORK NOT COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. Future work as defined in drawings as “Not In Contract” for the southern historic portion of the campus including interior & exterior renovations of the existing Gerber House, Barn, & Cottage and its associated site improvements are not covered by this contract.

1.7 PUBLISHED ESTIMATE

SUMMARY OF COSTS	
Project Subcategory	
Base Bid	\$ 5,329,000.
Parking Alternate	\$ 400,000.
Total Published Estimate	\$ 5,729,000.

1.8 OWNER-FURNISHED/CONTRACTOR-INSTALLED (OFCI) PRODUCTS

- A. Owner's Responsibilities: Owner will furnish products indicated and perform the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Provide to Contractor Owner-reviewed Product Data, Shop Drawings, and Samples.
 - 2. Provide for delivery of Owner-furnished products to Project site.

3. Upon delivery, inspect, with Contractor present, delivered items.
 - a. If Owner-furnished products are damaged, defective, or missing, arrange for replacement.
4. Obtain manufacturer's inspections, service, and warranties.
5. Inform Contractor of earliest available delivery date for Owner-furnished products.

B. Contractor's Responsibilities: The Work includes the following, as applicable:

1. Designate delivery dates of Owner-furnished products in Contractor's construction schedule, utilizing Owner-furnished earliest available delivery dates.
2. Review Owner-reviewed Product Data, Shop Drawings, and Samples, noting discrepancies and other issues in providing for Owner-furnished products in the Work.
3. Receive, unload, handle, store, protect, and install Owner-furnished products.
4. Make building services connections for Owner-furnished products.
5. Protect Owner-furnished products from damage during storage, handling, and installation and prior to Substantial Completion.
6. Repair or replace Owner-furnished products damaged following receipt.

1.9 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

- A. Restricted Use of Site: Contractor shall have limited use of Project site for construction operations as indicated on Drawings by the Contract limits and as indicated by requirements of this Section and coordinated with Owner.
- B. Limits on Use of Site: Limit use of Project site to areas within the Contract limits indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.
 1. Limits on Use of Site: Confine construction operations to areas shown on site logistics plans except as needed for work at main entrance drive.
 2. Driveways, Walkways and Entrances: Keep driveways and entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or for storage of materials.
 - a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances by construction operations.
 - b. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.
- C. Condition of Existing Grounds: Maintain portions of existing grounds, landscaping, and hardscaping affected by construction operations throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

1.10 COORDINATION WITH ADJACENT PROPERTY

- A. The apartment complex to the south has access from the project site. Coordinate construction activities to maintain access except for brief periods necessary and as coordinated with apartment management.

1.11 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Comply with restrictions on construction operations.

1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets, work on public streets, rights of way, and other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work to between 7:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m., Monday through Friday, unless otherwise indicated. Work hours may be modified to meet Project requirements if approved by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Work hours should always be coordinated with
 1. Weekend Hours: As coordinated with Owner.
 2. Owner's Scheduled Events: Work must be coordinated with Owner around scheduled events.
- C. Noise, Vibration, Dust, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, dust, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.
 1. Notify Architect and Owner not less than 5 days in advance of proposed disruptive operations.
 2. Obtain Architect's and Owner's written permission before proceeding with disruptive operations.
 3. All disruptive operations shall be subject to Owner's discretion and coordinated around scheduled events.

1.12 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
 2. Text Color: Text used in the Specifications, including units of measure, manufacturer and product names, and other text may appear in multiple colors or underlined as part of a hyperlink; no emphasis is implied by text with these characteristics.
 3. Hypertext: Text used in the Specifications may contain hyperlinks. Hyperlinks may allow for access to linked information that is not residing in the Specifications. Unless otherwise indicated, linked information is not part of the Contract Documents.
 4. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 00 Contracting Requirements: General provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, apply to all Sections of the Specifications.
- C. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- D. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations scheduled on Drawings.
 3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 011000

SECTION 01 13 00

DELEGATED DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Administrative and procedural requirements for assemblies and construction systems provided by a contractor under the delegated design procedure.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Delegated: Means delegated by the Owner and Architect to a prime contractor.
- B. Design: Means the planning, coordination, and graphic and written communication of a portion of the Work, including determination and engineering of system or assembly or system organization and structure, in response to functional requirements, arrangement and performance criteria indicated in the Contract Documents.
- C. Pre-Engineered Structural Elements: are structural elements which are specified by the Structural Engineer of Record (SER) but may be designed by a Specialty Engineer. These elements are normally fabricated off-site, may require specialized equipment not usually available at the job site or may require a proprietary process. The SER shall specify the design criteria, including the incorporation of the Pre-Engineered Structural Elements into the structure. Examples of Pre-Engineered Structural Elements may include but are not limited to: Open web steel joists and joist girders, Wood trusses, Combination wood and metal, and plywood joists, Precast concrete elements, and/or Prefabricated wood or metal buildings.
- D. Primary Structural System is the completed combination of elements which serve to support the building's self weight, the applicable live load which is based upon the occupancy and use of the spaces, and the environmental loads such as wind, seismic, and thermal. Curtain wall members, non-load bearing walls and exterior facade are examples of items which are not part of the Primary Structural System.
- E. Secondary Structural Elements are elements that are structurally significant for the function they serve but do not contribute to the strength or stability of the Primary Structure. Examples may include but are not limited to: support beams above the primary roof structure which carry a chiller, stairs, elevator support rails and beams, retaining walls independent of the primary building, and flagpole or light pole foundations.
- F. Specialty Engineer is a licensed professional engineer, not the SER, who is legally responsible for sealing plans and designs for Pre-Engineered Structural Elements which are necessary for the structure to be completed. The Specialty Engineer is usually retained by a supplier or subcontractor who is responsible for the design, fabrication and (sometimes) installation of engineered elements or by the General Contractor or Subcontractor(s) responsible for construction related services.
- G. Structural Engineer of Record (SER) is the Structural Engineer who is legally eligible to seal the Structural Documents for the Building Project. This seal acknowledges that he or she has performed or supervised the analysis, design, and document preparation for the building structure and has knowledge of the requirements for the load carrying structural system. The SER is responsible for the design of the Primary Structural System.

1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Portions of the Contract Documents delegate the design of certain components, assemblies or systems to a contractor, or may otherwise specify "Delegated Design Requirements" in individual specification Sections.
- B. The Contractor is to be responsible for delegated design Work, including design, engineering and performance.
- C. Drawings of delegated design portions of Work are diagrammatic and are intended only to show:
 - 1. Design intent of finished materials, profiles, shapes and forms.
 - 2. Relationships between elements.
 - 3. Location, identification, dimension and size of components, assemblies and accessories.
 - 4. Schematic attachment details and diagrams of fasteners and connections.
- D. Specifications for delegated design portions of the Work establish performance criteria for materials, products, systems, and methods of execution, along with minimum performance requirements for indicated portions of the Work.
- E. The Architect will review to determine whether or not the delegated component, assembly or system design complies with the following.
 - 1. That the Contractor's engineering shows substantiation of the specified performance criteria.
 - 2. Conforms to specified performance requirements, including those subsequent modifications.
 - 3. Complies with the overall project design.
 - 4. Can be appropriately integrated into the overall design of the project.
 - 5. Review by the Architect does not relieve the Contractor from compliance with the requirements of the delegated component.
- F. In the event of conflicts regarding the Contractor's proposed delegated design solutions and the design intent of the Contract Documents, the decision of the Architect will be final.

1.04 PROCEDURAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design Requirements: Proposed delegated design solutions are to demonstrate compliance with the original design intent of the Contract Documents, as determined by the Architect.
 - 1. Unless otherwise defined by the Contract Documents, appearance of exposed elements, including member sizes, profiles and alignment of components, are to be within dimensional limits of section profiles indicated on the Drawings, and are to be consistent throughout the Project. Do not deviate from profiles, layouts or arrangements indicated without prior written approval from the Architect.
 - 2. Proposed delegated design solutions that exactly follow details indicated on the Drawings do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for design and performance of delegated design portions of Work.
- B. Engineering Requirements: Engineer delegated design portions of the Work to meet or exceed specified performance requirements, to satisfy the requirements of the authorities having jurisdiction, and to provide structurally sound, water and weather tight assemblies capable of withstanding the specified in-service loads without failure.
 - 1. Engineering shall conform with the more stringent requirements of the current Ohio Building Code or the Contract Documents.
- C. Additional Requirements:

1. Fabricate, assemble and install delegated portions of the Work to accommodate the full range of manufacturing, operating and field installation tolerances of adjacent work specified in other Sections.
2. If required by the authorities having jurisdiction, submit shop drawings, specifications, calculations and other supporting data necessary for obtaining jurisdiction approval after they have been reviewed by the Architect and prior to beginning installation. Pay fees incurred.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Coordinate and process submittals for delegated design portion of Work in same manner as for other portions of Work.
- B. Design Data:
 1. Submit engineering calculations demonstrating compliance with the requirements of Contract Documents and of the authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. Provide legible calculations that incorporate sufficient cross- references to shop drawings to make calculations readily understandable and reviewable.
 - b. Test reports are not acceptable as a substitute for calculations.
 2. Structural Calculations: Include the following:
 - a. Analysis of framing members.
 - b. Section property computations for framing members.
 - c. Analysis of anchors, including anchors embedded in concrete or masonry
 - d. Signature and seal of the qualified Professional Engineer responsible for their preparation and licensed in the State of Ohio.
- C. Furnish appropriate certification from licensed fabricator shop or complete detailed inspection reports signed by each inspector performing unlicensed shop inspection to the Architect before the Work affected by these inspections is delivered to the site.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Engineer Qualifications: Unless stated otherwise in other sections, provide the following:
 1. Professional Engineer legally licensed and qualified to practice in the State of Ohio and experienced in, and having a minimum of ten (10) consecutive years providing the type of engineering services indicated in the Contract Documents.
 2. Engineering services are defined as those performed for the design, fabrication and installation of components and assemblies similar in material, design, complexity and extent to those indicated in the Contract Documents for this Project.
- B. Fabricator/Installer Qualifications: Firm with a minimum of five (5) consecutive years experience in the design, testing, fabrication, assembly, installation and coordination of specified components, assemblies and systems on projects similar in material, design, complexity and extent to this Project, and whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance. Submit evidence demonstrating the following:
 1. The ability to coordinate and work with a qualified testing agency for testing exterior building envelope assemblies utilizing the recognized test standards of the industry on projects similar in material, design, complexity and extent of this Project.
 2. The experience managing, scheduling, coordinating and maintaining on-time performance in conjunction with the successful projects and for the proposed project.
 3. An in-place, comprehensive quality assurance and quality control program and procedures that demonstrates how it is being applied on the project.
 4. The ability to produce proposal drawings, accommodate plant visits, and mockups, organization plans, project management plans and proposed schedules in conjunction with the bidding for this Project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Provide products, materials, components and accessories required for a complete installation and operation in the proposed design, whether or not such items are indicated in the Contract Document Drawings or in the Specifications.
- B. Provide anchors, attachments, hardware, inserts, fasteners, clips, bracing, framework, and similar items as required to meet specified design and performance requirements, and to anchor delegated design Work to adjacent supports, or to related adjoining work, whether or not such items are indicated in the Contract Document Drawings or in the Specifications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 DESIGN

- A. Unless otherwise indicated or specified, maintain design intent and specified performance requirements of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. If certain fabrication or erection methods, minor dimensional changes and detailing adjustments to the original design in the Contract Documents are required, indicate such changes on submitted Shop Drawings.
 - 2. Prior to shop drawing submittal, obtain written approval from the Architect for proposed changes and adjustments.
- B. Engage a qualified licensed Professional Engineer to design connection details and determine fastener types and sizes.
 - 1. Fasteners or connections are not to conflict with or require revision to the design profiles indicated on the Drawings or to the supporting work.
 - 2. Connections are not to impose eccentric loading, nor induce twisting or warping to supporting structure.
 - 3. Design connections to accommodate potential and actual misalignment of adjacent work within tolerances specified in other Sections.

3.02 SCHEDULE OF DELEGATED DESIGN ITEMS

- A. Components, assemblies and systems delegated to the Contractor include the following:
 - 1. Cold-formed steel framing
 - 2. Cold-formed steel trusses
 - 3. Special Steel Joists
 - 4. Metal fabrications
 - 5. Metal stairs and handrails
 - 6. Elevator rails and beams
 - 7. Storefront, including connections, glass and glazing
 - 8. Curtain wall systems, including connections, glass and glazing

END OF SECTION 01 13 00

SECTION 012100 - ALLOWANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
- B. Types of allowances include the following:
 - 1. Contingency allowances.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for procedures for using unit prices, including adjustment of quantity allowances when applicable.
 - 2. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.
 - 3. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for procedures governing the use of allowances for field testing by an independent testing agency.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Allowance: A quantity of work or dollar amount included in the Contract, established in lieu of additional requirements, used to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to Contractor. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.

1.4 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

- A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise Architect of the date when final selection, or purchase and delivery, of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed by the Owner to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. At Architect's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.
- C. Purchase products and systems selected by Architect from the designated supplier.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances in the form specified for Change Orders.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.
- B. Submit time sheets and other documentation to show labor time and cost for installation of allowance items that include installation as part of the allowance.
- C. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

1.7 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCES

- A. Use the contingency allowance only as directed by Architect for Owner's purposes and only by Change Orders that indicate amounts to be charged to the allowance.
- B. Contractor's overhead, profit, and related costs for products and equipment ordered by Owner under the contingency allowance are included in the allowance and are not part of the Contract Sum. These costs include delivery, installation, insurance, equipment rental, and similar costs.
- C. Change Orders authorizing use of funds from the contingency allowance will include Contractor's related costs and reasonable overhead and profit.
- D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the contingency allowance to Owner by Change Order.

1.8 ADJUSTMENT OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, prepare a Change Order proposal based on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in-place where applicable. If applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, required maintenance materials, and similar margins.
 - 1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
 - 2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other markups.
 - 3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of Work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to unit-cost allowances.
 - 4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.
- B. Submit claims for increased costs due to a change in the scope or nature of the allowance described in the Contract Documents, whether for the purchase order amount or Contractor's handling, labor, installation, overhead, and profit.
 - 1. Do not include Contractor's or subcontractor's indirect expense in the Change Order cost amount unless it is clearly shown that the nature or extent of Work has changed from what could have been foreseen from information in the Contract Documents.
 - 2. No change to Contractor's indirect expense is permitted for selection of higher- or lower-priced materials or systems of the same scope and nature as originally indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

3.3 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance No. 1: Monument Signage Allowance: Include a lump sum contingency amount of \$25,000.00 for monument ground sign.
- B. Allowance No. 2: Wallcovering: Include a lump sum contingency amount of \$30,000.00 for wallcovering per finish plans.

END OF SECTION 012100

SECTION 012200 - UNIT PRICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 01 Section "Allowances" for procedures for using unit prices to adjust quantity allowances.
 - 2. Division 01 Section "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.
 - 3. Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for general testing and inspecting requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Unit price is an amount proposed by bidders, stated on the Bid Form, as a price per unit of measurement for materials or services added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are increased or decreased. The estimated quantities are in additive to scope of work defined by Construction Drawings and shall be additive to the contract lump sum as necessary and shall be utilized as needed determined by the Owner's testing agent.

1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, applicable taxes, overhead, and profit.
- B. Measurement and Payment: Refer to individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections.
- C. Owner reserves the right to reject Contractor's measurement of work-in-place that involves use of established unit prices and to have this work measured, at Owner's expense, by an independent surveyor acceptable to Contractor.
- D. List of Unit Prices: A list of unit prices is included in Part 3. Specification Sections referenced in the schedule contain requirements for materials described under each unit price.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 LIST OF UNIT PRICES

- A. Unit Price No. 1: Removal of unsatisfactory soil
 - 1. Description: Unsatisfactory soil excavation and disposal off-site, as required, in accordance with contract documents and as recommended by Owner's testing agent.
 - 2. Unit of Measurement: Cubic yard of soil excavated, based on in-place surveys of volume before and after removal.
 - 3. Assumed Quantity: 1 cubic yard

- B. Unit Price No. 2 – Soils Stabilization:
 - 1. Description: Chemical stabilization used for mixing into the soil in quantities and depths as recommended by Owner's testing agent. Price to include labor, materials, equipment for moving and mixing soil with chemical and reshaping, compacting and proof-rolling the soil.
 - 2. Unit of Measurement: Provide a price per cubic yard price of chemical stabilization.
 - 3. Assumed Quantity: 1 cubic yard

- C. Unit Price No. 3 - Engineered Fill for Unsuitable Soils
 - 1. Description: Where indicated by the Owner's Testing Agency and as directed by A / E, provide the complete cost for removal and disposal of unsuitable soils and backfill with engineered fill materials according to Earthwork section.
 - 2. Unit of Measurement: Provide a price Per Cubic Yard for compacted, engineered fill. Unit Prices shall be indicated on the Bid Form.
 - 3. Assumed Quantity: 1 cubic yard

- D. Unit Price No. 4 - Flowable Fill for Unsuitable Soils
 - 1. Description: As an Alternative to Engineered Fill and when allowed by the Owner's Testing Agency and A / E, provide the complete cost for removal and disposal of unsuitable soils and backfill with flowable fill materials according to the Earthwork section.
 - 2. Unit of Measurement: Provide a price Per Cubic Yard of flowable fill. Unit Prices shall be indicated on the Bid Form.
 - 3. Assumed Quantity: 1 cubic yard

- E. Unit Price No. 5 – Rock Removal:
 - 1. Description: Provide a price for mechanical removal of subsurface rock.
 - 2. Unit of Measurement: Provide a price Per Cubic Yard of in-place rock.
 - 3. Assumed Quantity: 1 cubic yard

END OF SECTION 012200

SECTION 012300 - ALTERNATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if the Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
 - 2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternates into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
 - 1. Include, as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation, whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
- B. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other Work of the Contract.
- C. Schedule: A Part 3 "Schedule of Alternates" Article is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

A. Alternate Bid Work for the **Benham's Grove Event Center & Site Improvements** includes the following:

1. Alternate No. 1 – (ADD: Parking Alternate)
 - a. Base Bid: (Provide Base Bid scope of work as outlined in the drawings including the new Event Center building and its adjacent site improvements. This includes the new site access and new parking bay, new site lighting, new trash enclosure, new paver walkways, and new landscaping as defined in drawings as Base Bid scope of work.)
 - b. Parking Alternate: Additive to Base Bid scope of work (Provide existing parking improvements, replacement of existing & new site lighting fixtures & foundations, new paver walkways, and new landscaping & irrigation as defined in drawings as Parking Alternate scope of work.)
2. Alternate No. 2 – (ADD: Parking Alternate: Pavers at round-a-bout)
 - a. Base Bid to Parking Alternate: (Provide mill & resurface asphalt as Base Bid to Parking Alternate scope of work.)
 - b. Additive Alternate to Parking Alternate: (Provide pavers per bid documents as additive to parking alternate bid work.)
3. Alternate No. 3 – (DEDUCT: Irrigation to Base Bid & Parking Alternate scope of work)
 - a. Base Bid: (Deductive alternate to not provide irrigation for the Base Bid scope of work per bid documents.)
 - b. Parking Alternate: (Deductive alternate to not provide irrigation for the Parking Alternate scope of work per bid documents.)
4. Alternate No. 4 – (DEDUCT: Glass Film)
 - a. Base Bid: (Provide glass film per bid documents as part of Base Bid Work.)
 - b. Deductive Alternate Bid Work shall include (Provide spandrel glass per bid documents as Alternate Bid Work)
5. Alternate No. 5 – (DEDUCT: Reinforced Lawn)
 - a. Base Bid: (Provide reinforced lawn per bid documents at the Event Center east lawn and the Gazebo east lawn as part of Base Bid Work.)
 - b. Deductive Alternate Bid Work shall include (Remove Alternate Bid Work)
6. Alternate No. 6 – (DEDUCT: Voluntary Alternate)
 - a. Deductive Alternate: (Contractor to propose voluntary alternates or value engineered alternatives to Base Bid and/or Parking Alternate scope of work.)

END OF SECTION 012300

SECTION 012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.
 - 2. Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements for forms for contract modifications provided as part of web-based Project management software.

1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710.

1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
 - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
 - 2. Within time specified in Proposal Request after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
 - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
 - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
 - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.

- e. Quotation Form: Use forms acceptable to Architect.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.
 - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
 - 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 - 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
 - 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
 - 5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
 - 6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
 - 7. Proposal Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

- A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 012100 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.
- B. Unit-Price Adjustment: See Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit-price work.

1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

1.7 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
 - 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
 - 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012600

SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Document 004373 "Proposed Schedule of Values Form" for requirements for furnishing proposed schedule of values with bid.
 - 2. Section 012100 "Allowances" for procedural requirements governing the handling and processing of allowances.
 - 3. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for administrative requirements governing the use of unit prices.
 - 4. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
 - 5. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
 - 3. Subschedules for Separate Elements of Work: Where the Contractor's construction schedule defines separate elements of the Work, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each element, such as addition and remodeling.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
 - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:

- a. Project name and location.
 - b. Owner's name.
 - c. Owner's Project number.
 - d. Name of Architect.
 - e. Architect's Project number.
 - f. Contractor's name and address.
 - g. Date of submittal.
2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
 3. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form, with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
 - a. Related Specification Section or division.
 - b. Description of the Work.
 - c. Name of subcontractor.
 - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
 - e. Name of supplier.
 - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
 - g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent. Round dollar amounts to whole dollars, with total equal to Contract Sum.
 - 1) Labor.
 - 2) Materials.
 - 3) Equipment.
 4. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
 5. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
 - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
 6. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
 7. Purchase Contracts: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each Purchase contract. Show line-item value of Purchase contract. Indicate Owner payments or deposits, if any, and balance to be paid by Contractor.
 8. Overhead Costs, Proportional Distribution: Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each line item.
 9. Overhead Costs, Separate Line Items: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
 10. Temporary Facilities: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
 11. Closeout Costs. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for Project closeout requirements in an amount totaling five percent of the Contract Sum and subcontract amount.
 12. Schedule of Values Revisions: Revise the schedule of values when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum. Include at least one separate line item for each Change Order and Construction Change Directive.

1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments, as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Owner/Contractor Agreement. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Payment Application Times: Submit Application for Payment to Architect by the tenth of the month. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the last day of the month.
 - 1. Submit draft copy of Application for Payment seven days prior to due date for review by Architect.
- D. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- E. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
 - 1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
 - 2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
 - 3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
 - 4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- F. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
 - 1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment for stored materials.
 - 2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
 - 3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
 - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
 - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
 - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
- G. Transmittal: Email of submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
 - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.

- H. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment and subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, and suppliers for construction period covered by the previous application.
1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
 2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
 3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
 4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
 5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.
- I. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
1. List of subcontractors.
 2. Schedule of values.
 3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
 4. Combined Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final) incorporating Work of multiple contracts, with indication of acceptance of schedule by each Contractor.
 5. Products list (preliminary if not final).
 6. Sustainable design action plans, including preliminary project materials cost data.
 7. Schedule of unit prices.
 8. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
 9. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
 10. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
 11. Copies of building permits.
 12. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
 13. Initial progress report.
 14. Report of preconstruction conference.
 15. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
 16. Performance and payment bonds.
 17. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- J. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
 - a. Complete administrative actions, submittals, and Work preceding this application, as described in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
 2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- K. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.

2. Certification of completion of final punch list items.
3. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
4. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
5. AIA Document G706.
6. AIA Document G706A.
7. AIA Document G707.
8. Evidence that claims have been settled.
9. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
10. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.
11. Proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations are paid.
12. Waivers and releases.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012900

SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. General coordination procedures.
 - 2. Coordination drawings.
 - 3. RFIs.
 - 4. Digital project management procedures.
 - 5. Web-based Project management software package.
 - 6. Project meetings.
- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011200 "Multiple Contract Summary" for a description of the division of work among separate contracts and responsibility for coordination activities not in this Section.
 - 2. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 3. Section 017300 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
 - 4. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BIM: Building Information Modeling.
- B. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:

1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.

B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses, cellular telephone numbers, and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.

1. Post copies of list in Project meeting room, in temporary field office, and in prominent location in each built facility. Keep list current at all times.

1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results, where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.

B. Coordination of Multiple Contracts: Each contractor shall coordinate its construction operations with those of other contractors and entities to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Each contractor shall coordinate its own operations with operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results, where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
2. Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.

C. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.

1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.

D. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and scheduled activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
5. Progress meetings.

6. Preinstallation conferences.
7. Project closeout activities.
8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
 - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
 - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
 - d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
 - e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
 - f. Indicate required installation sequences.
 - g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternative sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
 2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to accommodate layout of light fixtures and other components indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
 3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms, showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
 4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
 5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
 6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
 - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.

- b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
 - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
- a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
 - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
 - c. Panel board, switchboard, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor-control center locations.
 - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
- a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that, in general, the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.
10. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- C. Coordination Drawing Process: Prepare coordination drawings in the following manner:
- 1. Schedule submittal and review of Fire Sprinkler, Plumbing, HVAC, and Electrical Shop Drawings to make required changes prior to preparation of coordination drawings.
 - 2. Commence routing of coordination drawing files with HVAC Installer, who will provide drawing plan files denoting approved ductwork. HVAC Installer will locate ductwork and piping on a single layer, using orange color. Forward drawings to Plumbing Installer.
 - 3. Plumbing Installer will locate plumbing and equipment on a single layer, using blue color.
 - 4. Fire Sprinkler Installer will locate piping and equipment, using red color. Fire Sprinkler Installer shall forward drawing files to Electrical Installer.
 - 5. Electrical Installer will indicate service and feeder conduit runs and equipment in green color. Electrical Installer shall forward drawing files to Communications and Electronic Safety and Security Installer.
 - 6. Communications and Electronic Safety and Security Installer will indicate cable trays and cabling runs and equipment in purple color. Communications and Electronic Safety and Security Installer shall forward completed drawing files to Contractor.
 - 7. Contractor shall perform the final coordination review. As each coordination drawing is completed, Contractor will meet with Architect to review and resolve conflicts on the coordination drawings.

1.7 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
- 1. Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
 - 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.

- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
1. Project name.
 2. Owner name.
 3. Owner's Project number.
 4. Name of Architect.
 5. Architect's Project number.
 6. Date.
 7. Name of Contractor.
 8. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
 9. RFI subject.
 10. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
 11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 12. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
 13. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
 14. Contractor's signature.
 15. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
 - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: AIA Document G716 Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
1. Attachments shall be electronic files in PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt by Architect of additional information.
 3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
 - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 5 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Include the following:

1. Project name.
 2. Name and address of Contractor.
 3. Name and address of Architect.
 4. RFI number, including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
 5. RFI description.
 6. Date the RFI was submitted.
 7. Date Architect's response was received.
 8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
 9. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.

1.8 DIGITAL PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

- A. Use of Architect's Digital Data Files: Digital data files of Architect's BIM model or CAD drawings will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use during construction.
1. Digital data files may be used by Contractor in preparing coordination drawings, Shop Drawings, and Project Record Drawings.
 2. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Contract Drawings.
 3. Digital Drawing Software Program: Contract Drawings are available in Revit 2020 or dwg.
 4. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement included in Project Manual.
 - a. Subcontractors and other parties granted access by Contractor to Architect's digital data files shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement included in this Project Manual (Section 013310-Agreement and Waiver For Use of Electronic Information and Data).
- B. PDF Document Preparation: Where PDFs are required to be submitted to Architect, prepare as follows:
1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file, incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
 2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 3. Certifications: Where digitally submitted certificates and certifications are required, provide a digital signature with digital certificate on where indicated.

1.9 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times a minimum of seven days prior to meeting.
 2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.

3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Architect will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
 - a. Responsibilities and personnel assignments.
 - b. Tentative construction schedule.
 - c. Phasing.
 - d. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
 - e. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
 - f. Lines of communications.
 - g. Use of web-based Project software.
 - h. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
 - i. Procedures for RFIs.
 - j. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
 - k. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
 - l. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
 - m. Submittal procedures.
 - n. Sustainable design requirements.
 - o. Preparation of Record Documents.
 - p. Use of the premises.
 - q. Work restrictions.
 - r. Working hours.
 - s. Owner's occupancy requirements.
 - t. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
 - u. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
 - v. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
 - w. Construction waste management and recycling.
 - x. Parking availability.
 - y. Office, work, and storage areas.
 - z. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
 - aa. First aid.
 - bb. Security.
 - cc. Progress cleaning.
 3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity when required by other Sections and when required for coordination with other construction.
1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:

- a. Contract Documents.
 - b. Options.
 - c. Related RFIs.
 - d. Related Change Orders.
 - e. Purchases.
 - f. Deliveries.
 - g. Submittals.
 - h. Sustainable design requirements.
 - i. Review of mockups.
 - j. Possible conflicts.
 - k. Compatibility requirements.
 - l. Time schedules.
 - m. Weather limitations.
 - n. Manufacturer's written instructions.
 - o. Warranty requirements.
 - p. Compatibility of materials.
 - q. Acceptability of substrates.
 - r. Temporary facilities and controls.
 - s. Space and access limitations.
 - t. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - u. Testing and inspecting requirements.
 - v. Installation procedures.
 - w. Coordination with other work.
 - x. Required performance results.
 - y. Protection of adjacent work.
 - z. Protection of construction and personnel.
3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 90 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
 - a. Preparation of Record Documents.
 - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
 - c. Procedures for completing and archiving web-based Project software site data files.
 - d. Submittal of written warranties.
 - e. Requirements for completing sustainable design documentation.
 - f. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
 - g. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
 - h. Requirements for demonstration and training.

- i. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
 - j. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
 - k. Submittal procedures.
 - l. Coordination of separate contracts.
 - m. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
 - n. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
 - o. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- E. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at regular intervals.
- 1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
 - 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 - 3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - 1) Review schedule for next period.
 - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
 - 4) Status of submittals.
 - 5) Status of sustainable design documentation.
 - 6) Deliveries.
 - 7) Off-site fabrication.
 - 8) Access.
 - 9) Site use.
 - 10) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 11) Progress cleaning.
 - 12) Quality and work standards.
 - 13) Status of correction of deficient items.
 - 14) Field observations.
 - 15) Status of RFIs.
 - 16) Status of Proposal Requests.
 - 17) Pending changes.
 - 18) Status of Change Orders.
 - 19) Pending claims and disputes.
 - 20) Documentation of information for payment requests.

4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
 - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting, where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

- F. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at regular intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
 1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - b. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting, where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
 - c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
 - 4) Status of submittals.
 - 5) Deliveries.
 - 6) Off-site fabrication.
 - 7) Access.
 - 8) Site use.
 - 9) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 10) Work hours.
 - 11) Hazards and risks.
 - 12) Progress cleaning.
 - 13) Quality and work standards.
 - 14) Status of RFIs.
 - 15) Proposal Requests.
 - 16) Change Orders.
 - 17) Pending changes.
 3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013100

SECTION 013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
 - 1. Startup construction schedule.
 - 2. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - 3. Construction schedule updating reports.
 - 4. Daily construction reports.
 - 5. Material location reports.
 - 6. Site condition reports.
 - 7. Unusual event reports.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for schedule of tests and inspections.
 - 2. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for schedule of values and requirements for use of cost-loaded schedule for Applications for Payment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction Project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
 - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
 - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
 - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. Cost Loading: The allocation of the schedule of values for completing an activity as scheduled. The sum of costs for all activities must equal the total Contract Sum.
- C. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine the critical path of Project and when activities can be performed.
- D. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.

- E. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- F. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
 - 1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
 - 2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
 - 3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.
- G. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for completing an activity as scheduled.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
 - 1. Working electronic copy of schedule file.
 - 2. PDF file.
 - 3. Two paper copies, of sufficient size to display entire period or schedule, as required.
- B. Startup construction schedule.
 - 1. Submittal of cost-loaded startup construction schedule will not constitute approval of schedule of values for cost-loaded activities.
- C. Startup Network Diagram: Of size required to display entire network for entire construction period. Show logic ties for activities.
- D. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
 - 1. Submit a working digital copy of schedule, using software indicated, and labeled to comply with requirements for submittals.
- E. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description, cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.
 - 1. Activity Report: List of activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
 - 2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for each activity, sorted in ascending order by activity number and then by early start date, or actual start date if known.
 - 3. Total Float Report: List of activities sorted in ascending order of total float.
- F. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- G. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.
- H. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.

- I. Unusual Event Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.
- J. Qualification Data: For scheduling consultant.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Scheduling Consultant Qualifications: An experienced specialist in CPM scheduling and reporting, with capability of producing CPM reports and diagrams within 24 hours of Architect's request.
- B. Prescheduling Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to the preliminary construction schedule and Contractor's Construction Schedule, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Review software limitations and content and format for reports.
 - 2. Verify availability of qualified personnel needed to develop and update schedule.
 - 3. Discuss constraints, including phasing, work stages, area separations, interim milestones, and partial Owner occupancy.
 - 4. Review delivery dates for Owner-furnished products.
 - 5. Review schedule for work of Owner's separate contracts.
 - 6. Review submittal requirements and procedures.
 - 7. Review time required for review of submittals and resubmittals.
 - 8. Review requirements for tests and inspections by independent testing and inspecting agencies.
 - 9. Review time required for Project closeout and Owner startup procedures.
 - 10. Review and finalize list of construction activities to be included in schedule.
 - 11. Review procedures for updating schedule.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
 - 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
 - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities, and schedule them in proper sequence.

1.7 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.
- B. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of Final Completion.
 - 1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- C. Activities: Treat each floor or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:

1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
 2. Temporary Facilities: Indicate start and completion dates for the following as applicable:
 - a. Securing of approvals and permits required for performance of the Work.
 - b. Temporary facilities.
 - c. Construction of mock-ups, prototypes and samples.
 - d. Owner interfaces and furnishing of items.
 - e. Interfaces with Separate Contracts.
 - f. Regulatory agency approvals.
 - g. Punch list.
 3. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead-time items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
 4. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's Construction Schedule with submittal schedule.
 5. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for startup and testing.
 6. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
 7. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and Final Completion.
- D. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
1. Phasing: Arrange list of activities on schedule by phase.
 2. Work under More Than One Contract: Include a separate activity for each contract.
 3. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
 4. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
 5. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
 6. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
 - a. Coordination with existing construction.
 - b. Limitations of continued occupancies.
 - c. Uninterruptible services.
 - d. Partial occupancy before Substantial Completion.
 - e. Use-of-premises restrictions.
 - f. Provisions for future construction.
 - g. Seasonal variations.
 - h. Environmental control.
 7. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Subcontract awards.
 - b. Submittals.

- c. Purchases.
 - d. Mockups.
 - e. Fabrication.
 - f. Sample testing.
 - g. Deliveries.
 - h. Installation.
 - i. Tests and inspections.
 - j. Adjusting.
 - k. Curing.
 - l. Building flush-out.
 - m. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
 - n. Commissioning.
8. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
- a. Structural completion.
 - b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
 - c. Permanent space enclosure.
 - d. Completion of mechanical installation.
 - e. Completion of electrical installation.
 - f. Substantial Completion.
- E. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and Final Completion, and the following interim milestones:
1. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
- F. Cost Correlation: Superimpose a cost correlation timeline, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show planned and actual dollar volume of the Work performed as of planned and actual dates used for preparation of payment requests.
1. See Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.
- G. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
1. Unresolved issues.
 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
 4. Notations on returned submittals.
 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and the Contract Time.
- H. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
 3. As the Work progresses, indicate Final Completion percentage for each activity.

- I. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
- J. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
 - 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
 - 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

1.8 STARTUP CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit startup, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type construction schedule within seven days of date established for commencement of the Work.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line. Outline significant construction activities for first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.

1.9 GANTT-CHART SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's Construction Schedule within 30 days of date established for commencement of the Work.
 - 1. Base schedule on the startup construction schedule and additional information received since the start of Project.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
 - 1. For construction activities that require three months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

1.10 CPM SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.
- B. Startup Network Diagram: Submit diagram within 14 days of date established for commencement of the Work. Outline significant construction activities for the first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.
- C. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's Construction Schedule using a time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.
 - 1. Develop network diagram in sufficient time to submit CPM schedule, so it can be accepted for use no later than 60 days after date established for commencement of the Work.

- a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates.
 2. Conduct educational workshops to train and inform key Project personnel, including subcontractors' personnel, in proper methods of providing data and using CPM schedule information.
 3. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.
 4. Use "one workday" as the unit of time for individual activities. Indicate nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule to coordinate with the Contract Time.
- D. CPM Schedule Preparation: Prepare a list of all activities required to complete the Work. Using the startup network diagram, prepare a skeleton network to identify probable critical paths.
1. Activities: Indicate the estimated time duration, sequence requirements, and relationship of each activity in relation to other activities. Include estimated time frames for the following activities:
 - a. Preparation and processing of submittals.
 - b. Mobilization and demobilization.
 - c. Purchase of materials.
 - d. Delivery.
 - e. Fabrication.
 - f. Utility interruptions.
 - g. Installation.
 - h. Work by Owner that may affect or be affected by Contractor's activities.
 - i. Testing and inspection.
 - j. Commissioning.
 - k. Punch list and Final Completion.
 - l. Activities occurring following Final Completion.
 2. Critical Path Activities: Identify critical path activities, including those for interim completion dates. Scheduled start and completion dates shall be consistent with Contract milestone dates.
 3. Processing: Process data to produce output data on a computer-drawn, time-scaled network. Revise data, reorganize activity sequences, and reproduce as often as necessary to produce the CPM schedule within the limitations of the Contract Time.
 4. Format: Mark the critical path. Locate the critical path near center of network; locate paths with most float near the edges.
 - a. Subnetworks on separate sheets are permissible for activities clearly off the critical path.
- E. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using a network fragment to demonstrate the effect of the proposed change on the overall Project schedule.
- F. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a sorted activity list indicating straight "early start-total float." Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
 2. Description of activity.
 3. Main events of activity.
 4. Immediate preceding and succeeding activities.
 5. Early and late start dates.
 6. Early and late finish dates.
 7. Activity duration in workdays.
 8. Total float or slack time.

9. Average size of workforce.
10. Dollar value of activity (coordinated with the schedule of values).

G. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with making revisions to schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:

1. Identification of activities that have changed.
2. Changes in early and late start dates.
3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
5. Changes in the critical path.
6. Changes in total float or slack time.
7. Changes in the Contract Time.

H. Value Summaries: Prepare two cumulative value lists, sorted by finish dates.

1. In first list, tabulate activity number, early finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
2. In second list, tabulate activity number, late finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
3. In subsequent issues of both lists, substitute actual finish dates for activities completed as of list date.
4. Prepare list for ease of comparison with payment requests; coordinate timing with progress meetings.
 - a. In both value summary lists, tabulate "actual percent complete" and "cumulative value completed" with total at bottom.
 - b. Submit value summary printouts one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.

1.11 REPORTS

A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:

1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
4. Equipment at Project site.
5. Material deliveries.
6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
7. Testing and inspection.
8. Accidents.
9. Meetings and significant decisions.
10. Unusual events.
11. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
12. Meter readings and similar recordings.
13. Emergency procedures.
14. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
15. Change Orders received and implemented.
16. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
17. Services connected and disconnected.
18. Equipment or system tests and startups.
19. Partial completions and occupancies.
20. Substantial Completions authorized.

- B. Material Location Reports: At monthly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site. Indicate the following categories for stored materials:
1. Material stored prior to previous report and remaining in storage.
 2. Material stored prior to previous report and since removed from storage and installed.
 3. Material stored following previous report and remaining in storage.
- C. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.
- D. Unusual Event Reports: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, responses by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.
1. Submit unusual event reports directly to Owner within one day of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013200

SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Submittal schedule requirements.
- 2. Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
- 2. Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting coordination drawings and subcontract list and for requirements for web-based Project software.
- 3. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
- 4. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for submitting test and inspection reports, and schedule of tests and inspections.
- 5. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting closeout submittals and maintenance material submittals.
- 6. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
- 7. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
- 8. Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

1.4 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
 2. Initial Submittal Schedule: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
 3. Final Submittal Schedule: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - a. Submit revised submittal schedule as required to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
 4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
 - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
 - b. Specification Section number and title.
 - c. Submittal Category: Action; informational.
 - d. Name of subcontractor.
 - e. Description of the Work covered.
 - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
 - g. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
 - h. Scheduled date of fabrication.
 - i. Scheduled dates for installation.
 - j. Activity or event number.

1.5 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

- A. Submittal Information: Include the following information in each submittal:
1. Project name.
 2. Date.
 3. Name of Architect.
 4. Name of Construction Manager.
 5. Name of Contractor.
 6. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 7. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
 8. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
 9. Category and type of submittal.
 10. Submittal purpose and description.
 11. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.
 12. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 13. Indication of full or partial submittal.
 14. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 15. Other necessary identification.

16. Remarks.
17. Signature of transmitter.

- B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.
- D. Paper Submittals:
1. Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal item for identification; include name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 2. Provide a space approximately 6 by 8 inches on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
 3. Action Submittals: Submit three paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
 4. Informational Submittals: Submit two paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
 5. Additional Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect observes noncompliance with provisions in the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.
 6. Transmittal for Submittals: Assemble each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using AIA Document G810 transmittal form.
- E. Electronic Submittals: Prepare submittals as PDF package, incorporating complete information into each PDF file. Name PDF file with submittal number.

1.6 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
1. Email: Prepare submittals as PDF package and transmit to Architect by sending via email. Include PDF transmittal form. Include information in email subject line as requested by Architect.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as a digital Project Record Document file.
 2. Paper: Prepare submittals in paper form and deliver to Architect.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
 3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
 4. Coordinate transmittal of submittals for related parts of the Work specified in different Sections, so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.

- a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
 3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
 4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
- D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block, and clearly indicate extent of revision.
 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- E. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- F. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

1.7 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are unsuitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
 - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
 - c. Standard color charts.
 - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
 - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
 - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
 - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - h. Availability and delivery time information.
 4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
 - a. Wiring diagrams that show factory-installed wiring.
 - b. Printed performance curves.
 - c. Operational range diagrams.

- d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
 5. Submit Product Data before Shop Drawings, and before or concurrently with Samples.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Identification of products.
 - b. Schedules.
 - c. Compliance with specified standards.
 - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
 - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
 - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
 2. Paper Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size Drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
- C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of type, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components, such as accessories together in one submittal package.
 2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
 - a. Project name and submittal number.
 - b. Generic description of Sample.
 - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
 - d. Sample source.
 - e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
 - f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
 3. Email Transmittal: Provide PDF transmittal. Include digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics and identification information for record.
 4. Paper Transmittal: Include paper transmittal, including complete submittal information indicated.
 5. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
 - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
 - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
 6. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units, showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.

7. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned.
 - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
 - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- D. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
 1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
 2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
 3. Number and name of room or space.
 4. Location within room or space.
- E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page of submittal.
- G. Certificates:
 1. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Submit a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity. Provide a notarized signature where indicated.
 2. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
 3. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
 4. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
 5. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.

6. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of AWS B2.1/B2.1M on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

H. Test and Research Reports:

1. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for substrate preparation and primers required.
2. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
3. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
4. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
5. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
6. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
 - a. Name of evaluation organization.
 - b. Date of evaluation.
 - c. Time period when report is in effect.
 - d. Product and manufacturers' names.
 - e. Description of product.
 - f. Test procedures and results.
 - g. Limitations of use.

1.8 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 1. If criteria indicated are insufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF file paper copy of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

1.9 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Contractor's Approval: Indicate Contractor's approval for each submittal with a uniform approval stamp. Include name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Architect will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.

1.10 ARCHITECT'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required, and return.
 - 1. PDF Submittals: Architect will indicate, via markup on each submittal, the appropriate action.
 - 2. Paper Submittals: Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Architect will return without review submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by Architect without action.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013300

SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 1. Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections may also cover production of standard products.
 - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, Commissioning Authority, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for testing and inspection allowances.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced," unless otherwise further described, means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, subcontractor, or sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.
 - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a Work result does not require that certain construction activities specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).

- D. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed either as freestanding temporary built elements or as part of permanent construction. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.
1. Laboratory Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies constructed and tested at testing facility to verify performance characteristics.
 2. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope constructed on-site as freestanding temporary built elements, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies, with cutaways enabling inspection of concealed portions of the Work.
 - a. Include each system, assembly, component, and part of the exterior wall [**and roof**] to be constructed for the Project. Colors of components shall be those selected by the Architect for use in the Project.
 3. Room Mockups: Mockups of typical interior spaces complete with wall, floor, and ceiling finishes; doors; windows; millwork; casework; specialties; furnishings and equipment; and lighting.
 4. Product Mockups: Mockups that may include multiple products, materials, or systems specified in a single Section.
 5. In-Place Mockups: Mockups constructed on-site in their actual final location as part of permanent construction.
- E. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria. Unless otherwise indicated, copies of reports of tests or inspections performed for other than the Project do not meet this definition.
- F. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) according to 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- G. Source Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source (e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop).
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. The term "testing laboratory" shall have the same meaning as the term "testing agency."
- I. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work, to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- J. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work, to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include contract administration activities performed by Architect.

1.4 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Statement: Submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

1.5 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements is specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, inform the Architect regarding the conflict and obtain clarification prior to proceeding with the Work. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for clarification before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data: For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility submitted to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
 - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
 - 2. Primary wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
 - 1. Specification Section number and title.

2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
3. Description of test and inspection.
4. Identification of applicable standards.
5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
6. Number of tests and inspections required.
7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

- F. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports and documents as specified.
- G. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice to Proceed, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities and to coordinate Owner's quality-assurance and quality-control activities. Coordinate with Contractor's Construction Schedule.
- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections, including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections. Distinguish source quality-control tests and inspections from field quality-control tests and inspections.
 2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the Statement of Special Inspections.
 3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents, including tests and inspections indicated to be performed by Commissioning Authority.
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring the Work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports, including log of approved and rejected results. Include Work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming Work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Date of issue.
 2. Project title and number.
 3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
 8. Complete test or inspection data.
 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample-taking and testing and inspection.
 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
 13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of technical representative making report.
 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 6. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of factory-authorized service representative making report.
 2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 4. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from manufacturers able

to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or factory-authorized service representative requirements.

- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that is similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged in the activities indicated.
 - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing and Inspecting Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented in accordance with ASTM E329, and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect, demonstrate, repair, and perform service on installations of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following Contractor's responsibilities, including the following:
 - 1. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
 - 2. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 - 3. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
 - 4. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups, using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
 - 5. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility, using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
 - 6. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect and Commissioning Authority, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.

- K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
1. Build mockups of size indicated.
 2. Build mockups in location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 4. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers who will be employed to perform same tasks during the construction at Project.
 5. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
 6. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting corresponding Work, fabrication, or construction.
 - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
 7. Promptly correct unsatisfactory conditions noted by Architect's preliminary review, to the satisfaction of the Architect, before completion of final mockup.
 8. Approval of mockups by the Architect does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 9. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 10. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.

1.10 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspection they are engaged to perform.
 2. Payment for these services will be made from testing and inspection allowances specified in Section 012100 "Allowances," as authorized by Change Orders.
 3. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not, to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
 2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform quality-control services.
 - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
 3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspection will be performed.
 4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
 5. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.

6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Commissioning Authority and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect and Commissioning Authority, and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 2. Determine the locations from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from requirements.
 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
 6. Do not perform duties of Contractor.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- G. Contractor's Associated Requirements and Services: Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspection.
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's Construction Schedule. Update and submit with each Application for Payment.

1. Schedule Contents: Include tests, inspections, and quality-control services, including Contractor- and Owner-retained services, commissioning activities, and other Project-required services paid for by other entities.
2. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, Commissioning Authority, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

1.11 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, and as follows:
1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures, and reviewing the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
 2. Notifying Architect, Commissioning Authority, and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect and Commissioning Authority with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
 5. Interpreting tests and inspections, and stating in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
 6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's, Commissioning Authority's, and authorities' having jurisdiction reference during normal working hours.
1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspection, sample-taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
 - 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000

SECTION 014200 - REFERENCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.

1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

1.4 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States."
- B. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Abbreviations and acronyms not included in this list shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States." The information in this list is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. AABC - Associated Air Balance Council; www.aabc.com.
 - 2. AAMA - American Architectural Manufacturers Association; www.aamanet.org.

3. AAPFCO - Association of American Plant Food Control Officials; www.aapfco.org.
4. AASHTO - American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; www.transportation.org.
5. AATCC - American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists; www.aatcc.org.
6. ABMA - American Bearing Manufacturers Association; www.americanbearings.org.
7. ABMA - American Boiler Manufacturers Association; www.abma.com.
8. ACI - American Concrete Institute; (Formerly: ACI International); www.concrete.org.
9. ACPA - American Concrete Pipe Association; www.concrete-pipe.org.
10. AEIC - Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The); www.aeic.org.
11. AF&PA - American Forest & Paper Association; www.afandpa.org.
12. AGA - American Gas Association; www.aga.org.
13. AHAM - Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers; www.aham.org.
14. AHRI - Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (The); www.ahrinet.org.
15. AI - Asphalt Institute; www.asphaltinstitute.org.
16. AIA - American Institute of Architects (The); www.aia.org.
17. AISC - American Institute of Steel Construction; www.aisc.org.
18. AISI - American Iron and Steel Institute; www.steel.org.
19. AITC - American Institute of Timber Construction; www.aitc-glulam.org.
20. AMCA - Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; www.amca.org.
21. ANSI - American National Standards Institute; www.ansi.org.
22. AOSA - Association of Official Seed Analysts, Inc.; www.aosaseed.com.
23. APA - APA - The Engineered Wood Association; www.apawood.org.
24. APA - Architectural Precast Association; www.archprecast.org.
25. API - American Petroleum Institute; www.api.org.
26. ARI - Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
27. ARI - American Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
28. ARMA - Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association; www.asphaltroofing.org.
29. ASCE - American Society of Civil Engineers; www.asce.org.
30. ASCE/SEI - American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute; (See ASCE).
31. ASHRAE - American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers; www.ashrae.org.
32. ASME - ASME International; (American Society of Mechanical Engineers); www.asme.org.
33. ASSE - American Society of Safety Engineers (The); www.asse.org.
34. ASSE - American Society of Sanitary Engineering; www.asse-plumbing.org.
35. ASTM - ASTM International; www.astm.org.
36. ATIS - Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions; www.atis.org.
37. AWEA - American Wind Energy Association; www.awea.org.
38. AWI - Architectural Woodwork Institute; www.awinet.org.
39. AWMAC - Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada; www.awmac.com.
40. AWPA - American Wood Protection Association; www.awpa.com.
41. AWS - American Welding Society; www.aws.org.
42. AWWA - American Water Works Association; www.awwa.org.
43. BHMA - Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association; www.buildershardware.com.
44. BIA - Brick Industry Association (The); www.gobrick.com.
45. BICSI - BICSI, Inc.; www.bicsi.org.
46. BIFMA - BIFMA International; (Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association); www.bifma.org.
47. BISSC - Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee; www.bissc.org.
48. BWF - Badminton World Federation; (Formerly: International Badminton Federation); www.bissc.org.
49. CDA - Copper Development Association; www.copper.org.
50. CE - Conformance Europeenne; <http://ec.europa.eu/growth/single-market/ce-marking/>.
51. CEA - Canadian Electricity Association; www.electricity.ca.
52. CEA - Consumer Electronics Association; www.ce.org.
53. CFFA - Chemical Fabrics and Film Association, Inc.; www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com.

54. CFSEI - Cold-Formed Steel Engineers Institute; www.cfsei.org.
55. CGA - Compressed Gas Association; www.cganet.com.
56. CIMA - Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association; www.cellulose.org.
57. CISCA - Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association; www.cisca.org.
58. CISPI - Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute; www.cispi.org.
59. CLFMI - Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute; www.chainlinkinfo.org.
60. CPA - Composite Panel Association; www.pbmdf.com.
61. CRI - Carpet and Rug Institute (The); www.carpet-rug.org.
62. CRRC - Cool Roof Rating Council; www.coolroofs.org.
63. CRSI - Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute; www.crsi.org.
64. CSA - CSA Group; www.csagroup.com.
65. CSA - CSA International; www.csa-international.org.
66. CSI - Construction Specifications Institute (The); www.csinet.org.
67. CSSB - Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau; www.cedarbureau.org.
68. CTI - Cooling Technology Institute; (Formerly: Cooling Tower Institute); www.cti.org.
69. CWC - Composite Wood Council; (See CPA).
70. DASMA - Door and Access Systems Manufacturers Association; www.dasma.com.
71. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute; www.dhi.org.
72. ECA - Electronic Components Association; (See ECIA).
73. ECAMA - Electronic Components Assemblies & Materials Association; (See ECIA).
74. ECIA - Electronic Components Industry Association; www.eciaonline.org.
75. EIA - Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
76. EIMA - EIFS Industry Members Association; www.eima.com.
77. EJMA - Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.ejma.org.
78. ESD - ESD Association; (Electrostatic Discharge Association); www.esda.org.
79. ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association; (See PLASA).
80. ETL - Intertek (See Intertek); www.intertek.com.
81. EVO - Efficiency Valuation Organization; www.evo-world.org.
82. FCI - Fluid Controls Institute; www.fluidcontrolsintstitute.org.
83. FIBA - Federation Internationale de Basketball; (The International Basketball Federation); www.fiba.com.
84. FIVB - Federation Internationale de Volleyball; (The International Volleyball Federation); www.fivb.org.
85. FM Approvals - FM Approvals LLC; www.fmglobal.com.
86. FM Global - FM Global; (Formerly: FMG - FM Global); www.fmglobal.com.
87. FRSA - Florida Roofing, Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors Association, Inc.; www.floridarroof.com.
88. FSA - Fluid Sealing Association; www.fluidsealing.com.
89. FSC - Forest Stewardship Council U.S.; www.fscus.org.
90. GA - Gypsum Association; www.gypsum.org.
91. GANA - Glass Association of North America; www.glasswebsite.com.
92. GS - Green Seal; www.greenseal.org.
93. HI - Hydraulic Institute; www.pumps.org.
94. HI/GAMA - Hydronics Institute/Gas Appliance Manufacturers Association; (See AHRI).
95. HMMA - Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association; (See NAAMM).
96. HPVA - Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association; www.hpva.org.
97. HPW - H. P. White Laboratory, Inc.; www.hpwhite.com.
98. IAPSC - International Association of Professional Security Consultants; www.iapsc.org.
99. IAS - International Accreditation Service; www.iasonline.org.
100. ICBO - International Conference of Building Officials; (See ICC).
101. ICC - International Code Council; www.iccsafe.org.
102. ICEA - Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.; www.icea.net.
103. ICPA - International Cast Polymer Alliance; www.icpa-hq.org.
104. ICRI - International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.; www.icri.org.
105. IEC - International Electrotechnical Commission; www.iec.ch.

106. IEEE - Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The); www.ieee.org.
107. IES - Illuminating Engineering Society; (Formerly: Illuminating Engineering Society of North America); www.ies.org.
108. IESNA - Illuminating Engineering Society of North America; (See IES).
109. IEST - Institute of Environmental Sciences and Technology; www.iest.org.
110. IGMA - Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance; www.igmaonline.org.
111. IGSHPA - International Ground Source Heat Pump Association; www.igshpa.okstate.edu.
112. ILI - Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc.; www.ili.ai.com.
113. Intertek - Intertek Group; (Formerly: ETL SEMCO; Intertek Testing Service NA); www.intertek.com.
114. ISA - International Society of Automation (The); (Formerly: Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society); www.isa.org.
115. ISAS - Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society (The); (See ISA).
116. ISFA - International Surface Fabricators Association; (Formerly: International Solid Surface Fabricators Association); www.isfanow.org.
117. ISO - International Organization for Standardization; www.iso.org.
118. ISSFA - International Solid Surface Fabricators Association; (See ISFA).
119. ITU - International Telecommunication Union; www.itu.int/home.
120. KCMA - Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association; www.kcma.org.
121. LMA - Laminating Materials Association; (See CPA).
122. LPI - Lightning Protection Institute; www.lightning.org.
123. MBMA - Metal Building Manufacturers Association; www.mbma.com.
124. MCA - Metal Construction Association; www.metalconstruction.org.
125. MFMA - Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.maplefloor.org.
126. MFMA - Metal Framing Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.metalframingmfg.org.
127. MHIA - Material Handling Industry of America; www.mhia.org.
128. MIA - Marble Institute of America; www.marble-institute.com.
129. MMPA - Moulding & Millwork Producers Association; www.wmmpa.com.
130. MPI - Master Painters Institute; www.paintinfo.com.
131. MSS - Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.; www.mss-hq.org.
132. NAAMM - National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers; www.naamm.org.
133. NACE - NACE International; (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International); www.nace.org.
134. NADCA - National Air Duct Cleaners Association; www.nadca.com.
135. NAIMA - North American Insulation Manufacturers Association; www.naima.org.
136. NBGQA - National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc.; www.nbgqa.com.
137. NBI - New Buildings Institute; www.newbuildings.org.
138. NCAA - National Collegiate Athletic Association (The); www.ncaa.org.
139. NCMA - National Concrete Masonry Association; www.ncma.org.
140. NEBB - National Environmental Balancing Bureau; www.nebb.org.
141. NECA - National Electrical Contractors Association; www.necanet.org.
142. NeLMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association; www.nelma.org.
143. NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturers Association; www.nema.org.
144. NETA - InterNational Electrical Testing Association; www.netaworld.org.
145. NFHS - National Federation of State High School Associations; www.nfhs.org.
146. NFPA - National Fire Protection Association; www.nfpa.org.
147. NFPA - NFPA International; (See NFPA).
148. NFRC - National Fenestration Rating Council; www.nfrc.org.
149. NHLA - National Hardwood Lumber Association; www.nhla.com.
150. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority; www.nlga.org.
151. NOFMA - National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association; (See NWFA).
152. NOMMA - National Ornamental & Miscellaneous Metals Association; www.nomma.org.
153. NRCA - National Roofing Contractors Association; www.nrca.net.
154. NRMCA - National Ready Mixed Concrete Association; www.nrmca.org.

155. NSF - NSF International; www.nsf.org.
156. NSPE - National Society of Professional Engineers; www.nspe.org.
157. NSSGA - National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association; www.nssga.org.
158. NTMA - National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc. (The); www.ntma.com.
159. NWFA - National Wood Flooring Association; www.nwfa.org.
160. PCI - Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute; www.pci.org.
161. PDI - Plumbing & Drainage Institute; www.pdionline.org.
162. PLASA - PLASA; (Formerly: ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association); www.plasa.org.
163. RCSC - Research Council on Structural Connections; www.boltcouncil.org.
164. RFCI - Resilient Floor Covering Institute; www.rfci.com.
165. RIS - Redwood Inspection Service; www.redwoodinspection.com.
166. SAE - SAE International; www.sae.org.
167. SCTE - Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers; www.scte.org.
168. SDI - Steel Deck Institute; www.sdi.org.
169. SDI - Steel Door Institute; www.steeldoor.org.
170. SEFA - Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association (The); www.sefalabs.com.
171. SEI/ASCE - Structural Engineering Institute/American Society of Civil Engineers; (See ASCE).
172. SIA - Security Industry Association; www.siaonline.org.
173. SJI - Steel Joist Institute; www.steeljoist.org.
174. SMA - Screen Manufacturers Association; www.smainfo.org.
175. SMACNA - Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; www.smacna.org.
176. SMPTE - Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers; www.smpte.org.
177. SPFA - Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance; www.sprayfoam.org.
178. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau; www.spib.org.
179. SPRI - Single Ply Roofing Industry; www.spri.org.
180. SRCC - Solar Rating & Certification Corporation; www.solar-rating.org.
181. SSINA - Specialty Steel Industry of North America; www.ssina.com.
182. SSPC - SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings; www.sspc.org.
183. STI - Steel Tank Institute; www.steel tank.com.
184. SWI - Steel Window Institute; www.steelwindows.com.
185. SWPA - Submersible Wastewater Pump Association; www.swpa.org.
186. TCA - Tilt-Up Concrete Association; www.tilt-up.org.
187. TCNA - Tile Council of North America, Inc.; www.tileusa.com.
188. TEMA - Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.tema.org.
189. TIA - Telecommunications Industry Association (The); (Formerly: TIA/EIA - Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance); www.tiaonline.org.
190. TIA/EIA - Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
191. TMS - The Masonry Society; www.masonrysociety.org.
192. TPI - Truss Plate Institute; www.tpinst.org.
193. TPI - Turfgrass Producers International; www.turfgrassod.org.
194. TRI - Tile Roofing Institute; www.tilerroofing.org.
195. UL - Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; www.ul.com.
196. UNI - Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association; www.uni-bell.org.
197. USAV - USA Volleyball; www.usavolleyball.org.
198. USGBC - U.S. Green Building Council; www.usgbc.org.
199. USITT - United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.; www.usitt.org.
200. WA - Wallcoverings Association; www.wallcoverings.org.
201. WASTEC - Waste Equipment Technology Association; www.wastec.org.
202. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau; www.wclib.org.
203. WCMA - Window Covering Manufacturers Association; www.wcmanet.org.
204. WDMA - Window & Door Manufacturers Association; www.wdma.com.
205. WI - Woodwork Institute; www.wicnet.org.
206. WSRCA - Western States Roofing Contractors Association; www.wsrca.com.

207. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association; www.wwpa.org.

C. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. DIN - Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V.; www.din.de.
2. IAPMO - International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials; www.iapmo.org.
3. ICC - International Code Council; www.iccsafe.org.
4. ICC-ES - ICC Evaluation Service, LLC; www.icc-es.org.

D. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Information is subject to change and is up to date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. COE - Army Corps of Engineers; www.usace.army.mil.
2. CPSC - Consumer Product Safety Commission; www.cpsc.gov.
3. DOC - Department of Commerce; National Institute of Standards and Technology; www.nist.gov.
4. DOD - Department of Defense; www.quicksearch.dla.mil.
5. DOE - Department of Energy; www.energy.gov.
6. EPA - Environmental Protection Agency; www.epa.gov.
7. FAA - Federal Aviation Administration; www.faa.gov.
8. FG - Federal Government Publications; www.gpo.gov/fdsys.
9. GSA - General Services Administration; www.gsa.gov.
10. HUD - Department of Housing and Urban Development; www.hud.gov.
11. LBL - Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory; Environmental Energy Technologies Division; www.eetd.lbl.gov.
12. OSHA - Occupational Safety & Health Administration; www.osha.gov.
13. SD - Department of State; www.state.gov.
14. TRB - Transportation Research Board; National Cooperative Highway Research Program; The National Academies; www.trb.org.
15. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Agriculture Research Service; U.S. Salinity Laboratory; www.ars.usda.gov.
16. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Rural Utilities Service; www.usda.gov.
17. USDOJ - Department of Justice; Office of Justice Programs; National Institute of Justice; www.ojp.usdoj.gov.
18. USP - U.S. Pharmacopeial Convention; www.usp.org.
19. USPS - United States Postal Service; www.usps.com.

E. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. CFR - Code of Federal Regulations; Available from Government Printing Office; www.gpo.gov/fdsys.
2. DOD - Department of Defense; Military Specifications and Standards; Available from DLA Document Services; www.quicksearch.dla.mil.
3. DSCC - Defense Supply Center Columbus; (See FS).
4. FED-STD - Federal Standard; (See FS).
5. FS - Federal Specification; Available from DLA Document Services; www.quicksearch.dla.mil.
 - a. Available from Defense Standardization Program; www.dsp.dla.mil.
 - b. Available from General Services Administration; www.gsa.gov.

- c. Available from National Institute of Building Sciences/Whole Building Design Guide;
www.wbdg.org.
 6. MILSPEC - Military Specification and Standards; (See DOD).
 7. USAB - United States Access Board; www.access-board.gov.
 8. USATBCB - U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board; (See USAB).
- F. State Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
1. CBHF; State of California; Department of Consumer Affairs; Bureau of Electronic and Appliance Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation; www.bearhfti.ca.gov.
 2. CCR; California Code of Regulations; Office of Administrative Law; California Title 24 Energy Code; www.calregs.com.
 3. CDHS; California Department of Health Services; (See CDPH).
 4. CDPH; California Department of Public Health; Indoor Air Quality Program; www.cal-iaq.org.
 5. CPUC; California Public Utilities Commission; www.cpuc.ca.gov.
 6. SCAQMD; South Coast Air Quality Management District; www.aqmd.gov.
 7. TFS; Texas A&M Forest Service; Sustainable Forestry and Economic Development;
www.txforestservation.tamu.edu.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 014200

SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.

1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. Installation, removal, and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sewer Service: Contractor will pay sewer-service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Water Service: Contractor will pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
- D. Electric Power Service: Contractor will pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Utilization Plan: Show temporary facilities, temporary utility lines and connections, staging areas, construction site entrances, vehicle circulation, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Implementation and Termination Schedule: Within 15 days of date established for commencement of the Work, submit schedule indicating implementation and termination dates of each temporary utility.
- C. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Show fabrication and installation details, including plans, elevations, details, layouts, typestyles, graphic elements, and message content.
- D. Erosion- and Sedimentation-Control Plan: Show compliance with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.

- E. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
- F. Moisture- and Mold-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage and mold. Describe delivery, handling, storage, installation, and protection provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.
 - 1. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and requirements for replacing water-damaged Work.
 - 2. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
 - 3. Indicate methods to be used to avoid trapping water in finished work.
- G. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Include the following:
 - 1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of work.
 - 2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
 - 3. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
 - 4. Waste-handling procedures.
 - 5. Other dust-control measures.
- H. Noise and Vibration Control Plan: Identify construction activities that may impact the occupancy and use of existing spaces within the building or adjacent existing buildings, whether occupied by others, or occupied by the Owner. Include the following:
 - 1. Methods used to meet the goals and requirements of the Owner.
 - 2. Concrete cutting method(s) to be used.
 - 3. Location of construction devices on the site.
 - 4. Show compliance with the use and maintenance of quieted construction devices for the duration of the Project.
 - 5. Indicate activities that may disturb building occupants and that are planned to be performed during non-standard working hours as coordinated with the Owner.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
- C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in the United States Access Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch-thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch-OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch-OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch-OD top rails.
- B. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch-thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch-OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch-OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch-OD top and bottom rails. Provide galvanized-steel bases for supporting posts.
- C. Fencing Windscreen Privacy Screen: Polyester fabric scrim with grommets for attachment to chain-link fence, sized to height of fence, in color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.
- D. Wood Enclosure Fence: Plywood, 6 feet high, framed with four 2-by-4-inch rails, with preservative-treated wood posts spaced not more than 8 feet apart.
- E. Polyethylene Sheet: Reinforced, fire-resistive sheet, 10-mil minimum thickness, with flame-spread rating of 15 or less in accordance with ASTM E84 and passing NFPA 701 Test Method 2.
- F. Dust-Control Adhesive-Surface Walk-Off Mats: Provide mats, minimum 36 by 60 inches.
- G. Insulation: Unfaced mineral-fiber blanket, manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively.

2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading. Existing building space may also be used for field office.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
 - 1. Furniture required for Project-site documents, including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
 - 2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with no fewer than one receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot-square tack and marker boards.
 - 3. Drinking water and private toilet.
 - 4. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.

5. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.

C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.

1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.

B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.

1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.

2. Heating, Cooling, and Dehumidifying Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction and clean HVAC system as required in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

C. Air-Filtration Units: Primary and secondary HEPA-filter-equipped portable units with four-stage filtration. Provide single switch for emergency shutoff. Configure to run continuously.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, GENERAL

A. Conservation: Coordinate construction and use of temporary facilities with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.

1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.

1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 011000 "Summary."

B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

3.3 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
 - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
 - 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.
- D. Water Service: Connect to Owner's existing water service facilities. Clean and maintain water service facilities in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
- E. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, safety shower and eyewash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
 - 1. Use of Permanent Toilets: Use of Owner's existing or new toilet facilities is not permitted.
- F. Temporary Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
 - 1. Provide temporary dehumidification systems when required to reduce ambient and substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes and their proper curing or drying.
 - 2. Refer to Section 012100 – Allowances for temporary heat related to the Food Hub area of the building.
- G. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
 - 1. Install electric power service overhead unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Connect temporary service to Owner's existing power source, as directed by Owner.
- H. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
 - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
- I. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel.
 - 1. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.

- a. Police and fire departments.
 - b. Ambulance service.
 - c. Contractor's home office.
 - d. Contractor's emergency after-hours telephone number.
 - e. Architect's office.
 - f. Engineers' offices.
 - g. Owner's office.
 - h. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.
- J. Electronic Communication Service: Provide secure WiFi wireless connection to internet with provisions for access by Architect and Owner.

3.4 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the following:
- 1. Provide construction for temporary field offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible in accordance with ASTM E136. Comply with NFPA 241.
 - 2. Utilize designated area within existing building for temporary field offices.
 - 3. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas as indicated and within construction limits indicated on Drawings.
- 1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.
- C. Temporary Use of Planned Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
- 1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
 - 2. Prepare subgrade and install subbase and base for temporary roads and paved areas in accordance with Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 - 3. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
 - 4. Delay installation of final course of permanent hot-mix asphalt pavement until immediately before Substantial Completion. Repair hot-mix asphalt base-course pavement before installation of final course in accordance with Section 321216 "Asphalt Paving."
- D. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 1. Protect existing site improvements to remain, including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
 - 2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- E. Parking: Use designated areas of Owner's existing parking areas for construction personnel.

- F. Storage and Staging: Use designated areas of Project site for storage and staging needs.
- G. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
 - 1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
 - 2. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- H. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
 - 1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs at end of this section.
 - 2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
 - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
 - 3. Maintain and touch up signs, so they are legible at all times.
- I. Waste Disposal Facilities: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- J. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with progress cleaning requirements in Section 017300 "Execution."
- K. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
 - 1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.
- L. Temporary Elevator Use: Use of elevators is not permitted.
- M. Temporary Stairs: Until permanent stairs are available, provide temporary stairs where ladders are not adequate.
- N. Temporary Use of Permanent Stairs: Use of new stairs for construction traffic will be permitted, provided stairs are protected and finishes restored to new condition at time of Substantial Completion.

3.5 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
 - 1. Where access to adjacent properties is required in order to affect protection of existing facilities, obtain written permission from adjacent property owner to access property for that purpose.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.

1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings.
1. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant-protection zones.
 2. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
 3. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
 4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls, and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.
- D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- E. Tree and Plant Protection: Comply with requirements specified in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
- F. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- G. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals, so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using materials approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- H. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Furnish one set of keys to Owner.
- I. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each workday.
- J. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- K. Temporary Egress: Provide temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction. Provide signage directing occupants to temporary egress.
- L. Covered Walkway: Erect protective, covered walkway for passage of individuals through or adjacent to Project site. Coordinate with entrance gates, other facilities, and obstructions. Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Provide overhead decking, protective enclosure walls, handrails, barricades, warning signs, exit signs, lights, safe and well-drained walkways, and similar provisions for protection and safe passage.
 2. Paint and maintain appearance of walkway for duration of the Work.
- M. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- N. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas. Comply with additional limits on smoking specified in other Sections.
 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
 4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign, stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

3.6 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Moisture and Mold Protection: Protect stored materials and installed Work in accordance with Moisture and Mold Protection Plan.
- B. Exposed Construction Period: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
 2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
 3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
 4. Remove standing water from decks.
 5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Period: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
 2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
 3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
 4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
 5. Do not install material that is wet.
 6. Discard and replace stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.

7. Perform work in a sequence that allows wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in gypsum board or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Period: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
 2. Use temporary or permanent HVAC system to control humidity within ranges specified for installed and stored materials.
 3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
 - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective and require replacing.
 - b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
 - c. Remove and replace materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

3.7 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
 2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 015000

SECTION 016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for Contractor requirements related to Owner-furnished products.
 - 2. Section 012300 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
 - 3. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
 - 4. Section 014200 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.
 - 5. Section 01770 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
 - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
 - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Salvaged items or items reused from other projects are not considered new products. Items that are manufactured or fabricated to include recycled content materials are considered new products, unless indicated otherwise.
 - 3. Comparable Product: Product by named manufacturer that is demonstrated and approved through the comparable product submittal process described in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a single manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation. Published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design product establish salient characteristics of products.
 - 1. Evaluation of Comparable Products: In addition to the basis-of-design product description, product attributes and characteristics may be listed to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other special features and requirements for purposes of evaluating comparable products of

additional manufacturers named in the specification. Manufacturer's published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design product also establish salient characteristics of products for purposes of evaluating comparable products.

- C. Subject to Compliance with Requirements: Where the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements" introduces a product selection procedure in an individual Specification Section, provide products qualified under the specified product procedure. In the event that a named product or product by a named manufacturer does not meet the other requirements of the specifications, select another named product or product from another named manufacturer that does meet the requirements of the specifications; submit a comparable product request or substitution request, if applicable.
- D. Comparable Product Request Submittal: An action submittal requesting consideration of a comparable product, including the following information:
 - 1. Identification of basis-of-design product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced, including Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 2. Data indicating compliance with the requirements specified in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article.
- E. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: An action submittal complying with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Substitution: Refer to Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for definition and limitations on substitutions.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
 - 1. Resolution of Compatibility Disputes between Multiple Contractors:
 - a. Contractors are responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
 - b. If a dispute arises between the multiple contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.
- B. Identification of Products: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer or product names or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products or equipment that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.
 - 1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on a concealed surface, or, where required for observation following installation, on a visually accessible surface that is not conspicuous.
 - 2. Equipment Nameplates: Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service- or power-operated equipment. Locate on a visually accessible but inconspicuous surface. Include information essential for operation, including the following:
 - a. Name of product and manufacturer.
 - b. Model and serial number.
 - c. Capacity.
 - d. Speed.
 - e. Ratings.

3. See individual identification Sections in Divisions 21, 22, 23, and 26 for additional equipment identification requirements.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Modify or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of approved comparable products and approved substitutions.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products, using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Delivery and Handling:

1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and that products are undamaged and properly protected.

- C. Storage:

1. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment.
2. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
3. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
4. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation and with adequate protection from wind.
5. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
6. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
7. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
8. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.

1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written standard warranty form furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.

- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
 2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included in the Project Manual, prepare a written document, using indicated form properly executed.
 3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
 2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
 3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.
 4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
 5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
 6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
 - a. Submit additional documentation required by Architect in order to establish equivalency of proposed products. Unless otherwise indicated, evaluation of "or equal" product status is by the Architect, whose determination is final.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
1. Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Limited list of products may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following."
 2. Non-Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed or an unnamed product that complies with requirements.
 - a. Non-limited list of products is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."

- b. Provision of an unnamed product is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.
3. Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
- a. Limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following."
4. Non-Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed or a product by an unnamed manufacturer that complies with requirements.
- a. Non-limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers whose products may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
 - b. Provision of products of an unnamed manufacturer is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.
5. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications may additionally indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
- a. For approval of products by unnamed manufacturers, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for substitutions for convenience.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require the phrase "match Architect's sample," provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
- 1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.
- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or a similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.
- E. Sustainable Product Selection: Where Specifications require product to meet sustainable product characteristics, select products complying with indicated requirements. Comply with requirements in Division 01 sustainability requirements Section and individual Specification Sections.
- 1. Select products for which sustainable design documentation submittals are available from manufacturer.

2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with the following requirements:
1. Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those of the named basis-of-design product. Significant product qualities include attributes, such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
 3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
 4. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
 5. Samples, if requested.
- B. Architect's Action on Comparable Products Submittal: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation, as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
1. Form of Approval of Submittal: As specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
 2. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- C. Submittal Requirements, Two-Step Process: Approval by the Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product is not intended to satisfy other submittal requirements. Comply with specified submittal requirements.
- D. Submittal Requirements, Single-Step Process: When acceptable to Architect, incorporate specified submittal requirements of individual Specification Section in combined submittal for comparable products. Approval by the Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product and of individual submittal requirements will also satisfy other submittal requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 016000

SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Construction layout.
2. Field engineering and surveying.
3. Installation of the Work.
4. Cutting and patching.
5. Coordination of Owner's portion of the Work.
6. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
7. Progress cleaning.
8. Starting and adjusting.
9. Protection of installed construction.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 011000 "Summary" for coordination of Owner-furnished products, and limits on use of Project site.
2. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
3. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, replacing defective work, and final cleaning.
4. Section 024119 "Selective Demolition" for demolition and removal of selected portions of the building.
5. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for patching penetrations in fire-rated construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Cutting and Patching Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Prior to commencing work requiring cutting and patching, review extent of cutting and patching anticipated and examine procedures for ensuring satisfactory result from cutting and patching work. Inform Architect of scheduled meeting. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cutting and patching to attend, including the following:
 - a. Contractor's superintendent.
 - b. Trade supervisor responsible for cutting operations.
 - c. Trade supervisor(s) responsible for patching of each type of substrate.
 - d. Mechanical, electrical, and utilities subcontractors' supervisors, to the extent each trade is affected by cutting and patching operations.
2. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

B. Layout Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Prior to establishing layout of new perimeter and structural column grid(s), review building location requirements. Review benchmark, control point, and layout and dimension requirements. Inform Architect of scheduled meeting. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with Project layout to attend, including the following:
 - a. Contractor's superintendent.
 - b. Professional surveyor responsible for performing Project surveying and layout.
 - c. Professional surveyor responsible for performing site survey serving as basis for Project design.
2. Review meanings and intent of dimensions, notes, terms, graphic symbols, and other layout information indicated on the Drawings.
3. Review requirements for including layouts on Shop Drawings and other submittals.
4. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
 1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, or when encountering the need for cutting and patching of elements whose structural function is not known, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.

2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operational elements include the following:
 - a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
 - b. Fire separation assemblies.
 - c. Air or smoke barriers.
 - d. Fire-suppression systems.
 - e. Plumbing piping systems.
 - f. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
 - g. Control systems.
 - h. Communication systems.
 - i. Fire-detection and -alarm systems.
 - j. Conveying systems.
 - k. Electrical wiring systems.
 - l. Operating systems of special construction.
 3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
 - b. Membranes and flashings.
 - c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
 - d. Sprayed fire-resistive material.
 - e. Equipment supports.
 - f. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
 - g. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
 4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of specified products and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
 1. For projects requiring compliance with sustainable design and construction practices and procedures, use products for patching that comply with sustainable design requirements.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials. Use materials that are not considered hazardous.

- C. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
 - 1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
 - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, gas service piping, and water-service piping; underground electrical services; and other utilities.
 - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
 - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
 - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
 - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
 - 1. Description of the Work, including Specification Section number and paragraph, and Drawing sheet number and detail, where applicable.
 - 2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
 - 3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
 - 4. Recommended corrections.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility and Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Architect in accordance with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."

3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks and existing conditions. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. Engage a land surveyor experienced in laying out the Work, using the following accepted surveying practices:
 - 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
 - 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
 - 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
 - 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
 - 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
 - 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
 - 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.

1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
 2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
 3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.

3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
1. Make vertical work plumb, and make horizontal work level.
 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in unoccupied spaces, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure satisfactory results as judged by Architect. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations, so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy of type expected for Project.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on-site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Select tools or equipment that minimize production of excessive noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for Work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other portions of the Work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions with manufacturer.
1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.

3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed Work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect, as judged by Architect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Repair or remove and replace damaged, defective, or nonconforming Work.
 1. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for repairing or removing and replacing defective Work.

3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Where interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas is unavoidable, coordinate cutting and patching in accordance with requirements in Section 011000 "Summary."
- F. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to minimize interruption to occupied areas.
- G. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.

5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- H. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable, as judged by Architect. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
 - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
 - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
 3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
 - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch, corner to corner of wall and edge to edge of ceiling. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
 4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
 5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- I. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.7 COORDINATION OF OWNER'S PORTION OF THE WORK

- A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction personnel.
1. Provide temporary facilities required for Owner-furnished, Contractor-installed products.
 2. Refer to Section 011000 "Summary" for other requirements for Owner-furnished, Contractor-installed products
- B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.
1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.
 2. Preinstallation Conferences: Include Owner's construction personnel at preinstallation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend preinstallation conferences

conducted by Owner's construction personnel if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

3.8 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 - 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
 - 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
 - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
 - 4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where Work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
 - 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
 - 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to ensure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

3.9 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Coordinate startup and adjusting of equipment and operating components with requirements in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- B. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- C. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- D. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."

3.10 PROTECTION AND REPAIR OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair Work previously completed and subsequently damaged during construction period. Repair to like-new condition.
- C. Protection of Existing Items: Provide protection and ensure that existing items to remain undisturbed by construction are maintained in condition that existed at commencement of the Work.
- D. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 017300

SECTION 017419 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
 - 1. Salvaging nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
 - 2. Recycling nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
 - 3. Disposing of nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for disposal requirements for masonry waste.
 - 2. Section 044313.13 "Anchored Stone Masonry Veneer" for disposal requirements for excess stone and stone waste.
 - 3. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for disposition of waste resulting from site clearing and removal of above- and below-grade improvements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Construction Waste: Building, structure, and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- B. Demolition Waste: Building, structure, and site improvement materials resulting from demolition operations.
- C. Disposal: Removal of demolition or construction waste and subsequent salvage, sale, recycling, or deposit in landfill, incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, or designated spoil areas on Owner's property.
- D. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.
- E. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent sale or reuse in another facility.
- F. Salvage and Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work.

1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition and construction waste becomes property of Contractor.

- B. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.

- 1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Waste Management Plan: Submit plan within 30 days of date established for commencement of the Work.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.
- B. Refrigerant Recovery: Comply with requirements in Section 024116 "Structure Demolition" for refrigerant recovery submittals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Waste Management Coordinator Qualifications: Experienced firm, or individual employed and assigned by General Contractor, with a record of successful waste management coordination of projects with similar requirements. Superintendent may serve as Waste Management Coordinator.
- B. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Universal certified by EPA-approved certification program.
- C. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Comply with requirements in Section 024116 "Structure Demolition."
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with transportation and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Waste Management Conference(s): Conduct conference(s) at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to waste management including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Review and discuss waste management plan including responsibilities of each contractor and waste management coordinator.
 - 2. Review requirements for documenting quantities of each type of waste and its disposition.
 - 3. Review and finalize procedures for materials separation and verify availability of containers and bins needed to avoid delays.
 - 4. Review procedures for periodic waste collection and transportation to recycling and disposal facilities.
 - 5. Review waste management requirements for each trade.

1.8 WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN

- A. General: Develop a waste management plan according to requirements in this Section. Plan shall consist of waste identification, waste reduction work plan, and cost/revenue analysis. Distinguish between demolition and construction waste. Indicate quantities by weight or volume, but use same units of measure throughout waste management plan.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS – Not Used

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. General: Implement approved waste management plan. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.
 - 1. Comply with operation, termination, and removal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Waste Management Coordinator: Engage a waste management coordinator to be responsible for implementing, monitoring, and reporting status of waste management work plan.
- C. Training: Train workers, subcontractors, and suppliers on proper waste management procedures, as appropriate for the Work.
 - 1. Distribute waste management plan to everyone concerned within three days of submittal return.
 - 2. Distribute waste management plan to entities when they first begin work on-site. Review plan procedures and locations established for salvage, recycling, and disposal.
- D. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
 - 1. Designate and label specific areas on Project site necessary for separating materials that are to be salvaged and recycled.
 - 2. Comply with Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.
- E. Waste Management in Historic Zones or Areas: Transportation equipment and other materials shall be of sizes that clear surfaces within historic spaces, areas, rooms, and openings, by 12 inches or more.

3.2 RECYCLING CONSTRUCTION WASTE

- A. Packaging:
 - 1. Cardboard and Boxes: Break down packaging into flat sheets. Bundle and store in a dry location.
 - 2. Polystyrene Packaging: Separate and bag materials.
 - 3. Pallets: As much as possible, require deliveries using pallets to remove pallets from Project site. For pallets that remain on-site, break down pallets into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.

4. Crates: Break down crates into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
- B. Wood Materials:
 1. Clean Cut-Offs of Lumber: Grind or chip into small pieces.
 2. Clean Sawdust: Bag sawdust that does not contain painted or treated wood.
 - a. Comply with requirements in Section 329300 "Plants" for use of clean sawdust as organic mulch.
- C. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets or in container and store in a dry location.
 1. Clean Gypsum Board: Grind scraps of clean gypsum board using small mobile chipper or hammer mill. Screen out paper after grinding.
 - a. Comply with requirements in Section 329300 "Plants" for use of clean ground gypsum board as inorganic soil amendment.
- D. Paint: Seal containers and store by type.

3.3 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged or recycled, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged or recycled, remove waste materials and legally dispose of at designated spoil areas on Owner's property.
- C. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.
- D. Burning: Burning of waste materials is permitted only at designated areas on Owner's property, provided required permits are obtained. Provide full-time monitoring for burning materials until fires are extinguished.

END OF SECTION 017419

SECTION 017900 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
 - 1. Instruction in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 2. Demonstration and training video recordings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
 - 1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.
- B. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
- C. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Demonstration and Training Video Recordings: Submit two copies within seven days of end of each training module.
 - 1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:
 - a. Name of Project.
 - b. Name and address of videographer.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Construction Manager.
 - e. Name of Contractor.
 - f. Date of video recording.

2. Transcript: Prepared and bound in format matching operation and maintenance manuals. Mark appropriate identification on front and spine of each binder. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.
3. Transcript: Prepared in PDF electronic format. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording and a table of contents with links to corresponding training components. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.
4. At completion of training, submit complete training manual(s) for Owner's use prepared in same PDF file format required for operation and maintenance manuals specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.
- B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.
- C. Preinstruction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:
 1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
 2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
 3. Review required content of instruction.
 4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data have been reviewed and approved by Architect.

1.7 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:

1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
 - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
 - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
 - c. Operating standards.
 - d. Regulatory requirements.
 - e. Equipment function.
 - f. Operating characteristics.
 - g. Limiting conditions.
 - h. Performance curves.

2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
 - a. Emergency manuals.
 - b. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
 - c. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
 - d. Product maintenance manuals.
 - e. Project Record Documents.
 - f. Identification systems.
 - g. Warranties and bonds.
 - h. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.

3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
 - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
 - b. Instructions on stopping.
 - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
 - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.

4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
 - a. Startup procedures.
 - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
 - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
 - d. Regulation and control procedures.
 - e. Control sequences.
 - f. Safety procedures.
 - g. Instructions on stopping.
 - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
 - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
 - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
 - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.

5. Adjustments: Include the following:
 - a. Alignments.
 - b. Checking adjustments.
 - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
 - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.

6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:

- a. Diagnostic instructions.
 - b. Test and inspection procedures.
7. Maintenance: Include the following:
- a. Inspection procedures.
 - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
 - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
 - d. Procedures for routine cleaning.
 - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
 - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
 - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
8. Repairs: Include the following:
- a. Diagnosis instructions.
 - b. Repair instructions.
 - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
 - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

1.8 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

1.9 INSTRUCTION

- A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.
- B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
 - 1. Architect will furnish an instructor to describe basis of system design, operational requirements, criteria, and regulatory requirements.
 - 2. Owner will furnish an instructor to describe Owner's operational philosophy.
 - 3. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed-on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
 - 1. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.
- D. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.

- E. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and give to Owner. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

1.10 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEO RECORDINGS

- A. General: Engage a qualified commercial videographer to record demonstration and training video recordings. Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.
 - 1. At beginning of each training module, record each chart containing learning objective and lesson outline.
- B. Digital Video Recordings: Provide high-resolution, digital video in MPEG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor resolution of 12 megapixels and capable of recording in full HD mode.
 - 1. Submit video recordings on CD-ROM or thumb drive.
 - 2. File Hierarchy: Organize folder structure and file locations according to Project Manual table of contents. Provide complete screen-based menu.
 - 3. File Names: Utilize file names based on name of equipment generally described in video segment, as identified in Project specifications.
 - 4. Contractor and Installer Contact File: Using appropriate software, create a file for inclusion on the equipment demonstration and training recording that describes the following for each Contractor involved on the Project, arranged according to Project Manual table of contents:
 - a. Name of Contractor/Installer.
 - b. Business address.
 - c. Business phone number.
 - d. Point of contact.
 - e. Email address.
- C. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to adequately cover area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.
 - 1. Film training session(s) in segments not to exceed 15 minutes.
 - a. Produce segments to present a single significant piece of equipment per segment.
 - b. Organize segments with multiple pieces of equipment to follow order of Project Manual table of contents.
 - c. Where a training session on a particular piece of equipment exceeds 15 minutes, stop filming and pause training session. Begin training session again upon commencement of new filming segment.
- D. Light Levels: Verify light levels are adequate to properly light equipment. Verify equipment markings are clearly visible prior to recording.
 - 1. Furnish additional portable lighting as required.
- E. Narration: Describe scenes on video recording by video recording is recorded. Include description of items being viewed.
- F. Transcript: Provide a transcript of the narration. Display images and running time captured from videotape opposite the corresponding narration segment.

- G. Preproduced Video Recordings: Provide video recordings used as a component of training modules in same format as recordings of live training.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

END OF SECTION 017900

2

DIVISION

EXISTING CONDITIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Demolition and removal of buildings and site improvements.
2. Removing below-grade construction.
3. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removing site utilities.
4. Salvaging items for reuse by Owner.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 011000 "Summary" for use of the premises and phasing requirements.
2. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preconstruction photographs taken before building demolition.
3. Section 024119 "Selective Demolition" for partial demolition of buildings, structures, and site improvements.
4. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for site clearing and removal of above- and below-grade site improvements not part of building demolition.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be salvaged.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and store. Include fasteners or brackets needed for reattachment elsewhere.

1.3 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.
- B. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.
 1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be demolished.
 2. Review structural load limitations of existing structures.

3. Review and finalize building demolition schedule and verify availability of demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Review and finalize protection requirements.
5. Review procedures for noise control and dust control.
6. Review procedures for protection of adjacent buildings.
7. Review items to be salvaged and returned to Owner.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For refrigerant recovery technician.
- B. Engineering Survey: Submit engineering survey of condition of building.
- C. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including Drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property, for environmental protection, for dust control and, for noise control. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
 1. Adjacent Buildings: Detail special measures proposed to protect adjacent buildings to remain including means of egress from those buildings.
- D. Schedule of Building Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
 1. Detailed sequence of demolition work, with starting and ending dates for each activity.
 2. Temporary interruption of utility services.
 3. Shutoff and capping of utility services.
- E. Predemolition Photographs or Video: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage and demolition operations
- F. .Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by EPA-approved certification program.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Buildings to be demolished will be vacated and their use discontinued before start of the Work.

- B. Buildings immediately adjacent to demolition area will be occupied. Conduct building demolition so operations of occupied buildings will not be disrupted.
 - 1. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice of activities that will affect operations of adjacent occupied buildings.
 - 2. Maintain access to existing walkways, exits, and other facilities used by occupants of adjacent buildings.
 - a. Do not close or obstruct walkways, exits, or other facilities used by occupants of adjacent buildings without written permission from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
 - 1. Before building demolition, Owner will remove the following items:
 - a. All loose contents.
- D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
 - 1. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- E. On-site storage or sale of removed items or materials is not permitted.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's on-site operations or operations of adjacent occupied buildings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSP A10.6 and NFPA 241.

2.2 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Satisfactory Soils: Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting demolition operations.
- B. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction or other existing condition and hazardous material information provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.
- C. Perform an engineering survey of condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during building demolition operations.
- D. Verify that hazardous materials have been remediated before proceeding with building demolition operations.
- E. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Refrigerant: Before starting demolition, remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Salvaged Items: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Clean salvaged items of dirt and demolition debris.
 - 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
 - 3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
 - 4. Transport items to storage area designated by Owner.
 - 5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

3.3 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Utilities to Be Disconnected: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utilities serving buildings and structures to be demolished.
 - 1. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
 - 2. If removal, relocation, or abandonment of utility services will affect adjacent occupied buildings, then provide temporary utilities that bypass buildings and structures to be demolished and that maintain continuity of service to other buildings and structures.
 - 3. Cut off pipe or conduit a minimum of **24 inches (610 mm)** below grade. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit after bypassing according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 4. Do not start demolition work until utility disconnecting and sealing have been completed and verified in writing.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Existing Facilities: Protect adjacent walkways, loading docks, building entries, and other building facilities during demolition operations. Maintain exits from existing buildings.
- B. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain interior and exterior shoring, bracing, or structural support to preserve stability and prevent unexpected movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
 - 1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of demolition.
- C. Existing Utilities to Remain: Maintain utility services to remain and protect from damage during demolition operations.
 - 1. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving adjacent occupied or operating facilities unless authorized in writing by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities, as acceptable to Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. Provide at least 72 hours' notice to occupants of affected buildings if shutdown of service is required during changeover.
- D. Temporary Protection: Erect temporary protection, such as walks, fences, railings, canopies, and covered passageways, where required by authorities having jurisdiction and as indicated. Comply with requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
 - 1. Protect adjacent buildings and facilities from damage due to demolition activities.
 - 2. Protect existing site improvements, appurtenances, and landscaping to remain.
 - 3. Erect a plainly visible fence around drip line of individual trees or around perimeter drip line of groups of trees to remain.
 - 4. Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
 - 5. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around building demolition area and to and from occupied portions of adjacent buildings and structures.
 - 6. Protect walls, windows, roofs, and other adjacent exterior construction that are to remain and that are exposed to building demolition operations.
 - 7. Erect and maintain dustproof partitions and temporary enclosures to limit dust, noise, and dirt migration to occupied portions of adjacent buildings.
- E. Remove temporary barriers and protections where hazards no longer exist. Where open excavations or other hazardous conditions remain, leave temporary barriers and protections in place.

3.5 DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish indicated buildings and site improvements completely. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
 - 1. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.

2. Maintain fire watch during and for at least two (2) hours after flame-cutting operations.
 3. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
 4. Locate building demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct building demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, walkways, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed trafficways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Use water mist and other suitable methods to limit spread of dust and dirt. Comply with governing environmental-protection regulations. Do not use water when it may damage adjacent construction or create hazardous or objectionable conditions, such as ice, flooding, and pollution.
- C. Explosives: Use of explosives is not permitted.

3.6 DEMOLITION BY MECHANICAL MEANS

- A. Proceed with demolition of structural framing members systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete building demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
- B. Remove debris from elevated portions of the building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
1. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to minimize ground impact and dust generation.
- C. Salvage: Items to be removed and salvaged are indicated on Drawings.
- D. Below-Grade Construction: Demolish foundation walls and other below-grade construction that are within footprint of new construction and extending **5 feet (1.5 m)** outside footprint indicated for new construction. Abandon below-grade construction outside this area.
1. Remove below-grade construction, including foundation walls, and footings, completely.
- E. Existing Utilities: Demolish existing utilities and below-grade utility structures that are within **5 feet (1.5 m)** outside footprint indicated for new construction. Abandon utilities outside this area.
1. Fill abandoned utility structures with satisfactory soil materials according to backfill requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.7 SITE RESTORATION

- A. Below-Grade Areas: Completely fill below-grade areas and voids resulting from building demolition operations with satisfactory soil materials according to backfill requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
- B. Site Grading: Uniformly rough grade area of demolished construction to a smooth surface, free from irregular surface changes. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.

3.8 REPAIRS

- A. Promptly repair damage to adjacent buildings caused by demolition operations.

3.9 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and dispose of them in an EPA-approved construction and demolition waste landfill acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. and recycle or dispose of them according to Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
 - 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
 - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Do not burn demolished materials.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by building demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before building demolition operations began.
 - 1. Clean roadways of debris caused by debris transport.

END OF SECTION 024116

SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
 - 2. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
 - 3. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner ready for reuse or store as directed.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Leave existing items that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- E. Dismantle: To remove by disassembling or detaching an item from a surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to the item and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.

1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.
- B. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.
 - 1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
5. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For refrigerant recovery technician.
- B. Engineering Survey: Submit engineering survey of condition of building.
- C. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including Drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property, for environmental protection , for dust control and , for noise control. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
- D. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
 1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's building manager's and other tenants' on-site operations are uninterrupted.
 2. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
 3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
 4. Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
- E. Predemolition Photographs or Video: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by demolition operations. Comply with Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation." Submit before Work begins.
- F. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.
- G. Warranties: Documentation indicating that existing warranties are still in effect after completion of selective demolition.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.

- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
 - 1. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
 - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials and using approved contractors so as not to void existing warranties.
- B. Notify warrantor on completion of selective demolition, and obtain documentation verifying that existing system has been inspected and warranty remains in effect. Submit documentation at Project closeout.

1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange selective demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.
- B. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction or other existing condition and hazardous material information provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.

- C. Perform an engineering survey of condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during selective building demolition operations.
 - 1. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from selective demolition activities.
- D. Steel Tendons: Locate tensioned steel tendons and include recommendations for de-tensioning.
- E. Verify that hazardous materials have been remediated before proceeding with building demolition operations.
- F. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs or video.
 - 1. Comply with requirements specified in Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation."
 - 2. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged. Provide photographs or video of conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage operations.
 - 3. Before selective demolition or removal of existing building elements that will be reproduced or duplicated in final Work, make permanent record of measurements, materials, and construction details required to make exact reproduction.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Refrigerant: Before starting demolition, remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.
- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
 - 1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
 - 2. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
 - 3. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
 - 4. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.
 - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material and leave in place.
 - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.

- e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- f. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
- g. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material and leave in place.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
 - 1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
 - 2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
 - 3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
 - 4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
 - 5. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Temporary Shoring: Design, provide, and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
 - 1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.
- C. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
 - 1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
 - 2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
 - 3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
 - 4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
 - 5. Maintain fire watch during and for at least 2 hours after flame-cutting operations.
 - 6. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.

7. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
 8. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
 9. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
 10. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- C. Removed and Salvaged Items:
1. Clean salvaged items.
 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
 3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
 4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
 5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- D. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
 3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
 4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.
- E. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

3.6 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS

- A. Concrete: Demolish in small sections. Using power-driven saw, cut concrete to a depth of at least 3/4 inch (19 mm) at junctures with construction to remain. Dislodge concrete from reinforcement at perimeter of areas being demolished, cut reinforcement, and then remove remainder of concrete. Neatly trim openings to dimensions indicated.
- B. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, and then remove masonry between saw cuts.
- C. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, and then break up and remove.
- D. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI's "Recommended Work Practices for the Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings." Do not use methods requiring solvent-based adhesive strippers.
- E. Roofing: To extent possible, remove no more existing roofing than what can be covered in one day by new roofing and so that building interior remains watertight and weathertight.
1. Remove existing roof membrane, flashings, copings, and roof accessories.

2. Remove existing roofing system down to substrate.

3.7 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and dispose of them in an EPA-approved construction and demolition waste landfill acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
 3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
 4. Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 024119

3

DIVISION

CONCRETE

SECTION 030130 - MAINTENANCE OF CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Epoxy crack injection.
 - 2. Polymer sealers.
- B. Field quality-control testing is part of testing and inspecting allowance.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to concrete maintenance including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Verify concrete-maintenance specialist's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Materials, material application, sequencing, tolerances, and required clearances.
 - c. Quality-control program.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, chemical composition, physical properties, test data, and mixing, preparation, and application instructions.
- B. Samples: Cured Samples for each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, in manufacturer's standard size appropriate for each type of work.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Cured Samples for each exposed product and for each color and texture.
 - 1. Include sets of polymer-sealer Samples in the form of treated cementitious tiles at least 4 inches (100 mm) long by 4 inches (100 mm) wide representative of the range of required colors and textures.

- D. Samples for Verification: Cured Samples for each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
 - 1. Include Samples of each required type, color, and texture of polymer-sealer material in the form of cementitious tiles at least **8 inches (200 mm)** long by **8 inches (200 mm)** wide.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturers.
- B. Material Certificates: For each type of portland cement supplied for mixing or adding to products at Project site.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each manufactured bonding agent, cementitious patching mortar crack-injection adhesive, polymer overlay, and polymer sealer, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Quality-Control Program: Submit before work begins.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Each manufactured bonding-agent, packaged patching-mortar, crack-injection-adhesive, and polymer-sealer manufacturer shall employ factory-authorized service representatives who are available for consultation and Project-site inspection and on-site assistance.
- B. Quality-Control Program: Prepare a written plan for concrete maintenance to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly perform maintenance work, including each phase or process, protection of surrounding materials during operations, and control of debris and runoff during the Work. Describe in detail materials, methods, equipment, and sequence of operations to be used for each phase of the Work.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Epoxy Crack Injection: Perform epoxy crack injection in two separate areas [, **each approximately 48 inches (1200 mm) long**] as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Polymer Sealer: Apply an approximately **50 sq. ft. (4.6 sq. m)** area of polymer sealer.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for minimum and maximum temperature requirements and other conditions for storage.
- B. Store cementitious materials off the ground, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates covered and in a dry location; maintain grading and other required characteristics and prevent contamination.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations for Epoxies: Do not apply when air and substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by manufacturer. During hot weather, cool epoxy components before mixing, store mixed products in shade, and cool unused mixed products to retard setting. Do not apply to wet substrates unless approved by manufacturer.
 - 1. Use only Class A epoxies when substrate temperatures are below or are expected to go below 40 deg F (5 deg C) within eight hours.
 - 2. Use only Class A or B epoxies when substrate temperatures are below or are expected to go below 60 deg F (16 deg C) within eight hours.
 - 3. Use only Class C epoxies when substrate temperatures are above and are expected to stay above 60 deg F (16 deg C) for eight hours.
- B. Cold-Weather Requirements for Cementitious Materials: Do not apply unless concrete-surface and air temperatures are above 40 deg F (5 deg C) and will remain so for at least 48 hours after completion of Work.
- C. Cold-Weather Requirements for Cementitious Materials: Comply with the following procedures:
 - 1. When air temperature is below 40 deg F (5 deg C), heat patching-material ingredients and existing concrete to produce temperatures between 40 and 90 deg F (5 and 32 deg C).
 - 2. When mean daily air temperature is between 25 and 40 deg F (minus 4 and plus 5 deg C), cover completed Work with weather-resistant insulating blankets for 48 hours after repair or provide enclosure and heat to maintain temperatures above 32 deg F (0 deg C) within the enclosure for 48 hours after repair.
 - 3. When mean daily air temperature is below 25 deg F (minus 4 deg C), provide enclosure and heat to maintain temperatures above 32 deg F (0 deg C) within the enclosure for 48 hours after repair.
- D. Hot-Weather Requirements for Cementitious Materials: Protect repair work when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of water from patching materials. Provide artificial shade and wind breaks, and use cooled materials as required. Do not apply to substrates with temperatures of 90 deg F (32 deg C) and above.
- E. Environmental Limitations for High-Molecular-Weight Methacrylate Sealers: Do not apply when concrete surface temperature is below 55 deg F (13 deg C) or above 75 deg F (24 deg C). Apply only to dry substrates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: For repair products, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of product from single source and from single manufacturer with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 BONDING AGENTS

- A. Latex Bonding Agent, Redispersible: ASTM C1059/C1059M, Type I for use at nonstructural and interior locations unless otherwise indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Dayton Superior Corporation.
 - b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); a subsidiary of RPM International, Inc.
 - c. Kaufman Products, Inc.
 - d. US SPEC, Division of US MIX Company.
 - e. W. R. Meadows, Inc.

2.3 PATCHING MORTAR

- A. Patching Mortar Requirements:

1. Only use patching mortars that are recommended by manufacturer for each applicable horizontal, vertical, or overhead use orientation.

- B. Cementitious Patching Mortar: Packaged, dry mix for repair of concrete.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CGM, Incorporated.
 - b. ChemMasters, Inc.
 - c. Dayton Superior Corporation.
 - d. Euclid Chemical Company (The); a subsidiary of RPM International, Inc.
 - e. KOSTER American Corporation.
 - f. Kaufman Products, Inc.
 - g. MAPEI Corporation.
 - h. Master Builders Solutions; brand of MBCC Group.
 - i. Schonox HPS North America, Inc.
 - j. Sika Corporation.
 - k. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
2. Compressive Strength: Not less than **4000 psi (27.6 MPa)** at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C109/C109M.

- C. Rapid-Strengthening, Cementitious Patching Mortar: Packaged, dry mix, ASTM C928/C928M for repair of concrete.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [ARDEX Americas.](#)
 - b. [CGM, Incorporated.](#)
 - c. [ChemMasters, Inc.](#)
 - d. [Dayton Superior Corporation.](#)
 - e. [Euclid Chemical Company \(The\); a subsidiary of RPM International, Inc.](#)
 - f. [Kaufman Products, Inc.](#)
 - g. MAPEI Corporation.
 - h. [Master Builders Solutions; brand of MBCC Group.](#)
 - i. Schonox HPS North America, Inc.
 - j. [Sika Corporation.](#)
 - k. [Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.](#)
 2. Compressive Strength: Not less than **2000 psi (13.8 MPa)** within three hours when tested according to ASTM C109/C109M.
- D. Polymer-Modified, Cementitious Patching Mortar: Packaged, dry mix for repair of concrete and that contains a latex additive as either a dry powder or a separate liquid that is added during mixing.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:**
 - a. [AQUAFIN, Inc.](#)
 - b. [ARDEX Americas.](#)
 - c. [CGM, Incorporated.](#)
 - d. [ChemMasters, Inc.](#)
 - e. [Cortec Corporation.](#)
 - f. [Dayton Superior Corporation.](#)
 - g. [Euclid Chemical Company \(The\); a subsidiary of RPM International, Inc.](#)
 - h. [Kaufman Products, Inc.](#)
 - i. MAPEI Corporation.
 - j. [Master Builders Solutions; brand of MBCC Group.](#)
 - k. Schonox HPS North America, Inc.
 2. Compressive Strength: Not less than **4000 psi (27.6 MPa)** at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C109/C109M.

2.4 EPOXY CRACK-INJECTION MATERIALS

- A. Epoxy Crack-Injection Adhesive: ASTM C881/C881M, bonding system Type I, or Type IV, free of VOCs.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Abatron, Inc.](#)
 - b. [ChemCo Systems, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Dayton Superior Corporation.](#)
 - d. [Euclid Chemical Company \(The\); a subsidiary of RPM International, Inc.](#)
 - e. [Fyfe Co. LLC.](#)
 - f. [Kaufman Products, Inc.](#)
 - g. MAPEI Corporation.
 - h. [Master Builders Solutions; brand of MBCC Group.](#)
 - i. [Sika Corporation.](#)
 - j. [Sto Corp.](#)
 - k. [US SPEC, Division of US MIX Company.](#)
2. Capping Adhesive: Product manufactured for use with crack-injection adhesive by same manufacturer.
 3. Color: Provide epoxy crack-injection adhesive and capping adhesive that blend with existing, adjacent concrete and do not stain concrete surface.

2.5 POLYMER-SEALER MATERIALS

- A. Epoxy Polymer Sealer: Low-viscosity epoxy, penetrating sealer and crack filler recommended by manufacturer for penetrating and sealing cracks in exterior concrete traffic surfaces; VOC content 100 g/L or less.
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [ChemCo Systems, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Dayton Superior Corporation.](#)
 - c. [Euclid Chemical Company \(The\); a subsidiary of RPM International, Inc.](#)
 - d. MAPEI Corporation.
 - e. [Master Builders Solutions; brand of MBCC Group.](#)
 - f. [Sika Corporation.](#)
 2. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.
- B. Methacrylate Polymer Sealer: Low-viscosity, high-molecular-weight methacrylate, penetrating sealer and crack filler recommended by manufacturer for penetrating and sealing cracks in exterior concrete traffic surfaces; VOC content 100 g/L or less.
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Kwik Bond Polymers.](#)
 - b. [Master Builders Solutions; brand of MBCC Group.](#)
 - c. [Sika Corporation.](#)
 - d. [Transpo Industries, Inc.](#)
 2. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I, II, or III unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Water: Potable.

2.7 MIXES

- A. General: Mix products, in clean containers, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Do not add water, thinners, or additives unless recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. When practical, use manufacturer's premeasured packages to ensure that materials are mixed in proper proportions. When premeasured packages are not used, measure ingredients using graduated measuring containers; do not estimate quantities or use shovel or trowel as unit of measure.
 - 3. Do not mix more materials than can be used within time limits recommended by manufacturer. Discard materials that have begun to set.
- B. Concrete: Comply with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Grout for Use with Preplaced Aggregate: Proportion according to ASTM C938. Add grout fluidifier to mixing water followed by portland cement, pozzolan, and fine aggregate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONCRETE MAINTENANCE

- A. Have concrete-maintenance work performed only by qualified concrete-maintenance specialist or contractor acceptable to manufacturer.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' written instructions for surface preparation and product application.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates when areas of deteriorated or delaminated concrete and deteriorated reinforcing bars will be located.
- B. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from concrete-maintenance work.

3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Ensure that supervisory personnel are on-site and on duty when concrete maintenance work begins and during its progress.

- B. Protect persons, motor vehicles, surrounding surfaces of building being repaired, building site, plants, and surrounding buildings from harm resulting from concrete maintenance work.
1. Comply with each product manufacturer's written instructions for protections and precautions. Protect against adverse effects of products and procedures on people and adjacent materials, components, and vegetation.
 2. Use only proven protection methods appropriate to each area and surface being protected.
 3. Provide temporary barricades, barriers, and directional signage to exclude public from areas where concrete maintenance work is being performed.
 4. Erect temporary protective covers over walkways and at points of pedestrian and vehicular entrance and exit that must remain in service during course of concrete maintenance work.
 5. Contain dust and debris generated by concrete maintenance work and prevent it from reaching the public or adjacent surfaces.
 6. Use water-mist sprinkling and other wet methods to control dust only with adequate, approved procedures and equipment that ensure that such water will not create a hazard or adversely affect other building areas or materials.
 7. Protect floors and other surfaces along haul routes from damage, wear, and staining.
 8. Provide supplemental sound-control treatment to isolate removal and dismantling work from other areas of the building.
 9. Protect adjacent surfaces and equipment by covering them with heavy polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape. If practical, remove items, store, and reinstall after potentially damaging operations are complete.
 10. Neutralize and collect alkaline and acid wastes for disposal off Owner's property.
 11. Dispose of debris and runoff from operations by legal means and in a manner that prevents soil erosion, undermining of paving and foundations, damage to landscaping, and water penetration into building interiors.
- C. Existing Drains: Prior to the start of work in an area, test drainage system to ensure that it is functioning properly. Notify Architect immediately of inadequate drainage or blockage. Do not begin work in an area until the drainage system is in working order.
1. Prevent solids such as aggregate or mortar residue from entering the drainage system. Clean out drains and drain lines that become sluggish or blocked by sand or other materials resulting from concrete maintenance work.
 2. Protect drains from pollutants. Block drains or filter out sediments, allowing only clean water to pass.
- D. Preparation for Concrete Removal: Examine construction to be repaired to determine best methods to safely and effectively perform concrete maintenance work. Examine adjacent work to determine what protective measures will be necessary. Make explorations, probes, and inquiries as necessary to determine condition of construction to be removed in the course of repair.
1. Verify that affected utilities have been disconnected and capped.
 2. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed for reinstallation or salvage.
- E. Surface Preparation for Overlays:
1. Remove delaminated material and deteriorated concrete surface material.

2. Roughen surface of concrete to produce a surface profile matching per manufacturer's instructions.
 3. Use sand blasting, shot blasting, scarifying, needle scaling, high-pressure water jetting, scabbling, or milling.
 4. Sweep and vacuum roughened surface to remove debris followed by low-pressure water cleaning.
- F. Acidic Surface Preparation for Sealers: Acid etch surface of concrete to produce a surface profile matching CSP 1 according to ICRI 310.2. Prepare surface for acid etching by detergent scrubbing to remove oils and films that may prevent acid penetration.
1. Remove excess acid solution, reaction products, and debris by squeegeeing or vacuuming.
 2. Scrub surface with an alkaline detergent, rinse, and squeegee or vacuum.
 3. Check acidity of surface with pH test paper and continue rinsing until pH is acceptable according to sealer manufacturer's written instructions.
 4. When pH is acceptable according to sealer manufacturer's written instructions and surface is clean, vacuum dry.
- G. Nonacidic Surface Preparation for Sealers: Clean concrete to remove dirt, oils, films, and other materials detrimental to sealer application.
1. Use shot blasting, low-pressure water cleaning, or detergent scrubbing.

3.4 REMOVAL OF CONCRETE

- A. Do not overload structural elements with debris.
- B. Saw-cut perimeter of areas indicated for removal to a depth of at least **1/2 inch (13 mm)**. Make cuts perpendicular to concrete surfaces and no deeper than cover on reinforcement.
- C. Remove deteriorated and delaminated concrete by breaking up and dislodging from reinforcement.
- D. Remove additional concrete if necessary to provide a depth of removal of at least **1/2 inch (13 mm)** over entire removal area.
- E. Where half or more of the perimeter of reinforcing bar is exposed, bond between reinforcing bar and surrounding concrete is broken, or reinforcing bar is corroded, remove concrete from entire perimeter of bar and to provide at least **3/4-inch (19-mm)** clearance around bar.
- F. Test areas where concrete has been removed by tapping with hammer, and remove additional concrete until unsound and disbonded concrete is completely removed.
- G. Provide surfaces with a fractured profile of at least **1/8 inch (3 mm)** that are approximately perpendicular or parallel to original concrete surfaces. At columns and walls, make top and bottom surfaces level unless otherwise directed.
- H. Thoroughly clean removal areas of loose concrete, dust, and debris.

3.5 APPLICATION OF BONDING AGENT

- A. Latex Bonding Agent, Type I: Apply to concrete by brush roller or spray. Allow to dry before placing patching mortar or concrete.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF PATCHING MORTAR

- A. Place patching mortar as specified in this article unless otherwise recommended in writing by manufacturer.
 - 1. Provide forms where necessary to confine patch to required shape.
 - 2. Wet substrate and forms thoroughly and then remove standing water.
- B. Pretreatment: Apply specified bonding agent.
- C. General Placement: Place patching mortar by troweling toward edges of patch to force intimate contact with edge surfaces. For large patches, fill edges first and then work toward center, always troweling toward edges of patch. At fully exposed reinforcing bars, force patching mortar to fill space behind bars by compacting with trowel from sides of bars.
- D. Consolidation: After each lift is placed, consolidate material and screed surface.
- E. Multiple Lifts: Where multiple lifts are used, score surface of lifts to provide a rough surface for placing subsequent lifts. Allow each lift to reach final set before placing subsequent lifts.
- F. Finishing: Allow surfaces of lifts that are to remain exposed to become firm and then finish to a surface matching adjacent concrete.
- G. Curing: Wet-cure cementitious patching materials, including polymer-modified cementitious patching materials, for not less than seven days by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.

3.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place concrete according to Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and as specified in this article.
- B. Pretreatment: Apply latex bonding agent to concrete substrate.
- C. Standard Placement: Place concrete by form-and-pump method unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use vibrators to consolidate concrete as it is placed.
 - 2. At unformed surfaces, screed concrete to produce a surface that when finished with patching mortar will match required profile and surrounding concrete.
- D. Form-and-Pump Placement: Place concrete by form-and-pump method where indicated.
 - 1. Design and construct forms to resist pumping pressure in addition to weight of wet concrete. Seal joints and seams in forms and where forms abut existing concrete.

2. Pump concrete into place from bottom to top, releasing air from forms as concrete is introduced. When formed space is full, close air vents and pressurize to **14 psi (96 kPa)**.
- E. Wet-cure concrete for not less than seven days by leaving forms in place or keeping surfaces continuously wet by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.
- F. Fill placement cavities with dry-pack mortar and repair voids with patching mortar. Finish to match surrounding concrete.

3.8 EPOXY CRACK INJECTION

- A. Clean cracks with oil-free compressed air or low-pressure water to remove loose particles.
- B. Clean areas to receive capping adhesive of oil, dirt, and other substances that would interfere with bond.
- C. Place injection ports as recommended by epoxy manufacturer, spacing no farther apart than thickness of member being injected. Seal injection ports in place with capping adhesive.
- D. Seal cracks at exposed surfaces with a ribbon of capping adhesive at least **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick by **1 inch (25 mm)** wider than crack.
- E. Inject cracks wider than **0.003 inch (0.075 mm)** to a depth of **8 inches (200 mm)**.
- F. Inject epoxy adhesive, beginning at widest part of crack and working toward narrower parts. Inject adhesive into ports to refusal, capping adjacent ports when they extrude epoxy. Cap injected ports and inject through adjacent ports until crack is filled.
- G. After epoxy adhesive has set, remove injection ports and grind surfaces smooth.

3.9 APPLICATION OF POLYMER SEALER

- A. Apply polymer sealer by brush, roller, or airless spray at manufacturer's recommended application rate.
- B. Apply to traffic-bearing surfaces, including parking areas and walks.
- C. Concrete Walls and Floor in Salt Dome: Perform the following as indicated on Drawings:
 1. Removal of deteriorated concrete and subsequent replacement and patching.
 2. Floor joint repair.
 3. Epoxy crack injection.
 4. Corrosion-inhibiting treatment.
 5. Polymer overlays.
 6. Polymer sealers.
 7. Composite structural reinforcement of columns.

END OF SECTION 030130

SECTION 033000 – CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

When the information in this Specification Section conflicts with information on the Structural Construction Drawings, the Structural Construction Drawings shall prevail.

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
 - 1. Fiber reinforcement.
 - 2. Waterstops.
 - 3. Curing compounds.
 - 4. Floor and slab treatments.
 - 5. Vapor retarders.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing Drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Slab Jointing Plan: Contractor to indicate location of slab-on-grade contraction joints and construction joints.
 - 1. Joints shall be spaced in a square or rectangular pattern with aspect ratio not to exceed 1.5:1.
 - 2. Spacing shall not exceed 36 times the slab thickness (in inches).
- B. Field quality-control reports, including floor surface flatness and levelness measurements indicating compliance with specified tolerances.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage. Avoid damaging coatings on steel reinforcement.
- B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94 requirements for production facilities and equipment.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on concrete mixtures.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
 - 1. ACI 301.
 - 2. ACI 117.

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
 - 1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
 - 2. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
 - a. High-density overlay, Class 1 or better.
 - b. Medium-density overlay, Class 1 or better; mill-release agent treated and edge sealed.
 - c. Structural 1, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
 - d. B-B (Concrete Form), Class 1 or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.

- B. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips.
- C. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces. Provide rust inhibitor.
- D. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or metal form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
 - 1. Furnish units that leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
 - 2. Furnish ties that, when removed, leave holes no larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
 - 3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Materials:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I/II, gray.
 - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F or C.
 - 3. Slag Cement: ASTM C 989/C 989M, Grade 100 or 120.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, graded.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1 inch nominal.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- D. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.
 - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F.
 - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type G.
 - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017, Type II.
- E. Water: ASTM C 94 and potable.

2.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed.

- B. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed bars,, epoxy coated, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch bar length.
- C. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

2.5 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."
- B. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- C. Epoxy-Coated Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, ASTM A 775 epoxy coated.
- D. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating; compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement and complying with ASTM A 775.

2.6 FIBER REINFORCEMENT

- A. Synthetic Macro-Fiber: Blended monofilament and fibrillated polypropylene macro-fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C 1116, Type III, no less than 2 inches long.
- B. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - 1. Forta-Ferro, Forta Corporation
 - 2. Tuf-Strand SF, Euclid

2.7 WATERSTOPS

- A. Self-Expanding Butyl Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, butyl rubber with sodium bentonite or other hydrophilic polymers, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/4 by 1 inch.

2.8 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class A, 15 mils thick low-permeance polyolefin. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
 - 1. Products shall include:
 - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing, Inc.; Blackline 400.
 - b. Fortifiber Building Systems Group; Moistop Ultra 15.
 - c. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co.; Florprufe 120.
 - d. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Perminator 15 mil.
 - e. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn 15 mil.

- f. Stego Industries, LLC; Stego Wrap 15 mil Class A.

2.9 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, **dissipating**.
- F. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, **nondissipating**, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
- G. Clear, **Solvent-Borne**, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.
- H. Clear, **Waterborne**, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.

2.10 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.
- B. Round Concrete Cast-In-Place Column Fiber Forms: Multiple layers of 100 percent recycled paperboard, spirally wound, and laminated with adhesive.
 - 1. Interior Surface: Smooth with spiral seam. Alathon release and moisture barrier coating.
 - 2. Exterior Surface: Micryl moisture barrier coating.
 - 3. Spiral Mark: Impart visible spiral mark on concrete columns.
 - 4. 1-piece, 1-time-use forms.
 - 5. Recyclable.

2.11 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
 - 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:

1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
2. Combined Fly Ash and Pozzolan: 25 percent.
3. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
4. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent portland cement minimum, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.

- C. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
 2. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a w/c ratio below 0.50.

2.12 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

- A. Footings: Proportion Normal-Weight Concrete mixture as follows:

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi at 28 days.
2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.53.
3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.

- B. Foundation Walls: Proportion Normal-Weight Concrete mixture as follows:

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.48.
3. Slump Limit: 5 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
4. Air Content: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

- C. Exterior Slabs-on-Grade: Proportion Normal-Weight Concrete mixture as follows:

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4500 psi at 28 days.
2. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 520 lb/cu. yd.
3. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.45.
4. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
5. Air Content: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

- D. Interior Slabs-on-Grade including Equipment Housekeeping Pads: Proportion Normal-Weight Concrete mixture as follows:

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
2. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 520 lb/cu. yd.
3. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.48.
4. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
5. Air Content: Do not allow air content of trowel-finished floors to exceed 3 percent.
6. Synthetic Macro-Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than a rate of 3.0 lb/cu. yd.

- E. Utility Trench Backfill: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 100 psi at 28 days.
2. Unconfined compression strength per ASTM D4832

- F. Flowable Fill at foundations: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 100 psi at 28 days.
 - 2. Unconfined compression strength per ASTM D4832
- G. Lean Concrete fill at soft soils: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 1500 psi at 28 days.

2.13 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.14 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94, and furnish batch ticket information.
 - 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK INSTALLATION

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347 as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
 - 1. Class A, 1/8 inch for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
 - 2. Class C, 1/2 inch for rough-formed finished surfaces.
- D. Refer to architectural details for exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- E. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- F. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- G. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.2 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 24 hours after placing concrete. Concrete has to be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations, and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.
- B. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

3.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
 - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that reduce bond to concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963. Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated steel reinforcement.

3.4 EMBEDDED ITEM INSTALLATION

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
- B. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- C. Coordinate pipe, sleeves, conduits, and other utilities prior to placing concrete.

3.5 VAPOR-RETARDER INSTALLATION

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.

3.6 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
 1. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
 2. Space vertical joints in walls not to exceed the guidelines as described on the contract documents. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
 3. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
 1. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
 1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in **Section 079200 "Joint Sealants,"** are indicated.
 3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
 4. Provide round isolation joints at all steel columns. Size round column fiber forms to maintain minimum 1-1/2" clearance of base plate.
- E. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

3.7 WATERSTOP INSTALLATION

- A. Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install in longest lengths practicable.

3.8 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections are completed.

- B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project Site, or during placement unless explicitly noted on approved mix design.
- C. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
 - 1. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
- D. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
 - 1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
 - 2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
 - 3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
 - 4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
 - 5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.
- E. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
 - 1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
 - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
 - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- F. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
 - 1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 - 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.9 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and

defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.

1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish, or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.

C. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed-finished as-cast concrete where indicated:

1. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix 1 part portland cement to 1-1/2 parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches, so color of dry grout matches adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.

- D. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

3.10 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.

- B. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraighening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.

1. Apply float finish to surfaces to receive trowel finish and to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, built-up or membrane roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo.

- C. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.

1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.

2. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to ASTM E 1155, for a randomly trafficked floor surface:

- a. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 35; and of levelness, F(L) 25; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 17.

- D. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thinset method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.

1. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel-finished floor surfaces.
- E. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

3.11 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
- B. Equipment Housekeeping Pads:
1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
 2. Construct concrete bases 4 inches high unless otherwise indicated; and extend base not less than 6 inches in each direction beyond the maximum dimensions of supported equipment unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic anchor support.
 3. Install hooked dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 4. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete substrate.
 5. Prior to pouring concrete, place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 6. Cast anchor-bolt insert into bases. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

3.12 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period.
- D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.

- E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days.
 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
 - a. Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
 4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.13 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar. Notify Architect of repairs and provide detailed methods for approval prior to beginning repairs.
- C. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- D. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface. Defects also include stains and other discolorations in public view that cannot be removed by cleaning.
 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension to solid concrete. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
 2. Repair defects on surfaces by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.

- E. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
 2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
 3. Correct low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 5. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete, except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
 6. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.

3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Inspections:
1. Steel reinforcement placement.
 2. Headed bolts and studs.
 3. Verification of use of required design mixture.
 4. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
 5. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
- C. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
 2. Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.

3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below or 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
 5. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 6. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31.
 7. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
 - a. Test one set of two field-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
 - b. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
 8. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
 9. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
 10. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
 11. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may not be used.
 12. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42 or by other methods as directed by Architect.
 13. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
 14. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E 1155 within 48 hours of finishing.

END OF SECTION 033000

SECTION 033543 - POLISHED CONCRETE FINISHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Polished concrete finishing.
2. Concrete for polished concrete, including concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, initial finishing, and curing is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
3. This section relates to concrete finish designation SC-3 as shown on sheets 1-ID101 and 1-ID103.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete not designated as polished concrete.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with polished concrete to attend, including the following:
 - a. Contractor's superintendent.
 - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
 - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
 - d. Cast-in-place concrete subcontractor.
 - e. Polished concrete finishing Subcontractor.
2. Review cold- and hot-weather concreting procedures, curing procedures, construction joints, concrete repair procedures, concrete finishing, and protection of polished concrete.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Polishing Schedule: Submit plan showing polished concrete surfaces and schedule of polishing operations for each area of polished concrete before start of polishing operations. Include locations of all joints, including construction joints.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:

1. Repair materials and control joint filler.

2. Liquid floor treatments.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: After casting concrete, produce mockups to verify finish and to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, tolerances, and standard of workmanship. Produce mockups to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
 1. Produce mockups in the location and of the size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect, preferably in an area that will be covered by another finish such as carpet.
 2. Demonstrate curing, finishing, and protecting of polished concrete.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatments for Polished Concrete Finish: Clear, solution of acrylic materials and proprietary components that penetrates, hardens, and seals polished concrete surfaces.
 1. Basis-of-Design: L&M Construction Materials Lumiseal Plus Acrylic Sealer, Mat finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 POLISHING

- A. Polish: Light Grind at 50 and 70 grit.
- B. Apply polished concrete finish system to cured and prepared slabs to match accepted mockup.
 1. Fill control joints with epoxy filler.
 2. Machine grind floor surfaces to receive polished finishes smooth.
 3. Clean slab thoroughly and prepare for sealer.
 4. Apply two coats of Lumiseal Plus Sealer according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 033543

4

DIVISION

MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cleaning the following:
 - 1. Unit masonry surfaces.
 - 2. Vertical and horizontal stone surfaces.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Very Low-Pressure Spray: Under 100 psi (690 kPa).
- B. Low-Pressure Spray: 100 to 400 psi (690 to 2750 kPa); 4 to 6 gpm (0.25 to 0.4 L/s).
- C. Medium-Pressure Spray: 400 to 800 psi (2750 to 5510 kPa); 4 to 6 gpm (0.25 to 0.4 L/s).
- D. High-Pressure Spray: 800 to 1200 psi (5510 to 8250 kPa); 4 to 6 gpm (0.25 to 0.4 L/s).

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to cleaning masonry including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Verify masonry-cleaning equipment and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Materials, material application, and sequencing.
 - c. Cleaning program.
 - d. Coordination with building occupants.

1.5 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Work Sequence: Perform masonry-cleaning work in the following sequence:
 - 1. Remove plant growth.

2. Inspect for open mortar joints. Where repairs are required, delay further cleaning work until after repairs are completed, cured, and dried to prevent the intrusion of water and other cleaning materials into the wall.
3. Remove paint.
4. Clean masonry surfaces.

- B. As scaffolding is removed, patch anchor holes used to attach scaffolding. Patch holes in masonry units according to masonry repair Sections. Patch holes in mortar joints according to masonry repointing Sections.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include material descriptions and application instructions.
 2. Include test data substantiating that products comply with requirements.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For paint-remover manufacturer and chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
- B. Preconstruction Test Reports: For cleaning materials and methods.
- C. Cleaning program.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Paint-Remover Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm regularly engaged in producing masonry cleaners that have been used for similar applications with successful results, and with factory-authorized service representatives who are available for consultation and Project-site inspection, and on-site assistance.
- B. Chemical-Cleaner Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm regularly engaged in producing masonry cleaners that have been used for similar applications with successful results, and with factory-authorized service representatives who are available for consultation and Project-site inspection and on-site assistance.
- C. Cleaning Program: Prepare a written cleaning program that describes cleaning process in detail, including materials, methods, and equipment to be used; protection of surrounding materials; and control of runoff during operations. Include provisions for supervising worker performance and preventing damage.
1. If materials and methods other than those indicated are proposed for any phase of cleaning work, add a written description of such materials and methods, including evidence of successful use on comparable projects and demonstrations to show their effectiveness for this Project.

- D. Mockups: Prepare mockups of cleaning on existing surfaces to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
1. Cleaning: Clean an area approximately 25 sq. ft. (2.3 sq. m) for each type of masonry and surface condition.
 - a. Test cleaners and methods on samples of adjacent materials for possible adverse reactions. Do not test cleaners and methods known to have deleterious effect.
 - b. Allow a waiting period of not less than seven days after completion of sample cleaning to permit a study of sample panels for negative reactions.
 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

1.9 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage one or more chemical-cleaner manufacturers to perform preconstruction testing on masonry surfaces.
1. Use test areas as indicated and representative of proposed materials and existing construction.
 2. Propose changes to materials and methods to suit Project.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit masonry-cleaning work to be performed according to product manufacturers' written instructions and specified requirements.
- B. Clean masonry surfaces only when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and above and is predicted to remain so for at least seven days after completion of cleaning.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PAINT REMOVERS

- A. Alkaline Paste Paint Remover: Manufacturer's standard alkaline paste or gel formulation, for removing paint from masonry; containing no methylene chloride.
- B. Covered or Skin-Forming Alkaline Paint Remover: Manufacturer's standard covered or skin-forming, alkaline paste or gel formulation, for removing paint from masonry; containing no methylene chloride.
- C. Solvent-Type Paste Paint Remover: Manufacturer's standard water-rinsable, solvent-type paste or gel formulation, for removing paint from masonry.

- D. Low-Odor, Solvent-Type Paste Paint Remover: Manufacturer's standard low-odor, water-rinsable, solvent-type paste, gel, or foamed emulsion formulation, for removing paint from masonry; containing no methanol or methylene chloride.
- E. Covered, Solvent-Type Paste Paint Remover: Manufacturer's standard, low-odor, covered, water-rinsable, solvent-type paste or gel formulation, for removing paint coatings from masonry; containing no methanol or methylene chloride.

2.2 CLEANING MATERIALS

- A. Water: Potable.
- B. Hot Water: Water heated to a temperature of 140 to 160 deg F (60 to 71 deg C).
- C. Detergent Solution, Job Mixed: Solution prepared by mixing 2 cups (0.5 L) of tetrasodium pyrophosphate (TSPP), 1/2 cup (125 mL) of laundry detergent, and 20 quarts (20 L) of hot water for every 5 gal. (20 L) of solution required.
- D. Mold, Mildew, and Algae Remover, Job Mixed: Solution prepared by mixing 2 cups (0.5 L) of tetrasodium pyrophosphate (TSPP), 5 quarts (5 L) of 5 percent sodium hypochlorite (bleach), and 15 quarts (15 L) of hot water for every 5 gal. (20 L) of solution required.
- E. Nonacidic Gel Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard gel formulation, with pH between 6 and 9, that contains detergents with chelating agents and is specifically formulated for cleaning masonry surfaces.
- F. Nonacidic Liquid Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard mildly alkaline liquid cleaner formulated for removing mold, mildew, and other organic soiling from ordinary building materials, including polished stone, brick, aluminum, plastics, and wood.
- G. Mild-Acid Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard mild-acid cleaner containing no muriatic (hydrochloric), hydrofluoric, or sulfuric acid; or ammonium bifluoride or chlorine bleaches.
- H. One-Part Limestone Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard one-part acidic formulation for cleaning limestone.

2.3 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Liquid Strippable Masking Agent: Manufacturer's standard liquid, film-forming, strippable masking material for protecting glass, metal, glazed masonry, and polished stone surfaces from damaging effects of acidic and alkaline masonry cleaners.

2.4 CHEMICAL CLEANING SOLUTIONS

- A. Dilute chemical cleaners with water to produce solutions not exceeding concentration recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Comply with each manufacturer's written instructions for protecting building and other surfaces against damage from exposure to its products. Prevent paint removers and chemical cleaning solutions from coming into contact with people, motor vehicles, landscaping, buildings, and other surfaces that could be harmed by such contact.
 - 1. Cover adjacent surfaces with materials that are proven to resist paint removers and chemical cleaners used unless products being used will not damage adjacent surfaces. Use protective materials that are waterproof and UV resistant. Apply masking agents according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply liquid strippable masking agent to painted or porous surfaces. When no longer needed, promptly remove masking to prevent adhesive staining.
 - 2. Do not apply chemical solutions during winds of enough force to spread them to unprotected surfaces.
 - 3. Neutralize alkaline and acid wastes before disposal.
 - 4. Dispose of runoff from operations by legal means and in a manner that prevents soil erosion, undermining of paving and foundations, damage to landscaping, and water penetration into building interiors.

3.2 CLEANING MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Cleaning Appearance Standard: Cleaned surfaces are to have a uniform appearance as viewed from **20 feet (6 m)** away by Architect.
- B. Proceed with cleaning in an orderly manner; work from of each scaffold width and from one end of each elevation to the other. Ensure that dirty residues and rinse water do not wash over dry, cleaned surfaces.
- C. Use only those cleaning methods indicated for each masonry material and location.
 - 1. Brushes: Do not use wire brushes or brushes that are not resistant to chemical cleaner being used.
 - 2. Spray Equipment: Use spray equipment that provides controlled application at volume and pressure indicated, measured at nozzle. Adjust pressure and volume to ensure that cleaning methods do not damage surfaces, including joints.
 - a. Equip units with pressure gages.
 - b. For chemical-cleaner spray application, use low-pressure tank or chemical pump suitable for chemical cleaner indicated, equipped with nozzle having a cone-shaped spray.
 - c. For water-spray application, use fan-shaped spray that disperses water at an angle of 25 to 50 degrees.
 - d. For high-pressure water-spray application, use fan-shaped spray that disperses water at an angle of at least 40 degrees.
 - e. For heated water-spray application, use equipment capable of maintaining temperature between **140 and 160 deg F (60 and 71 deg C)** at flow rates indicated.

- f. For steam application, use steam generator capable of delivering live steam at nozzle.
 - D. Perform each cleaning method indicated in a manner that results in uniform coverage of all surfaces, including corners, moldings, and interstices, and that produces an even effect without streaking or damaging masonry surfaces. Keep wall wet below area being cleaned to prevent streaking from runoff.
 - E. Perform additional general cleaning, paint and stain removal, and spot cleaning of small areas that are noticeably different when viewed according to the "Cleaning Appearance Standard" Paragraph, so that cleaned surfaces blend smoothly into surrounding areas.
 - F. Water Application Methods:
 1. Water-Soak Application: Soak masonry surfaces by applying water continuously and uniformly to limited area for time indicated. Apply water at low pressures and low volumes in multiple fine sprays using perforated hoses or multiple spray nozzles. Erect a protective enclosure constructed of polyethylene sheeting to cover area being sprayed.
 2. Water-Spray Applications: Unless otherwise indicated, hold spray nozzle at least **6 inches (150 mm)** from masonry surface and apply water in horizontal back-and-forth sweeping motion, overlapping previous strokes to produce uniform coverage.
 - G. Steam Cleaning: Apply steam to masonry surfaces at the very low pressures indicated for each type of masonry. Hold nozzle at least **6 inches (150 mm)** from masonry surface and apply steam in horizontal back-and-forth sweeping motion, overlapping previous strokes to produce uniform coverage.
 - H. Chemical-Cleaner Application Methods: Apply chemical cleaners to masonry surfaces according to chemical-cleaner manufacturer's written instructions; use brush or spray application. Do not spray apply at pressures exceeding **50 psi (345 kPa)**. Do not allow chemicals to remain on surface for periods longer than those indicated or recommended in writing by manufacturer.
 - I. Rinse off chemical residue and soil by working upward from bottom to top of each treated area at each stage or scaffold setting. Periodically during each rinse, test pH of rinse water running off of cleaned area to determine that chemical cleaner is completely removed.
 1. Apply neutralizing agent and repeat rinse if necessary to produce tested pH of between 6.7 and 7.5.
 - J. After cleaning is complete, remove protection no longer required. Remove tape and adhesive marks.
- 3.3 PRELIMINARY CLEANING
- A. Removing Plant Growth: Completely remove visible plant, moss, and shrub growth from masonry surfaces. Carefully remove plants, creepers, and vegetation by cutting at roots and allowing remaining growth to dry as long as possible before removal. Remove loose soil and plant debris from open joints to whatever depth they occur.

- B. Preliminary Cleaning: Before beginning general cleaning, remove extraneous substances that are resistant to planned cleaning methods. Extraneous substances include paint, calking, asphalt, and tar.
1. Carefully remove heavy accumulations of rigid materials from masonry surface with sharp chisel. Do not scratch or chip masonry surface.
 2. Remove paint and calking with alkaline paint remover.
 - a. Comply with requirements in "Paint Removal" Article.
 - b. Repeat application up to two times if needed.
 3. Remove asphalt and tar with solvent-type paste paint remover.
 - a. Comply with requirements in "Paint Removal" Article.
 - b. Apply paint remover only to asphalt and tar by brush without prewetting.
 - c. Allow paint remover to remain on surface for 10 to 30 minutes.
 - d. Repeat application if needed.

3.4 PAINT REMOVAL

- A. Paint-Remover Application, General: Apply paint removers according to paint-remover manufacturer's written instructions. Do not allow paint removers to remain on surface for periods longer than those indicated or recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- B. Paint Removal with Alkaline Paste Paint Remover:
1. Remove loose and peeling paint using medium-pressure water spray, scrapers, stiff brushes, or a combination of these. Let surface dry thoroughly.
 2. Apply paint remover to dry, painted surface with brushes.
 3. Allow paint remover to remain on surface for period recommended in writing by manufacturer or as determined by preconstruction testing.
 4. Rinse with hot water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and paint residue.
 5. Repeat process if necessary to remove all paint.
 6. Apply acidic cleaner or manufacturer's recommended afterwash to surface, while surface is still wet, using low-pressure spray equipment or soft-fiber brush. Let cleaner or afterwash remain on surface as a neutralizing agent for period recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner or afterwash manufacturer.
 7. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
- C. Paint Removal with Covered or Skin-Forming Alkaline Paint Remover:
1. Remove loose and peeling paint using medium-pressure water spray, scrapers, stiff brushes, or a combination of these. Let surface dry thoroughly.
 2. Apply paint remover to dry, painted surface with trowel, spatula, or as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
 3. Apply cover according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 4. Allow paint remover to remain on surface for period recommended in writing by manufacturer or as determined by preconstruction testing.
 5. Scrape off paint and remover.

6. Rinse with hot water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and paint residue.
7. Apply acidic cleaner or manufacturer's recommended afterwash to surface, while surface is still wet, using low-pressure spray equipment or soft-fiber brush. Let cleaner or afterwash remain on surface as a neutralizing agent for period recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner or afterwash manufacturer.
8. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
9. For spots of remaining paint, apply alkaline paste paint remover, according to "Paint Removal with Alkaline Paste Paint Remover" Paragraph.

D. Paint Removal with Solvent-Type Paste Paint Remover:

1. Remove loose and peeling paint using medium-pressure water spray, scrapers, stiff brushes, or a combination of these. Let surface dry thoroughly.
2. Apply thick coating of paint remover to painted surface with natural-fiber cleaning brush, deep-nap roller, or large paint brush. Apply in one or two coats according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Allow paint remover to remain on surface for period recommended in writing by manufacturer or as determined by preconstruction testing.
4. Rinse with hot water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and paint residue.

E. Paint Removal with Covered, Solvent-Type Paste Paint Remover:

1. Remove loose and peeling paint using medium-pressure water spray, scrapers, stiff brushes, or a combination of these. Let surface dry thoroughly.
2. Apply paint remover to dry, painted surface with trowel, spatula, or as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
3. Apply cover according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Allow paint remover to remain on surface for period recommended in writing by manufacturer or as determined by preconstruction testing.
5. Scrape off paint and remover.
6. Rinse with hot water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and paint residue.

3.5 CLEANING MASONRY

A. Cold-Water Soak:

1. Apply cold water by intermittent spraying to keep surface moist.
2. Use perforated hoses or other means that apply a fine water mist to entire surface being cleaned.
3. Apply water in cycles of five minutes on and 20 minutes off.
4. Continue spraying until surface encrustation has softened enough to permit its removal by water wash, as indicated by cleaning tests.
5. Remove soil and softened surface encrustation from surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.

B. Cold-Water Wash: Use cold water applied by medium-pressure spray.

- C. Hot-Water Wash: Use hot water applied by medium-pressure spray.
- D. Steam Cleaning: Apply steam at very low pressures not exceeding 30 psi (207 kPa). Remove dirt softened by steam with wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, or cold-water wash, as indicated by cleaning tests.
- E. Detergent Cleaning:
 - 1. Wet surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
 - 2. Scrub surface with detergent solution using medium-soft brushes until soil is thoroughly dislodged and can be removed by rinsing. Use small brushes to remove soil from mortar joints and crevices. Dip brush in solution often to ensure that adequate fresh detergent is used and that surface remains wet.
 - 3. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove detergent solution and soil.
 - 4. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup.
- F. Mold, Mildew, and Algae Removal:
 - 1. Wet surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
 - 2. Apply mold, mildew, and algae remover by brush or low-pressure spray.
 - 3. Scrub surface with medium-soft brushes until mold, mildew, and algae are thoroughly dislodged and can be removed by rinsing. Use small brushes for mortar joints and crevices. Dip brush in mold, mildew, and algae remover often to ensure that adequate fresh cleaner is used and that surface remains wet.
 - 4. Rinse with [cold] water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove mold, mildew, and algae remover and soil.
 - 5. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup.
- G. Nonacidic Gel Chemical Cleaning:
 - 1. Wet surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
 - 2. Apply gel cleaner in 1/8-inch (3-mm) thickness by brush, working into joints and crevices. Apply quickly and do not brush out excessively, so area is uniformly covered with fresh cleaner and dwell time is uniform throughout area being cleaned.
 - 3. Let cleaner remain on surface for period recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
 - 4. Remove bulk of gel cleaner.
 - 5. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
 - 6. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use steam cleaning.
- H. Nonacidic Liquid Chemical Cleaning:
 - 1. Wet surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
 - 2. Apply cleaner to surface in two applications by brush or low-pressure spray.
 - 3. Let cleaner remain on surface for period recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.

4. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
5. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use steam cleaning.

I. Mild-Acid Chemical Cleaning:

1. Wet surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
2. Apply cleaner to surface in two applications by brush or low-pressure spray.
3. Let cleaner remain on surface for period recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
4. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
5. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use steam cleaning.

J. One-Part Limestone Chemical Cleaning:

1. Wet surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
2. Apply cleaner to surface by brush or low-pressure spray.
3. Let cleaner remain on surface for period recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
4. Immediately repeat application of one-part limestone cleaner as indicated above over the same area.
5. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.

3.6 FINAL CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent nonmasonry surfaces of spillage and debris. Use detergent and soft brushes or cloths.
- B. Remove debris from gutters and downspouts. Rinse off roof and flush gutters and downspouts.
- C. Remove masking materials, leaving no residues that could trap dirt.

END OF SECTION 040110

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Repointing joints with mortar.
- 2. .

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 013516 "Alteration Project Procedures" for general remodeling, renovation, repair, and maintenance requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

Retain terms that remain after this Section has been edited for a project.

Revise or delete "Low-Pressure Spray" Paragraph below to suit Project. Low-pressure spray values are not standardized.

- A. Low-Pressure Spray: 100 to 400 psi (690 to 2750 kPa); 4 to 6 gpm (0.25 to 0.4 L/s).

Rift may be obscure in igneous rocks such as granite. Often it is obvious as with bedding planes in many sedimentary stones.

- B. Rift: The most pronounced direction of splitting or cleavage of a stone.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

- 1. Review methods and procedures related to repointing stonework including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Verify stone repointing specialist's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Materials, material application, sequencing, tolerances, and required clearances.
 - c. Quality-control program.
 - d. Coordination with building occupants.

1.5 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Order sand portland cement for pointing mortar immediately after approval of mockups. Take delivery of and store at Project site enough quantity to complete Project.
- B. Work Sequence: Perform stone repointing work in the following sequence, which includes work specified in this and other Sections:
 - 1. Remove plant growth.
 - 2. Inspect masonry for open mortar joints and permanently or temporarily point them before cleaning to prevent the intrusion of water and other cleaning materials into the wall.
 - 3. Remove paint.
 - 4. Clean stone.
 - 5. Rake out mortar from joints surrounding stone to be replaced and from joints adjacent to stone repairs along joints.
 - 6. Repair stonework, including replacing existing stone with new stone.
 - 7. Rake out mortar from joints to be repointed.
 - 8. Point mortar and sealant joints.
 - 9. After repairs and repointing have been completed and cured, perform a final cleaning to remove residues from this work.
 - 10. Where water repellents are to be used on or near stonework, delay application of these chemicals until after pointing and cleaning.
- C. As scaffolding is removed, patch anchor holes used to attach scaffolding. Patch holes in stone according to Section 040140.61 "Stone Repair." Patch holes in mortar joints according to "Repointing" Article.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include recommendations for product application and use.
 - 2. Include test data substantiating that products comply with requirements.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For the following:
 - 1. Pointing Mortar: Submit sets of mortar for pointing in the form of sample mortar strips, **6 inches (150 mm)** long by **1/4 inch (6 mm)** wide, set in aluminum or plastic channels.
 - a. Have each set contain a close color range of at least six Samples of different mixes of colored sands and cements that produce a mortar matching the existing, cleaned mortar when cured and dry.
 - b. Submit with precise measurements on ingredients, proportions, gradations, and source of colored sands from which each Sample was made.
 - 2. Sand Type Used for Pointing Mortar: Minimum **8 oz. (240 mL)** of each in plastic screw-top jars.
 - 3. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.

- C. Samples for Verification: For the following:
1. Each type, color, and texture of pointing mortar in the form of sample mortar strips, **6 inches (150 mm)** long by **1/4 inch (6 mm)** wide, set in aluminum or plastic channels.
 - a. Include with each Sample a list of ingredients with proportions of each. Identify sources, both supplier and quarry, of each type of sand and brand names of cementitious materials and pigments if any.
 2. Accessories: Each type of anchor, accessory, and miscellaneous support.
- D. Mockups: Prepare mockups of stone repointing to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
1. Repointing: Rake out joints in two separate areas, each approximately **36 inches (900 mm)** high by **48 inches (1200 mm)** wide for each type of repointing required, and repoint one of the areas.
 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver packaged materials to Project site in manufacturer's original and unopened containers, labeled with manufacturer's name and type of products.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store hydrated lime in manufacturer's original and unopened containers. Discard lime if containers have been damaged or have been opened for more than two days.
- D. Store sand where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit repointing work to be performed according to product manufacturers' written instructions and specified requirements.
- B. Temperature Limits: Repoint mortar joints only when air temperature is between **40 and 90 deg F (4 and 32 deg C)** and is predicted to remain so for at least seven days after completion of the Work unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Comply with the following procedures for mortar-joint pointing unless otherwise indicated:

1. When air temperature is below 40 deg F (4 deg C), heat mortar ingredients and existing stone to produce temperatures between 40 and 120 deg F (4 and 49 deg C).
 2. When mean daily air temperature is below 40 deg F (4 deg C), provide enclosure and heat to maintain temperatures above 32 deg F (0 deg C) within the enclosure for seven days after pointing.
- D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Protect mortar-joint pointing when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of water from mortar materials. Provide artificial shade and wind breaks, and use cooled materials as required to minimize evaporation. Do not apply mortar to substrates with temperatures of 90 deg F (32 deg C) and above unless otherwise indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of material for stone repointing (cement, sand, etc.) from single source with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or Type II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction; white or gray, or both where required for color matching of mortar.
1. Provide cement containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- C. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91/C91M.
- D. Mortar Cement: ASTM C1329/C1329M.
- E. Mortar Sand: ASTM C144.
1. Match size, texture, and gradation of existing mortar sand as closely as possible. Blend several sands if necessary to achieve suitable match.
 2. Color: Natural sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- F. Mortar Pigments: ASTM C979/C979M, compounded for use in mortar mixes, and having a record of satisfactory performance in stone mortars.
- G. Water: Potable.

2.3 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

2.4 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Measurement and Mixing: Measure cementitious materials and sand in a dry condition by volume or equivalent weight. Do not measure by shovel; use known measure. Mix materials in a clean, mechanical batch mixer.
1. Mixing Pointing Mortar: Thoroughly mix cementitious materials and sand together before adding any water. Then mix again, adding only enough water to produce a damp, unworkable mix that retains its form when pressed into a ball. Maintain mortar in this dampened condition for 15 to 30 minutes. Add remaining water in small portions until mortar reaches desired consistency. Use mortar within one hour of final mixing; do not retemper or use partially hardened material.
- B. Colored Mortar: Produce mortar of color required by using specified ingredients. Do not alter specified proportions without Architect's approval.
1. Mortar Pigments: Where mortar pigments are indicated, do not add pigment exceeding 10 percent by weight of the cementitious or binder materials, except for carbon black which is limited to 2 percent, unless otherwise demonstrated by a satisfactory history of performance.
- C. Do not use admixtures in mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Mixes: Mix mortar materials in the following proportions:
1. Pointing Mortar by Volume: ASTM C270, Proportion Specification, [**1 part portland cement, 1 part lime, and 6 parts sand**] <Insert proportions>.[**Add mortar pigments to produce mortar colors required.**]
 2. Pointing Mortar by Type: ASTM C270, Proportion Specification, [**Type N**] <Insert Type> unless otherwise indicated; with cementitious material limited to [**portland cement and lime**] [**masonry cement**] [**or**] [**mortar cement**].[**Add mortar pigments to produce mortar colors required.**]

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Prevent mortar from staining face of surrounding stone and other surfaces.
1. Cover sills, ledges, and other projecting items to protect them from mortar droppings.
 2. Keep wall area wet below pointing work to discourage mortar from adhering.
 3. Immediately remove mortar splatters in contact with exposed stone and other surfaces.
- B. Remove downspouts and associated hardware adjacent to stone and store during stone repointing. Reinstall when repointing is complete.

1. Provide temporary rain drainage during work to direct water away from building.

3.2 STONE REPOINTING, GENERAL

- A. Appearance Standard: Repointed surfaces are to have a uniform appearance as viewed from **feet (6 m)** away by Architect.
- B. Rake out and repoint joints to the following extent:
 1. All joints in areas indicated.
 2. Joints indicated as sealant-filled joints.
 3. Joints at locations of the following defects:
 - a. Holes and missing mortar.
 - b. Cracks that can be penetrated **1/4 inch (6 mm)** or more by a knife blade **0.027 inch (0.7 mm)** thick.
 - c. Cracks **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** or more in width and of any depth.
 - d. Hollow-sounding joints when tapped by metal object.
 - e. Eroded surfaces **1/4 inch (6 mm)** or more deep.
 - f. Deterioration to point that mortar can be easily removed by hand, without tools.
 - g. Joints filled with substances other than mortar.
- C. Do not rake out and repoint joints where not required.
- D. Rake out joints as follows, according to procedures demonstrated in approved mockup:
 1. Remove mortar from joints to depth of joint width plus **1/8 inch (3 mm)**. Do not remove unsound mortar more than **2 inches (50 mm)** deep; consult Architect for direction.
 2. Remove mortar from stone surfaces within raked-out joints to provide reveals with square backs and to expose stone for contact with pointing mortar. Brush, vacuum, or flush joints to remove dirt and loose debris.
 3. Do not spall edges of stone units or widen joints. Replace or patch damaged stone units as directed by Architect.
- E. Notify Architect of unforeseen detrimental conditions including voids in mortar joints, cracks, loose stone, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
- F. Pointing with Mortar:
 1. Rinse joint surfaces with water to remove dust and mortar particles. Time rinsing application so, at time of pointing, joint surfaces are damp but free of standing water. If rinse water dries, dampen joint surfaces before pointing.
 2. Apply pointing mortar first to areas where existing mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas. Apply in layers not greater than **3/8 inch (9 mm)** until a uniform depth is formed. Fully compact each layer, and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
 3. After deep areas have been filled to same depth as remaining joints, point joints by placing mortar in layers not greater than **3/8 inch (9 mm)**. Fully compact each layer and allow to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer. Where existing stone has worn or rounded edges, slightly recess finished mortar surface below face of stone to

avoid widened joint faces. Take care not to spread mortar beyond joint edges onto exposed stone surfaces or to featheredge the mortar.

4. When mortar is thumbprint hard, tool joints to match original appearance of joints as demonstrated in approved mockup. Remove excess mortar from edge of joint by brushing.
5. Cure mortar by maintaining in thoroughly damp condition for at least 72 consecutive hours, including weekends and holidays.
6. Hairline cracking within mortar or mortar separation at edge of a joint is unacceptable. Completely remove such mortar and repoint.

3.3 FINAL CLEANING

- A. After mortar has fully hardened, thoroughly clean exposed stone surfaces of excess mortar and foreign matter; use wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, and clean water, applied by low-pressure spray.
 1. Do not use metal scrapers or brushes.
 2. Do not use acidic or alkaline cleaners.
- B. Clean adjacent nonstone surfaces. Use detergent and soft brushes or cloths.
- C. Clean mortar and debris from roof; remove debris from gutters and downspouts. Rinse off roof and flush gutters and downspouts.
- D. Remove masking materials, leaving no residues that could trap dirt.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Architect's Project Representatives: Architect will assign Project representatives to help carry out Architect's responsibilities at the site, including observing progress and quality of portion of the Work completed. Allow Architect's Project representatives use of lift devices and scaffolding, as needed, to observe progress and quality of portion of the Work completed.
- B. Notify Architect's Project representatives in advance of times when lift devices and scaffolding will be relocated. Do not relocate lift devices and scaffolding until Architect's Project representatives have had reasonable opportunity to make inspections and observations of work areas at lift device or scaffold location.

END OF SECTION 040140.62

SECTION 042200 - CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Concrete masonry units.
 - 2. Mortar and grout.
 - 3. Steel reinforcing bars.
 - 4. Masonry-joint reinforcement.
 - 5. Embedded flashing.
 - 6. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
 - 1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
 - 2. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315.
 - 3. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:

1. Masonry units.
 - a. Include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
 - b. For masonry units used in structural masonry, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
 2. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.
 3. Mortar admixtures.
 4. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 5. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 6. Reinforcing bars.
 7. Joint reinforcement.
 8. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- C. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C109/C109M for compressive strength, ASTM C1506 for water retention, and ASTM C91/C91M for air content.
 2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
- D. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
- E. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C1093 for testing indicated.
 - B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 1. Build mockup as directed in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry".
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
 - B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
 - C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
 - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides of walls, and hold cover securely in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
 - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
 - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
 - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
 - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide structural unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at 28 days.
 - 1. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
 - 2. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry by testing masonry prisms according to ASTM C1314.

2.3 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work and will be within 20 feet vertically and horizontally of a walking surface.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with requirements for fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated.
 - 1. Where fire-resistance-rated construction is indicated, units shall be listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
 - 2. Provide bullnose units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
- B. CMUs: ASTM C90.
 - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2800 psi.
 - 2. Density Classification: Normal weight.
 - 3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less-than-nominal dimensions.
- C. Concrete Building Brick: ASTM C55.
 - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2800 psi.
 - 2. Density Classification: Normal weight.
 - 3. Size (Actual Dimensions): 3-5/8 inches wide by 2-1/4 inches high by 7-5/8 inches long.

2.5 CONCRETE AND MASONRY LINTELS

- A. General: Provide one of the following:

- B. Concrete Lintels: ASTM C1623, matching CMUs in color, texture, and density classification; and with reinforcing bars indicated. Provide lintels with net-area compressive strength not less than that of CMUs.
- C. Masonry Lintels: Prefabricated or built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam CMUs matching adjacent CMUs in color, texture, and density classification, with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout. Cure precast lintels before handling and installing. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.

2.6 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
 - 1. Alkali content shall not be more than 0.1 percent when tested according to ASTM C114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- D. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91/C91M.
- E. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C494/C494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
- F. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with CMUs containing integral water repellent from same manufacturer.
- G. Water: Potable.

2.7 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M or ASTM A996/A996M, Grade 60.
- B. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells and to hold reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units designed for number of bars indicated.
- C. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement, General: Ladder type complying with ASTM A951/A951M.
 - 1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
 - 2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
 - 3. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
 - 4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
 - 5. Spacing of Cross Rods: Not more than 16 inches o.c.
 - 6. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet [**with prefabricated corner and tee units**].

2.8 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors shall extend at least 1-1/2 inches into masonry but with at least a 5/8-inch cover on outside face.

- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A82/A82M, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B-2 coating.
 2. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel, G60 zinc coating.
 3. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B coating.
 4. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
- C. Partition Top Anchors: 0.105-inch-thick metal plate with a 3/8-inch-diameter metal rod 6 inches long welded to plate and with closed-end plastic tube fitted over rod that allows rod to move in and out of tube. Fabricate from steel, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.

2.9 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Section 042000 "Unit Masonry".

2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene, urethane, or PVC.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.
- C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated felt complying with ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

2.11 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 2. Use portland cement-lime, masonry cement, or mortar cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
 3. For exterior masonry, use portland cement-lime, masonry cement, or mortar cement mortar.
 4. For reinforced masonry, use portland cement-lime, masonry cement, or mortar cement mortar.
 5. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Proportion Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M or Type S.

2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S or Type N.
3. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and nonload-bearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior nonload-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.

D. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C476.

1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C476, Table 1 or paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 2000 psi.
3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C143/C143M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
 2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
 3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
 4. Verify that substrates are free of substances that would impair mortar bond.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- B. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- C. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

3.3 TOLERANCES

- A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:
1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
 2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.

3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.

B. Lines and Levels:

1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
3. For vertical lines and surfaces do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch.

C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch.

3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 4 inches. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.

- G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below, and rod mortar or grout into core.
- H. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Build nonload-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
 - 2. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Wedge nonload-bearing partitions against structure above with small pieces of tile, slate, or metal. Fill joint with mortar after dead-load deflection of structure above approaches final position.
 - 4. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Section 078443 "Joint Firestopping."

3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay hollow CMUs as follows:
 - 1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
 - 2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
 - 3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
 - 4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
- B. Lay solid CMUs with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Cut joints flush where indicated to receive waterproofing unless otherwise indicated.

3.6 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
 - 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
 - 2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
 - 3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.

- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.
- E. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at corners, returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

3.7 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE

- A. Anchor masonry to structural steel and concrete, where masonry abuts or faces structural steel or concrete, to comply with the following:
 - 1. Provide an open space not less than 1/2 inch wide between masonry and structural steel or concrete unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
 - 2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
 - 3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches o.c. vertically and 36 inches o.c. horizontally.

3.8 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control- and expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry using one of the following methods:
 - 1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of CMUs on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout, and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
 - 2. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
 - 3. Install interlocking units designed for control joints. Install bond-breaker strips at joint. Keep head joints free and clear of mortar, or rake out joint for application of sealant.
 - 4. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints, and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.

3.9 LINTELS

- A. Provide concrete or masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches for brick-size units and 24 inches for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- B. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

3.10 FLASHING

- A. General: Install embedded flashing at ledges and other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall where indicated.
- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.

2. At lintels, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
3. Interlock end joints of ribbed sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than 1-1/2 inches or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.

3.11 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
 1. Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- B. Inspections: Special inspections according to Level B in TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.
 1. Begin masonry construction only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared mortar.
 2. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and of grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
 3. Place grout only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared grout.
- C. Testing Prior to Construction: One set of tests.
- D. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. of wall area or portion thereof.
- E. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C140 for compressive strength.
- F. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C780.
- G. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.

- H. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C1019.
- I. Prism Test: For each type of construction provided, according to ASTM C1314 at 7 days and at 28 days.

3.13 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
 - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
 - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
 - 5. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 8-4A.

3.14 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Masonry Waste Recycling: Return broken CMUs not used as fill to manufacturer for recycling.
- C. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 042200

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Stone masonry anchored to wood framing and sheathing.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each variety of stone, stone accessory, and manufactured product.
- B. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. For each stone type indicated. Include at least four Samples in each set and show the full range of color and other visual characteristics in completed Work.
 - 2. For each color of mortar required.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, supply sources, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and source of aggregates.
 - 1. Neither receipt of list nor approval of mockups constitutes approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect approves such deviations in writing.
- C. Material Test Reports:
 - 1. Stone Test Reports: For each stone variety proposed for use on Project, by a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with required physical properties, other than abrasion resistance, according to referenced ASTM standards. Base reports on testing done within previous five years.
 - 2. Sealant Compatibility and Adhesion Test Report: From sealant manufacturer indicating that sealants will not stain or damage stone. Include interpretation of test results and recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs experienced stonemasons and stone fitters.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups for each type of stone masonry in sizes approximately 48 inches (1200 mm) long by 48 inches (1200 mm) high by full thickness, including face and backup wythes and accessories.
 - 2. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Sealant Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for compatibility and adhesion testing according to sealant manufacturer's standard testing methods and Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," Samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- B. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- C. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for use with dispensing silos. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, in a dry location, or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- D. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Stone Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed stone masonry when construction is not in progress.
 - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) down both sides and hold cover securely in place.

- B. Stain Prevention: Immediately remove mortar and soil to prevent them from staining stone masonry face.
 - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and mortar splatter using coverings spread on the ground and over the wall surface.
 - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
 - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt on completed stone masonry.

- C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace stone masonry damaged by frost or freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
 - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.

- D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Advise installers of adjacent Work about specific requirements for placement of reinforcement, veneer anchors, flashing, and similar items to be built into stone masonry.

- B. Coordinate locations of dovetail slots installed in concrete that are to receive stone anchors.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. The City of Centerville has requested option for contractor to provide Centerville Limestone. Architect will provide contact information for individual holding true Centerville Limestone material as an option for install.

- B. Acceptable Manufacturer: Altiers Top Stone, LLC; 6001 Dry Fork Road, Cleves, Ohio 45002. Telephone: 513.677.0602. Contact: Amy Carr: amy@altiersap.com; website: www.altiersap.com.

- C. Substitutions: See section 012500 – Substitution Procedures

- D. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01600.

- E. Single Source Responsibility for Stone: Obtain limestone from a single quarry source with resources to provide the quantity of materials required in the specified consistent quality.

2.2 Stone

- A. Limestone Building Stone: Altiers Top Tier Stone
- B. Color: Blue Vein
- C. Size: Nominal 4 inches to 6 inches depth x 2 inches to 10 inches high or 10 inches to 14 inches high x 8 inches to 39 inches lengths on average.
- D. ASTM C 568 Classification: Category II, medium density. Stone shall be provided with the following physical properties:
 - 1. Absorption: ASTM C97, 2.11 to 7.33 percent.
 - 2. Modulus of Rupture: ASTM C99, 672 psi minimum
 - 3. Comprehensive Strength: ASTM C170, 16,020 psi average.
 - 4. Break load: ASTM C99, 2865 psi average.

2.3 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or Type II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction; natural color or white cement may be used as required to produce mortar color indicated.
 - 1. Low-Alkali Cement: Not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C114 when recommended by stone supplier.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- D. Mortar Cement: ASTM C1329/C1329M.
- E. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91/C91M.
- F. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C979/C979M. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in stone masonry mortar.
- G. Colored Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement, hydrated lime, and mortar pigments. Mix produces color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors. Pigments do not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
- H. Colored Masonry Cement Mix: Packaged blend of masonry cement and mortar pigments. Mix produces color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors. Pigments do not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement by weight.

- I. Aggregate: ASTM C144 and as follows:
 - 1. For pointing mortar, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve.
- J. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C494/C494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
- K. Water: Potable.

2.4 VENEER ANCHORS

- A. Materials:
 - 1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M; with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B-2.
 - 2. Stainless Steel Wire: ASTM A580/A580M, Type 304.
 - 3. Hot-Dip Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, cold-rolled, carbon-steel sheet, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B-2.
 - 4. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
- B. Size: Sufficient to extend at least halfway, but not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, through stone masonry and with at least a **5/8-inch (16-mm)** cover on exterior face.
- C. Wire Veneer Anchors: Wire ties formed from W1.7 or **0.148-inch- (3.8-mm-)** diameter, steel wire.
 - 1. Ties are bent in the form of triangular loops designed to be attached to masonry joint reinforcement specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" with vertical wires passing through ties and through eyes projecting from masonry joint reinforcement.
- D. Corrugated-Metal Veneer Anchors: Not less than **0.060-inch- (1.52-mm-)** thick by **7/8-inch- (22-mm-)** wide hot-dip galvanized or stainless steel sheet with corrugations having a wavelength of **0.3 to 0.5 inch (7.6 to 13 mm)** and an amplitude of **0.06 to 0.10 inch (1.5 to 2.5 mm)**.
- E. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors:
 - 1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist a **100-lbf (445-N)** load in both tension and compression perpendicular to plane of wall without deforming or developing play in excess of **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)**.
 - 2. Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from **0.075-inch- (1.90-mm-)** thick steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication.
 - 3. Fabricate wire ties from **0.187-inch- (4.76-mm-)** diameter, hot-dip galvanized-steel or stainless steel wire unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Fabricate wire connector sections from **0.187-inch- (4.76-mm-)** diameter, hot-dip galvanized-steel or stainless steel wire.
 - 5. Contractor's Option: Unless otherwise indicated, provide any of the adjustable masonry-veneer anchors specified.

2.5 MASONRY CLEANERS

- A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar and grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from stone masonry surfaces without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces; expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and stone producer.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate stone units in sizes and shapes required to comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Split stone to produce pieces of thickness, size, and shape indicated, including details on Drawings and pattern specified in "Setting Stone Masonry" Article.
 - 1. Shape stone specified to be laid in three-course, random range ashlar pattern with split beds.
- C. Dress joints (bed and vertical) straight and at right angle to face unless otherwise indicated. Shape beds to fit supports.
- D. Thickness of Stone: Provide thickness indicated, but not less than the following:
 - 1. Thickness: 4 inches (100 mm) plus or minus. Thickness does not include projection of pitched faces.
- E. Finish exposed stone faces and edges to comply with requirements indicated for finish and to match approved samples and mockups.
 - 1. Finish: Split face.

2.7 MORTAR MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride.
 - 2. Use portland cement-lime, masonry cement, or mortar cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in the form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Stone Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Proportion Specification.

1. Mortar for Setting Stone: Type S or Type N.
 2. Mortar for Pointing Stone: Type N.
- D. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
1. Pigments do not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
 2. Pigments do not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.
 3. Mix to match Architect's sample.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces indicated to receive stone masonry, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of stone masonry.
- B. Examine substrate to verify that dovetail slots, inserts, reinforcement, veneer anchors, flashing, and other items installed in substrates and required for or extending into stone masonry are correctly installed.
- C. Examine wall framing, sheathing, and weather-resistant sheathing paper to verify that stud locations are suitable for spacing of veneer anchors and that installation will result in a weatherproof covering.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Accurately mark stud centerlines on face of weather-resistant sheathing paper before beginning stone installation.
- B. Coat concrete and unit masonry backup with asphalt dampproofing.
- C. Clean dirty or stained stone surfaces by removing soil, stains, and foreign materials before setting. Clean stone by thoroughly scrubbing with fiber brushes and then drenching with clear water. Use only mild cleaning compounds that contain no caustic or harsh materials or abrasives.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF STONE MASONRY

- A. Perform necessary field cutting and trimming as stone is set.
 1. Use hammer and chisel to split stone that is fabricated with split surfaces. Make edges straight and true, matching similar surfaces that were shop or quarry fabricated.
 2. Pitch face at field-split edges as needed to match stones that are not field split.

- B. Sort stone before it is placed in wall to remove stone that does not comply with requirements relating to aesthetic effects, physical properties, or fabrication, or that is otherwise unsuitable for intended use.
- C. Arrange stones in broken-range ashlar pattern with uniform course heights, random lengths, and uniform joint widths.
- D. Arrange stones with color and size variations uniformly dispersed for an evenly blended appearance.
- E. Install supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure stone masonry in place.
- F. Set stone accurately in locations indicated with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
- G. Install steel lintels where indicated. Provide minimum bearing of **8 inches (200 mm)** at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Maintain uniform joint widths except for variations due to different stone sizes and where minor variations are required to maintain bond alignment if any. Lay walls with joints not less than **3/8 inch (10 mm)** at narrowest points or more than **5/8 inch (16 mm)** at widest points.

3.4 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb: For vertical lines and surfaces, do not exceed **1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m)**, **3/8 inch in 20 feet (10 mm in 6 m)**, or **1/2 inch in 40 feet (13 mm in 12 m)** or more. For external corners, expansion joints, control joints, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)** or **1/2 inch in 40 feet (13 mm in 12 m)** or more.
- B. Variation from Level: For bed joints and lines of exposed lintels, sills, parapets, horizontal grooves, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)** or **1/2 inch in 40 feet (13 mm in 12 m)** or more.
- C. Variation of Linear Building Line: For position shown in plan, do not exceed **1/2 inch in 20 feet (13 mm in 6 m)** or **3/4 inch in 40 feet (19 mm in 12 m)** or more.
- D. Measure variation from level, plumb, and position shown in plan as a variation of the average plane of each stone face from level, plumb, or dimensioned plane.
- E. Variation in Mortar-Joint Thickness: Do not vary from joint size range indicated.
- F. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Stones: Do not exceed one-half of tolerance specified for thickness of stone.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF ANCHORED STONE MASONRY

- A. Anchor stone masonry to concrete with corrugated-metal veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Secure anchors by inserting dovetailed ends into dovetail slots in concrete.

- B. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with corrugated-metal or individual wire veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Embed anchors in unit masonry mortar joints or grouted cells at a distance of at least one-half of unit masonry thickness.
- C. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with wire anchors unless otherwise indicated. Connect anchors to masonry joint reinforcement by inserting pintles into eyes of masonry joint reinforcement projecting from unit masonry.
- D. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with wire anchors unless otherwise indicated. Connect anchors to masonry joint reinforcement with vertical rods inserted through anchors and through eyes of masonry joint reinforcement projecting from unit masonry.
- E. Anchor stone masonry to stud framing with adjustable, screw-attached veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Fasten anchors through sheathing to framing with two screws.
- F. Anchor stone masonry to stud framing with screw-attached veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Anchor stone masonry to wood-stud framing with corrugated-metal veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Fasten anchors through sheathing to studs with corrosion-resistant roofing nails.
- H. Anchor stone masonry to wood-stud framing with wire anchors unless otherwise indicated. Fasten anchors through sheathing to wood studs with corrosion-resistant roofing nails.
- I. Embed veneer anchors in mortar joints of stone masonry at least halfway, but not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, through stone masonry and with at least a **5/8-inch (16-mm)** cover on exterior face.
- J. Space anchors to provide not less than one anchor per **2 sq. ft. (0.2 sq. m)** of wall area. Install additional anchors within **12 inches (300 mm)** of openings, sealant joints, and perimeter at intervals not exceeding **12 inches (300 mm)**.
- K. Set stone in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated. Build anchors into mortar joints as stone is set.
- L. Provide **1-inch (25-mm)** cavity between stone masonry and backup construction unless otherwise indicated. Keep cavity free of mortar droppings and debris.
 - 1. Slope beds toward cavity to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity.
 - 2. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace stone masonry of the following description:
 - 1. Broken, chipped, stained, or otherwise damaged stone. Stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.
 - 2. Defective joints.
 - 3. Stone masonry not matching approved samples and mockups.

4. Stone masonry not complying with other requirements indicated.
- B. Replace in a manner that results in stone masonry matching approved samples and mockups, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
 - C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean stone masonry as work progresses. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
 - D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean stone masonry as follows:
 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 2. Test cleaning methods on mockup; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before cleaning stone masonry.
 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent, polyethylene film, or waterproof masking tape.
 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaner; remove cleaner promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
 5. Clean stone masonry by bucket and brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Note No. 20, Revised II, using job-mixed detergent solution.

3.7 EXCESS MATERIALS AND WASTE

- A. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 044313.13

5

DIVISION

METALS

SECTION 051200

STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

When the information in this Specification Section conflicts with information on the Structural Construction Drawings, the Structural Construction Drawings shall prevail.

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Structural steel.
2. Grout.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for steel lintels and shelf angles not attached to structural-steel frame, miscellaneous steel fabrications, and other steel items not defined as structural steel.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Applicable building code: Building code under which the structure is designed. Unless noted otherwise this shall refer to the latest edition, including all supplements, addendums, and updates, of the Ohio Building Code.
- B. Authority having jurisdiction (AHJ): Organization, political subdivision, office or individual charged with the responsibility of administering and enforcing the provisions of the applicable building code.
- C. Engineer of record (EOR): Licensed professional responsible for sealing the structural design drawings and specifications.
- D. Nondestructive testing (NDT): Inspection procedure wherein no material is destroyed and the integrity of the material or component is not affected
- E. Quality Assurance (QA): Monitoring and inspection tasks performed by an agency or firm other than the fabricator or erector to ensure that the material provided and work performed by the fabricator and erector meet the requirements of the approved construction documents and referenced standards. Quality assurance includes those tasks designated "special inspection" by the applicable building code.
- F. Quality Assurance Inspector (QAI): Individual designated to provide quality assurance inspection for the work being performed.
- G. Quality Assurance Plan (QAP): Program in which the agency or firm responsible for quality assurance maintains detailed monitoring and inspection procedures to ensure conformance with the approved construction documents and referenced standards.
- H. Quality Control (QC): Controls and inspections implemented by the fabricator or erector, as applicable, to ensure that the material provided and work performed meet the requirements of the approved construction documents and referenced standards.

- I. Quality Control Inspector (QCI): Individual designated to perform quality control inspection tasks for the work being performed.
- J. Quality Control Program (QCP): Program in which the fabricator or erector, as applicable, maintains detailed fabrication or erection and inspection procedures to ensure conformance with the approved design drawings, specifications and referenced standards.
- K. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in AISC 303-10, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

1.03 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - 1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
 - 2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
 - 3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
 - 4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
- B. American Welding Society (AWS):
 - 1. Structural Welding Code – Steel (D1.1)
- C. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC)
 - 1. AISC 303-10 “Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges.”
 - 2. AISC 360-10 “Specification for Structural Steel Buildings.”

1.04 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

1.05 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. A pre-installation meeting with the Contractor, Steel Erector, Special Inspector and the Registered Design Professional is required.
 - 1. Meeting shall be held at the job site trailer or other mutually agreed upon location.
 - 2. Contact Registered Design Professional at least two (2) weeks prior to steel installation to arrange meeting date.
 - 3. An approved Structural Steel Submittal Package shall be completed prior to arrangement of pre-installation meeting.

1.06 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: The fabricator or erector shall submit shop and erection drawings for review by the engineer of record (EOR), in accordance with Section 4 of the Code of Standard Practice, prior to fabrication. Drawings shall include the following:
 - 1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
 - 2. Include Embedment Drawings for steel elements embedded in masonry or concrete.
 - 3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.

4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.
 5. Erection Drawings
- B. One (1) hardcopy and one (1) electronic copy (in PDF format) for the structural steel shop drawings shall be submitted for review. The hardcopy of the structural steel shop drawings will be redmarked by SMA. One (1) redmarked hardcopy will be retained by SMA as an office copy. One (1) electronic copy of this redmarked set will be submitted as the approved set. No allowance has been made for redmarking a quantity of hardcopies greater than that noted above. Fees for in-house duplication of redmarks on printed hardcopies may be an Additional Service and invoiced at an hourly rate using Shell + Meyer's Standard Rate Schedule
- C. The fee to use Shell + Meyer's drawings to develop structural shop drawings is \$50.00 per sheet requested. The fee is charged directly to the sub-contractor who requests the files.
- D. Submittals requiring more than TWO (2) reviews by SMA resulting from errors and omissions of the supplier's detailer will be an Additional Service and invoiced at an hourly rate. An invoice for these services will be attached to the final approved set of shop drawings.
- E. Welding Procedure Specifications (WPSs) and Procedure Qualification Records (PQRs) for Partial Joint Penetration (PJP), Complete Joint Penetration (CJP), and flare bevel groove welds: Provide according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for each welded joint whether prequalified or qualified by testing, including the following:
1. Power source (constant current or constant voltage).
 2. Electrode manufacturer and trade name.
- F. At completion of fabrication, the approved fabricator shall submit a certificate of compliance to the AHJ stating that the materials supplied and work performed by the fabricator are in accordance with the construction documents.
- G. At completion of erection, the approved erector shall submit a certificate of compliance to the AHJ stating that the materials supplied and work performed by the erector are in accordance with the construction documents.

1.07 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. The following documents shall be available in electronic or printed form for review by the EOR prior to fabrication or erection, as applicable, unless otherwise required in the contract documents to be submitted :
1. For main structural steel elements, copies of material test reports in accordance with AISC 360, Section A3.1.
 2. For fasteners, copies of manufacturer's certifications in accordance with AISC 360, Section A3.3.
 3. For anchor rods and threaded rods, copies of material test reports in accordance with AISC 360, Section A3.4.
 4. For welding consumables, copies of manufacturer's certifications in accordance with AISC 360, Section A3.5.
 5. For headed stud anchors, copies of manufacturer's certifications in accordance with AISC 360, Section A3.6.
 6. Manufacturer's product data sheets or catalog data for welding filler metals and fluxes to be used. The data sheets shall describe the product, limitations of use, recommended or typical welding parameters, and storage and exposure requirements, including baking, if applicable.
 7. Welding procedure specifications (WPSs).

8. Procedure qualification records (PQRs) for WPSs that are not prequalified in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M or AWS D1.3/D1.3M, as applicable.
9. Welding personnel performance qualification records (WPQR) and continuity records.
10. Fabricator's or erector's, as applicable, written quality control manual that shall include, as a minimum:
 - a. Material control procedures
 - b. Inspection procedures
 - c. Nonconformance procedures
11. Fabricator's or erector's, as applicable, QC inspector qualifications.
12. Field quality-control and special inspection reports.

1.08 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality control (QC) as referenced in this Specification shall be provided by the fabricator and erector.
- B. Nondestructive testing (NDT) shall be performed by the agency or firm responsible for Quality Assurance
- C. Fabricator Qualifications:
 1. 5 years minimum experience
 2. A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD: For Installer.
 - a. Non-AISC Certified fabricators shall have on-site inspections of the fabrication facilities and project steel per the Ohio Building Code.
 - 1) Form located at the end of this Section shall be submitted with bids from Non-AISC certified fabricators.
 - 2) Complete top half of form and name of Special Inspection agency at bid time.
- D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- E. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 1. AISC 303-10 "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
 2. AISC 360-10 "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings.", including Chapter N "Quality Control and Quality Assurance".
 3. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- F. Quality Control Inspector Qualifications:
 1. Quality control (QC) welding inspection personnel shall be qualified to the satisfaction of the fabricator's or erector's QC program, as applicable, and in accordance with either of the following:
 - a. Associate welding inspectors (AWI) or higher as defined in AWS B5.1, Standard for the Qualification of Welding Inspectors, or
 - b. Qualified under the provisions of AWS D1.1/D1.1M sub clause 6.1.4
 2. QC bolting inspection personnel shall be qualified on the basis of documented training and experience in structural bolting inspection.
- G. The fabricator and erector shall establish and maintain quality control procedures and perform inspections to ensure that their work is performed in accordance with this Specification and the construction documents.

1.09 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All load-bearing structural steel shall be fabricated and produced using only steel made in the United States in accordance with Sections 153.011 and 153.99 of the Ohio Revised Code (ORC).
- B. Quality assurance (QA) as specified in this section shall be provided by the Qualified Testing Agency.
- C. Quality Assurance Inspector Qualifications
 - 1. Quality assurance (QA) welding inspectors shall be qualified to the satisfaction of the QA agency's written practice, and in accordance with either of the following:
 - a. Welding inspectors (WIs) or senior welding inspectors (SWIs), as defined in AWS B5.1, Standard for the Qualification of Welding Inspectors, except associate welding inspectors (AWIs) are permitted to be used under the direct supervision of WIs, who are on the premises and available when weld inspection is being conducted, or
 - b. Qualified under the provisions of AWS D1.1/D1.1M, sub clause 6.1.4
 - 2. QA bolting inspection personnel shall be qualified on the basis of documented training and experience in structural bolting inspection.
- D. NDT Personnel Qualifications
 - 1. Nondestructive testing personnel, for NDT other than visual, shall be qualified in accordance with their employer's written practice, which shall meet or exceed the criteria of AWS D1.1/D1.1M Structural Welding Code—Steel, sub clause 6.14.6, and:
 - a. American Society for Nondestructive Testing (ASNT) SNT-TC-1A, Recommended Practice for the Qualification and Certification of Nondestructive Testing Personnel, or
 - b. ASNT CP-189, Standard for the Qualification and Certification of Nondestructive Testing Personnel

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
 - 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
 - 1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
 - 2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
 - 3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.

1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC 360.
2. Use Allowable Stress Design; data are given at service-load level.

2.02 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than the following:
1. W-Shapes: 60 percent.
 2. Channels, Angles: 60 percent.
 3. Plate and Bar: 25 percent.
 4. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: 25 percent.
 5. Steel Pipe: 25 percent.
 6. All Other Steel Materials: 25 percent.
- B. W-Shapes: ASTM A992.
- C. Channels, Angles, M-Shapes: ASTM A36 or ASTM A572, Grade 50.
- D. Plate and Bar: ASTM A36.
- E. Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A1085, structural tubing.
- F. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53, Type E or Type S, Grade B.
- G. Welding Electrodes:
1. Use E70XX electrode unless noted otherwise.
 2. Comply with AWS requirements.

2.03 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, round head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
1. Use as default bolt unless noted otherwise.
 2. Finish: Plain.
- B. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade C, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; all with plain finish.
1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- C. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 490, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; all with plain finish.
1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 490, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- D. Zinc-Coated High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade DH heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts.
1. Finish: Hot-dip or mechanically deposited zinc coating.
 2. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325, compressible-washer type with mechanically deposited zinc coating finish.
- E. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.
- F. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, U.N.O.

1. Configuration: Straight.
 2. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy-hex carbon steel.
 3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36 carbon steel.
 4. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
 5. Finish: Plain.
- G. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36.
1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy-hex carbon steel.
 2. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
 3. Finish: Plain.
- H. Clevises and Turnbuckles: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1035.
- I. Eye Bolts and Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1030.
- J. Sleeve Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1018.
- 2.04 PRIMER
- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Primer: Zinc oxide, oil. Lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
1. Coordinate primers with topcoats, requirements for slip critical joints, and limitations of sprayed fire resistive materials.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: MPI#18, MPI#19, ASTM A780, or SSPC-Paint 20.
- 2.05 GROUT
- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
- 2.06 BITUMINOUS COATING
- A. Cold applied asphalt mastic.
- 2.07 FABRICATION
- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," and to AISC 360.
1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
 2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
 3. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6 and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
 4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
 5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.

1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
- F. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Install headed studs on all structural steel beams supporting Concrete Masonry Units directly on the beam's top flange.
- H. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel members.
 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
 2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
- I. Closure Plates: Provide minimum 1/4 inch closure plates at all Hollow Structural Steel tube ends, U.N.O. on plans.

2.08 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 1. Joint Type: Pretensioned.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.

2.09 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
 - a. Apply a bituminous coating to steel embedded in concrete or mortar.
 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
 3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted, slip-critical connections.
 4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
 5. Galvanized surfaces.
 6. Surfaces enclosed in interior construction.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
 1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
 2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

2.10 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A123.
 - 1. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work unless they function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
 - 2. Galvanize lintels, shelf angles, relief angles and welded door frames attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.
 - 3. Galvanize all exterior exposed steel including unwrapped canopy columns, steel projecting above the roof line, and exterior mechanical supports.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections if fabricator is not AISC certified.
 - 1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Material identification procedures shall comply with the requirements of Section 6.1 of the Code of Standard Practice, and shall be monitored by the fabricator's quality control inspector (QCI).
- C. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test shop-bolted connections according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- D. Welded Connections: In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded connections will be tested according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures:
 - 1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
 - 2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
 - 3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
 - 4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
- E. In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded shear connectors will be tested and inspected according to requirements in AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:
 - 1. Bend tests will be performed if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
 - 2. Tests will be conducted according to requirements in AWS D1.1 on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested.
- F. Other Inspection Tasks
 - 1. The fabricator's QCI shall inspect the fabricated steel to verify compliance with the details shown on the shop drawings, such as proper application of joint details at each connection.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
 - 1. Prepare a certified survey of existing conditions. Include bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

3.03 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

3.04 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303-10 and ANSI/AISC 360-10.
- B. Erect structural steel in compliance with OSHA safety practices for steel erection per Federal Register 29 CFR 1926, Subpart R.
- C. Baseplates Bearing Plates and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
 - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
 - 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
 - 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
 - 4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- D. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- E. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that are in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
 - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.

2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- F. Splice members only where indicated.
 - G. Do not use thermal cutting during erection.
 - H. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
 - I. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.05 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
 2. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," for mill material.
 3. Remove backing bars exposed to view, back gouge, and grind welds smooth.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Inspection: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following inspections:
- B. Inspection of Welding
 1. Observation of welding operations and visual inspection of in-process and completed welds shall be the primary method to confirm that the materials, procedures and workmanship are in conformance with the construction documents. For structural steel, all provisions of AWS D1.1/D1.1M Structural Welding Code—Steel for statically loaded structures shall apply.
- C. Inspection Tasks Prior to Welding
 1. Welding procedure specifications (WPSs) available
 2. Manufacturer certifications for welding consumables available
 3. Material identification (type/grade)
 4. Welder identification system
 - a. The fabricator or erector, as applicable, shall maintain a system by which a welder who has welded a joint or member can be identified. Stamps, if used, shall be the low-stress type.
 5. Fit-up of groove welds (including joint geometry)
 - a. Joint preparation
 - b. Dimensions (alignment, root opening, root face, bevel)
 - c. Cleanliness (condition of steel surfaces)
 - d. Tacking (tack weld quality and location)
 - e. Backing type and fit (if applicable)
 6. Configuration and finish of access holes
 7. Fit-up of fillet welds

- a. Dimensions (alignment, gaps at root)
 - b. Cleanliness (condition of steel surfaces)
 - c. Tacking (tack weld quality and location)
 - 8. Check welding equipment
- D. Inspection Tasks During Welding
- 1. Use of qualified welders
 - 2. Control and handling of welding consumables
 - a. Packaging
 - b. Exposure control
 - 3. No welding over cracked tack welds
 - 4. Environmental conditions
 - a. Wind speed within limits
 - b. Precipitation and temperature
 - 5. WPS followed
 - a. Settings on welding equipment
 - b. Travel speed
 - c. Selected welding materials
 - d. Shielding gas type/flow rate
 - e. Preheat applied
 - f. Interpass temperature maintained (min./max.)
 - g. Proper position (F, V, H, OH)
 - 6. Welding techniques
 - a. Interpass and final cleaning
 - b. Each pass within profile limitations
 - c. Each pass meets quality requirements
- E. Inspection Tasks After Welding
- 1. Welds cleaned
 - 2. Size, length and location of welds
 - 3. Welds meet visual acceptance criteria
 - a. Crack prohibition
 - b. Weld/base-metal fusion
 - c. Crater cross section
 - d. Weld profiles
 - e. Weld size
 - f. Undercut
 - g. Porosity
 - 4. Arc strikes
 - 5. k-area
 - a. When welding of doubler plates, continuity plates or stiffeners has been performed in the k-area, visually inspect the web k-area for cracks within 3 inches of the weld.
 - 6. Backing removed and weld tabs removed (if required)
 - 7. Repair activities
 - 8. Document acceptance or rejection of welded joint or member
- F. Nondestructive Testing of Welded Joints
- 1. Procedures
 - a. Ultrasonic testing (UT), magnetic particle testing (MT), penetrant testing (PT) and radiographic testing (RT), where required, shall be performed by QA in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Acceptance criteria shall be in accordance

with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for statically loaded structures, unless otherwise designated in the design drawings or project specifications.

2. CJP Groove Weld NDT
 - a. UT shall be performed by QA on all CJP groove welds, in materials 5/16 inch thick or greater.
3. Access Hole NDT
 - a. Thermally cut surfaces of access holes shall be tested by QA using MT or PT, when the flange thickness exceeds 2 inches for rolled shapes, or when the web thickness exceeds 2 inches for built-up shapes. Any crack shall be deemed unacceptable regardless of size or location.
4. Welded Joints Subjected to Fatigue
 - a. Welded joints in the following members require weld soundness to be established by radiographic or ultrasonic inspection and shall be tested by QA as prescribed. Reduction in the rate of UT is prohibited:
 - 1) Flagpoles / Sign Posts
 - 2) Equipment Support Bases
 - 3) Elevator machine beams
 - 4) Monorails / Conveyors
5. Reduction of Rate of Ultrasonic Testing
 - a. The rate of UT is permitted to be reduced if approved by the EOR and the AHJ.
 - b. Where the initial rate for UT is 100%, the NDT rate for an individual welder or welding operator is permitted to be reduced to 25%, provided the reject rate, the number of welds containing unacceptable defects divided by the number of welds completed, is demonstrated to be 5% or less of the welds tested for the welder or welding operator.
 - c. A sampling of at least 40 completed welds for a job shall be made for such reduction evaluation.
 - 1) For evaluating the reject rate of continuous welds over 3 feet in length where the effective throat is 1 inch or less, each 12 inch increment or fraction thereof shall be considered as one weld.
 - 2) For evaluating the reject rate on continuous welds over 3 feet in length where the effective throat is greater than 1 inch, each 6 inches of length or fraction thereof shall be considered one weld.
6. Increase in Rate of Ultrasonic Testing
 - a. Where the initial rate for UT is 10%, the NDT rate for an individual welder or welding operator shall be increased to 100% should the reject rate, the number of welds containing unacceptable defects divided by the number of welds completed, exceeds 5% of the welds tested for the welder or welding operator.
 - b. A sampling of at least 20 completed welds for a job shall be made prior to implementing such an increase.
 - c. When the reject rate for the welder or welding operator, after a sampling of at least 40 completed welds, has fallen to 5% or less, the rate of UT shall be returned to 10%.
 - 1) For evaluating the reject rate of continuous welds over 3 ft in length where the effective throat is 1 in. or less, each 12-inch increment or fraction thereof shall be considered as one weld.
 - 2) For evaluating the reject rate on continuous welds over 3 feet in length where the effective throat is greater than 1 inch., each 6 inches of length or fraction thereof shall be considered one weld.
7. Documentation
 - a. All NDT performed shall be documented.

- b. For shop fabrication, the NDT report shall identify the tested weld by piece mark and location in the piece.
 - c. For field work, the NDT report shall identify the tested weld by location in the structure, piece mark, and location in the piece. When a weld is rejected on the basis of NDT, the NDT record shall indicate the location of the defect and the basis of rejection.
- G. Inspection of High-Strength Bolting
 - 1. Observation of bolting operations shall be the primary method used to confirm that the materials, procedures and workmanship incorporated in construction are in conformance with the construction documents and the provisions of the RCSC Specification.
 - a. For snug-tight joints, pre-installation verification testing and monitoring of the installation procedures, as specified below, are not applicable. The QAI need not be present during the installation of fasteners in snug-tight joints.
 - 2. For pretensioned joints and slip-critical joints, when the installer is using the turn-of-nut method with matchmarking techniques, the direct-tension-indicator method, or the twist-off-type tension control bolt method, monitoring of bolt pretensioning procedures shall be as specified below. The QAI need not be present during the installation of fasteners when these methods are used by the installer.
 - 3. For pretensioned joints and slip-critical joints, when the installer is using the calibrated wrench method or the turn-of-nut method without matchmarking, monitoring of bolt pretensioning procedures shall be as specified below. The QCI and QAI shall be engaged in their assigned inspection duties during installation of fasteners when these methods are used by the installer.
 - 4. As a minimum, bolting inspection tasks shall be in accordance with the tasks listed below.
- H. Inspection Tasks Prior to Bolting
 - 1. Manufacturer's certifications available for fastener materials
 - 2. Fasteners marked in accordance with ASTM requirements
 - 3. Proper fasteners selected for the joint detail (grade, type, bolt length if threads are to be excluded from shear plane)
 - 4. Proper bolting procedure selected for joint detail
 - 5. Connecting elements, including the appropriate faying surface condition and hole preparation, if specified, meet applicable requirements
 - 6. Pre-installation verification testing by installation personnel observed and documented for fastener assemblies and methods used
 - 7. Proper storage provided for bolts, nuts, washers and other fastener components
- I. Inspection Tasks During Bolting
 - 1. Fastener assemblies, of suitable condition, placed in all holes and washers (if required) are positioned as required
 - 2. Joint brought to the snug-tight condition prior to the pretensioning operation
 - 3. Fastener component not turned by the wrench prevented from rotating
 - 4. Fasteners are pretensioned in accordance with the RCSC Specification, progressing systematically from the most rigid point toward the free edges
- J. Inspection Tasks After Bolting
 - 1. Document acceptance or rejection of bolted connections
- K. Other Inspection Tasks
 - 1. The fabricator's QCI shall inspect the fabricated steel to verify compliance with the details shown on the shop drawings, such as proper application of joint details at each connection.

2. The erector's QCI shall inspect the erected steel frame to verify compliance with the details shown on the erection drawings, such as braces, stiffeners, member locations and proper application of joint details at each connection.
3. The QAI shall be on the premises for inspection during the placement of anchor rods and other embedments supporting structural steel for compliance with the construction documents.
 - a. As a minimum, the diameter, grade, type and length of the anchor rod or embedded item, and the extent or depth of embedment into the concrete, shall be verified prior to placement of concrete.
4. The QAI shall inspect the fabricated steel or erected steel frame, as appropriate, to verify compliance with the details shown on the construction documents, such as braces, stiffeners, member locations and proper application of joint details at each connection.

L. NONCONFORMING MATERIAL AND WORKMANSHIP

1. Identification and rejection of material or workmanship that is not in conformance with the construction documents shall be permitted at any time during the progress of the work. However, this provision shall not relieve the owner or the inspector of the obligation for timely, in-sequence inspections.
2. Nonconforming material and workmanship shall be brought to the immediate attention of the fabricator or erector, as applicable.
3. Nonconforming material or workmanship shall be brought into conformance, or made suitable for its intended purpose as determined by the engineer of record.
4. Concurrent with the submittal of such reports to the AHJ, EOR or owner, the QA agency shall submit to the fabricator and erector:
 - a. Nonconformance reports
 - b. Reports of repair, replacement or acceptance of nonconforming items

3.07 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Bituminous Coatings: Apply a bituminous coating to steel embedded in concrete or mortar.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
- C. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.

DELEGATED INSPECTION OF non-AISC CERTIFIED STEEL FABRICATORS, CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE

PROJECT: _____ DATE: _____

LOCATION: _____

ARCHITECT: _____

CONSTRUCTION MANAGER: _____

Ohio Building Code 2017 section 1704.2 requires that all fabrication of structural load-bearing members and assemblies be inspected by the independent, third-party Special Inspection Agency responsible for the project. *OBC 1704.25* provides an exemption for a board recognized industry trade association certification program in accordance with rule 4101:7-6-01 of the Administrative Code. AISC Certified steel fabricators meet this exemption. This form is to signify that a non-AISC Certified fabricator has been selected and shop fabrication is to be coordinated with the project Special Inspector. Shell+Meyer Associates is not responsible for scheduling special inspections. Note that it is the responsibility of the Construction Manager to coordinate additional inspection fees for delegated Special Inspection with the Architect/Owner prior to awarding the steel contract.

Non-AISC CERTIFIED FABRICATOR AND DELEGATED SPECIAL INSPECTION REQUIRED
To be completed by Delegated Inspector upon completion of fabrication:

I hereby certify that per *OBC* section 1704.2 Inspection of Fabricators that the steel fabrication within the scope of work for this project has been inspected in accordance with *OBC 2011* Chapter 17, ANSI/AISC 360-10 *Specification for Structural Steel Buildings* Chapter N, and the REQUIRED STRUCTURAL SPECIAL INSPECTIONS as listed on the contract documents. When provisions conflict between sources, the most rigorous requirements shall apply. *See attached for copies of inspection reports.*

Initial all that apply:

- _____ Architect has been notified prior to submitting bid
- _____ Construction Manager has been notified prior to submitting bid
- _____ Project Special Inspector has been notified and work has been coordinated.
- _____ All outstanding inspection issues have been resolved.

Signed: _____

Date: _____

Representing: _____

For the delegated inspection of

Fabricator: _____

Location: _____



END OF SECTION

SECTION 051213 - ARCHITECTURALLY EXPOSED STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes architecturally exposed structural-steel (AESS).
 - 1. Requirements in Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" also apply to AESS.
- B. This section applies only to ~~the horizontal mid-height Hollow Structural Sections behind the curtain wall system and their connections to the primary columns.~~

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. AESS: Structural steel designated as "architecturally exposed structural steel" or "AESS" in the Contract Documents.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of AESS components. Shop Drawings for structural steel may be used for AESS provided items of AESS are specifically identified and requirements below are met for AESS.
 - 1. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain. Indicate grinding, finish, and profile of welds.
 - 2. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Use special care in handling to prevent twisting, warping, nicking, and other damage. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
 - 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Where AESS is indicated to fit against other construction, verify actual dimensions by field measurements before fabrication.
~~1. Applies to horizontal curtain wall tubes only.~~

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FILLER

- A. Filler: Polyester filler intended for use in repairing dents in automobile bodies.

2.2 FABRICATION

- A. In addition to special care used to handle and fabricate AESS, comply with the following:
1. Fabricate with exposed surfaces smooth, square, and free of surface blemishes including pitting, rust, scale, and roughness.
 2. Grind sheared, punched, and flame-cut edges of AESS to provide smooth surfaces and edges.
 3. Fabricate AESS with exposed surfaces free of mill marks.
 4. Fabricate AESS with exposed surfaces free of seams to maximum extent possible.
 5. Remove blemishes by filling or grinding or by welding and grinding, before cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
 6. Fabricate with piece marks fully hidden in the completed structure or made with media that permits full removal after erection.
 7. Fabricate AESS to the tolerances specified in AISC 303 for steel that is designated AESS.
 8. Seal-weld open ends of hollow structural sections with 3/8-inch closure plates.
- B. Joint Gaps: Maintain uniform gaps of 1/8 inch with a tolerance of 1/32 inch.
- C. Seams:
1. Orient seams on columns away from public view to the largest extent practical.
 - a. Exterior column seams shall be directed inward toward the building.
 - b. Interior column seams shall be directed outward toward the exterior of the building.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with steel erector present, elevations of concrete bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep AESS secure, plumb, and in alignment.

1. If possible, locate welded tabs for attaching temporary bracing and safety cabling where they will be concealed from view in the completed Work.

3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set AESS accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
 1. Erect AESS to the tolerances specified in AISC 303 for steel that is designated AESS.
- B. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Architect. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. Weld Connections: Comply with requirements in "Weld Connections" Paragraph in "Shop Connections" Article.
 1. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs; back-gouge and grind steel smooth.
 2. Remove erection bolts, fill holes, and grind smooth.
 3. Fill weld access holes and grind smooth.

B. Bolted Connections:

1. Where bolts are visible to public view orientate bolt heads in a uniform.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect AESS as specified in Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing." The testing agency is not responsible for enforcing requirements relating to aesthetic effect.
- B. Architect will observe AESS in place to determine acceptability relating to aesthetic effect.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove welded tabs that were used for attaching temporary bracing and safety cabling and that are exposed to view in the completed Work. Grind steel smooth.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

END OF SECTION 051213

SECTION 057300 - DECORATIVE METAL RAILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel and iron decorative railings.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 064023 "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for wood railings.

1.2 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written instructions to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver items to Project site in time for installation.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Manufacturer's product lines of decorative metal railings assembled from standard components.
2. Fasteners.
3. Post-installed anchors.
4. Handrail brackets.
5. Wood rails.
6. Shop primer.
7. Intermediate coats and topcoats.
8. Bituminous paint.
9. Nonshrink, nonmetallic grout.
10. Anchoring cement.
11. Metal finishes.

- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required.

1. Sections of each distinctly different linear railing member, including handrails, top rails, posts, and balusters
- D. Delegated Design Submittal: For railings, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For delegated design professional engineer.
- B. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless steel products, certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:
 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of railings from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with railings by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design railings, including attachment to building construction.
- B. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, are to withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
 1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
 - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ft. applied in any direction.
 - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
 - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 2. Infill of Guards:

- a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft..
 - b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior railings by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
- 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
- B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Same metal and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 STEEL AND IRON DECORATIVE RAILINGS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain steel decorative railing components from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Refer to Drawings for details of the Event Center. Refer to Drawings for details regarding existing ornamental railing to be matched at the Gerber House.
- C. Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M (cold formed) or ASTM A513/A513M, Type 5.
- D. Bars: Hot-rolled, carbon steel complying with ASTM A29/A29M, Grade 1010.
- E. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
- F. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A48/A48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A47/A47M, unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. Fastener Materials:
 - 1. Ungalvanized-Steel Railing Components: Plated-steel fasteners complying with ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5 for electrodeposited zinc coating where concealed; Type 304 stainless steel fasteners where exposed.
 - 2. Hot-Dip Galvanized-Steel Railing Components: Type 304 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329/F2329M for zinc coating.
 - 3. Dissimilar Metal Railing Components: Type 304 stainless steel fasteners.
 - 4. Finish exposed fasteners to match appearance, including color and texture, of railings.
- B. Fasteners for Anchoring to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction and capable of withstanding design loads.
- C. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching railings to other work unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide Phillips, square or hex socket flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, in accordance with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC193 or ICC-ES AC308.
1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593 and nuts, ASTM F594.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Handrail Brackets: Cast-aluminum, center of handrail 2-1/2 inches from face of railing.
1. Provide either formed- or cast-metal brackets with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage.
- B. Wood Rails:
1. Clear, straight-grained hardwood rails secured to recessed metal subrail.
 - a. Species: White oak.
 - b. Finish: Transparent polyurethane.
 - c. Staining: Match Architect's sample.
 - d. Profile: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- D. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- E. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound.
1. Water-Resistant Product: At exterior locations, provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
- B. Shop assemble railings to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations.
1. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately.
1. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water.
1. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
 2. Locate weep holes in inconspicuous locations.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove flux immediately.
 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Finish #1 welds; ornamental quality with no evidence of a welded joint.
- I. Form changes in direction as follows:
1. As detailed.
- J. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- K. Close exposed ends of hollow railing members with prefabricated cap and end fittings of same metal and finish as railings.
- L. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns, unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.
- M. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, handrail brackets, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other Work unless otherwise indicated.
1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and to prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
- N. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry Work.
1. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings.
 2. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.

- O. For railing posts set in concrete, provide stainless steel sleeves not less than 6 inches long with inside dimensions not less than 1/2 inch greater than outside dimensions of post, with metal plate forming bottom closure.
- P. For removable railing posts, fabricate slip-fit sockets from stainless steel tube or pipe whose ID is sized for a close fit with posts; limit movement of post without lateral load, measured at top, to not more than one-fortieth of post height.
 - 1. Provide socket covers designed and fabricated to resist being dislodged.
 - 2. Provide chain with eye, snap hook, and staple across gaps formed by removable railing sections at locations indicated. Fabricate from same metal as railings.
- Q. Toe Boards: Where indicated on Drawings, provide toe boards at railings around openings and at edge of open-sided floors and platforms. Fabricate to dimensions and details indicated.

2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipment.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of railings.

2.8 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. For nongalvanized-steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves; however, hot-dip galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3.
 - 1. Exterior Railings: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3.
 - 2. Railings Indicated To Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3.
 - 3. Railings Indicated To Receive Primers Specified in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3.
 - 4. Other Railings: SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.
- C. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1 for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
 - 1. Shop prime uncoated railings with primers specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" unless indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements have been clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings.
 - 1. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
 - 2. Install railings level, plumb, square, true to line; without distortion, warp, or rack.
 - 3. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels.
 - 4. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that have been coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
 - 5. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet.
 - 6. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet.
- B. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.
- C. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

- A. Nonwelded Connections: Use mechanical or adhesive joints for permanently connecting railing components. Use wood blocks and padding to prevent damage to railing members and fittings. Seal recessed holes of exposed locking screws, using plastic cement filler colored to match finish of railings.
- B. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article, whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.
- C. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve, extending 2 inches beyond joint on either side; fasten internal sleeve securely to one side; and locate joint within 6 inches of post.

3.4 ANCHORING POSTS

- A. Use stainless steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout

or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, attached to post with setscrews.
- D. Leave anchorage joint exposed with 1/8-inch buildup, sloped away from post.
- E. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with flanges, angle type, or floor type as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
 - 1. For steel railings, weld flanges to posts and bolt to metal-supporting surfaces.

3.5 ATTACHING RAILINGS

- A. Anchor railing ends to concrete and masonry with sleeves concealed within railing ends and anchored to wall construction with anchors and bolts.
- B. Attach handrails to walls with wall brackets. Provide brackets with 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface.
 - 1. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt.
 - 2. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
- C. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
 - 1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
 - 2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
 - 3. For wood stud partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into studs or wood backing between studs. Coordinate with carpentry work to locate backing members.
 - 4. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.

3.6 REPAIR

- A. Touchup Painting:
 - 1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap, rinsing with clean water, and wiping dry.

- B. Clean wood rails by wiping with a damp cloth and then wiping dry.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period, so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

END OF SECTION 057300

6

DIVISION

WOODS, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wood products.
2. Wood-preservative-treated lumber.
3. Fire-retardant-treated lumber.
4. Dimension lumber framing.
5. Miscellaneous lumber.
6. Plywood backing panels.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for sheathing, subflooring, and underlayment.
2. Section 064013 "Exterior Architectural Woodwork" for exterior wood stairs and railings.
3. Section 064023 "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for interior wood stairs and railings.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than **2 inches nominal (38 mm actual)** size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of **2 inches nominal (38 mm actual)** size or greater but less than **5 inches nominal (114 mm actual)** size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- D. Lumber grading agencies, and abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
 2. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
 3. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
 4. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
 5. WWSA: Western Wood Products Association.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include

physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.

3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency in accordance with ASTM D5664.
4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Material Certificates:

1. For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
2. For preservative-treated wood products. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- ##### A.
- Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS

- ##### A.
- Lumber: Comply with DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece [or] omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.

[In DOC PS 20, dressed sizes of green lumber are larger than those of dry lumber.](#)

3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry wood products.
4. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Maximum Moisture Content:

1. Boards: 15 percent.

2. Dimension Lumber: 15 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less; 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A U1, Use categories as follows:

1. UC1: Interior construction not in contact with ground or subject to moisture. Include the following items:
 - a. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
 - b. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
 - c. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.
2. UC2: Interior construction not in contact with ground but may be subject to moisture. Include the following items:
 - a. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, [furring,] [stripping,] and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
 - b. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
 - c. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.
 - d. Wood millwork.
 - e. Wood flooring.
 - f. <Insert item>.
3. UC3A (Commodity Specification A): Coated sawn products in exterior construction not in contact with ground but exposed to all weather cycles including intermittent wetting. Include [all rough carpentry.] [the following items:]
 - a. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 - b. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches (460 mm) above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
4. UC3A (All Other Commodity Specifications): Coated products excluding sawn products in exterior construction not in contact with ground, exposed to all weather cycles but protected from liquid water. Include the following items:
 - a. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 - b. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches (460 mm) above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
 - c. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

CITY OF CENTERVILLE
BENHAM'S GROVE EVENT CENTER + CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS
LWC Commission No.: 22627.00

5. UC3B (Commodity Specification A): Uncoated sawn products in exterior construction not in contact with ground, exposed to all weather cycles including intermittent wetting but with sufficient air circulation for wood to dry. Excludes sawn products not in contact with ground but with ground contact-type hazards. Include the following items:
 - a. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 - b. Wood framing members that are less than **18 inches (460 mm)** above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.

 6. UC3B (All Other Commodity Specifications): Uncoated products excluding sawn products in exterior construction not in contact with ground, exposed to all weather cycles including prolonged wetting. Include the following items:
 - a. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 - b. Wood framing members that are less than **18 inches (460 mm)** above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.

 7. UC4A (Commodity Specification A): Non-critical sawn products in contact with ground and exposed to all weather cycles including continuous or prolonged wetting, and sawn products not in contact with ground but with ground contact-type hazards or that are critical or hard to replace. Include the following items:
 - a. Wood framing members that are less than **6 inches (152 mm)** above the ground.
 - b. Joists and beams when they are difficult to maintain, repair, or replace and are critical to the performance and safety of the entire system/construction.

 8. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium .Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
 9. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations are not to require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
 10. After treatment, redry dimension lumber to 19 percent maximum moisture content.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:

1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
4. Wood framing members that are less than **18 inches (460 mm)** above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED LUMBER

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, materials are to comply with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than **10.5 feet (3.2 m)** beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
 1. Treatment is not to promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials are to comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering in accordance with ASTM D2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
 3. Interior Type A: Treated materials are to have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested in accordance with ASTM D3201/D3201M at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
 4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber is to be tested according to ASTM D5664 and design value adjustment factors are to be calculated according to ASTM D6841.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency and other information required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by testing agency.
- E. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations are not to bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- F. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 1. **<Insert item>**.

2.4 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING

A. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions by Grade: Construction or No. 2 grade.

1. Application: All interior partitions
2. Species:
 - a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
 - b. Southern pine or mixed southern pine; SPIB.
 - c. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
 - d. Hem-fir; WCLIB, or WWPA.
 - e. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

Northern species includes hem-fir (north) and spruce-pine-fir.

- f. Northern species; NLGA.

Eastern softwoods includes spruce-pine-fir (south).

- g. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.

Western woods includes hem-fir and spruce-pine-fir (south).

- h. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.

B. Load-Bearing Partitions by Grade: Construction or No. 2 grade.

1. Application: Exterior walls and interior load-bearing partitions.
2. Species:
 - a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
 - b. Southern pine; SPIB.
 - c. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
 - d. Southern pine or mixed southern pine; SPIB.
 - e. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
 - f. Douglas fir-south; WWPA.
 - g. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
 - h. Douglas fir-larch (north); NLGA.
 - i. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

C. Ceiling Joists: Construction or No. 2 grade.

1. Species:
 - a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
 - b. Southern pine; SPIB.
 - c. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
 - d. Douglas fir-larch (north); NLGA.
 - e. Southern pine or mixed southern pine; SPIB.
 - f. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
 - g. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
 - h. Douglas fir-south; WWPA.
 - i. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

Northern species includes hem-fir (north), spruce-pine-fir, and Douglas fir-larch (north).

- j. Northern species; NLGA.

Eastern softwoods includes spruce-pine-fir (south).

- k. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.

Western woods includes hem-fir, Douglas fir-larch, spruce-pine-fir (south), and Douglas fir-south.

- l. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.

D. Joists, Rafters, and Other Framing by Grade: No. 2 grade.

1. Species:

- a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
- b. Southern pine; SPIB.
- c. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
- d. Southern pine or mixed southern pine; SPIB.
- e. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
- f. Douglas fir-south; WWPA.
- g. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
- h. Douglas fir-larch (north); NLGA.
- i. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

E. Exposed Framing: Hand-select material indicated to receive a stained or natural finish for uniformity of appearance and freedom from characteristics, on exposed surfaces and edges, that would impair finish appearance, including decay, honeycomb, knot-holes, shake, splits, torn grain, and wane.

1. Species and Grade:

- a. As indicated above for load-bearing construction of same type.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

A. Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:

1. Blocking.
2. Nailers.
3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
4. Cants.
5. Furring.
6. Grounds.
7. Utility shelving.

B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of any of the following species:

1. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
2. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; SPIB.
3. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.

4. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
5. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

Western woods includes hem-fir and spruce-pine-fir (south).

6. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.

Northern species includes hem-fir (north) and spruce-pine-fir.

7. Northern species; NLGA.

Eastern softwoods includes spruce-pine-fir (south).

8. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.

C. Utility Shelving: Lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content of any of the following species and grades:

1. Eastern white pine, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; Premium or No. 2 Common (Sterling)]grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
2. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; No. 1 grade; SPIB.
3. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north); Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
4. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir; Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

D. Concealed Boards: 15 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:

1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; No. [2] [3] grade; SPIB.
2. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north); Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
3. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir; Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
4. Eastern softwoods; No. 2 Common grade; NeLMA.
5. Northern species; No. 2 Common grade; NLGA.
6. Western woods; Construction or No. 2 Common grade; WCLIB or WWPA.

The use of nontreated, construction-grade wood is suitable for use in roof assemblies provided reasonable measures are taken to ensure that the untreated wood remains reasonably dry when in service.

E. Roofing Nailers: Structural- or No. 2-grade lumber or better; kiln-dried Douglas fir, southern pine, or wood having similar decay-resistant properties.

F. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.

G. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.6 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: Plywood, DOC PS 1, Exterior, A-C, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 3/4-inch (19-mm) nominal thickness.

2.7 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners are to be of size and type indicated and comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** into wood substrate.

1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners of Type 304 stainless steel.

California Redwood Association recommends stainless steel fasteners or hot-dip galvanized-steel fasteners.

- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

ICC-ES AC01 and ICC-ES AC193 are for mechanical anchors in masonry and concrete respectively, ICC-ES AC58 and ICC-ES AC308 are for adhesive anchors in masonry and concrete.

- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01, ICC-ES AC58, ICC-ES AC193, or ICC-ES AC308, as appropriate for the substrate.

2.8 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

- A. Post Bases: Adjustable-socket type for bolting in place with standoff plate to raise post **1 inch (25 mm)** above base and with **2-inch- (50-mm-)** minimum side cover, socket **0.062 inch (1.6 mm)** thick, and standoff and adjustment plates **0.108 inch (2.8 mm)** thick.

- B. Joist Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying joists together over supports.

1. Width: [**3/4 inch (19 mm)**].
2. Thickness: **0.050 inch (1.3 mm)**.
3. Length: **16 inches (400 mm)**.

- C. Rafter Tie-Downs: Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** wide by **0.050 inch (1.3 mm)** thick. Tie fastens to side of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.

- D. Floor-to-Floor Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying upper floor wall studs to band joists and lower floor studs, **1-1/4 inches (32 mm)** wide by **0.050 inch (1.3 mm)** thick by **36 inches (914 mm)** long.

CITY OF CENTERVILLE
BENHAM'S GROVE EVENT CENTER + CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS
LWC Commission No.: 22627.00

E. Hold-Downs: Brackets for bolting to wall studs and securing to foundation walls with anchor bolts or to other hold-downs with threaded rods and designed with first of two bolts placed seven bolt diameters from reinforced base.

1. Bolt Diameter: **5/8 inch (15.8 mm)**.
2. Width: **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)**.
3. Body Thickness: **0.108 inch (2.8 mm)**.
4. Base Reinforcement Thickness: **0.108 inch (2.8 mm)**.

F. Wall Bracing:

1. T-shaped bracing made for letting into studs in saw kerf, **1-1/8 inches (29 mm)** wide by **9/16 inch (14 mm)** deep by **0.034 inch (0.85 mm)** thick with hemmed edges.
2. Angle bracing made for letting into studs in saw kerf, **15/16 by 15/16 by 0.040 inch (24 by 24 by 1 mm)** thick with hemmed edges.

G. Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from the following materials:

Galvanized steel is typical for most manufacturers and is suitable for most applications. Some manufacturers offer specialty finishes for exposed uses.

1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, **G60 (Z180)** coating designation.
 - a. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.
2. Heavy-Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M; structural steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); **G185 (Z550)** coating designation; and not less than **0.036 inch (0.9 mm)** thick.
 - a. Use for wood-preservative-treated lumber and where indicated.

Type 304 stainless steel is usually standard; use Type 316 where subject to salt spray or immersion in salt water. Type 316 is more expensive and cannot be distinguished from Type 304 except by chemical tests.

3. Stainless steel bars and shapes complying with ASTM A276/A276M, Type 304
 - a. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets:

1. Closed-cell neoprene foam, **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.

B. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber, or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than **0.025 inch (0.6 mm)**.

- C. Adhesives for Gluing Furring and Sleepers to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
- D. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chlorpyrifos as its active ingredient.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Set work to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate furring, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- C. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels
- D. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- E. Install sill sealer gasket to form continuous seal between sill plates and foundation walls.
- F. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
 - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than **16 inches (406 mm)** o.c.
- H. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
 - 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than **96 inches (2438 mm)** o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
 - 2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than **96 inches (2438 mm)** o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and **2-inch nominal (38-mm actual)** thickness.
 - 3. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than **100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m)** and to solidly fill space below partitions.

4. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than **20 feet (6 m)** o.c.

- I. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

- J. Comply with AWPAC M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.

- K. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.

- L. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 1. Table 2304.10.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.

Methods used to fasten nailers vary with building construction. Refer to FM Global's "Factory Mutual Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 (Perimeter Flashing)" for spacing and sizing of fasteners based on wind zones.

- M. Securely attach roofing nailers to substrates by anchoring and fastening to withstand bending, shear, or other stresses imparted by Project wind loads and fastener-resistance loads as designed in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.

 - N. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD BLOCKING AND NAILERS
- A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.

 - B. Attach wood blocking to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

 - C. Attach wood roofing nailers securely to substrate to resist the designed outward and upward wind loads indicated on Drawings and in accordance with ANSI/SPRI ED-1, Tables A6 and A7.

- D. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF WOOD FURRING

- A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.
- B. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install **1-by-3-inch nominal- (19-by-63-mm actual-)** size furring horizontally and vertically at **24 inches (610 mm)** 600 mm o.c.
- C. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board or Plaster Lath: Install **1-by-2-inch nominal- (19-by-38-mm actual-)** size furring vertically at **16 inches (406 mm)**.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF WALL AND PARTITION FRAMING

- A. General: Provide single bottom plate and double top plates using members of **2-inch nominal (38-mm actual)** thickness whose widths equal that of studs, except single top plate may be used for non-load-bearing partitions and for load-bearing partitions where framing members bearing on partition are located directly over studs. Fasten plates to supporting construction unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. For exterior walls, provide **2-by-6-inch nominal- (38-by-140-mm actual-)** size wood studs spaced **16 inches (406 mm)** o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For interior partitions and walls, provide **2-by-4-inch nominal- (38-by-89-mm actual-)** size wood studs spaced **16 inches (406 mm)** o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Provide continuous horizontal blocking at midheight of partitions more than **96 inches (2438 mm)** high, using members of **2-inch nominal (38-mm actual)** thickness and of same width as wall or partitions.
- B. Construct corners and intersections with three or more studs, except that two studs may be used for interior non-load-bearing partitions.
- C. Frame openings with multiple studs and headers. Provide nailed header members of thickness equal to width of studs. Support headers on jamb studs.
 - 1. For non-load-bearing partitions, provide double-jamb studs and headers not less than **4-inch nominal (89-mm actual)** depth for openings **48 inches (1200 mm)** and less in width, **6-inch nominal (140-mm actual)** depth for openings **48 to 72 inches (1200 to 1800 mm)** in width, **8-inch nominal (184-mm actual)** depth for openings **72 to 120 inches (1800 to 3000 mm)** in width, and not less than **10-inch nominal (235-mm actual)** depth for openings **10 to 12 feet (3 to 3.6 m)** in width.
 - 2. For load-bearing walls, provide double-jamb studs for openings **60 inches (1500 mm)** and less in width, and triple-jamb studs for wider openings. Provide headers of depth indicated or, if not indicated, according to Table R502.5(1) or Table R502.5(2), as applicable, in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.

- D. Provide diagonal bracing in exterior walls, at both walls of each external corner, at 45-degree angle, full-story height unless otherwise indicated. metal wall bracing, let into studs in saw kerf.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLOOR JOIST FRAMING

- A. General: Install floor joists with crown edge up and support ends of each member with not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** of bearing on wood or metal, or **3 inches (76 mm)** on masonry. Attach floor joists as follows:
1. Where supported on wood members, by toe nailing or by using metal framing anchors.
 2. Where framed into wood supporting members, by using wood ledgers as indicated or, if not indicated, by using metal joist hangers.
- B. Fire Cuts: At joists built into masonry, bevel cut ends **3 inches (76 mm)** and do not embed more than **4 inches (102 mm)**.
- C. Frame openings with headers and trimmers supported by metal joist hangers; double headers and trimmers where span of header exceeds **48 inches (1200 mm)**.
- D. Do not notch in middle third of joists; limit notches to one-sixth depth of joist, one-third at ends. Do not bore holes larger than one-third depth of joist; do not locate closer than **2 inches (50 mm)** from top or bottom.
- E. Provide solid blocking of **2-inch nominal (38-mm actual)** thickness by depth of joist at ends of joists unless nailed to header or band.
- F. Lap members framing from opposite sides of beams, girders, or partitions not less than **4 inches (102 mm)** or securely tie opposing members together. Provide solid blocking of **2-inch nominal (38-mm actual)** thickness by depth of joist over supports.
- G. Anchor members paralleling masonry with **1/4-by-1-1/4-inch (6.4-by-32-mm)** metal strap anchors spaced not more than **96 inches (2438 mm)** o.c., extending over and fastening to three joists. Embed anchors at least **4 inches (102 mm)** into grouted masonry with ends bent at right angles and extending **4 inches (102 mm)** beyond bend.
- H. Provide solid blocking between joists under jamb studs for openings.
- I. Under non-load-bearing partitions, provide double joists separated by solid blocking equal to depth of studs above.
1. Provide triple joists separated as above, under partitions receiving ceramic tile and similar heavy finishes or fixtures.
- J. Provide bridging of type indicated below, at intervals of **96 inches (2438 mm)** o.c., between joists.
1. Diagonal wood bridging formed from bevel-cut, **1-by-3-inch nominal- (19-by-64-mm actual-)** size lumber, double-crossed and nailed at both ends to joists.
 2. Steel bridging installed to comply with bridging manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CEILING JOIST AND RAFTER FRAMING

- A. Ceiling Joists: Install with crown edge up and complying with requirements specified above for floor joists. Face nail to ends of parallel rafters.
 - 1. Where ceiling joists are at right angles to rafters, provide additional short joists parallel to rafters from wall plate to first joist; nail to ends of rafters and to top plate, and nail to first joist or anchor with framing anchors or metal straps. Provide **1-by-8-inch nominal- (19-by-184-mm actual-)** size or **2-by-4-inch nominal- (38-by-89-mm actual-)** size stringers spaced **48 inches (1200 mm)** o.c. crosswise over main ceiling joists.
- B. Rafters: Notch to fit exterior wall plates and toe nail or use metal framing anchors. Double rafters to form headers and trimmers at openings in roof framing, if any, and support with metal hangers. Where rafters abut at ridge, place directly opposite each other and nail to ridge member or use metal ridge hangers.
 - 1. At valleys, provide double-valley rafters of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and **2 inches (50 mm)** deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against valley rafters.
 - 2. At hips, provide hip rafter of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and **2 inches (50 mm)** deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against hip rafter.
- C. Provide collar beams (ties) as indicated or, if not indicated, provide **1-by-6-inch nominal- (19-by-140-mm actual-)** size boards between every third pair of rafters, but not more than **48 inches (1219 mm)** o.c. Locate below ridge member, at third point of rafter span. Cut ends to fit roof slope and nail to rafters.
- D. Provide special framing as indicated for eaves, overhangs, dormers, and similar conditions if any.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Solid-sawn wood roof decking.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for dimension lumber items associated with wood roof decking.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- #### B. Samples: 24 inches (600 mm) long, showing the range of variation to be expected in appearance of wood roof decking.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- #### A. Schedule delivery of wood roof decking to avoid extended on-site storage and to avoid delaying the Work.

- #### B. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings. Stack wood roof decking with surfaces that are to be exposed in the final Work protected from exposure to sunlight.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD ROOF DECKING, GENERAL

- #### A. General: Comply with DOC PS 20 and with applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review.

2.2 SOLID-SAWN WOOD ROOF DECKING

- #### A. Standard for Solid-Sawn Wood Roof Decking: Comply with AITC 112.

- B. Roof Decking Species:
 - 1. Balsam fir, Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), hem-fir, hem-fir (North), southern pine, spruce pine-fir (North), western hemlock, or western hemlock (North).
- C. Roof Decking Nominal Size: 1x6 tongue and groove with centered V-groove.
- D. Roof Decking Grade:
 - 1. Select Decking.
- E. Grade Stamps: Factory mark each item with grade stamp of grading agency. Apply grade stamp to surfaces that are not exposed to view.
- F. Moisture Content: Provide wood roof decking with 15 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing.
- G. Face Surface: Smooth.
- H. Edge Pattern: Vee grooved.

2.3 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners for Solid-Sawn Roof Decking: Provide fastener size and type complying with AITC 112 for thickness of deck used.
- B. Fasteners for Glued-Laminated Roof Decking: Provide fastener size and type complying with requirements in "Installation" Article for installing laminated roof decking.
- C. Nails: Common; complying with ASTM F1667, Type I, Style 10.
- D. Fastener Material: Hot-dip galvanized steel.
- E. Sealants: Latex, complying with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and recommended by sealant manufacturer and manufacturer of substrates for intended application.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Predrill roof decking for lateral spiking to adjacent units to comply with AITC 112.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and support framing in areas to receive wood roof decking for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of wood roof decking.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install solid-sawn wood roof decking to comply with AITC 112.
 - 1. Locate end joints for combination simple and two-span continuous lay-up.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged roof decking if repairs are not approved by Architect.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Provide water-resistive barrier over roof decking as the Work progresses to protect roof decking until roofing is applied.

END OF SECTION 061516

SECTION 061600 - SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wall sheathing.
2. Roof sheathing.
3. Parapet sheathing.
4. Composite nail base insulated roof sheathing.
5. Subflooring and underlayment.
6. Sheathing joint-and-penetration treatment materials.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.
2. Section 072500 "Weather Barriers" for water-resistive barrier applied over wall sheathing.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing requirements and installation, special details, transitions, mockups, air-leakage testing, protection, and work scheduling that covers air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Wall sheathing.
2. Roof sheathing.
3. Parapet sheathing.
4. Composite nail base insulated roof sheathing.
5. Subflooring and underlayment.
6. Sheathing joint-and-penetration treatment materials.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials.
3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated plywood both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency in accordance with ASTM D5516.
4. For products receiving waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
5. For air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing, include manufacturer's technical data and tested physical and performance properties of products.

C. Shop Drawings: For air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing assemblies.

1. Show locations and extent of sheathing, accessories, and assemblies specific to Project conditions.
2. Include details for sheathing joints and cracks, counterflashing strips, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
3. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: From air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing manufacturer, certifying compatibility of sheathing accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the sheathing.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing assembly, indicating compliance with specified requirements, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
 1. Wood-preservative-treated plywood.
 2. Fire-retardant-treated plywood.
 3. Foam-plastic sheathing.
 4. Air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer of air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to set quality standards for materials and execution and for preconstruction testing.

1. Build integrated mockups of exterior wall assembly, 150 sq. ft. (14 sq. m), incorporating backup wall construction, window, storefront, door frame and sill, ties and other penetrations, and flashing to demonstrate crack and joint treatment and sealing of gaps, terminations, and penetrations of air-barrier sheathing assembly.
 - a. Coordinate construction of mockups to permit inspection and testing of sheathing before external insulation and cladding are installed.
 - b. Include junction with roofing membrane, building corner condition, and foundation wall intersection.
 - c. If Architect determines mockups do not comply with requirements, reconstruct mockups until mockups are approved.
2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

C. Testing Agency Qualifications:

1. For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.
2. For testing and inspecting agency providing tests and inspections related to air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing: an independent agency, qualified in accordance with ASTM E329 for testing indicated, and certified by Air Barrier Association of America, Inc.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: As tested in accordance with ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
- B. Air-Barrier and Water-Resistant Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Performance: Air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing assembly, and seals with adjacent construction, are to be capable of performing as a continuous air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane

flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation or water penetration. Air-barrier assemblies are to be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, penetrations, tie-ins to other installed air barriers, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.

2.2 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS

- A. Emissions: Products are to meet the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.
- C. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

2.3 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWWA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
 - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
- B. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings and plywood in contact with masonry or concrete or used with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.

2.4 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than **10.5 feet (3.2 m)** beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
 - 1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
 - 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials are to comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated

weathering in accordance with ASTM D2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.

3. Interior Type A: Treated materials are to have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested in accordance with ASTM D3201/D3201M at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
 4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber plywood is to be tested in accordance with ASTM D5516 and design value adjustment factors are to be calculated in accordance with ASTM D6305. Span ratings after treatment are to be not less than span ratings specified. For roof sheathing and where high-temperature fire-retardant treatment is indicated, span ratings for temperatures up to **170 deg F (76 deg C)** are to be not less than span ratings specified.
- C. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated plywood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. Application: Treat plywood indicated on Drawings, and the following:
1. Subflooring and underlayment for raised platforms.

2.5 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing, Walls: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, Structural I sheathing.
1. Span Rating: Not less than 24/0.
 2. Size: **48 by 96 inches (1219 by 2438 mm)** for vertical installation.
- B. Cementitious Backer Units, Walls: ASTM C1325, Type A.
1. Thickness: As indicated.

2.6 ROOF SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing, Roofs: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exterior, Structural I Exterior sheathing.
1. Span Rating: Not less than 24/0.
 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than **15/32 inch (11.9 mm)**.
- B. Oriented-Strand-Board Sheathing, Roofs: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, Structural I sheathing.
1. Span Rating: Not less than 24/0.
 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm)**.

2.7 PARAPET SHEATHING

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing, Parapets: ASTM C1177/C1177M.
1. Type and Thickness: Regular, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick, unless noted otherwise.

2. Size: 48 by 96 inches (1219 by 2438 mm) for vertical installation.

2.8 COMPOSITE NAIL BASE INSULATED ROOF SHEATHING

- A. Oriented-Strand-Board-Surfaced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Sheathing: ASTM C1289, Type V with DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 oriented strand board on one face. For use at standing seam metal roofs. Basis-of-Design: GAF ThermoCal, non-ventilated roof and insulation panels.
 1. Polyisocyanurate-Foam Thickness: 5 inches (128 mm) .
 2. Oriented-Strand-Board Nominal Thickness: 7/16 inch (11.1 mm).
- B. Vented, Oriented-Strand-Board-Surfaced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Sheathing: ASTM C1289, Type II, Class 1, with DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 oriented strand board adhered to spacers on one face for use at asphalt shingle roofs.
 1. Basis-of-Design: GAF ThermoCal 2 ventilated roof insulation panels.
 2. Polyisocyanurate-Foam Thickness: 3-1/2 inches (89 mm).
 3. Oriented-Strand-Board Nominal Thickness: 7/16 inch (11.1 mm).
 4. Spacers: Wood furring strips or blocks not less than 1 inch thick and spaced not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
 5. Layers: 7/16" OSB Top 1" airspace 7/16" osb on the insulation, 3.5" polyisocyanurate insulation.

2.9 SUBFLOORING AND UNDERLAYMENT

- A. Plywood Combination Subfloor-Underlayment: DOC PS 1, Exterior, Structural I, C-C Plugged single-floor panels.
 1. Span Rating: Not less than 24.
 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 23/32 inch (18.3 mm).
 3. Edge Detail: Tongue and groove.
 4. Surface Finish: Fully sanded face.

For resilient flooring, APA recommends separate subflooring and underlayment rather than single-layer floor. See the Evaluations for information about durability classifications of oriented strand board.

- B. Oriented-Strand-Board Combination Subfloor-Underlayment: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 single-floor panels.
 1. Span Rating: Not less than 24.
 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 23/32 inch (18.3 mm).
 3. Edge Detail: Tongue and groove.
 4. Surface Finish: Fully sanded face.
- C. Plywood Subflooring: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exterior, Structural I single-floor panels or sheathing.
 1. Span Rating: Not less than 24.
 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 23/32 inch (18.3 mm).
- D. Oriented-Strand-Board Subflooring: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, Structural I sheathing.

1. Span Rating: Not less than 24.
 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than **23/32 inch (18.3 mm)**.
- E. Underlayment: Provide underlayment in nominal thicknesses indicated or, if not indicated, not less than **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** over smooth subfloors and not less than **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** over board or uneven subfloors.
1. Plywood Underlayment for Resilient Flooring: DOC PS 1, Exterior A-C with fully sanded face.
 2. Plywood Underlayment for Ceramic Tile: DOC PS 1, Exterior, C-C Plugged, not less than **5/8-inch (15.9-mm)** nominal thickness.
 3. Plywood Underlayment for Carpet: DOC PS 1, Exterior, C-C Plugged.
 4. Hardboard Underlayment: ANSI A135.4, Class 4 (Service), Surface S1S; with back side sanded.

2.10 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
1. For roof parapet and wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Screws for Fastening Sheathing to Wood Framing: ASTM C1002.
- E. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
- F. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached.
1. For steel framing less than **0.0329 inch (0.835 mm)** thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C1002.
 2. For steel framing from **0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm)** thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C954.
- G. Screws for Fastening Composite Nail Base Insulated Roof Sheathing to Metal Roof Deck: Steel drill screws, in type and length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours in accordance with ASTM B117. Provide washers or plates if recommended by sheathing manufacturer.

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives for Field Gluing Panels to Wood Framing: Formulation complying with APA AFG-01 that is approved for use with type of construction panel indicated by manufacturers of both adhesives and panels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.10.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the ICC's International Building Code.
 - 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in the ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
 - 3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- D. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- E. Coordinate wall parapet and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
 - 1. Combination Subfloor-Underlayment:

- a. Glue and nail to wood framing.
 - b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
 - c. Space panels **1/8 inch (3 mm)** apart at edges and ends.
2. Subflooring:
- a. Glue and nail to wood framing.
 - b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
 - c. Space panels **1/8 inch (3 mm)** apart at edges and ends.
3. Wall and Roof Sheathing:
- a. Nail to wood framing.
4. Underlayment:
- a. Nail or staple to subflooring.
 - b. Space panels **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)** apart at edges and ends.
 - c. Fill and sand edge joints of underlayment receiving resilient flooring immediately before installing flooring.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNITS

- A. Install panels and treat joints in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF FIBERBOARD SHEATHING

- A. Comply with ASTM C846 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install sheathing vertically with long edges parallel to, and centered over, studs. Install solid wood blocking where end joints do not occur over framing. Allow **1/8-inch (3-mm)** open space between edges and ends of adjacent units. Stagger horizontal joints if any.
- C. Cover sheathing as soon as practical after installation to prevent deterioration from wetting.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF PARTICLEBOARD UNDERLAYMENT

- A. Comply with CPA's recommendations for type of subfloor indicated. Fill and sand gouges, gaps, and chipped edges. Sand uneven joints flush.
 1. Fastening Method: Nail or staple underlayment to subflooring.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspections: Air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing, accessories, and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements. Inspections may include the following:

CITY OF CENTERVILLE
BENHAM'S GROVE EVENT CENTER + CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS
LWC Commission No.: 22627.00

1. Continuity of air-barrier system has been achieved throughout the building envelope with no gaps or holes.
 2. Laps in strips and transition strips have complied with minimum requirements and have been shingled in the correct direction (or mastic has been applied on exposed edges), with no fishmouths.
 3. Termination mastic has been applied on cut edges.
 4. Strips and transition strips have been firmly adhered to substrate.
 5. Compatible materials have been used.
 6. Transitions at changes in direction and structural support at gaps have been provided.
 7. Connections between assemblies (sheathing and sealants) have complied with requirements for cleanliness, surface preparation and priming, structural support, integrity, and continuity of seal.
 8. All penetrations have been sealed.
- B. Air barriers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Repair damage to air barriers caused by testing; follow manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 061600

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Prefabricated wood I-joists.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for dimension lumber items associated with engineered structural wood.

1.2 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

- #### A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

1. Include data on adhesives, fabrication, and protection.
2. For preservative-treated wood products, include manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.
3. For connectors, include installation instructions.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Submit wood floor and roof-framing layouts including dimension lumber, engineered wood products, and plated wood trusses. Include computer-generated design calculations for representative joist and beam types.
2. Identify location and magnitude of design loads on layouts and in member calculations.
3. Include alternate span loading design results in design calculations.
4. Identify metal connectors (joist, beam, post cap, anchors, etc.) by manufacturer and model number. Include a list of accessories required for installation at each connector (blocking, squash blocks, stiffeners, fasteners, etc.). Include allowable design loads for selected metal connectors in design calculation analysis.
5. Identify manufacturer's recommended installation details in layouts.
6. Provide documentation that allowable design stresses comply with allowable design properties of each product indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- #### A. Material Certificates: For preservative-treated wood products, from manufacturer. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.

- #### B. Research Reports: For engineered structural wood, from ICC-ES or recognized third-party testing laboratory.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that participates in a recognized quality-assurance program, complies with quality-control procedures in ASTM D5055 or ASTM D5456, and involves third-party inspection by an independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to Architect and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store, stack, and handle engineered wood products to comply with recommendations of APA EWS E705.
 - 1. Store wrapped or banded together until ready for installation, on level well-drained area. Do not store in direct contact with the ground. Use stickers to separate bundles, spaced as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
 - 2. Store I-joists level with the webs vertically.
- B. Do not stack other material on top of structural composite lumber or I-joists.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of engineered wood product from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Engineered Wood Products: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
 - 1. Allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, are to meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values are to be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

2.3 PREFABRICATED WOOD I-JOISTS

- A. Prefabricated Units: I-shaped in cross section, made with solid or structural composite lumber flanges and wood-based structural webs, let into and bonded to flanges. Comply with material requirements of, and with structural capacities established and monitored in accordance with, ASTM D5055.

1. Flange Material: Laminated-veneer or machine stress-rated (MSR) lumber.
 - a. Field-applied coatings, panels, and membranes are unacceptable.
2. Structural Properties: Depths and design values not less than those indicated.
3. Identification Marks:
 - a. Factory mark I-joists with manufacturer's name, joist series, mill identification, manufacturing date and time, name of third-party inspection agency, and ICC/CCMC code report number. Repeat identification marks at minimum **12 ft. (3.66 m)** intervals.

2.4 ENGINEERED RIM BOARDS

- A. Prefabricated, structural panel complying with APA PRR 410, APA PRR 401, or ASTM D7672 for wood frame construction and research or evaluation report for I-joists.
 1. Manufacturer: Provide products by same manufacturer as I-joists.
 2. Material: OSB or LVL.
 3. Thickness as indicated: [**1 inch (25 mm)**] [**1-1/8 inches (28 mm)**] [**1-1/4 inches (32 mm)**] [**1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**].
 4. Identification Marks: Comply with APA PRR-401, [**rim board**] [**rim board plus**] grade.
 - a. Factory mark rim boards with manufacturer's name, rim board series, mill identification, manufacturing date and time, name of third-party inspection agency, and ICC/CCMC code report number. Repeat identification marks at minimum **12 ft. (3.66 m)** intervals.

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners are to be of size and type indicated and to comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** into wood substrate.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Wood Screws and Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1, ASME B18.6.1, or ICC-ES AC233.
- E. Carbon Steel Bolts: ASTM A307 with **ASTM A563 (ASTM A563M)** hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers all hot-dip zinc coated.
- F. Stainless Steel Bolts: ASTM F593, Alloy Group 1 or 2; with **ASTM F594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F836M, Grade A1 or Grade A4)** hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
- G. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01 as appropriate for the substrate.

2.6 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

- A. Allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, are to meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values are to be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by qualified independent testing agency. Framing anchors are to be punched for fasteners adequate to withstand same loads as framing anchors.
- B. I-Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with seat and nailing flanges, full depth of joist, as indicated on Drawings. Nailing flanges provide lateral support at joist top chord.
 - 1. Thickness: **0.040 inch (1.0mm) minimum.**
 - 2. Finish: Galvanized.
- C. Top Flange Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers, full depth of joist, formed from metal strap with tabs bent to extend over and be fastened to supporting member.
 - 1. Strap Width: **1-1/2 inches (38 mm).**
 - 2. Thickness: **0.050 inch (1.3 mm) minimum.**
- D. Bridging: Rigid, V-section, nailless type, **0.050 inch (1.3 mm)** thick, length to suit joist size and spacing.
- E. Post Bases: Adjustable-socket type for bolting in place with standoff plate to raise post **1 inch (25 mm)** above base and with **2-inch- (50-mm-)** minimum side cover, socket **0.062 inch (1.6 mm)** thick, and standoff and adjustment plates **0.108 inch (2.8 mm)** thick.
- F. Joist Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying joists together over supports.
 - 1. Width: **3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum.**
 - 2. Thickness: **0.050 inch (1.3 mm) minimum.**
 - 3. Length: As indicated.
- G. Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, **G60 (Z180)** coating designation.
 - a. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets:
 - 1. Glass-fiber-resilient insulation, fabricated in strip form, for use as sill sealer; **1-inch (25-mm)** nominal thickness, compressible to **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)**; selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
 - 2. Closed-cell neoprene foam, **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.

3. Self-adhering sheet consisting of 64 mils (1.6 mm) of rubberized asphalt laminated on one side to 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, polyethylene-film reinforcement, and with release liner on adhesive side.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of pliable, butyl rubber or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch (0.6 mm).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Verify that joist flange widths match hanger widths.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Do not install in direct contact with concrete or masonry.
- B. Comply with AWPAC M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PREFABRICATED WOOD I-JOISTS

- A. Install to comply with ESR report, manufacturer's written instructions, and applicable code.
 1. Install in dry, covered conditions where in-service moisture content of wood does not exceed 16 percent.
 2. Install metal framing connections in accordance with AWC's "National Design Specification (NDS) for Wood Construction." Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
 3. Install joists with top and bottom flanges within 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) of true vertical alignment, and support ends of each member with not less than 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm) for end bearing and 3-1/2 inches (76 mm) for intermediate bearings.
 4. Provide temporary bracing to maintain lines and levels until permanent supporting members are in place.
 5. Provide lateral restraint at supports to prevent rotation, and along the compression flange of each joist.
 6. Completely install and properly nail hangers, rim joists, rim boards, blocking panels, and x-bracing as each joist is set.
- B. Cantilevered portions of joists must not exceed a maximum length equal to one-third the adjacent span, and support only uniform loads, unless designed by a design professional and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Temporarily secure ends of cantilevers with strut lines on both top and bottom flanges. Remove only as required to install permanent sheathing.
- C. Cutting: Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
1. Do not cut, drill, or notch I-joist top and bottom flanges except for cutting to length.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF ENGINEERED RIM BOARDS

- A. Install at bearing walls perpendicular to and supported by I-joists that require full-depth blocking, or rim joists, at supports.
- B. Sill Sealer Gasket: Install to form continuous seal between sill plates and foundation walls.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with SBX from weather. If, despite protection, SBX-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061715

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Preservative-treated structural glued-laminated timber.
2. Timber connectors.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for dimension lumber items associated with structural glued-laminated timber.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Glued-Laminated (Glulam) Timber: An engineered, stress-rated timber product assembled from selected and prepared wood laminations bonded together with adhesives and with the grain of the laminations approximately parallel longitudinally.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include data on lumber, adhesives, fabrication, and protection.
2. For preservative-treated wood products. Include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.
3. For connectors. Include installation instructions.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show layout of structural glued-laminated timber system and full dimensions of each member.
2. Indicate species and laminating combination.
3. Include large-scale details of connections.

- C. Samples: Full width and depth, 24 inches (600 mm) long, showing the range of variation to be expected in appearance of structural glued-laminated timber.

1. Apply specified factory finish to three sides of half length of each Sample.

- D. Delegated Design Submittal: For structural glued-laminated timber and timber connectors.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Conformance: Issued by a qualified testing and inspecting agency indicating that structural glued-laminated timber complies with requirements in ANSI A190.1.
- B. Material Certificates: For preservative-treated wood products, from manufacturer. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
- C. Research/Evaluation Reports: For structural glued-laminated timber and timber connectors, from ICC-ES.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: An AITC- or APA-EWS-licensed firm.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. General: Comply with provisions in AITC 111.
- B. Individually wrap members using plastic-coated paper covering with water-resistant seams.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements," to design structural glued-laminated timber and connectors.
- B. Structural Performance: Structural glued-laminated timber and connectors are to withstand the effects of structural loads shown on Drawings without exceeding allowable design working stresses listed in ANSI 117 or determined according to ASTM D3737 and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.2 STRUCTURAL GLUED-LAMINATED TIMBER

- A. General: Provide structural glued-laminated timber that complies with ANSI A190.1 and ANSI 117 or research/evaluation reports acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Factory mark each piece of structural glued-laminated timber with AITC Quality Mark or APA-EWS trademark. Place mark on surfaces that are not exposed in the completed Work.
 - 2. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made from single species.
 - 3. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made from solid lumber laminations; do not use laminated veneer lumber.
 - 4. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made with wet-use adhesive complying with ANSI A190.1.

- B. Species and Grades for Structural Glued-Laminated Timber:
 - 1. Southern pine in grades needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article.
- C. Species and Grades: For beams and purlins.
 - 1. Species and Beam Stress Classification: Southern pine, 24F-1.8E.
 - 2. Lay-up: Either balanced or unbalanced.
- D. Species and Grades for Arches:
 - 1. Species and Beam Stress Classification: Southern pine, 24F-1.8E.
 - 2. Lay-up: Either balanced or unbalanced.
- E. Species and Grades for Columns:
 - 1. Species and Combination Symbol: Southern pine, 47.
- F. Appearance Grade: Premium, complying with AITC 110.
 - 1. For Premium appearance grades, fill voids as required by AITC 110. For Premium appearance grade, use clear wood inserts, of matching grain and color, for filling voids and knot holes more than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** wide.

2.3 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Preservative Treatment: At all structural glue-laminated timber, comply with AWPA U1, Use Category 3A.
 - 1. Use preservative solution without substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.
 - 2. Do not incise structural glued-laminated timber or wood used to produce structural glued-laminated timber.
- B. Preservative:
 - 1. Pentachlorophenol in light petroleum solvent.
- C. After dressing members, apply a copper naphthenate field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4 to surfaces cut to a depth of more than **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)**.

2.4 TIMBER CONNECTORS

- A. Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Structural-steel shapes, plates, and flat bars complying with ASTM A36/A36M.
 - 2. Round steel bars complying with ASTM A575, Grade M 1020.
 - 3. Hot-rolled steel sheet complying with ASTM A1011/A1011M, Structural Steel, Type SS, Grade 33.

- B. Hot-dip galvanize steel assemblies and fasteners after fabrication to comply with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish.
- B. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer that is compatible with indicated finish.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Shop fabricate for connections to greatest extent possible, including cutting to length and drilling bolt holes.
 - 1. Dress exposed surfaces as needed to remove planing and surfacing marks.
- B. Camber: Fabricate horizontal and inclined members of less than 1:1 slope with either circular or parabolic camber equal to 1/500 of span.
- C. Where preservative-treated members are indicated, fabricate (cut, drill, surface, and sand) before treatment to greatest extent possible. Where fabrication must be done after treatment, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4.
 - 1. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
- D. End-Cut Sealing: Immediately after end cutting each member to final length and after preservative treatment, apply a saturation coat of end sealer to ends and other cross-cut surfaces, keeping surfaces flood coated for not less than 10 minutes.
- E. Seal Coat: After fabricating, sanding, and end-coat sealing, apply a heavy saturation coat of penetrating sealer on surfaces of each unit.

2.7 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. Clear Finish: Manufacturer's standard, resistant to mildew and fungus.
- B. Semitransparent Stain Finish: Manufacturer's standard oil-based stain, resistant to mold and fungus.
 - 1. Color: Match Architect's sample (color #230 as produced by structural wood systems; Greenville, AL).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates in areas to receive structural glued-laminated timber, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Erect structural glued-laminated timber true and plumb and with uniform, close-fitting joints. Provide temporary bracing to maintain lines and levels until permanent supporting members are in place.
 - 1. Handle and temporarily support glued-laminated timber to prevent surface damage, compression, and other effects that might interfere with indicated finish.
- B. Framing Built into Masonry: Provide **1/2-inch (13-mm)** clearance at tops, sides, and ends of members built into masonry; bevel cut ends **3 inches (76 mm)**; and do not embed more than **4 inches (102 mm)** unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Cutting: Avoid extra cutting after fabrication. Where field fitting is unavoidable, comply with requirements for shop fabrication.
- D. Fit structural glued-laminated timber by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing and finishing.
 - 1. Predrill for fasteners using timber connectors as templates.
 - 2. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
 - 3. Coat cross cuts with end sealer.
 - 4. Where preservative-treated members must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWP A M4.
 - a. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
- E. Install timber connectors as indicated.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, install bolts with same orientation within each connection and in similar connections.
 - 2. Install bolts with orientation as indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged structural glued-laminated timber if repairs are not approved by Architect.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Do not remove wrappings on individually wrapped members until they no longer serve a useful purpose, including protection from weather, sunlight, soiling, and damage from work of other trades.
 - 1. Coordinate wrapping removal with finishing work. Retain wrapping where it can serve as a painting shield.
 - 2. Slit underside of wrapping to prevent accumulation of moisture inside the wrapping.

END OF SECTION 061800

SECTION 062013 - EXTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior trim.
2. Lumber siding.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials, dimensions, profiles, textures, and colors and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained. Include chemical-treatment manufacturer's written instructions for finishing treated material.
2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced before shipment to Project site to levels specified.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

C. Samples for Verification:

1. For each species and cut of lumber and panel products, with half of exposed surface finished; 50 sq. in. (300 sq. cm) for lumber and 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm) for panels.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Compliance Certificates:

1. For lumber that is not marked with grade stamp.
2. For preservative-treated wood that is not marked with treatment-quality mark.

B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:

1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation.
 - 1. Protect materials from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored.
 - 2. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecast weather conditions permit work to be performed and at least one coat of specified finish can be applied without exposure to rain, snow, or dampness.
- B. Do not install finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the American Lumber Standard Committee's (ALSC) Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC's Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
 - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of inspection agency, indicating grade, species, moisture content at time of surfacing, and mill.
 - 2. For exposed lumber, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.
- B. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1.
- C. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWWA U1; Use Category UC3a.
 - 1. Kiln dry lumber and plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 and 18 percent, respectively.
 - 2. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.

3. For exposed items indicated to receive transparent finish, do not use chemical formulations that contain colorants or that bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
4. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
5. Mark lumber with treatment-quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC's Board of Review.
 - a. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
6. Application: Where indicated on Drawings <Insert application>.

2.3 EXTERIOR TRIM

A. Lumber Trim for Opaque Finish (Painted Finish):

1. Species and Grade:
 - a. Hem-fir; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA Prime or D finish.
 - b. Eastern white pine, eastern hemlock-balsam fir-tamarack, eastern spruce, or white woods; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA D Select (Quality).
2. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent.
3. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
4. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth).

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners for Exterior Finish Carpentry: Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length to penetrate not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** into wood substrate.
 1. For face-fastening siding, provide ringed-shank siding nails or hot-dip galvanized-steel siding nails unless otherwise indicated.
 2. For pressure-preservative-treated wood, provide stainless steel fasteners.
 3. For applications not otherwise indicated, provide hot-dip galvanized-steel fasteners.
- B. Wood Glue: Waterproof resorcinol glue recommended by manufacturer for exterior carpentry use.
- C. Sealants: Latex, complying with ASTM C834 Type OP, Grade NF and applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," and recommended by sealant and substrate manufacturers for intended application.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Back out or kerf backs of standing and running trim wider than **5 inches (125 mm)**, except members with ends exposed in finished work.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine finish carpentry materials before installation. Reject materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
- B. Prime lumber and moldings to be painted, including both faces and edges, unless factory primed.
 - 1. Cut to required lengths and prime ends.
 - 2. Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials that are unsound, warped, improperly treated or finished, inadequately seasoned, or too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements.
 - 1. Do not use manufactured units with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.
- B. Install exterior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials.
 - 1. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.
 - 2. Scribe and cut exterior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work.
 - 3. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 4. Install to tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2438 mm)** for level and plumb. Install adjoining exterior finish carpentry with **1/32-inch (0.8-mm)** maximum offset for flush installation and **1/16-inch (1.5-mm)** maximum offset for reveal installation.
 - 5. Coordinate exterior finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to it.
 - 6. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate exterior finish carpentry.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM

- A. Install flat-grain lumber with bark side exposed to weather.
- B. Install trim with minimum number of joints as is practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available. Do not use pieces less than **24 inches (610 mm)** long, except where necessary.

1. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints.
 2. Stagger end joints in adjacent and related members.
- C. Fit exterior joints to exclude water.
1. Cope at returns and miter at corners to produce tight-fitting joints, with full-surface contact throughout length of joint.
 2. Plane backs of casings to provide uniform thickness across joints, where necessary for alignment.
- D. Where face fastening is unavoidable, countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Replace exterior finish carpentry that is damaged or does not comply with requirements.
1. Exterior finish carpentry may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.
- B. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean exterior finish carpentry on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather and other causes during construction.
- B. Remove and replace finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 062013

SECTION 064013 - EXTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior standing and running trim for opaque finish.
2. Exterior frames and jambs for opaque finish.
3. Exterior stairs and railings.
4. Preservative-treated-wood material.
5. Miscellaneous materials.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing exterior architectural woodwork that are concealed within other construction before exterior architectural woodwork installation.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections, to ensure that exterior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Wood-Preservative Treatment:

1. Include data and warranty information from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
2. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
3. Include chemical-treatment manufacturer's written instructions for finishing treated material and manufacturer's written warranty.

- C. Waterborne Treatments: For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

- 1.

- D. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Show large-scale details.
 - 3. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including blocking and reinforcement concealed by construction and specified in other Sections.

- E. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and finish specified.
 - 1. Size:
 - a. Panel Products: 12 inches by 12 inches (300 mm by 300 mm).
 - b. Lumber Products: Not less than 5 inches (125 mm) wide by 12 inches (300 mm) long, for each species and cut, finished on one side and one edge.

- F. Samples for Verification: For the following:
 - 1. Lumber and Panel Products with Shop-Applied Opaque Finish: 5 inches (125 mm) wide by 12 inches (300 mm) long for lumber and 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm) for panels, for each finish system and color.
 - a. Finish entire exposed surface.
 - 2. Shutter Hardware: Full-size samples for each type and size of hardware in each finish, and color required.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For preservative-treated wood materials, from ICC-ES.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups of typical exterior architectural woodwork as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations by Change Order.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with Architectural Woodwork Standards, Section 2.

- B. Store woodwork in installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.
 - 1. Handle and store fire-retardant-treated wood to comply with chemical-treatment manufacturer's written instructions.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation of exterior architectural woodwork only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit work to be performed and at least one coat of specified finish to be applied without exposure to rain, snow, or dampness.
- B. Field Measurements: Where exterior architectural woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
 - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support woodwork by field measurements before being concealed by construction, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- C. Established Dimensions: Where exterior architectural woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where woodwork is to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of exterior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
 - 1. The Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the Architectural Woodwork Standards. Comply with Contract Documents and the Architectural Woodwork Standards.

2.2 EXTERIOR STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM FOR OPAQUE FINISH

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Premium.
- B. Backout or groove backs of flat trim members, and kerf backs of other wide, flat members, except for members with ends exposed in finished work.
- C. Wood Species: Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine.
 - 1. Do not use plain-sawn softwood lumber with exposed, flat surfaces more than 3 inches (76 mm) wide.

2. Wood Moisture Content: 10 to 15 percent.

2.3 EXTERIOR FRAMES AND JAMBS FOR OPAQUE FINISH

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Premium.
- B. Wood Species: Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine.
 1. Do not use plain-sawn softwood lumber with exposed, flat surfaces more than **3 inches (76 mm)** wide.
 2. Wood Moisture Content: 10 to 15 percent.

2.4 EXTERIOR STAIRS AND RAILINGS

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Premium.
- B. Hand select wood for freedom from characteristics, on exposed surfaces and edges, that would impair finish appearance, including decay, honeycomb, knot holes, shake, splits, torn grain, and wane.
- C. Stair Treads:
 1. **1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-)** thick, kiln-dried, pressure-preservative-treated stepping with half-round or rounded edge nosing, of any of the following:
 - a. Douglas fir, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA C & Btr VG (Vertical Grain) stepping.
 - b. Hem-fir, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA C & Btr VG (Vertical Grain) stepping.
 - c. Southern pine, SPIB B & B stepping.
- D. Stair Risers:
 1. **3/4-inch- (19-mm-)** thick, kiln-dried, pressure-preservative-treated finish boards, of any of the following:
 - a. Douglas fir, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA C & Btr or Superior finish.
 - b. Hem-fir, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA C & Btr or Superior finish.
 - c. Southern pine, SPIB B & B.
- E. Railing Members:
 1. Clear, kiln-dried, solid, pressure-preservative-treated southern pine; railing stock of pattern indicated on Drawings.
 2. Select Structural grade and any of the following species:
 - a. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 - b. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 - c. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
 - d. Redwood; RIS.

e. Spruce-pine-fir or spruce-pine-fir (South); NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

F. Balusters:

1. Square, clear, kiln-dried, solid, as shown on drawings pressure-preservative-treated Douglas fir.

G. **Newel Posts:**

1. Square, clear, kiln-dried, as shown on drawings pressure-preservative-treated southern pine, turned newel posts of pattern and size indicated on Drawings.

2.5 WOOD MATERIALS

A. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4.

B. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, exterior.

2.6 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED-WOOD MATERIAL

A. Preservative-Treated-Wood Materials: Provide with water-repellent preservative treatment complying with AWWA N1 (dip, spray, flood, or vacuum-pressure treatment).

1. Preservative Chemicals: 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate (IPBC).
2. Use chemical formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants in solution to distinguish treated material from untreated material.

2.7 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** into wood substrate.

1. Use stainless steel unless otherwise indicated.
2. For pressure-preservative-treated wood, use stainless steel fasteners.

B. Nails: ASTM F1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: ICC-ES AC70.

D. Wood Screws and Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1, ASME B18.6.1, or ICC-ES AC233.

E. Carbon-Steel Bolts: **ASTM A307** with **ASTM A563 (ASTM A563M)** hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers all hot-dip zinc coated.

F. Stainless Steel Bolts: **ASTM F593, Alloy Group 1 or 2**; with **ASTM F594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F836M, Grade A1 or Grade A4)** hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

CITY OF CENTERVILLE
BENHAM'S GROVE EVENT CENTER + CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS
LWC Commission No.: 22627.00

- G. Postinstalled Anchors: Stainless steel, anchors with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing according to ASTM E488/E488M conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
1. Stainless steel bolts and nuts complying with **ASTM F593 and ASTM F594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F836M, Grade A1 or Grade A4)**.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Blocking, Shims, and Nailers: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
1. Wood-Preservative Treatment: By pressure process, AWP A U1; Use Category UC3b.
 - a. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
 - b. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
 - c. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the American Lumber Standards Committee's (ALSC) Board of Review.

2.9 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate exterior architectural woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.
1. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
 - a. Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members: **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)** unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Edges of Rails and Similar Members More Than 3/4 Inch (19 mm) Thick: **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site.
1. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.
 2. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times exterior architectural woodwork fabrication will be complete.
 4. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled.
 - a. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting.
 - b. Verify that parts fit as intended, and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on approved Shop Drawings before disassembling for shipment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition exterior architectural woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions at Project site.
- B. Before installing exterior architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion, and complete work as required, including removing packing and backpriming concealed surfaces.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install exterior architectural woodwork to comply with same grade as item to be installed.
- B. Assemble exterior architectural woodwork, and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed during shop fabrication.
- C. Install exterior architectural woodwork level, plumb, true in line, and without distortion.
 - 1. Shim as required with concealed shims.
 - 2. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm)**.
- D. Standing and Running Trim:
 - 1. Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces (from maximum length of lumber available) to greatest extent possible.
 - 2. Do not use pieces less than **36 inches (900 mm)** long, except where shorter single-length pieces are necessary.
 - 3. Scarf running joints and stagger in adjacent and related members.
- E. Scribe and cut exterior architectural woodwork to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- F. Preservative-Treated Wood Materials: Where field cut or drilled, treat cut ends and drilled holes according to AWPA M4.
- G. Anchor exterior architectural woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates.
 - 1. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing.
 - 2. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with exterior architectural woodwork.
 - 3. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced and with adjacent rows staggered.
 - 4. For shop-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.
- H. Stair and Railing Installation:

1. Treads and Risers:
 - a. Install stair tread with crown side up (bark side down).
 - b. Secure treads and risers by gluing and nailing to carriages.
 - 1) Extend treads over carriages and finish with bullnose edge.
 - c. Countersink nail heads, fill flush, and sand filler.
 2. Balusters:
 - a. Fit balusters to treads, glue, and nail in place.
 - b. Countersink nail heads, fill flush, and sand filler.
 - c. Let into railings and glue in place.
 3. Newel Posts: Secure newel posts to stringers and risers with through bolts or lag screws.
 4. Railings:
 - a. Secure wall rails with metal brackets.
 - b. Fasten freestanding railings to newel posts and to trim at walls with glue and countersunk-head wood screws or rail bolts.
 5. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced and with adjacent rows staggered.
 6. Install stairs with no more than **3/16-inch (4.7-mm)** variation between adjacent treads and risers and with no more than **3/8-inch (10-mm)** variation between largest and smallest treads and risers within each flight.
- I. Touch up finishing work specified in this Section after installation of exterior architectural woodwork.
1. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed.
 2. Apply specified finish coats, including stains and paste fillers if any, to exposed surfaces where only sealer/prime coats are shop applied.
- J. Field Finishing: See Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" for final finishing of installed exterior architectural woodwork.
- 3.3 REPAIR
- A. Repair damaged and defective exterior architectural woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects.
 - B. Where not possible to repair, replace defective woodwork.
- 3.4 CLEANING
- A. Clean exterior architectural woodwork on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 064013

SECTION 064023 - INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior standing and running trim for transparent finish.
2. Interior standing and running trim for opaque finish.
3. Interior frames and jambs for transparent finish.
4. Interior frames and jambs for opaque finish.
5. Interior wood stairs and railings.
6. Miscellaneous materials.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing interior architectural woodwork that are concealed within other construction before interior architectural woodwork installation.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections, to ensure that interior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Anchors.
2. Adhesives.
3. Shop finishing materials.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include the following:
 - a. Dimensioned plans, elevations, and sections.
 - b. Attachment details.
2. Show large-scale details.
3. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including blocking and reinforcement concealed by construction and specified in other Sections.

CITY OF CENTERVILLE
BENHAM'S GROVE EVENT CENTER + CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS
LWC Commission No.: 22627.00

- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each shop-applied color and finish specified.
 - 1. Size:
 - a. Panel Products: 12 inches by 12 inches.
 - b. Lumber Products: Not less than 5 inches wide by 12 inches long, for each species and cut, finished on one side and one edge.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following:
 - 1. Lumber for Transparent Finish: Not less than 5 inches wide by 12 inches long, for each species and cut, finished on one side and one edge.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For the following:
 - 1. Adhesives.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups of typical interior architectural woodwork as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations by Change Order.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards, Section 2.
- B. Do not deliver interior architectural woodwork until painting and similar finish operations that might damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas.
- C. Store woodwork in installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.
 - 1. Handle and store fire-retardant-treated wood to comply with chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations without Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install interior architectural woodwork until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels designed for building occupants for the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Where interior architectural woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
 - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support woodwork by field measurements before being concealed by construction, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- C. Established Dimensions: Where interior architectural woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where woodwork is to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOODWORK, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of interior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
 - 1. The Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the Architectural Woodwork Standards. Comply with Contract Documents and Architectural Woodwork Standards.

2.2 INTERIOR STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Premium.
- B. Hardwood Lumber:
 - 1. Species: White oak at Event Center and Hickory at Barn.
 - 2. Cut: Plain sliced/plain sawn.
 - 3. Wood Moisture Content: 5 to 10 percent.
 - 4. Provide split species on trim that faces areas with different wood species, matching each face of woodwork to species and cut of finish wood surfaces in areas finished.
 - 5. For base wider than available lumber, glue for width. Do not use veneered construction.
 - 6. For rails thicker than available lumber, use veneered construction.

2.3 INTERIOR STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM FOR OPAQUE FINISH

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Premium.
 - 1. Wood Species: Any closed-grain hardwood.
 - 2. Wood Moisture Content: 5 to 10 percent.
 - 3. For use at Gerber House.

2.4 INTERIOR WOOD STAIRS AND RAILINGS

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Premium.
- B. Wood for Transparent Finish:
 - 1. Species and Cut:
 - a. Treads: Glulam yellow pine.
 - b. Railings: White oak, plain sawn.
 - 2. Wood Moisture Content: 5 to 10 percent.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Nailers: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Provide self-drilling screws for metal-framing supports, as recommended by metal-framing manufacturer.
- C. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage.
 - 1. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors.
 - 2. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.
- D. Installation Adhesive: Product recommended by fabricator for each substrate for secure anchorage.
- E. Coat Hooks:
 - 1. Manufacturer: Kingston Kitchen & Bath
 - 2. Model: Kingston Brass Victorian Double Robe Hook, BAK 1117ORB
 - 3. Finish: Oiled Rubbed Bronze

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.
- B. Fabricate interior architectural woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.
 - 1. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
 - a. Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members: 1/16 inch unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Edges of Rails and Similar Members More Than 3/4 Inch (19 mm) Thick: 1/8 inch.
- C. Complete fabrication, including assembly, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site.
 - 1. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.
 - 2. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
 - 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times interior architectural woodwork fabrication will be complete.
 - 4. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled.

CITY OF CENTERVILLE
BENHAM'S GROVE EVENT CENTER + CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS
LWC Commission No.: 22627.00

- a. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting.
- b. Verify that parts fit as intended, and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on approved Shop Drawings before disassembling for shipment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition interior architectural woodwork to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours prior to beginning of installation.
- B. Before installing interior architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming of concealed surfaces.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install interior architectural woodwork to comply with same grade as item to be installed.
- B. Assemble interior architectural woodwork and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed during shop fabrication.
- C. Install interior architectural woodwork level, plumb, true in line, and without distortion.
 1. Shim as required with concealed shims.
 2. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
- D. Scribe and cut interior architectural woodwork to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- E. Anchor interior architectural woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates.
 1. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing.
 2. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with interior architectural woodwork.
 3. For shop-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.
- F. Standing and Running Trim:
 1. Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces (from maximum length of lumber available) to greatest extent possible.
 2. Do not use pieces less than 36 inches long, except where shorter single-length pieces are necessary.
 3. Scarf running joints and stagger in adjacent and related members.
 4. Fill gaps, if any, between top of base and wall with latex sealant, painted to match wall.
 5. Install standing and running trim with no more variation from a straight line than 1/8 inch in 96 inches.

3.3 REPAIR

- A. Repair damaged and defective interior architectural woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects.
- B. Where not possible to repair, replace defective woodwork.
- C. Field Finish: See Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" for final finishing of installed interior architectural woodwork not indicated to be shop finished.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior architectural woodwork on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 064023

SECTION 064113 - WOOD-VENEER-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wood cabinets for opaque finish.
2. Wood materials.
3. Cabinet hardware and accessories.
4. Miscellaneous materials.
5. Shop finishing.
6. For use in Gerber House.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing cabinets that are concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to support loads imposed by installed and fully loaded cabinets.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Wood cabinets for opaque finish.
2. Wood materials.
3. Cabinet hardware and accessories.
4. Miscellaneous materials.
5. Shop finishing.

B. Shop Drawings: For architectural cabinets.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Show large-scale details.
3. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
4. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in architectural cabinets.

- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and finish specified, in manufacturer's standard size.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish.
- E. Samples for Verification: For the following:
 - 1. Lumber and Panel Products with Shop-Applied Opaque Finish: 5 inches (125 mm) wide by 12 inches (300 mm) long for lumber and 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) for panels, for each finish system and color.
 - a. Finish entire exposed surface.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and Installer.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer of products.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups of typical architectural cabinets as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver cabinets until painting and similar finish operations that might damage architectural cabinets have been completed in installation areas. Store cabinets in installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations without Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Environmental Limitations with Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining

temperature between 60 and 90 deg F (16 and 32 deg C) and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period.

- C. Field Measurements: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
 - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support cabinets by field measurements before being enclosed/concealed by construction, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- D. Established Dimensions: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where cabinets are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

- A. Source Limitations: Engage a qualified woodworking firm to assume responsibility for production of architectural cabinets.

2.2 CABINETS, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of architectural cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
 - 1. The Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the referenced woodwork quality standard. Comply with requirements of Contract Documents in addition to those of the referenced quality standard.

2.3 WOOD CABINETS FOR OPAQUE FINISH

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Premium.
- B. Type of Construction: Face frame.
- C. Door and Drawer-Front Style: Flush inset.
- D. Species for Exposed Lumber Surfaces: Any closed-grain hardwood.
- E. Semiexposed Surfaces:
 - 1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: Match materials indicated for exposed surfaces.
 - 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid-hardwood lumber.

3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood.
- F. Dust Panels: **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers unless located directly under tops.
- G. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.
 1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners or glued dovetail joints.

2.4 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Wood Moisture Content: 5 to 10 percent.

2.5 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Cabinet Hardware:
 1. Door Pulls: Rejuvenation, Vernon Mushroom Cabinet Knob, oil-rubbed bronze
 2. Drawer Pulls: Rejuvenation, Vernon Bin Pull, oil-rubbed bronze
 3. Hinges: Rejuvenation 2" Ball-Tip Cabinet Hinges, oil-rubbed bronze
 4. Shelf Bracket (For Gerber House Bar Shelf): HARPOON 8" shelf brackets, Baroque Kitchen Decorative Rack, black bronze
 5. Shelf Rail (For Gerber House Bar Shelf): Paxton Hardware Ltd., Brass shelf railing with oil rubbed bronze finish.
- B. Catches: Magnetic catches, ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B03141.
- C. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081.
- D. Shelf Rests: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal.
- E. Drawer Slides: ANSI/BHMA A156.9.
 1. Heavy-Duty (Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200): Side mount or Undermount.
 - a. Type: Full overtravel extension.
 - b. Material: Aluminum, Epoxy-coated polymer, or Zinc-plated ball bearing slides.
 - c. Motion Feature: self-closing mechanism.
 2. General purpose drawers more than **3 inches (75 mm)** high, but not more than **6 inches (150 mm)** high and not more than **24 inches (600 mm)** wide, provide [**75 lb (34 kg)**] load capacity.
- F. Door and Drawer Silencers: ANSI/BHMA A156.16, L03011.

- G. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with ANSI/BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
1. Dark, Oxidized, Satin Bronze, Oil Rubbed: ANSI/BHMA 613 for bronze base; ANSI/BHMA 640 for steel base; match Architect's sample.
 2. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in ANSI/BHMA A156.9.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate architectural cabinets to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease edges and corners to **1/16-inch (1.5-mm)** radius unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times architectural cabinet fabrication will be complete.
 2. Trial fit assemblies at manufacturer's shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements before disassembling for shipment.
- C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

2.8 SHOP FINISHING

- A. Finish architectural cabinets at manufacturer's shop as specified in this Section. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.
- B. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing architectural cabinets, as applicable to each unit of work.

1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of cabinets.

C. Opaque Finish:

1. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Premium.
2. Finish: System – Provide one of the following: 1, nitrocellulose lacquer 2, precatalyzed lacquer 3, postcatalyzed lacquer 5, conversion varnish 7, catalyzed vinyl 9, UV-curable acrylated epoxy, polyester, or urethane] 11, catalyzed polyurethane 13, catalyzed polyester.
3. Color: Match Architect's sample.
4. Sheen: Satin, 31-45 gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D523.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Install cabinets to comply with quality standard grade of item to be installed.
- B. Assemble cabinets and complete fabrication at Project site to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing. Use fine finishing nails for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with cabinet surface.
 1. For shop-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.
- D. Install cabinets level, plumb, and true in line to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm)** using concealed shims.
 1. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
 2. Install cabinets without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
 3. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than **16 inches (400 mm)** o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for not less than **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips.

- E. Shop Finishes: Touch up finishing after installation of architectural cabinets. Fill nail holes with matching filler.
 - 1. Apply specified finish coats, including stains and paste fillers if any, to exposed surfaces where only sealer/prime coats are shop applied.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective cabinets, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace architectural cabinets. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- C. Clean cabinets on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 064113

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Plastic sheet paneling.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For plastic paneling and trim accessories, in manufacturer's standard sizes.

1.3 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- #### A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install plastic paneling until spaces are enclosed and weathertight and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- #### A. Obtain plastic paneling and trim accessories from single manufacturer.

2.2 PLASTIC SHEET PANELING

- #### A. Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Paneling: Gelcoat-finished, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic panels complying with ASTM D5319. Panels are to be USDA accepted for incidental food.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Composites, Inc.
 - b. Glasteel.
 - c. Marlite, Inc.
 - d. Newcourt, Inc.
 - e. Nudo.
 - f. Parkland Plastics.

2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As follows when tested by a qualified testing agency in accordance with ASTM E84. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
3. Nominal Thickness: Not less than **0.075 inch (1.9 mm)**.
4. Surface Finish: Molded pebble texture.
5. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Trim Accessories: Manufacturer's standard one-piece vinyl extrusions designed to retain and cover edges of panels. Provide division bars, inside corners, outside corners, and caps as needed to conceal edges.
 1. Color: Match panels.
- B. Adhesive: As recommended by plastic paneling manufacturer.
- C. Sealant: Mildew-resistant, single-component, neutral-curing silicone sealant recommended by plastic paneling manufacturer and complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrate by sanding high spots and filling low spots as needed to provide flat, even surface for panel installation.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair adhesive bond, including oil, grease, dirt, and dust.
- C. Condition panels by unpacking and placing in installation space before installation according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
- D. Lay out paneling before installing. Locate panel joints to provide equal panels at ends of walls not less than half the width of full panels.

1. Mark plumb lines on substrate at trim accessory locations for accurate installation.
2. Locate trim accessories to allow clearance at panel edges according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic paneling according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install panels in a full spread of adhesive.
- C. Install factory-laminated panels using concealed mounting splines in panel joints.
- D. Install trim accessories with [adhesive] and nails. Do not fasten through panels.
- E. Fill grooves in trim accessories with sealant before installing panels, and bed inside corner trim in a bead of sealant.
- F. Maintain uniform space between panels and wall fixtures. Fill space with sealant.
- G. Remove excess sealant and smears as paneling is installed. Clean with solvent recommended by sealant manufacturer and then wipe with clean dry cloths until no residue remains.

END OF SECTION 066400

7

DIVISION

THERMAL & MOISTURE PROTECTION

SECTION 071326 – SELF-ADHEREING SHEET WATERPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sheet waterproofing.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review waterproofing requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and sheet flashings, installation procedures, testing and inspection procedures, and protection and repairs.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, and tested physical and performance properties of waterproofing.
2. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, including the following products:

1. **8-by-8-inch (200-by-200-mm)** square of waterproofing and flashing sheet.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Research Reports: For modified bituminous sheet waterproofing/termite barrier, showing compliance with ICC AC380.

B. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by waterproofing manufacturer.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate.
 - 1. Do not apply waterproofing in snow, rain, fog, or mist.
- B. Maintain adequate ventilation during preparation and application of waterproofing materials.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty:
 - 1. Waterproofing Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish replacement waterproofing material for waterproofing that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.
 - a. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Installer's Special Warranty: Specified form signed by Installer, covering Work of this Section, for warranty period of [**two**] years.
 - 1. Warranty includes removing and reinstalling protection board, drainage panels, insulation, pedestals, and pavers on plaza decks.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Source Limitations for Waterproofing System: Obtain waterproofing materials from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 SHEET WATERPROOFING

- A. Modified Bituminous Sheet Waterproofing: Minimum **60-mil (1.5-mm)** nominal thickness, self-adhering sheet consisting of **56 mils (1.4 mm)** of rubberized asphalt laminated on one side to a **4-mil- (0.10-mm-)** thick, polyethylene-film reinforcement, and with release liner on adhesive side.
 - 1. Physical Properties:

- a. Tensile Strength, Membrane: **250 psi (1.7 MPa)** minimum; ASTM D412, Die C, modified.
 - b. Ultimate Elongation: 300 percent minimum; ASTM D412, Die C, modified.
 - c. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at **minus 20 deg F (minus 29 deg C)**; ASTM D1970/D1970M.
 - d. Crack Cycling: Unaffected after 100 cycles of **1/8-inch (3-mm)** movement; ASTM C836/C836M.
 - e. Puncture Resistance: **40 lbf (180 N)** minimum; ASTM E154/E154M.
 - f. Water Absorption: 0.2 percent weight-gain maximum after 48-hour immersion at **70 deg F (21 deg C)**; ASTM D570.
 - g. Water Vapor Permeance: **0.05 perm (2.9 ng/Pa x s x sq. m)** maximum; ASTM E96/E96M, Water Method.
 - h. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: [**200 feet (60 m)**]minimum; ASTM D5385.
2. Sheet Strips: Self-adhering, rubberized-asphalt strips of same material and thickness as sheet waterproofing.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Furnish accessory materials recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with sheet waterproofing.
 1. Furnish liquid-type accessory materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Primer: Liquid waterborne or solvent-borne primer recommended for substrate by sheet waterproofing material manufacturer.
- C. Surface Conditioner: Liquid, waterborne surface conditioner recommended for substrate by sheet waterproofing material manufacturer.
- D. Liquid Membrane: Elastomeric, two-component liquid, cold fluid applied, of trowel grade or low viscosity.
- E. Substrate Patching Membrane: Low-viscosity, two-component, modified asphalt coating.
- F. Metal Termination Bars: Aluminum bars, approximately **1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm)**, predrilled at **9-inch (229-mm)** centers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of waterproofing.

1. Verify that concrete has cured and aged for minimum time period recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.
 2. Verify that substrate is visibly dry and within the moisture limits recommended in writing by manufacturer. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method in accordance with ASTM D4263.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for waterproofing application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- D. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections.
- E. Fill form tie holes, honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids.
- F. Prepare, fill, prime, and treat joints and cracks in substrates. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks in accordance with ASTM D4258.
 1. Install sheet strips of width according to manufacturer's written instructions and center over treated construction and contraction joints and cracks exceeding a width of **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**.
- G. Corners: Prepare, prime, and treat inside and outside corners in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 1. Install membrane strips centered over vertical inside corners. Install **3/4-inch (19-mm)** fillets of liquid membrane on horizontal inside corners and as follows:
 - a. At footing-to-wall intersections, extend liquid membrane in each direction from corner or install membrane strip centered over corner.
- H. Prepare, treat, and seal vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through waterproofing and at drains and protrusions.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SHEET WATERPROOFING

- A. Install modified bituminous sheets according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by sheet waterproofing in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
 - C. Apply and firmly adhere sheets over area to receive waterproofing. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform **2-1/2-inch- (64-mm-)** minimum lap widths and end laps. Overlap and seal seams, and stagger end laps to ensure watertight installation.
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperatures range between **25 and 40 deg F (minus 4 and plus 5 deg C)**, install self-adhering, modified bituminous sheets produced for low-temperature application. Do not use low-temperature sheets if ambient or substrate temperature is higher than **60 deg F (16 deg C)**.
 - D. Horizontal Application: Apply sheets from low to high points of decks to ensure that laps shed water.
 - E. Apply continuous sheets over already-installed sheet strips, bridging substrate cracks, construction, and contraction joints.
 - F. Seal edges of sheet waterproofing terminations with mastic.
 - G. Install sheet waterproofing and accessory materials to tie into adjacent waterproofing.
 - H. Roll waterproofing membrane to firmly adhere to substrate. Roll seams and terminations.
 - I. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending **6 inches (150 mm)** beyond repaired areas in all directions.
 - J. Immediately install protection course with butted joints over waterproofing membrane.
- 3.4 PROTECTION, REPAIR, AND CLEANING
- A. Do not permit foot or vehicular traffic on unprotected membrane.
 - B. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
 - C. Correct deficiencies in or remove waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.
 - D. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 071326

SECTION 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 01 81 13 – Sustainability Specifications for requirements associated with sustainability requirements.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board insulation.
 - 2. Glass-fiber blanket insulation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board insulation.
 - 2. Glass-fiber blanket insulation.
 - 3. Spray-applied cellulosic insulation.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. [Refer to Section 018113 Sustainability Specifications for submittal requirements associated with the Project's sustainability goals.](#)

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer's Certification: Listing type, manufacturer, and R-value of insulation installed in each element of the building thermal envelope.
 - 1. Sign, date, and post the certification in a conspicuous location on Project site.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Research Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
 - 1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
 - 2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.
 - 3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Refer to Section 018113 Sustainability Specifications for product requirements associated with the Project's sustainability goals.

2.2 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION

- A. Extruded Polystyrene Board Insulation, Type IV: ASTM C578, Type IV, 25-psi minimum compressive strength; unfaced.
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [Dow Chemical Company \(The\) – Perimate XPS.](#)
 - b. [Owens Corning – Formular 250 XPS.](#)
 - 2. R-Value = 5 min. per inch.
 - 3. Foundation insulation.
- B. Extruded Polystyrene Board Insulation, Type IV: ASTM C578, Type IV, 25-psi minimum compressive strength; unfaced.
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Dow Chemical Company \(The\) – Cavity Mate Ultra.](#)
 - b. [Owens Corning – Formular High-R CW+.](#)
 - 2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 4. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.
 - 5. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches and wider in width.
 - 6. R-Value: 5.6 min. per inch.
 - 7. Above grade wall applications.

2.3 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation, Unfaced: ASTM C665, Type I; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [CertainTeed Corporation – Sustainable Fiber Glass Insulation.](#)
 - b. [Knauf Insulation – Eco Batt.](#)
 - c. [Owens Corning Eco Touch Pink.](#)
 2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 4. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches and wider in width.
 5. R-Value = 21 at 6" thick.

2.4 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position with self-locking washer in place.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [AGM Industries, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Gemco.](#)
 2. Plate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 3. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation.
 4. Only permitted for foundation locations
- B. Self-Drilling Screw Fastener with Solid Cap Washer.
1. Roden House "Thermal Grip ci" System or approved equal for wall assemblies.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C764, Type II, loose fill; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5, per ASTM E84.
 2. Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C1029, Type II, closed cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E84.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Install insulation with manufacturer's R-value label exposed after insulation is installed.
- D. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- E. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLAB INSULATION

- A. On vertical slab edge and foundation surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 24 inches below exterior grade line.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF FOUNDATION WALL INSULATION

- A. Butt panels together for tight fit.
- B. Anchor Installation: Install board insulation on concrete substrates by adhesively attached, spindle-type insulation anchors as follows:
 - 1. Fasten insulation anchors to concrete substrates with insulation anchor adhesive according to anchor manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Space anchors according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions for insulation type, thickness, and application.
 - 3. Apply insulation standoffs to each spindle to create cavity width indicated on Drawings between concrete substrate and insulation.
 - 4. After adhesive has dried, install board insulation by pressing insulation into position over spindles and securing it tightly in place with insulation-retaining washers, taking care not to compress insulation.
 - 5. Where insulation will not be covered by other building materials, apply capped washers to tips of spindles.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Utilize screw/washer fasteners as recommended by insulation manufacturer.
 - 1. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions, and with faces flush.
 - 2. Press units firmly against inside substrates.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
 - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
 - 3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
 - 4. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
- B. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
 - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft..
 - 2. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF CURTAIN-WALL INSULATION

- A. Install board insulation in curtain-wall construction according to curtain-wall manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Hold insulation in place by securing metal clips and straps or integral pockets within window frames, spaced at intervals recommended in writing by insulation manufacturer to hold insulation securely in place without touching spandrel glass.
 - 2. Maintain cavity width of dimension indicated on Drawings between insulation and glass.
 - 3. Install insulation to fit snugly without bowing.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes.
- B. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 072100

SECTION 072500 - WEATHER BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Building wrap.
 - 2. Flexible flashing.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 06 Section "Sheathing" for sheathing joint and penetration treatment.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For building wrap, include data on air and water-vapor permeance based on testing according to referenced standards.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For water-resistive barrier and flexible flashing, from ICC-ES.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER

- A. Building Wrap: ASTM E 1677, Type I air barrier; with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested according to ASTM E 84; UV stabilized; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Styrofoam Weathermate Plus Brand Housewrap.
 - b. DuPont (E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company); Tyvek CommercialWrap
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Not less than 500g through 1 sq. m of surface in 24 hours per ASTM E 96/E 96M, Desiccant Method (Procedure A).
 3. Air Permeance: Not more than 0.004 cfm/sq. ft. at 0.3-inch wg when tested according to ASTM E 2178.
 4. Allowable UV Exposure Time: Not less than three months.
- B. Building-Wrap Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by building-wrap manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in building wrap.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch 0.030 inch 0.040 inch.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. DuPont (E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company); DuPont Flashing Tape.
 - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Vycor Butyl Self Adhered Flashing.
 - c. Protecto Wrap Company; BT-25 XL.
 - d. Raven Industries Inc.; Fortress Flashshield.
 - e. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Wind-o-wrap.
 - f. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW-705-TWF Thru-Wall Flashing.
 - g. Fiberweb, Clark Hammerbeam Corp.; Aquaflash 500.
 - h. Fortifiber Building Systems Group; Fortiflash 25.
 - i. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Vycor Plus Self-Adhered Flashing.
 - j. MFM Building Products Corp.; Window Wrap.
 - k. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Polyguard JT-20.
 - l. Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Presto-Seal.
- B. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended by manufacturer of flexible flashing for substrate.
- C. Nails and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER INSTALLATION

- A. Cover exposed exterior surface of sheathing with water-resistive barrier securely fastened to framing immediately after sheathing is installed.
- B. Cover sheathing with water-resistive barrier as follows:
 - 1. Cut back barrier 1/2 inch on each side of the break in supporting members at expansion- or control-joint locations.
 - 2. Apply barrier to cover vertical flashing with a minimum 4-inch overlap unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Building Wrap: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Seal seams, edges, fasteners, and penetrations with tape.
 - 2. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.

3.2 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
 - 2. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
 - 3. Lap flashing over water-resistive barrier at bottom and sides of openings.
 - 4. Lap water-resistive barrier over flashing at heads of openings.
 - 5. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

END OF SECTION 072500

SECTION 072726 - FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Vapor-retarding, fluid-applied air barriers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Air-Barrier Material: A primary element that provides a continuous barrier to the movement of air.
- B. Air-Barrier Accessory: A transitional component of the air barrier that provides continuity.
- C. Air-Barrier Assembly: The collection of air-barrier materials and accessories applied to an opaque wall, including joints and junctions to abutting construction, to control air movement through the wall.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review air-barrier requirements and installation, special details, mockups, air-leakage and bond testing, air-barrier protection, and work scheduling that covers air barriers.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating each substrate; technical data; dry film thickness; and tested physical and performance properties of products.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. **Product Data:** For coatings, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. **Laboratory Test Reports:** For coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- C. Shop Drawings: For air-barrier assemblies.

1. Show locations and extent of air-barrier materials, accessories, and assemblies specific to Project conditions.
2. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, counterflashing strips, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
3. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer. Include list of ABAA-certified installers and supervisors employed by Installer, who work on Project.
- B. Product Certificates: From air-barrier manufacturer, certifying compatibility of air barriers and accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the barrier.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each air-barrier assembly, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
 1. Installer shall be licensed by ABAA according to ABAA's Quality Assurance Program and shall employ ABAA-certified installers and supervisors on Project.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to set quality standards for materials and execution and for preconstruction inspections.
 1. Build integrated mockups of exterior wall assembly, 150 sq. ft., incorporating backup wall construction, external cladding, window, storefront, door frame and sill, insulation, ties and other penetrations, and flashing to demonstrate surface preparation, crack and joint treatment, application of air barriers, and sealing of gaps, terminations, and penetrations of air-barrier assembly.
 - a. Coordinate construction of mockups to permit inspection and testing of air barrier before external insulation and cladding are installed.
 - b. Include junction with roofing membrane, building corner condition, and foundation wall intersection.
 - c. If Architect determines mockups do not comply with requirements, reconstruct mockups and apply air barrier until mockups are approved.
 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION INSPECTION

- A. Preconstruction Inspection Service: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on field mockups.

- B. Mockup Inspection: Air-barrier assemblies shall comply with performance requirements indicated, as evidenced by reports based on mockup inspection by a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Adhesion Testing: Mockups will be inspected for required air-barrier adhesion to substrate according to ASTM D4541.
 - 2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times when mockups will be inspected.
 - 3. Refer to related envelop specification sections for inspection and mockup requirements.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
- B. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer.
 - 1. Protect substrates from environmental conditions that affect air-barrier performance.
 - 2. Do not apply air barrier to a damp or wet substrate or during snow, rain, fog, or mist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary air-barrier materials and air-barrier accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. VOC Content: 250 g/L or less.
- C. Low-Emitting Materials: Products shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Air-Barrier Performance: Air-barrier assembly and seals with adjacent construction shall be capable of performing as a continuous air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation or water penetration. Air-barrier assemblies shall be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, penetrations, tie-ins to installed waterproofing, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.
- B. Air-Barrier Assembly Air Leakage: Maximum 0.04 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57 lbf/sq. ft., when tested according to ASTM E2357.

2.3 HIGH-BUILD AIR BARRIERS, VAPOR RETARDING

- A. High-Build, Vapor-Retarding Air Barrier: Modified bituminous or synthetic polymer membrane with an installed dry film thickness, according to manufacturer's written instructions, of 35 mils or thicker over smooth, void-free substrates.
1. Modified Bituminous Type:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
 - 2) Henry Company.
 - 3) Prosoco.
 - 4) Tremco Incorporated – “Exoair 120” (BASIS OF DESIGN)
 2. Synthetic Polymer Type:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
 - 2) Henry Company.
 - 3) Prosoco.
 - 4) Tremco Incorporated.
 3. Physical and Performance Properties:
 - a. Air Permeance: Maximum 0.004 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57-lbf/sq. ft. pressure difference; ASTM E2178.
 - b. Vapor Permeance: Maximum 0.1 perm; ASTM E96/E96M, Desiccant Method.
 - c. Ultimate Elongation: Minimum 500 percent; ASTM D412, Die C.
 - d. Adhesion to Substrate: Minimum 16 lbf/sq. in. when tested according to ASTM D4541.
 - e. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.
 - f. UV Resistance: Can be exposed to sunlight for 30 days according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Requirement: Provide primers, transition strips, termination strips, joint reinforcing fabric and strips, joint sealants, counterflashing strips, flashing sheets and metal termination bars, termination mastic, substrate patching materials, adhesives, tapes, foam sealants, lap sealants, and other accessory materials that are recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer to produce a complete air-barrier assembly and that are compatible with primary air-barrier material and adjacent construction to which they may seal.
- B. Primer: Liquid primer recommended for substrate by air-barrier material manufacturer.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304, 0.0187 inch thick, and Series 300 stainless-steel fasteners.
- D. Preformed Silicone Extrusion: Manufacturer's standard system consisting of cured low-modulus silicone extrusion, sized to fit opening widths, with a single-component, neutral-curing, Class 100/50 (low-modulus) silicone sealant for bonding extrusions to substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are sound and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar, or other contaminants.
 - 2. Verify that substrates have cured and aged for minimum time recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer.
 - 3. Verify that substrates are visibly dry and free of moisture. Test concrete substrates for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D4263.
 - 4. Verify that masonry joints are flush and completely filled with mortar.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, treat, fill, and seal substrate and joints and cracks in substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions and details. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for air-barrier application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not covered by air barrier to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- D. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids in concrete with substrate-patching material.
- E. Remove excess mortar from masonry ties, shelf angles, and other obstructions.
- F. At changes in substrate plane, apply sealant or termination mastic beads at sharp corners and edges to form a smooth transition from one plane to another.
- G. Cover gaps in substrate plane and form a smooth transition from one substrate plane to another with stainless-steel sheet mechanically fastened to structural framing to provide continuous support for air barrier.
- H. Bridge isolation joints, expansion joints, and discontinuous wall-to-wall, deck-to-wall, and deck-to-deck joints with air-barrier accessory material that accommodates joint movement according to manufacturer's written instructions and details.
- I. Cover gaps in substrate plane with mechanically fastened stainless steel sheet to span gaps in substrate plane, and to make a smooth transition from one plane to the other including gaps at structural steel columns. Membrane shall be continuously supported by substrate on each side of the gap.

3.3 ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessory materials according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions and details to form a seal with adjacent construction and ensure continuity of air and water barrier.

1. Coordinate the installation of air barrier with installation of roofing membrane and base flashing to ensure continuity of air barrier with roofing membrane.
 2. Install transition strip on roofing membrane or base flashing so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate.
 3. Unless manufacturer recommends in writing against priming, apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry.
 4. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air-barrier material on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
- B. Connect and seal exterior wall air-barrier material continuously to roofing-membrane air barrier, concrete below-grade structures, floor-to-floor construction, exterior glazing and window systems, glazed curtain-wall systems, storefront systems, exterior louvers, exterior door framing, and other construction used in exterior wall openings, using accessory materials.
- C. At end of each working day, seal top edge of strips and transition strips to substrate with termination mastic.
- D. Apply joint sealants forming part of air-barrier assembly within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.
- E. Wall Openings: Prime concealed, perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors. Apply transition strip or preformed silicone extrusion so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate. Maintain 3 inches of full contact over firm bearing to perimeter frames, with not less than 1 inch of full contact.
1. Transition Strip: Roll firmly to enhance adhesion.
 2. Preformed Silicone Extrusion: Set in full bed of silicone sealant applied to walls, frame, and air-barrier material.
- F. Fill gaps in perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors, and miscellaneous penetrations of air-barrier material with foam sealant.
- G. Seal strips and transition strips around masonry reinforcing or ties and penetrations with termination mastic.
- H. Seal top of through-wall flashings to air barrier with an additional 6-inch-wide, transition strip.
- I. Seal exposed edges of strips at seams, cuts, penetrations, and terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with termination mastic.
- J. Repair punctures, voids, and deficient lapped seams in strips and transition strips. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with transition strips extending 6 inches beyond repaired areas in strip direction.
- 3.4 PRIMARY AIR-BARRIER MATERIAL INSTALLATION
- A. Apply air-barrier material to form a seal with strips and transition strips and to achieve a continuous air barrier according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions and details. Apply air-barrier material within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges.
1. Unless manufacturer recommends in writing against priming, apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry.

2. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air-barrier material on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
 3. Where multiple prime coats are needed to achieve required bond, allow adequate drying time between coats.
- B. High-Build Air Barriers: Apply continuous unbroken air-barrier material to substrates according to the following thickness. Apply air-barrier material in full contact around protrusions such as masonry ties.
1. Vapor-Retarding, High-Build Air Barrier: Total dry film thickness as recommended in writing by manufacturer to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 40 mils, applied per manufacturers instructions.
- C. Do not cover air barrier until it has been inspected by testing agency.
- D. Correct deficiencies in or remove air barrier that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates and reapply air-barrier components.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. ABAA Quality Assurance Program: Perform examinations, preparation, installation, testing, and inspections under ABAA's Quality Assurance Program.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform inspections.
- C. Inspections: Air-barrier materials, accessories, and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements. Inspections may include the following:
1. Continuity of air-barrier system has been achieved throughout the building envelope with no gaps or holes.
 2. Air-barrier dry film thickness.
 3. Continuous structural support of air-barrier system has been provided.
 4. Masonry and concrete surfaces are smooth, clean, and free of cavities, protrusions, and mortar droppings.
 5. Site conditions for application temperature and dryness of substrates have been maintained.
 6. Maximum exposure time of materials to UV deterioration has not been exceeded.
 7. Surfaces have been primed, if applicable.
 8. Laps in strips and transition strips have complied with minimum requirements and have been shingled in the correct direction (or mastic has been applied on exposed edges), with no fishmouths.
 9. Termination mastic has been applied on cut edges.
 10. Strips and transition strips have been firmly adhered to substrate.
 11. Compatible materials have been used.
 12. Transitions at changes in direction and structural support at gaps have been provided.
 13. Connections between assemblies (air-barrier and sealants) have complied with requirements for cleanliness, surface preparation and priming, structural support, integrity, and continuity of seal.
 14. All penetrations have been sealed.
- D. Tests: As determined by testing agency:
- E. Air barriers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
1. Apply additional air-barrier material, according to manufacturer's written instructions, where inspection results indicate insufficient thickness.
 2. Remove and replace deficient air-barrier components for retesting as specified above.

- F. Repair damage to air barriers caused by testing; follow manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect air-barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Protect air barrier from exposure to UV light and harmful weather exposure as recommended in writing by manufacturer. If exposed to these conditions for longer than recommended, remove and replace air barrier or install additional, full-thickness, air-barrier application after repairing and preparing the overexposed materials according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Protect air barrier from contact with incompatible materials and sealants not approved by air-barrier manufacturer.
- B. Clean spills, stains, and soiling from construction that would be exposed in the completed work using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.
- C. Remove masking materials after installation.

END OF SECTION 072726

SECTION 073113 - ASPHALT SHINGLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Asphalt shingles.
 - 2. Underlayment.
 - 3. Ridge vents.
 - 4. Metal flashing and trim.

1.3 DEFINITION

- A. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
 - 1. Asphalt Shingles: Full size.
 - 2. Ridge and Hip Cap Shingles: Full size.
 - 3. Ridge Vent: 12-inch-long Sample.
 - 4. Exposed Valley Lining: 12 inches square.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of asphalt shingle indicated.
 - 1. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products, of sizes indicated:
 - 1. Asphalt Shingles: Full size.
 - 2. Ridge and Hip Cap Shingles: Full size.
 - 3. Ridge Vent: 12-inch-long Sample.
 - 4. Exposed Valley Lining: 12 inches square.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each type of asphalt shingle and underlayment product indicated, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For synthetic underlayment and high-temperature, self-adhering sheet underlayment, from ICC-ES or other testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, indicating that product is suitable for intended use under applicable building codes.
- D. Certificate of Compliance: Provide Certificate of Compliance from an independent laboratory indicating that the asphalt fiberglass shingles made in normal production meet or exceed the requirements of the following:
 - 1. ASTM E 108/UL 790 Class A Fire Resistance
 - 2. ASTM D 3161/UL 997 Wind Resistance.
 - 3. ASTM D 3462
- E. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty
- F. Shop Drawings: Indicate specially configured metal flashing, jointing methods and locations, fastening methods and locations and installation details as required by project conditions indicated.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For asphalt shingles to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Asphalt Shingles: 100 sq. ft. of each type, in unbroken bundles.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store roofing materials in a dry, well-ventilated location protected from weather, sunlight, and moisture according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Store underlayment rolls on end on pallets or other raised surfaces. Do not double stack rolls.
- C. Protect unused roofing materials from weather, sunlight, and moisture when left overnight or when roofing work is not in progress.
- D. Handle, store, and place roofing materials in a manner to prevent damage to roof deck or structural supporting members.

1.11 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by manufacturer.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace asphalt shingles that fail within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Manufacturing defects.
 - 2. Material Warranty Period: 25 years from date of Substantial Completion, prorated, with first 10 years non-prorated.
 - 3. Wind-Speed Warranty Period: Asphalt shingles will resist blow-off or damage caused by wind speeds of up to 110 mph for 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 4. Algae-Resistance Warranty Period: Asphalt shingles will not discolor for 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 5. Workmanship Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Roofing Installer's Warranty: On warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, in which Installer agrees to repair or replace components of asphalt-shingle roofing that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GLASS-FIBER-REINFORCED ASPHALT SHINGLES

- A. Laminated-Strip Asphalt Shingles: Conforming to ASTM D 3018 Type I – Self-Sealing; UL Certification of ASTM D 3462, ASTM D 3161 Class “F” (110-mph) /UL997 Wind Resistance and UL Class A Fire Resistance; glass fiber mat base; ceramically colored/UV resistant mineral surface granules across the entire face of the shingle; algae-resistant; full two layer laminated four tab shingle, plus additional random tabs.
 - 1. Certaineed “Landmark Pro” or approved equal.
 - 2. 234-240 lbs/square
 - 3. Butt Edge: Manufacturer’s standard.
 - 4. Strip Size: Manufacturer’s standard.
 - 5. Color and Blends: As selected from manufacturer’s full range.
- B. Hip and Ridge Shingles: Manufacturer's standard units to match asphalt shingles.

2.2 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Granular Surfaced: ASTM D1970/D1970M, minimum of 40-mil- thick sheet; glass-fiber-mat-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt; mineral-granule surfaced; with release backing; cold applied.
1. Certaineed “Winterguard” or approved equal.
 2. To be used as eave ice dam protection.

2.3 RIDGE VENTS

- A. Rigid Ridge Vent: Manufacturer's standard, rigid section high-density polypropylene or other UV-stabilized plastic ridge vent for use under ridge shingles.
1. Certaineed Ridge Vent or approved equal.
 2. Minimum Net Free Area: 16 sq. inch per foot.
 3. Width: 9”.
 4. Features:
 - a. Nonwoven geotextile filter strips.
 - b. External deflector baffles.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586, Type II, asbestos free.
- B. Roofing Nails: ASTM F1667; aluminum, stainless-steel, copper, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire shingle nails, minimum 0.120-inch-diameter, sharp-pointed, with a minimum 3/8-inch-diameter flat head and of sufficient length to penetrate 3/4 inch into solid wood decking or extend at least 1/8 inch through OSB or plywood sheathing.
1. Shank: As recommended by shingle manufacturer.
 2. Where nails are in contact with metal flashing, use nails made from same metal as flashing.
- C. Synthetic-Underlayment Fasteners: As recommended in writing by synthetic-underlayment manufacturer for application indicated.

2.5 METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

- A. General: Comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
1. Sheet Metal: Aluminum, mill finished.
- B. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of the item.
1. Cricket or Backer Flashings: Fabricate with concealed flange extending a minimum of 18 inches beneath upslope asphalt shingles and 6 inches beyond each side of projection and 6 inches above the roof plane.
 2. Drip Edges: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding 10 feet with 2-inch roof-deck flange and 1-1/2-inch fascia flange with 3/8-inch drip at lower edge.

- C. Vent Pipe Flashings: ASTM B749, Type L51121, at least 1/16 inch thick. Provide lead sleeve sized to slip over and turn down into pipe, soldered to skirt at slope of roof, and extending at least 4 inches from pipe onto roof.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Examine roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing and blocking or metal clips and that installation is within flatness tolerances.
 - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and completely anchored; and that provisions have been made for flashings and penetrations through asphalt shingles.
- B. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with underlayment manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install, wrinkle free, on roof deck. Comply with low-temperature installation restrictions of underlayment manufacturer if applicable. Install lapped in direction that sheds water. Lap sides not less than 3-1/2 inches. Lap ends not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within seven days.
 - 1. Eaves: Extend from edges of eaves 24 inches beyond interior face of exterior wall.
 - 2. Valleys: Extend from lowest to highest point 18 inches on each side.

3.3 METAL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal flashings and other sheet metal to comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 - 1. Install metal flashings according to recommendations in ARMA's "Residential Asphalt Roofing Manual" and NRCA's "NRCA Guidelines for Asphalt Shingle Roof Systems."
- B. Cricket or Backer Flashings: Install against the roof-penetrating element extending concealed flange beneath upslope asphalt shingles and beyond each side.
- C. Rake Drip Edges: Install rake drip-edge flashings over underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
- D. Eave Drip Edges: Install eave drip-edge flashings below underlayment and fasten to roof sheathing.
- E. Pipe Flashings: Form flashing around pipe penetrations and asphalt shingles. Fasten and seal to asphalt shingles as recommended by manufacturer.

3.4 ASPHALT-SHINGLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install asphalt shingles according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in NRCA's "NRCA Guidelines for Asphalt Shingle Roof Systems."
- B. Install starter strip along lowest roof edge, consisting of an asphalt-shingle strip with tabs removed with self-sealing strip face up at roof edge.
 - 1. Extend asphalt shingles 1/2 inch over fasciae at eaves and rakes.
 - 2. Install starter strip along rake edge.
- C. Fasten asphalt-shingle strips according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. When ambient temperature during installation is below 50 deg F, seal asphalt shingles with asphalt roofing cement spots.
- D. Woven Valleys: Extend succeeding asphalt-shingle courses from both sides of valley 12 inches beyond center of valley, weaving intersecting shingle-strip courses over each other. Use one-piece shingle strips without joints in valley.
 - 1. Do not nail asphalt shingles within 6 inches of valley center.
- E. Ridge Vents: Install continuous ridge vents over asphalt shingles according to manufacturer's written instructions. Fasten with roofing nails of sufficient length to penetrate sheathing.

3.5 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS <Insert name> of <Insert address>, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("the work") on the following project:
 - 1. Owner: <Insert name of Owner>.
 - 2. Address: <Insert address>.
 - 3. Building Name/Type: <Insert information>.
 - 4. Address: <Insert address>.
 - 5. Area of the Work: <Insert information>.
 - 6. Acceptance Date: <Insert date>.
 - 7. Warranty Period: <Insert time>.
 - 8. Expiration Date: <Insert date>.
- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant the work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,
- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period he will, at his own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of the work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain the work in a watertight condition.

D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:

1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to the work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
 - a. Lightning;
 - b. Peak gust wind speed exceeding **<Insert wind speed>** mph;
 - c. Fire;
 - d. Failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
 - e. Faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
 - f. Vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
 - g. Activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.
2. When the work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to the work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of the work.
4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of the work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of the alterations, but only to the extent the alterations affect the work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform the alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting the alterations, notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that the alterations would likely damage or deteriorate the work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.
5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of the change, but only to the extent the change affects the work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect the work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on the work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of the work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this **<Insert day>** day of **<Insert month>**, **<Insert year>**.

1. Authorized Signature: **<Insert signature>**.
2. Name: **<Insert name>**.
3. Title: **<Insert title>**.

END OF SECTION 073113

SECTION 074113.16 - STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Corten and coated standing-seam metal roof panels.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal panel Installer, metal panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal panels, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
 - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
 - 5. Review structural loading limitations of deck during and after roofing.
 - 6. Review flashings, special details, drainage, penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect metal panels.
 - 7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
 - 8. Review temporary protection requirements for metal panel systems during and after installation.
 - 9. Review procedures for repair of metal panels damaged after installation.
 - 10. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For standing-seam metal roof panels. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
 - 2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
 - 1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.

CITY OF CENTERVILLE
BENHAM'S GROVE EVENT CENTER + CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS
LWC Commission No.: 22627.00

1. Metal Panels: 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include clips, fasteners, closures, and other metal panel accessories.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For standing-seam metal roof panels, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.7 MOCKUPS

- A. Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 1. Build mockups for typical roof area only, including accessories.
 - a. Size: 12 feet long by 6 feet.
 - b. Each type of exposed seam and seam termination.
 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 3. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

CITY OF CENTERVILLE
BENHAM'S GROVE EVENT CENTER + CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS
LWC Commission No.: 22627.00

- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special Weathertightness Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace standing-seam metal roof panel assemblies that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E1592:
 - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/180 of the span.

- B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E1680 or ASTM E283 at the following test-pressure difference:
 - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..

- C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E1646 or ASTM E331 at the following test-pressure difference:
 - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 2.86 lbf/sq. ft..

- D. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E2140.

- E. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift-resistance class indicated.
 - 1. Uplift Rating: UL 90.

- F. FM Global Listing: Provide metal roof panels and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Global 4471 as part of a panel roofing system and that are listed in FM Global's "Approval Guide" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Global markings.
 - 1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A- 90.
 - 2. Hail Resistance: MH.

- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. Provide factory-formed metal roof panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting raised side edges of adjacent panels with joint type indicated and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips in side laps. Include clips, cleats, pressure plates, and accessories required for weathertight installation.
 - 1. Steel Panel Systems: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with ASTM E1514.

CITY OF CENTERVILLE
BENHAM'S GROVE EVENT CENTER + CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS
LWC Commission No.: 22627.00

- B. Vertical-Rib, Snap-Joint, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and a flat pan between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels, engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and snapping panels together.
1. Basis-of-Design: Western States Metal Roofing Western Lock Standing Seam.
 2. Acceptable Manufacturer: TitenTek – Standing Seam Corten A604-4 22ga. Local Contact: Amy Carr, amy@altiersap.com , 513-904-7261
 3. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 coating designation; structural quality. Preprimed by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
 - a. Nominal Thickness: 0.022 inch.
 - b. Exterior Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer for Barn (See Alternates). Corten A604-4 for Event Center.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 4. Clips: One-piece fixed to accommodate thermal movement.
 - a. 0.028-inch- minimum nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
 5. Panel Coverage: 18 inches.
 6. Panel Height: 1.75 inches.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Underlayment: Provide self-adhering, cold-applied, sheet underlayment, a minimum of 30 mils thick, consisting of slip-resistant, polyethylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
1. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F; ASTM D1970.
 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F; ASTM D1970.
- B. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's recommended slip sheet, of type required for application.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C645; cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, G90 hot-dip galvanized coating designation or ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.

CITY OF CENTERVILLE
BENHAM'S GROVE EVENT CENTER + CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS
LWC Commission No.: 22627.00

2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch-thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from metallic-coated steel with fluoropolymer as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.
- D. Gutters: Formed from metallic-coated steel with fluoropolymer, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special pieces as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long sections, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Furnish gutter supports spaced a maximum of 36 inches o.c., fabricated from same metal as gutters. Provide wire ball strainers of compatible metal at outlets. Finish gutters to match metal roof panels.
- E. Downspouts: Formed from metallic-coated steel with 2-coat fluoropolymer. Fabricate in 10-foot-long sections, complete with formed elbows and offsets, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Finish downspouts to match gutters.
- F. Roof Curbs: Fabricated from same material as roof panels, 0.048-inch nominal thickness; with bottom of skirt profiled to match roof panel profiles and with welded top box and integral full-length cricket. Fabricate curb subframing of 0.060-inch-nominal thickness, angle-, C-, or Z-shaped steel sheet. Fabricate curb and subframing to withstand indicated loads of size and height indicated. Finish roof curbs to match metal roof panels.
1. Insulate roof curb with 1-inch-thick, rigid insulation.
- G. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads.
- H. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.
1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
 2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C1311.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- C. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.

CITY OF CENTERVILLE
BENHAM'S GROVE EVENT CENTER + CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS
LWC Commission No.: 22627.00

- D. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 2. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
 3. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
 4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 5. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.6 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Steel Panels and Accessories:
1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621 (For use on Barn roof and all gutters, downspouts, and roof edges. See Alternates for Barn roof). Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.
 2. Corten: (For use on Event Center) Corten A606-4
 3. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. Examine primary and secondary roof framing to verify that rafters, purlins, angles, channels, and other structural panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
 2. Examine solid roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.

CITY OF CENTERVILLE
BENHAM'S GROVE EVENT CENTER + CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS
LWC Commission No.: 22627.00

- a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply at locations indicated below, wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
 - 1. Apply over the entire roof surface.
- B. Slip Sheet: Apply slip sheet over underlayment before installing metal roof panels.
- C. Flashings: Install flashings to cover underlayment to comply with requirements specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
 - 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
 - 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 - 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 - 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
 - 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
 - 7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
 - 8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Fasteners:
 - 1. Steel Panels: Use stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.

CITY OF CENTERVILLE
BENHAM'S GROVE EVENT CENTER + CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS
LWC Commission No.: 22627.00

2. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
 3. Copper Panels: Use copper, stainless steel, or hardware-bronze fasteners.
 4. Stainless Steel Panels: Use stainless steel fasteners.
- C. Anchor Clips: Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- D. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
- E. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panel Installation: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended in writing by manufacturer.
1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
 2. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 3. Snap Joint: Nest standing seams and fasten together by interlocking and completely engaging factory-applied sealant.
 4. Watertight Installation:
 - a. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend in writing by manufacturer as needed to make panels watertight.
 - b. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
 - c. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.
- F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal roof panel manufacturers; or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
- H. Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered or lapped and sealed joints. Attach gutters to eave with gutter hangers spaced not more than 36 inches o.c. using manufacturer's standard fasteners. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion.

CITY OF CENTERVILLE
BENHAM'S GROVE EVENT CENTER + CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS
LWC Commission No.: 22627.00

- I. Downspouts: Join sections with telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely 1 inch away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c. in between.
 - 1. Provide elbows at base of downspouts to direct water away from building.
 - 2. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
- J. Roof Curbs: Install flashing around bases where they meet metal roof panels.
- K. Pipe Flashing: Form flashing around pipe penetration and metal roof panels. Fasten and seal to metal roof panels as recommended by manufacturer.

3.5 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect metal roof panel installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.
- B. Remove and replace applications of metal roof panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074113.16

SECTION 074200 - PHENOLIC WALL PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes solid Phenolic single-skin panels and sub-framing for attachment to wall assembly.
- B. Performance Requirements: Engineer, fabricate and install all secondary framing (from structural steel out) required for attachment and support of panels. Provide panels that have been manufactured, fabricated and installed to maintain performance criteria stated by manufacturer without defects, damage or failure.
- C. References:
 - 1. ASTM International:
 - a. ASTM D792 Standard Test Methods for Density and Specific Gravity (Relative Density) of Plastics by Displacement.
 - b. ASTM E84 Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
 - 2. Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V. (German Standards Institute) (DIN).

1.3 DEFINITION

- A. Phenolic Wall Panel Assembly: Phenolic wall panels, attachment system components, miscellaneous metal framing, and accessories necessary for a complete enclosure system.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Phenolic wall panel assemblies shall comply with performance requirements without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Design Phenolic wall panel assembly, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional architect or engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Structural Performance: Provide Phenolic wall panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 330:
 - 1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on the following minimum design wind pressures:

- a. Uniform pressure of 20 lbf/sq. ft., acting inward or outward.
 2. Deflection Limits: Phenolic wall panel assemblies shall withstand wind loads with horizontal deflections no greater than 1/175 of the span at the perimeter and 1/60 of the span anywhere in the panel.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of Phenolic wall panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of Phenolic wall panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish among factory-, shop-, and field-assembled work.
 1. Accessories: Include details of the following items, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches:
 - a. Anchorage systems.
- C. LEED Submittals:
 1. Credit MR 4; Recycled Content: Indicate recycled content; indicate percentage of presconsumer and postconsumer recycled content.
 - a. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.
 2. Credit MR 5; Local/Regional Materials
 - a. Indicate location of manufacturing facility' indicate distance between manufacturing facility and the potential site.
 - b. Indicate location of extraction, harvesting, and recovery; indicate distance between extraction, harvesting, and recovery and the project site.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
 1. Phenolic Wall Panels: Minimum 24 x 24 inches. Include fasteners, closures, and other Phenolic wall panel accessories to demonstrate complete assembly if not using Basis of Design product.
 - a. Sample Assembly: Include corner and joint condition.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For Phenolic wall panel assembly indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- F. Coordination Drawings: Exterior elevations, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Wall panels and attachments.
2. Sub-framing.
3. Wall-mounted items including lighting fixtures.
4. Penetrations.

G. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

H. Test Reports: Submit certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics and physical properties.

I. Certificates:

1. Qualification Certificates: Submit certificate indicating compliance with qualification requirements in Quality Assurance article.
2. Product certificates signed by manufacturer certifying materials comply with specified performance characteristics and criteria and physical requirements.

J. Manufacturer's Instructions: Manufacturer's installation instructions.

K. Closeout Submittals: Submit the following:

1. Operation and Maintenance Data: Operation and maintenance data for installed products in accordance with Division 1 Closeout Submittals (Maintenance Data and Operation Data) Section. Include methods for maintaining installed products and precautions against cleaning materials and methods detrimental to finishes and performance.
2. Factory Cut Sheets: Provide factory cut sheets for each panel size on the job, in case panels need to be re-manufactured in the future.
3. Warranty: Warranty documents specified herein.
4. Attic Stock – (1) Panel (uncut) for each color, manufacturer's standard panel size..

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer producing product in ISO 9001 certified facility, capable of providing field service representation during fabrication and approving application method.
 - a. Obtain sub-structure and panels from a single source manufacturer/fabricator.
2. Installer Qualifications: Installer shall be approved by the manufacturer and fabricator, and experienced in performing work of similar type and scope.

B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. Build mockup of typical corner panel assembly, 2 panels high including horizontal joint by full thickness, including supports, attachments, and accessories.
 - a. Include four-way joint for Phenolic wall panels.
2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

3. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, Phenolic wall panel Installer, Phenolic wall panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects Phenolic wall panels.
2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
3. Review methods and procedures related to Phenolic wall panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
5. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that will affect Phenolic wall panels.
6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
7. Review temporary protection requirements for Phenolic wall panel assembly during and after installation.
8. Review wall panel observation and repair procedures after Phenolic wall panel installation.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, sheets, Phenolic wall panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package Phenolic wall panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect Phenolic wall panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Store Phenolic wall panels vertically, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store Phenolic wall panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store Phenolic wall panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Do not allow storage space to exceed 120 deg F.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of Phenolic wall panels to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify locations of structural members and opening dimensions by field measurements before Phenolic wall panel fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Phenolic wall panel assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of support framing and other adjoining work to provide a secure and noncorrosive installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of Phenolic wall panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures, including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - c. Failure of sub-framing support system
 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace Phenolic wall panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 2. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANEL MATERIALS

- A. Panel Material Manufacturer: Trespa North America (Basis of Design), local contact: Michael McMahon, mike@apsagency.us 248-910-9949
1. Trespa Meteor:
 - a. Material: Solid Phenolic panel.
 - b. Color: on Primary Face: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard color palette with black on reverse.
 - c. Finish: Satin sheen.
 - d. Panel Core: Type FR fire retardant black core
 - e. Panel Sizes: As shown on architectural drawings
 - f. Panel Thickness: 3/8 inch.
 - g. Fire Performance: ASTM E84 Type I, Class A
 - h. Smoke Development Index: Less than 450.
 - i. Water Absorption: Less than 1.0% per EN 438-2 (7).
 - j. Porosity: Nonporous surface and edges.
 - k. Microbial Characteristics: Will not support microorganic growth, (ISO 846).
 - l. Cleanability: Resists dirt pickup. Easily cleaned.
 - m. Color Stability: 4 -5 grey scale per ISO 105 A02-87 (3000 hr xenon lamp test).

2.2 PANEL SYSTEM (BASIS OF DESIGN)

- A. Panel System Fabricator: Sobotec Ltd. Local contact: Spohn Associates 937-299-0781, Sam Davis.
 - 1. FSL-200 System with concealed fastening (Basis of Design), as engineered and fabricated by Sobotec.
 - 2. System includes all galvanized and aluminum sub-framing painted to match for complete system installation directly to wall assembly.
 - 3. Panel corners are to be standard mitered connections.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FRAMING

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Framing, General: ASTM C 645, cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40 hot-dip galvanized or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Subgirts: Manufacturer's standard C- or Z-shaped sections 0.064-inch nominal thickness.
- C. Zee Clips: 0.079-inch nominal thickness.
- D. Base or Sill Angles and Channels: 0.079-inch nominal thickness.
- E. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels:
 - 1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.
 - 2. Depth: As required.
- F. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: Minimum 1/2-inch- wide flange.
 - 1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.
 - 2. Depth: As required.
 - 3. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with nominal thickness of 0.040 inch.
- G. Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Provide Stainless Steel Exposed Fasteners as required to suit project conditions for TS-1500 system. All exposed fasteners shall be tamper-proof and colored to match panel finish and flush with panel surface.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and Phenolic wall panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.

2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- B. Sub-framing or trim shall not be visible from exterior. Paint framing or provide trim as required to conceal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, Phenolic wall panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Examine framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by Phenolic wall panel manufacturer.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating Phenolic wall panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to joint locations of panels before panel installation.
- C. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Framing: Install subgirts, base angles, sills, furring, and other miscellaneous wall panel support members and anchorage according to Phenolic wall panel manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 PHENOLIC WALL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install Phenolic wall panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to girts and subgirts unless otherwise indicated. Anchor panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Commence Phenolic wall panel installation and install minimum of 100 sq. ft. in presence of factory-authorized representative.
 - 2. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving Phenolic wall panels.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended by Phenolic wall panel manufacturer.
- C. Attachment System Installation, General: Install attachment system required to support Phenolic wall panels and to provide a complete wall system, including subgirts, , panel clips, and anchor channels.

1. Include attachment to supports, panel-to-panel joinery, panel-to-dissimilar-material joinery, and panel-system joint seals.
- D. Clip Installation: Attach fasteners to supports at each Phenolic wall panel at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Interface with Other Work: Installer shall coordinate with other trades as required to sequence construction and product installation to avoid project delays.
- F. Accessory Items: Install corner profiles, gaskets and trim with fasteners and adhesive appropriate for use with adjoining construction as indicated on drawings and as recommended by manufacturer.

3.4 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

3.5 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align Phenolic wall panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet, nonaccumulative, on level, plumb, and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust completed Phenolic wall panel installation, including accessories.
- B. Phenolic wall panels will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as Phenolic wall panels are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of Phenolic wall panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After Phenolic wall panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace Phenolic wall panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074200

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fiber-cement siding.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, grounds, nailers, and blocking.
2. Section 072500 "Weather Barriers" for weather-resistive barriers.

1.2 COORDINATION

- #### A. Coordinate siding installation with flashings and other adjoining construction to ensure proper sequencing.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- #### A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Fiber-cement siding.
2. Fiber-cement soffit.

- #### B. Product Data Submittals: For each type of fiber-cement siding] and soffit. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

- #### C. Samples for Initial Selection: For fiber-cement siding and soffit including related accessories.

- #### D. Samples for Verification: For each type, texture, and pattern required.

1. 12-inch- (300-mm-) long-by-actual-width Sample of siding.
2. 24-inch- (600-mm-) wide-by-36-inch- (900-mm-) high Sample panel of siding assembled on plywood backing.
3. 12-inch- (300-mm-) long-by-actual-width Sample of soffit.
4. 12-inch- (300-mm-) long-by-actual-width Samples of trim and accessories.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- #### A. Product Certificates: For each type of fiber-cement siding.

- B. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for fiber-cement siding.
- C. Research/Evaluation Reports: For each type of fiber-cement siding required, from ICC-ES.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of fiber-cement siding, including related accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Furnish full lengths of fiber-cement siding including related accessories, in a quantity equal to 2 percent of amount installed.

1.8 MOCKUPS

- A. Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Build mockups for fiber-cement [**siding**] [**and**] [**soffit**] including accessories.
 - a. Size: **48 inches (1200 mm)** long by **60 inches (1800 mm)** high.
 - b. Include outside corner on one end of mockup and inside corner on other end.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with labels intact until time of use.
- B. Store materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including cracking and deforming.
 - b. Deterioration of materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain products, including related accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

- A. Fiber-Cement Siding: ASTM C1186, Type A, Grade II, fiber-cement board, noncombustible when tested in accordance with ASTM E136; with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Fiber Cement Corporation.
 - b. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
 - c. GAF.
 - d. James Hardie Building Products, Inc.
 - e. Nichiha USA, Inc.

 - B. Labeling: Provide fiber-cement siding that is tested and labeled in accordance with ASTM C1186 by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

 - C. Nominal Thickness: Not less than **5/16 inch (8 mm)**.

 - D. Horizontal Pattern: Boards with exposure to match existing and as indicated on drawings.
 1. Texture: Smooth.

 - E. Factory Priming: Manufacturer's standard acrylic primer.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Siding Accessories, General: Provide starter strips, edge trim, outside and inside corner caps, and other items as recommended by siding manufacturer for building configuration.
 1. Provide accessories matching color and texture of adjacent siding unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Decorative Accessories: Provide the following fiber-cement decorative accessories as indicated:
 - 1. Corner posts.
 - 2. Door and window casings.
 - 3. Fasciae.
 - 4. Moldings and trim.

- C. Flashing: Provide aluminum flashing complying with Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" at window and door heads and where indicated.
 - 1. Finish for Aluminum Flashing: Factory-prime coating.

- D. Fasteners:
 - 1. For fastening to wood, use siding nails or ribbed bugle-head screws of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of **1 inch (25 mm)** into substrate.
 - 2. For fastening to metal, use ribbed bugle-head screws of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of **1/4 inch (6 mm)**, or three screw-threads, into substrate.
 - 3. For fastening fiber cement, use stainless steel fasteners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fiber-cement [**siding**] [**and**] [**soffit**] and related accessories.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
 - 1. Do not install damaged components.
 - 2. Install fasteners no more than **24 inches (600 mm)** o.c.
- B. Install joint sealants as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and to produce a weathertight installation.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove damaged, improperly installed, or otherwise defective materials and replace with new materials complying with specified requirements.
- B. Clean finished surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and maintain in a clean condition during construction.

END OF SECTION 074646

SECTION 075323 - ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE-DIENE-MONOMER (EPDM) ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Fully adhered EPDM membrane roofing system.
2. Self-adhered vapor / Air Barrier.
3. Fully adhered roof insulation.
4. Adhered cover boards.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof penetration flashings, flashings, and counterflashings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
- B. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. Roofing System Design: Provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

D. FM Approvals Listing: Provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals' markings.

1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-90.
2. Hail Resistance: SH.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
2. Vapor / Air Barrier terminations at parapet walls at perimeter, including termination details.
3. Plan views showing locations, slopes and extent of tapered insulation, drain sumps.
4. Provide sections and details at roof drains, scuppers and drain sumps.
5. Tapered insulation, layout, thicknesses, including slopes.
6. Roof plan showing orientation of steel roof deck and orientation of membrane roofing.
7. Provide drawings showing locations of membrane seams.

C. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes:

1. Sheet roofing, of color specified, including T-shaped side and end lap seam.
2. Vapor / air barrier membrane. 12" x 12" minimum
3. Cover board 12"x 12"
4. Roof insulation. 12" x 12"
5. Termination bars. 12"
6. Provide a staggered mock up of full assembly from substrate board up to and including epdm membrane.

D. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and manufacturer.

E. Manufacturer Certificate: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that membrane roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

1. Submit evidence of complying with performance requirements.

F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of membrane roofing system.

G. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of membrane roofing system, from the ICC-ES.

- H. Maintenance Data: For membrane roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.
- I. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed and FM Approvals approved for membrane roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
- C. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- D. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- E. Preliminary Roofing Conference: Before starting roof deck construction, conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
 - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 4. Review requirements for deck substrate conditions and finishes, including flatness and fastening.
 - 5. Review coordination issues related to building air barrier system and tying roof vapor / air barrier into perimeter parapet walls.
 - 6. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
 - 7. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect roofing system.
 - 8. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
 - 9. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
 - 10. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.
- F. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof scuppers, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect roofing system.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.8 COLD WEATHER HANDLING, STORAGE, PREPARATION AND INSTALLATION

- E. Follow manufacturer's recommendations related to cold weather storage handling and installation of all roofing materials and generally as follows, according to Firestone's Technical Bulletin of December 20, 2010.

1. Cold temperatures change the physical properties of adhesives and sealants, and make roofing membranes stiffer and more difficult to manipulate. All roofing materials must be stored between 60 and 80 °F (15 and 27 °C) just prior to using to ensure proper application. If the properties and application of the materials begin to deteriorate from cold weather exposure, restoring them to recommended temperature is necessary. It may take several days storing cold materials at room temperature (full pallets for example) until the materials are restored to room temperature. Adhesives, sealants and primers stored cold, followed by room temperature storage may cause separation of solvents, requiring re-mixing. Never allow water-based products and two-part urethanes to freeze, resulting in solidification.
2. Cold Adhesive applied in cold weather shall be as recommended by manufacturer. Ambient and substrate temperatures should be 40 °F (4 °C) and rising at the time of application.
3. Membrane Size: During cold weather, large folded panels are more difficult to relax and install, especially with adhered systems. Always unfold panels and roll out rolls allowing the membrane to relax prior to installation.
4. EPDM Flashing Installation: Uncured flashing products are designed to be formable during warmer temperatures. Cold weather requires supplemental warming by using a heat gun during application. Care should be taken to keep the heat gun away from cleaners, primers, adhesives or other flammable materials. Ambient conditions and flashing color determines the need for supplemental heat. Temperatures below 60 °F (15 °C) may require the use of an additional heat source to ensure the formability of the uncured flashing.
5. EcoWhite EPDM Flashing and Splicing: To enhance the initial adhesion of Firestone EcoWhite EPDM splice tapes and flashing, the mating areas must be cleaned with Splice Wash SW-100 prior to the application of QuickPrime™ Plus when temperatures are below 60 °F (15 °C). Pre-cleaning the splicing area helps increase the initial adhesion until maximum adhesion is reached.

1.9 SEQUENCING OF WORK

- F. Work shall begin only after opening and penetrations are in place and adjacent work required for complete tie-in are in place. This includes flashing in masonry walls with special attention given to roof to wall transitions.
 1. Work shall not begin before the "Preinstallation Conference" and conditions exist necessary for a successful completion of roofing have occurred.
 2. Work shall not begin without the presence of manufacturer's representative, A/E and Testing Laboratory, if required.
- G. Arrange work sequence to avoid use of newly constructed roofing as a walking surface or for equipment movement and storage. Where such access is absolutely required, the Applicator shall provide all necessary protection and barriers to segregate the work area and to prevent damage to adjacent areas.

- H. After work on roof is started, no traffic will be permitted on the roof other than necessary for the roofing application and inspection. Materials shall not be piled on the roof to the extent that design live loads are exceeded. Roofing materials shall not be transported over unfinished or finished roofing or existing roofs unless adequate protection is provided.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- I. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 WARRANTY

- J. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Special warranty includes membrane roofing, base flashings, and other components of membrane roofing system.
 2. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- K. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering Work of this Section, including all components of membrane roofing system such as membrane roofing, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate boards, vapor retarders, roof pavers, and walkway products, for the following warranty period:
1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BLACK EPDM MEMBRANE ROOFING

- A. EPDM: ASTM D 4637, Type I, non-reinforced, uniform, flexible EPDM sheet.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.
 - b. Firestone Building Products.
 - c. GAF Materials Corporation.
 - d. GenFlex Roofing Systems.
 - e. Johns Manville.

2. Thickness: 60 mils, nominal.

2.2 AUXILIARY MEMBRANE ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary membrane roofing materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with membrane roofing.
- B. Sheet Flashing: 60-mil- thick EPDM, partially cured or cured, according to application.
- C. Protection Sheet: Epichlorohydrin or neoprene non-reinforced flexible sheet, 55- to 60-mil- thick, recommended by EPDM manufacturer for resistance to hydrocarbons, non-aromatic solvents, grease, and oil.
- D. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard.
- E. Seaming Material: Manufacturer's standard, synthetic-rubber polymer primer and 3-inch- wide minimum, butyl splice tape with release film.
- F. Lap Sealant: Manufacturer's standard, single-component sealant, colored to match membrane roofing.
- G. Water Cutoff Mastic: Manufacturer's standard butyl mastic sealant.
- H. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick; with anchors.
- I. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening membrane to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- J. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, reinforced EPDM securement strips, T-joint covers, in-seam sealants, termination reglets, cover strips, and other accessories.

2.1 SUBSTRATE BOARDS

- A. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/2 inch thick.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Georgia-Pacific Corporation; Dens Deck or Dens Deck Prime
- B. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/2 inch thick.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. USG Corporation; Securock.

C. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate panel to roof deck.

2.2 VAPOR / AIR BARRIER MEMBRANE

A. Membrane: 40 mil, self-adhesive, modified asphalt membrane with a polyethylene layer on the top surface, intended for use as an air and vapor barrier.

1. Water vapor permeance: ASTM E96 – .05 perms maximum.
2. Air permeance – Not to exceed 0.004 cfm x sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.; per ASTM E 283.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Carlisle – 725TR membrane
2. Grace – Perma-Barrier
3. Henry – Blueskin SA

2.3 ROOF INSULATION

A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation.

B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.

1. Provide insulation in 2 layers for a total minimum thickness of 4" and R- 21 minimum.
2. Apply fully adhered to substrate and subsequent layers.

C. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to develop positive slope to drain or scupper at a minimum slope of 1/4 inch per 12 inches unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide tapered insulation at all roof drain sump areas and between all roof drains and thru-wall scuppers.
2. Provide additional tapered insulation as needed to eliminate ponding and create positive slope to drain.

3. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.
4. Provide 48" x 48" x 1" deep, recessed sump at each roof drain, utilizing tapered insulation to transition between surrounding insulation and sump.
5. Apply tapered insulation fully adhered to substrate and subsequent layers.

2.4 COVER BOARD

- A. Cover Board: ASTM C 1289, high density, polyisocyanurate foam, 1/2 inch minimum thickness or as required to achieve wind uplift rating, with glass facers both sides. Minimum R-Value 2.5. Compressive strength 100 psi minimum. Cover board to be fully adhered to insulation over entire re-roofed areas and new roof areas, immediately below epdm membrane.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Firestone – ISOGARD HD
 - b. Carlisle – SecureShield HD

2.5 COVER BOARD

- A. As an alternative to the high density polyisocyanurate cover boards listed above the following cover board may be utilized, as may be required by roofing system manufacturer.
- B. Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/2 inch thick.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Georgia-Pacific Corporation; Dens Deck Prime

2.6 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation[**and cover boards**] to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphalt, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.

2.7 ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III or Type IV.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:
1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and curbs are set and braced and that roof drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
 3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Division 05 Section "Steel Decking."
 4. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
 5. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
 6. Verify that concrete curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
- C. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
- D. Install acoustical roof deck rib insulation strips, specified in Division 05 Section "Steel Decking," according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions, immediately before installation of overlying construction and to remain dry.

3.3 VAPOR / AIR BARRIER INSTALLATION

- A. Install self adhering membrane sheet vapor / air barrier as follows:
1. After preparing new wood roof deck sheathing, install self-adhering membrane-sheet vapor / air barrier in a single layer over entire roof area, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches and 6 inches, respectively, or as may be required by vapor / air barrier manufacturer.
 2. Turn vapor / air barrier membrane up and all masonry or plywood sheathing, parapet walls and curbs. Return air barrier up wall a minimum of 8 inches or as high as required to lap over building moisture barrier or membrane air barrier a minimum of 6 inches and terminate.
 3. Where curbs or other roof penetrations occur, turn air barrier up and over curb and wood blocking.
 4. Coordinate installation of vapor / air barrier with fluid applied air barrier installer at cavity walls and back sides of parapet walls.
- B. Completely seal vapor / air barrier at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into membrane roofing system.

3.4 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installing membrane roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
- B. Comply with membrane roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches in each direction.
1. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
- D. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
- E. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
1. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
- F. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:

- G. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches in each direction. Tightly butt cover boards together.
 - 1. Fully adhere cover boards according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
 - 2. Fully adhere cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.

3.5 ADHERED MEMBRANE ROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of membrane roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
- B. Accurately align membrane roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- C. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of membrane roofing at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing membrane roofing. Do not apply to splice area of membrane roofing.
- D. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten membrane roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeters.
- E. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- F. Adhesive Seam Installation: Clean both faces of splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping membrane roofing according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of membrane roofing terminations.
 - 1. Apply a continuous bead of in-seam sealant before closing splice if required by membrane roofing system manufacturer.
- G. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
- H. Spread sealant or mastic bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
- I. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing membrane roofing to maintain weather-tightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing membrane roofing system.
- J. Adhere protection sheet over membrane roofing at locations indicated.

3.6 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet flashing terminations.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

3.7 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to conduct post installation testing and analysis of the complete roofing system, and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
 - 1. If repairs or replacement of portions of the roofing become necessary, the manufacturer's technical personnel shall re-inspect the repaired areas upon completion of the repair.
- C. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

3.9 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect membrane roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove membrane roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates and repair or reinstall membrane roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

3.10 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS **<Insert name>** of **<Insert address>**, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:
 - 1. Owner: **<Insert name of Owner.>**
 - 2. Address: **<Insert address.>**
 - 3. Building Name/Type: **<Insert information.>**
 - 4. Address: **<Insert address.>**
 - 5. Area of Work: **<Insert information.>**
 - 6. Acceptance Date: **<Insert date.>**
 - 7. Warranty Period: **<Insert time.>**
 - 8. Expiration Date: **<Insert date.>**
- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,
- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period he will, at his own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.
- D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:
 - 1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
 - a. Lightning;
 - b. Peak gust wind speed exceeding **<Insert wind speed>** mph;
 - c. Fire;
 - d. Failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;

- e. Faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
 - f. Vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
 - g. Activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.
2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
 3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
 4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.
 5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
 6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
 7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.
- E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this **<Insert day>** day of **<Insert month>**, **<Insert year>**.
1. Authorized Signature: **<Insert signature>**.
 2. Name: **<Insert name>**.
 3. Title: **<Insert title>**.

END OF SECTION 075323

SECTION 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
2. Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.
3. This section does not include sheet metal flashing and trim associated with corten roofing.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
2. Section 077100 "Roof Specialties" for manufactured copings, roof-edge specialties, roof-edge drainage systems, reglets, and counterflashings.
3. Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, vents, and other manufactured roof accessory units.
4. Section 074113.16 "Standing-seam metal roof panels for sheet metal flashing and trim associated with standing-seam metal roofs.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Review special roof details, roof drainage, roof-penetration flashing, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect sheet metal flashing and trim.
3. Review requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
4. Review sheet metal flashing observation and repair procedures after flashing installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each of the following

1. Underlayment materials.
2. Elastomeric sealant.
3. Butyl sealant.
4. Epoxy seam sealer.

B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled Work.
3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
7. Include details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction from fixed points.
8. Include details of roof-penetration flashing.
9. Include details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, flashings, and counterflashings.
10. Include details of special conditions.
11. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
12. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal and accessory indicated with factory-applied finishes.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish.

1. Sheet Metal Flashing: 12 inches long by actual width of unit, including finished seam and in required profile. Include fasteners, cleats, clips, closures, and other attachments.
2. Trim, Metal Closures, Expansion Joints, Joint Intersections, and Miscellaneous Fabrications: 12 inches long and in required profile. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of coping and roof edge flashing that is ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 tested.

C. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Special warranty.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical roof edge or eave, including fascia and fascia trim, approximately 10 feet long, including supporting construction cleats, seams, attachments, underlayment, and accessories.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
 - 1. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
 - 2. Protect stored sheet metal flashing and trim from contact with water.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies, including cleats, anchors, and fasteners, shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Architectural Metal Flashing, Condensation and Air Leakage Control, and Reroofing" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Sheet Metal Standard for Copper: Comply with CDA's "Copper in Architecture Handbook." Conform to dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- D. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install roof edge flashings tested in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressure:
 - 1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Structural Drawings.
- E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Provide zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet in accordance with ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40; prepainted by coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
 - 1. Surface: Smooth, flat.
 - 2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 4. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Felt: ASTM D226/D226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt; nonperforated.
- B. Synthetic Underlayment: Laminated or reinforced, woven polyethylene or polypropylene, synthetic roofing underlayment; bitumen free; slip resistant; suitable for high temperatures over 220 deg F; and complying with physical requirements of ASTM D226/D226M for Type I and Type II felts.
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain underlayment from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment: Minimum 30 mils thick, consisting of a slip-resistant polyethylene- or polypropylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl- or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer in accordance with underlayment manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain underlayment from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D1970/D1970M; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F or lower.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
 - 1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
 - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
 - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
 - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
 - 2. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) and Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
 - 3. Fasteners for Zinc Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
- C. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
- D. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polyurethane polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.

- E. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- F. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.
- G. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion in accordance with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- H. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required.
 - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
 - 2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
 - 3. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered and obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
 - 4. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances:
 - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
 - 2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
 - 1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
 - 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal in accordance with cited sheet metal standard to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- G. Seams:
 - 1. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use.

- H. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

2.6 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Roof Edge Flashing Fascia Cap: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot-long sections. Furnish with 6-inch-wide, joint cover plates. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
 - 1. Joint Style: Butted with expansion space and 6-inch-wide, concealed backup plate Butted with expansion space and 6-inch-wide, exposed cover plate Insert description.
 - 2. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - a. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
 - b. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
- B. Base Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
 - 2. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
- C. Counterflashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch thick.
 - 2. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch thick.
- D. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch thick.
 - 2. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch thick.

2.7 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with 2-inch-high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch thick.
 - 2. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
 - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
 - 3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

- A. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment, wrinkle free, using adhesive to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim.
 - 1. Install in shingle fashion to shed water.
 - 2. Lap joints not less than 2 inches.
- B. Synthetic Underlayment: Install synthetic underlayment, wrinkle free, in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions, and using adhesive where possible to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal.
 - 1. Lap horizontal joints not less than 4 inches.
 - 2. Lap end joints not less than 12 inches.
- C. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment:
 - 1. Install self-adhering, high-temperature sheet underlayment; wrinkle free.
 - 2. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 3. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures.
 - 4. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses.
 - 5. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps and edges with roller.
 - 6. Roll laps and edges with roller.
 - 7. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations of cited sheet metal standard that apply to installation characteristics required unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 1. Install fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
 - 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of sealant.
 - 3. Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 4. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
 - 5. Install continuous cleats with fasteners spaced not more than 12 inches o.c.
 - 6. Space individual cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
 - 7. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil-canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
 - 8. Do not field cut sheet metal flashing and trim by torch.
 - 9. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact

surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.

1. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
1. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 24 inches of corner or intersection.
 2. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
 3. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant.
 - b. Form joints to completely conceal sealant.
 - c. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way.
 - d. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
 - 1) Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.
 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF ROOF FLASHINGS

- A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard.
1. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes.
 2. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Roof Edge Flashing:
1. Install roof edge flashings in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.
 2. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at staggered 3-inch centers.
 3. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.
- C. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing.

1. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing.
 2. Extend counterflashing 4 inches over base flashing.
 3. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches.
 4. Secure in waterproof manner by means of snap-in installation and sealant or lead wedges and sealant unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF WALL FLASHINGS

- A. Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings.

3.6 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended in writing by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer.
- C. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures, as determined by Architect.

END OF SECTION 076200

SECTION 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
- 2. Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
- 2. Section 077100 "Roof Specialties" for manufactured copings, roof-edge specialties, roof-edge drainage systems, reglets, and counterflashings.
- 3. Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, vents, and other manufactured roof accessory units.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

- 1. Review construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
- 2. Review special roof details, roof drainage, roof-penetration flashing, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect sheet metal flashing and trim.
- 3. Review requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
- 4. Review sheet metal flashing observation and repair procedures after flashing installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each of the following

1. Underlayment materials.
2. Elastomeric sealant.
3. Butyl sealant.
4. Epoxy seam sealer.

B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled Work.
3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
7. Include details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction from fixed points.
8. Include details of roof-penetration flashing.
9. Include details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, flashings, and counterflashings.
10. Include details of special conditions.
11. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
12. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal and accessory indicated with factory-applied finishes.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish.

1. Sheet Metal Flashing: 12 inches long by actual width of unit, including finished seam and in required profile. Include fasteners, cleats, clips, closures, and other attachments.
2. Trim, Metal Closures, Expansion Joints, Joint Intersections, and Miscellaneous Fabrications: 12 inches long and in required profile. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of coping and roof edge flashing that is ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 tested.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Special warranty.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical roof edge or eave, including fascia and fascia trim, approximately 10 feet long, including supporting construction cleats, seams, attachments, underlayment, and accessories.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
 - 1. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
 - 2. Protect stored sheet metal flashing and trim from contact with water.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies, including cleats, anchors, and fasteners, shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.

- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Architectural Metal Flashing, Condensation and Air Leakage Control, and Reroofing" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Sheet Metal Standard for Copper: Comply with CDA's "Copper in Architecture Handbook." Conform to dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- D. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install roof edge flashings tested in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressure:
 - 1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Structural Drawings.
- E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Provide zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet in accordance with ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40; prepainted by coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
 - 1. Surface: Smooth, flat.
 - 2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 4. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Felt: ASTM D226/D226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt; nonperforated.
- B. Synthetic Underlayment: Laminated or reinforced, woven polyethylene or polypropylene, synthetic roofing underlayment; bitumen free; slip resistant; suitable for high temperatures over 220 deg F; and complying with physical requirements of ASTM D226/D226M for Type I and Type II felts.
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain underlayment from single source from single manufacturer.

- C. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment: Minimum 30 mils thick, consisting of a slip-resistant polyethylene- or polypropylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl- or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer in accordance with underlayment manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Source Limitations: Obtain underlayment from single source from single manufacturer.
 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D1970/D1970M; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F or lower.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
 - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
 - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
 - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
 2. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) and Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
 3. Fasteners for Zinc Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
- C. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
- D. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polyurethane polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- E. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- F. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.
- G. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion in accordance with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- H. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required.
1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
 2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
 3. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered and obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
 4. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances:
1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
 2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal in accordance with cited sheet metal standard to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- G. Seams:
1. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use.
- H. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

2.6 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Roof Edge Flashing Fascia Cap: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot-long sections. Furnish with 6-inch-wide, joint cover plates. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
1. Joint Style: Butted with expansion space and 6-inch-wide, concealed backup plate Butted with expansion space and 6-inch-wide, exposed cover plate Insert description.
 2. Fabricate from the following materials:

- a. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
 - b. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
- B. Base Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
- 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
 - 2. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
- C. Counterflashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
- 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch thick.
 - 2. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch thick.
- D. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
- 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch thick.
 - 2. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch thick.

2.7 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with 2-inch-high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:
- 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch thick.
 - 2. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
 - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
 - 3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

- A. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment, wrinkle free, using adhesive to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim.
- 1. Install in shingle fashion to shed water.
 - 2. Lap joints not less than 2 inches.

- B. Synthetic Underlayment: Install synthetic underlayment, wrinkle free, in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions, and using adhesive where possible to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal.
 - 1. Lap horizontal joints not less than 4 inches.
 - 2. Lap end joints not less than 12 inches.

- C. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment:
 - 1. Install self-adhering, high-temperature sheet underlayment; wrinkle free.
 - 2. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 3. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures.
 - 4. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses.
 - 5. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps and edges with roller.
 - 6. Roll laps and edges with roller.
 - 7. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations of cited sheet metal standard that apply to installation characteristics required unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 1. Install fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
 - 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of sealant.
 - 3. Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 4. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
 - 5. Install continuous cleats with fasteners spaced not more than 12 inches o.c.
 - 6. Space individual cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
 - 7. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil-canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
 - 8. Do not field cut sheet metal flashing and trim by torch.
 - 9. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
 - 1. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.

- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
 - 1. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 24 inches of corner or intersection.
 - 2. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
 - 3. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.

- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
 - 1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant.
 - b. Form joints to completely conceal sealant.
 - c. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way.
 - d. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
 - 1) Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.
 - 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF ROOF FLASHINGS

- A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard.
 - 1. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes.
 - 2. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Roof Edge Flashing:
 - 1. Install roof edge flashings in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.
 - 2. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at staggered 3-inch centers.
 - 3. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.
- C. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing.
 - 1. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing.
 - 2. Extend counterflashing 4 inches over base flashing.
 - 3. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches.
 - 4. Secure in waterproof manner by means of snap-in installation and sealant or lead wedges and sealant unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF WALL FLASHINGS

- A. Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings.

3.6 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended in writing by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer.
- C. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures, as determined by Architect.

END OF SECTION 076200

SECTION 077100 - ROOF SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section. Specified for corten standing-seam metal panels included in Section 074113.16.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Copings.
 - 2. Roof-edge drainage systems.
 - 3. Reglets and counterflashings.
 - 4. This section does not include roof specialties.
- B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, roofing-system testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing-system manufacturer's representative, Installer, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roof specialties, including installers of roofing materials and accessories.
 - 2. Examine substrate conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.
 - 3. Review special roof details, roof drainage, and condition of other construction that will affect roof specialties.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof specialties.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.
 - 2. Include details for expansion and contraction; locations of expansion joints, including direction of expansion and contraction.
 - 3. Indicate profile and pattern of seams and layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments.
 - 4. Detail termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
 - 5. Include details of special conditions.
- C. Samples: For each type of roof specialty and for each color and texture specified.

- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of roof specialty indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
- E. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Include Samples of each type of roof specialty to verify finish and color selection, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
 - 2. Include copings, roof-edge specialties, roof-edge drainage systems, reglets, and counterflashings made from 12-inch lengths of full-size components in specified material, and including fasteners, cover joints, accessories, and attachments.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of roof specialty.
- C. Product Test Reports: For copings and roof-edge flashings, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer offering products meeting requirements that are SPRI ES-1 tested to specified design pressure.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain roof specialties approved by manufacturer providing roofing-system warranty specified in Section 075423 "Thermoplastic-Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing" and Section 074113 "Standing Seam Metal Roof Panels".
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical roof edge as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Build mockup of typical roof edge as part of Integrated Exterior Mockup specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements"
 - 3. Build mockup of typical roof edge, including fascia, gutter, and downspout, approximately 10 feet long, including supporting construction, seams, attachments, underlayment, and accessories.
 - 4. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 5. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store roof specialties in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store roof specialties away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on roof specialties from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for the period of roof-specialty installation.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify profiles and tolerances of roof-specialty substrates by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate roof specialties with flashing, trim, and construction of parapets, roof deck, roof and wall panels, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Roofing-System Warranty: Roof specialties are included in warranty provisions in Section 075423 "Thermoplastic-Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing" and Section 074113 "Standing Seam Metal Roof Panels".
- B. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace roof specialties that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof specialties shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 20 percent.
- C. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install [**copings**] [**roof-edge specialties**] tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressures:
 - 1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Drawings.

- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of thermal movements. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 COPINGS

- A. Metal Copings: Manufactured coping system consisting of metal coping cap in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet, concealed anchorage; with corner units, end cap units, and concealed splice plates with finish matching coping caps.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Berridge Manufacturing Company.](#)
 - b. [Hickman Company, W. P.](#)
 - c. [Metal-Era, Inc.](#)
 - d. [PAC-CLAD; Petersen Aluminum Corporation "Continuous Cleat Coping System" – Basis of Design.](#)
2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet Coping Caps: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel, nominal 0.034-inch thickness.
 - a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 - b. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
3. Formed Aluminum Sheet Coping Caps: Aluminum sheet, minimum 0.063 inch thick.
 - a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 - b. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
4. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded.
5. Special Fabrications: Radiussed sections, Bullnose-face leg or Two-way sloped coping cap where indicated.
6. Coping-Cap Attachment Method: Snap-on, fabricated from coping-cap material.
 - a. Snap-on Coping Anchor Plates: Concealed, galvanized-steel sheet, 12 inches wide, with integral cleats.

2.3 ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. [Hickman Company, W. P.](#)
2. [Metal-Era, Inc.](#)
3. Any manufacturer listed under "Copings" above.

- B. Gutters: Manufactured in uniform section lengths not exceeding 12 feet, with matching corner units, ends, outlet tubes, and other accessories. Elevate back edge at least 1 inch above front edge. Furnish flat-stock gutter straps, gutter brackets, expansion joints, and expansion-joint covers fabricated from same metal as gutters.
1. Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.034-inch thickness.
 2. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch thick.
 3. Gutter Profile: As indicated according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
 4. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded.
 5. Gutter Supports: Gutter brackets or Straps with finish matching the gutters.
- C. Downspouts: Plain rectangular complete with mitered elbows, manufactured from the following exposed metal. Furnish with metal hangers, from same material as downspouts, and anchors.
1. Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.034-inch thickness.
 2. Formed Aluminum: 0.063 inch thick.
- D. Parapet Scuppers: Manufactured with closure flange trim to exterior, 4-inch-wide wall flanges to interior, and base extending 4 inches beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof.
1. Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.028-inch thickness.
 2. Formed Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
- E. Conductor Heads: Manufactured conductor heads, each with flanged back and stiffened top edge, and of dimensions and shape indicated, complete with outlet tube that nests into upper end of downspout, exterior flange trim, and built-in overflow.
1. Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.034-inch thickness.
 2. Formed Aluminum: 0.063 inch thick.

2.4 REGLETS AND COUNTERFLASHINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. [Berridge Manufacturing Company](#).
 2. [Fry Reglet Corporation](#).
 3. [Heckmann Building Products, Inc.](#)
 4. [Hickman Company, W. P.](#)
 5. [Metal-Era, Inc.](#)
- B. Reglets: Manufactured units formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, from the following exposed metal:
1. Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.028-inch thickness.
 2. Formed Aluminum: 0.050 inch thick.
 3. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded.
 4. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide reglets with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
 5. Concrete Type, Embedded: Provide temporary closure tape to keep reglet free of concrete materials, special fasteners for attaching reglet to concrete forms, and guides to ensure alignment of reglet section ends.
 6. Masonry Type, Embedded: Provide reglets with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.

- C. Counterflashings: Manufactured units of heights to overlap top edges of base flashings by 4 inches and in lengths not exceeding 12 feet designed to snap into reglets or through-wall-flashing receiver and compress against base flashings with joints lapped, from the following exposed metal:
 - 1. Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.028-inch thickness.
 - 2. Formed Aluminum: 0.024 inch thick.
- D. Accessories:
 - 1. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing lower edge.
- E. Zinc-Coated Steel Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- F. Aluminum Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.

2.6 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Carlisle WIP Products; a brand of Carlisle Construction Materials.
 - b. Henry Company.
 - c. Protecto Wrap Company.
 - 2. Thermal Stability: ASTM D1970/D1970M; stable after testing at 240 deg F.
 - 3. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D1970/D1970M; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F.
- B. Felt: ASTM D226/D226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to meet performance requirements. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.
 2. Fasteners for Aluminum: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
 3. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
- B. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant of type, grade, class, and use classifications required by roofing-specialty manufacturer for each application.
- C. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type joints with limited movement.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- E. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.8 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Coil-Coated Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finishes:
1. High-Performance Organic Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with ASTM A755/A755M and coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
- E. Coil-Coated Aluminum Sheet Finishes:
1. High-Performance Organic Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for roof specialties.
- C. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage where applicable, and securely anchored.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than requirements by roof specialty manufacturer.. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
 - 1. Apply continuously under roof-edge specialties where required by manufacturer.
 - 2. Coordinate application of self-adhering sheet underlayment under roof specialties with requirements for continuity with adjacent air barrier materials.
- B. Felt Underlayment: Install with adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under roof specialties. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, underlayments, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.
 - 1. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
 - 2. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
 - 3. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in weathertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
 - 4. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.
 - 5. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Coat concealed side of roof specialties with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.

2. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof specialties for waterproof performance.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.
1. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet with no joints within 18 inches of corners or intersections unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 2. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
- D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws and not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Seal concealed joints with butyl sealant as required by roofing-specialty manufacturer.
- F. Seal joints as required for weathertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below 40 deg F.
- 3.4 INSTALLATION OF COPINGS
- A. Install cleats, anchor plates, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
 - B. Anchor copings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.
 1. Interlock face and back leg drip edges of snap-on coping cap into cleated anchor plates anchored to substrate at manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements.
- 3.5 INSTALLATION OF ROOF-EDGE SPECIALITIES
- A. Install cleats, cants, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
 - B. Anchor roof edgings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.
- 3.6 INSTALLATION OF ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE-SYSTEM
- A. Install components to produce a complete roof-edge drainage system according to manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-edge drainage system.
 - B. Gutters: Join and seal gutter lengths. Allow for thermal expansion. Attach gutters to firmly anchored gutter supports spaced not more than 24 inches apart. Attach ends with rivets and seal with sealant to make watertight. Slope to downspouts.
 1. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated but not exceeding 50 feet apart. Install expansion-joint caps.

- C. Downspouts: Join sections with manufacturer's standard telescoping joints. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls and 1 inch away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c.
 - 1. Provide elbows at base of downspouts at grade to direct water away from building.
 - 2. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
- D. Parapet Scuppers: Install scuppers through parapet where indicated. Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
 - 1. Anchor scupper closure trim flange to exterior wall and seal or solder to scupper.
 - 2. Loosely lock front edge of scupper with conductor head.
 - 3. Seal or solder exterior wall scupper flanges into back of conductor head.
- E. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall with elevation of conductor top edge 1 inch below scupper discharge.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF REGLETS AND COUNTERFLASHINGS

- A. Coordinate installation of reglets and counterflashings with installation of base flashings.
- B. Embedded Reglets: See Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for installation of reglets.
- C. Surface-Mounted Reglets: Install reglets to receive flashings where flashing without embedded reglets is indicated on Drawings. Install at height so that inserted counterflashings overlap 4 inches over top edge of base flashings.
- D. Counterflashings: Insert counterflashings into reglets or other indicated receivers; ensure that counterflashings overlap 4 inches over top edge of base flashings. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 4 inches and bed with butyl sealant. Fit counterflashings tightly to base flashings.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces, including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain roof specialties in a clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 077100

SECTION 077200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Roof hatches.
 - 2. Preformed flashing sleeves.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, prepared on Samples of size to adequately show color.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:
 - 1. Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
 - 2. Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.
 - 3. Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.

4. Required clearances.

B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace roof accessories that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
- b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
- c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

B. Wind-Restraint Performance: As indicated on Drawings.

2.2 ROOF HATCHES

A. Roof Hatches: Metal roof-hatch units with lids and insulated walled curbs, fully welded corner joints, continuous lid-to-curb counterflashing and weathertight perimeter gasketing, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [AES Industries, Inc.](#)
- b. [BILCO Company \(The\) Model S-50TB \(Basis of Design\)](#).
- c. [JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group](#).

B. Type and Size: Double-leaf lid, 36 by 36.

C. Loads: Minimum 40-lbf/sq. ft. external live load and 20-lbf/sq. ft. internal uplift load.

1. Dome Glazing: Minimum 40-lbf/sq. ft. external live load and 20-lbf/sq. ft. internal uplift load.

- D. Hatch Material: Aluminum sheet.
1. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard thickness for hatch size indicated.
 2. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- E. Construction:
1. Insulation: 3-inch-thick, polyisocyanurate board.
 - a. R-Value: 20.
 2. Nailer: Factory-installed wood nailer continuous around hatch perimeter.
 3. Hatch Lid: Opaque, insulated, and double walled, with manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
 4. Curb Liner: Manufacturer's standard, of same material and finish as metal curb.
 5. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
 6. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
 7. Sloping Roofs: Where slope or roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb with perimeter curb height that is tapered to accommodate roof slope so that top surfaces of perimeter curb are level. Equip hatch with water diverter or cricket on side that obstructs water flow.
- F. Hardware: Spring operators, hold-open arm, galvanized or stainless steel spring latch with turn handles, galvanized or stainless steel butt- or pintle-type hinge system, and padlock hasps inside and outside.
- G. Ladder-Assist Post: Roof-hatch manufacturer's standard device for attachment to roof-access ladder.
1. Operation: Post locks in place on full extension; release mechanism returns post to closed position.
 2. Height: 42 inches above finished roof deck.
 3. Material: Steel tube, galvanized.
 4. Post: 1-5/8-inch- diameter pipe.
 5. Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked enamel or powder coat.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation.
1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight.
 2. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.
- B. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A792/A792M, AZ50 coated.

1. Factory Prime Coating: Where field painting is indicated, apply pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil.
 2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight.
 3. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.
- C. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, manufacturer's standard alloy for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.
1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 2605. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight.
 2. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.
- D. Aluminum Extrusions and Tubes: ASTM B221, manufacturer's standard alloy and temper for type of use, finished to match assembly where used; otherwise mill finished.
- E. Stainless Steel Sheet and Shapes: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
- F. Steel Shapes: ASTM A36/A36M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Steel Tube: ASTM A500/A500M, round tube.
- H. Galvanized-Steel Tube: ASTM A500/A500M, round tube, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M.
- I. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, galvanized.
- 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
 - B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C1289, thickness and thermal resistivity as indicated.
 - C. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, containing no arsenic or chromium, and complying with AWPA C2; not less than 1-1/2 inches thick.

- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- E. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
 - 2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
 - 3. Fasteners for Stainless Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
- F. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, PVC, or silicone or a flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
- G. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polyurethane or silicone polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.
- H. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for expansion joints with limited movement.
- I. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586/D4586M, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
 2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
 3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
 4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum or stainless steel roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 2. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.
- C. Roof-Hatch Installation:
1. Verify that roof hatch operates properly. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanism and hardware.
 2. Attach safety railing system to roof-hatch curb.
 3. Attach ladder-assist post according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Preformed Flashing-Sleeve and Flashing Pipe Portal Installation: Secure flashing sleeve to roof membrane according to flashing-sleeve manufacturer's written instructions; flash sleeve flange to surrounding roof membrane according to roof membrane manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Seal joints with elastomeric or butyl sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.

3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A780/A780M.
- B. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting according to Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."
- C. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Clean off excess sealants.
- E. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 077200

SECTION 078413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
 - 2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location, illustration of firestopping system, and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - 1. Engineering Judgments: Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping system, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly. Obtain approval of authorities having jurisdiction prior to submittal.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each penetration firestopping system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating that penetration firestopping systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written instructions.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global Approval according to FM Approval 4991, "Approval Standard for Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with its "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping system when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping system manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure penetration firestopping materials per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping systems can be installed according to specified firestopping system design.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping systems.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
 - 1. Perform penetration firestopping system tests by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Test per testing standards referenced in "Penetration Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
 - a. Penetration firestopping systems shall bear classification marking of a qualified testing agency.
 - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
 - 2) INTERTEK ETL SEMKO
 - 3) FM Global Approval in its "Approval Guide."

2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

- A. Penetration Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. 3M Fire Protection Products.
 - b. Hilti, Inc.
 - c. Specified Technologies, Inc.

- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
 1. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.

- C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
 1. F-Rating: At least one hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
 2. T-Rating: At least one hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated except for floor penetrations within the cavity of a wall.
 3. W-Rating: Provide penetration firestopping systems showing no evidence of water leakage when tested according to UL 1479.

- D. Exposed Penetration Firestopping Systems: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E84.
 1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 2. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

- E. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for conditions indicated.
 1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials.
 2. Substrate primers.
 3. Collars.
 4. Steel sleeves.

2.3 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Cast-in-Place Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, a flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.

- B. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that do not re-emulsify after cure during exposure to moisture.

- C. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.

- D. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced intumescent elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized-steel sheet.

- E. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening, water-resistant, intumescent putties containing no solvents or inorganic fibers.
- F. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.
- G. Mortars: Prepackaged dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.
- H. Pillows/Bags: Reusable heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents, and fire-retardant additives. Where exposed, cover openings with steel-reinforcing wire mesh to protect pillows/bags from being easily removed.
- I. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
- J. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants.

2.4 MIXING

- A. Penetration Firestopping Materials: For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Before installing penetration firestopping systems, clean out openings immediately to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping materials.
 - 2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

- B. Prime substrates where recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install penetration firestopping systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings.
 - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not forming permanent components of firestopping.
- C. Install fill materials by proven techniques to produce the following results:
 - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories and penetrating items to achieve required fire-resistance ratings.
 - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
 - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Penetration Identification: Identify each penetration firestopping system with legible metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of penetration firestopping system edge so labels are visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping systems. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
 - 1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
 - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
 - 3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 - 4. Date of installation.
 - 5. Manufacturer's name.
 - 6. Installer's name.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner may engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections according to ASTM E2174.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping system is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping system to comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping material and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

3.7 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Where UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to system numbers in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHEZ.
- B. Where Intertek Group-listed systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers in Intertek Group's "Directory of Listed Building Products" under "Firestop Systems."
- C. Where FM Approval-approved systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers listed in FM Approval's "Approval Guide" under "Wall and Floor Penetration Fire Stops."
- D. Penetration Firestopping Systems with No Penetrating Items:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ or W-L.
 - 2. Intertek Group-Listed Systems: Equal to UL system.
 - 3. FM Approval-Approved Systems: Equal to UL system.
 - 4. F-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 - 5. T-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 - 6. W-Rating: No leakage of water at completion of water leakage testing.
 - 7. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- E. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Metallic Pipes, Conduit, or Tubing:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ, C-BJ, W-J, W-K, and W-L.
 - 2. Intertek Group-Listed Systems: Equal to UL system.
 - 3. FM Approval-Approved Systems: Equal to UL system.
 - 4. F-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 - 5. T-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 - 6. W-Rating: No leakage of water at completion of water leakage testing.
 - 7. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- F. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Nonmetallic Pipe, Conduit, or Tubing:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ, C-BJ, and W-L.
 - 2. Intertek Group-Listed Systems: Equal to UL system.
 - 3. FM Approval-Approved Systems: Equal to UL system.
 - 4. F-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 - 5. T-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 - 6. W-Rating: No leakage of water at completion of water leakage testing.
 - 7. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- G. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Electrical Cables:

1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ, C-BJ, F-A, F-B, W-J, and W-L.
 2. Intertek Group-Listed Systems: Equal to UL system.
 3. FM Approval-Approved Systems: Equal to UL system.
 4. F-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 5. T-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 6. W-Rating: No leakage of water at completion of water leakage testing.
 7. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- H. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Cable Trays with Electric Cables:
1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ, C-BJ, F-A, F-B, F-C, W-J, W-K, and W-L.
 2. Intertek Group-Listed Systems: Equal to UL system.
 3. FM Approval-Approved Systems: Equal to UL system.
 4. F-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 5. T-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 6. W-Rating: No leakage of water at completion of water leakage testing.
 7. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- I. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Insulated Pipes:
1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ, C-BJ, F-A, F-C, W-J, and W-L.
 2. Intertek Group-Listed Systems: Equal to UL system.
 3. FM Approval-Approved Systems: Equal to UL system.
 4. F-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 5. T-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 6. W-Rating: No leakage of water at completion of water leakage testing.
 7. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- J. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Miscellaneous Electrical Penetrants:
1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ, F-A, and W-L.
 2. Intertek Group-Listed Systems: Equal to UL system.
 3. FM Approval-Approved Systems: Equal to UL system.
 4. F-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 5. T-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 6. W-Rating: No leakage of water at completion of water leakage testing.
 7. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- K. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Miscellaneous Mechanical Penetrants:
1. UL-Classified Systems: As required to achieve rating.
 2. Intertek Group-Listed Systems: As required to achieve rating.
 3. FM Approval-Approved Systems: As required to achieve rating.
 4. F-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 5. T-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 6. W-Rating: No leakage of water at completion of water leakage testing.
 7. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- L. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Groupings of Penetrants:
1. UL-Classified Systems: As required to achieve rating.
 2. Intertek Group-Listed Systems: As required to achieve rating.
 3. FM Approval-Approved Systems: As required to achieve rating.
 4. F-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.
 5. T-Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours.

6. W-Rating: No leakage of water at completion of water leakage testing.
7. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.

END OF SECTION 078413

SECTION 078443 - JOINT FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Joints in or between fire-resistance-rated constructions.
 - 2. Joints at exterior curtain-wall/floor intersections.
 - 3. Joints in smoke barriers.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: For each joint firestopping system. Include location, illustration of firestopping system, and design designation of qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Engineering Judgments: Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing agency's illustration for a particular joint firestopping system condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by joint firestopping system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each joint firestopping system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating that joint firestopping systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written instructions.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Approvals according to FM Approvals 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with UL's "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install joint firestopping systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by joint firestopping system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure joint firestopping systems per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilation or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of joints to ensure that joint firestopping systems can be installed according to specified firestopping system design.
- B. Coordinate sizing of joints to accommodate joint firestopping systems.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
 - 1. Perform joint firestopping system tests by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Test per testing standards referenced in "Joint Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
 - a. Joint firestopping systems shall bear classification marking of a qualified testing agency.
 - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
 - 2) Intertek Group in its "Directory of Listed Building Products."

2.2 JOINT FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

- A. Joint Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assemblies in or between which joint firestopping systems are installed. Joint firestopping systems shall accommodate building movements without impairing their ability to resist the passage of fire and hot gases.
- B. Joints in or between Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction: Provide joint firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E1966 or UL 2079.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. 3M Fire Protection Products.
 - b. Hilti, Inc.
 - c. Specified Technologies, Inc.
 - d. Thermafiber, Inc.; an Owens Corning company.
 2. Fire-Resistance Rating: Equal to or exceeding the fire-resistance rating of the wall, floor, or roof in or between which it is installed.
- C. Joints at Exterior Curtain-Wall/Floor Intersections: Provide joint firestopping systems with rating determined per ASTM E2307.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. 3M Fire Protection Products.
 - b. Hilti, Inc.
 - c. Specified Technologies, Inc.
 - d. Thermafiber, Inc.; an Owens Corning company.
 2. F-Rating: Equal to or exceeding the fire-resistance rating of the floor assembly.
- D. Exposed Joint Firestopping Systems: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E84.
1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 2. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- E. Accessories: Provide components of joint firestopping systems, including primers and forming materials, that are needed to install elastomeric fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only components specified by joint firestopping system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing agency for conditions indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configurations, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Before installing joint firestopping systems, clean joints immediately to comply with fire-resistant joint system manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:

1. Remove from surfaces of joint substrates foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of elastomeric fill materials or compromise fire-resistive rating.
 2. Clean joint substrates to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with elastomeric fill materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Prime substrates where recommended in writing by joint firestopping system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install joint firestopping systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support elastomeric fill materials during their application and in position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
1. After installing elastomeric fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of fire-resistive joint system.
- C. Install elastomeric fill materials for joint firestopping systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
1. Elastomeric fill voids and cavities formed by joints and forming materials as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
 2. Apply elastomeric fill materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by joints.
 3. For elastomeric fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections according to ASTM E2393.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or joint firestopping systems are damaged or removed due to testing, repair or replace joint firestopping systems so they comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing joint firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess elastomeric fill materials adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by joint firestopping system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which joints occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure joint firestopping systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If damage or deterioration

occurs despite such protection, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint firestopping systems immediately and install new materials to produce joint firestopping systems complying with specified requirements.

3.6 JOINT FIRESTOPPING SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Where UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to system numbers in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHBN.
- B. Where Intertek Group-listed systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers in Intertek Group's "Directory of Listed Building Products" under product category Expansion/Seismic Joints or Firestop Systems.
- C. Floor-to-Floor, Joint Firestopping Systems:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: FF-D STI-Series Pensil 300 or equal.
 - 2. Assembly Rating: 1, 2, or 3 hours.
 - 3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
 - 4. Movement Capabilities: Class II - percent compression or extension.
- D. Wall-to-Wall, Joint Firestopping Systems:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: WW-D-STI Pensil 300 or equal-.
 - 2. Assembly Rating: 1, 2, or 3 hours.
 - 3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
 - 4. Movement Capabilities: Class II - percent compression or extension.
- E. Floor-to-Wall, Joint Firestopping Systems:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: FW-D-STI-Series Pensil 300 or equal..
 - 2. Assembly Rating: 1, 2, or 3 hours.
 - 3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
 - 4. Movement Capabilities: Class II - percent compression or extension.
- F. Head-of-Wall, Fire-Resistive Joint Firestopping Systems:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: HW-D-STI Series AS or ES.
 - 2. Assembly Rating: 1 or 2 hours.
 - 3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
 - 4. Movement Capabilities: Class II - percent compression or extension.

END OF SECTION 078443

SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Silicone joint sealants.
2. Urethane joint sealants.
3. Latex joint sealants.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 078446 "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for sealing joints in fire-resistance-rated construction.
2. Section 088000 "Glazing" for glazing sealants.
3. Section 092900 "Gypsum Board" for sealing perimeter joints.
4. Section 093000 "Tiling" for sealing tile joints.
5. Section 321373 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in pavements, walkways, and curbing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each kind of joint sealant and accessory, from manufacturer.
- B. Sealant, Waterproofing, and Restoration Institute (SWRI) Validation Certificate: For each sealant specified to be validated by SWRI's Sealant Validation Program.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that sealants comply with requirements.
- D. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each kind of joint sealant from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
 - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
 - 1. Movement of the structure caused by structural settlement or errors attributable to design or construction resulting in stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
 - 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from natural causes exceeding design specifications.
 - 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
 - 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

- B. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Sealants and sealant primers used inside the weatherproofing system shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
 - 1. Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L.
 - 2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
 - 3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- C. Low-Emitting Interior Sealants: Sealants and sealant primers used inside the weatherproofing system shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Where sealants are specified to be nonstaining to porous substrates, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.
- E. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range or custom blend as required for color control.

2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Mildew-Resistant, Single-Component, Acid-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. BASF Building Systems; Omniplus.
 - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 786 Mildew Resistant.
 - c. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones; Sanitary SCS1700.
 - d. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex Sil 100 WF.
 - e. Tremco Incorporated; Tremsil 200 Sanitary.

2.3 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Multicomponent, Nonsag, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 50, for Use NT.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol II.
 - b. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; PSI-270.
 - c. Tremco Incorporated; Dymeric 240.

2.4 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Latex Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolac.

- b. Bostik, Inc.; Chem-Calk 600.
- c. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex 600.
- d. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+.
- e. Schnee-Morehead, Inc.; SM 8200.
- f. Tremco Incorporated; Tremflex 834.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.
 - c. Porcelain enamel.
 - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.

B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.

B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.

D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.

E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:

1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.

1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.

3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Provide flush joint profile where indicated per Figure 8B in ASTM C 1193.
5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated per Figure 8C in ASTM C 1193.
 - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

3.6 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces JS-#1.
 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
 - b. Joints in dimension stone cladding.
 - c. Joints between different materials listed above.
 - d. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows, and louvers.
 - e. Other joints as indicated.
 2. Urethane Joint Sealant: Multicomponent, nonsag,, Class 50.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces JS-#2.
 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of interior walls and partitions.
 - c. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors windows and elevator entrances.
 - d. Other joints as indicated.
 2. Joint Sealant: Latex.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces JS-#3.

1. Joint Sealant Location:
 - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
 - c. Other joints as indicated.
2. Joint Sealant: Single component, nonsag, mildew resistant, acid curing.
3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

END OF SECTION 079200

DIVISION

08

OPENINGS

SECTION 081113 - RESIDENTIAL METAL DOORS AND WOOD FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
 - 1. Exterior pre-hung metal doors in wood frames.
 - 2. For use at Gerber House.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for wood frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing frames into wood frame construction. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
 - 1. Elevations of each door type.
 - 2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
 - 3. Frame details, including dimensioned profiles and thicknesses.
 - 4. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
- C. Product Schedule: For residential metal doors and wood frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver metal doors and wood frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
- B. Store hollow-metal doors and frames vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch-high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Masonite.
 - 2. Therma Tru.
 - 3. Mastercraft.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Thermally Rated Door Assemblies: Provide door assemblies with U-factor of not more than 0.38 deg Btu/F x h x sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM C518.

2.3 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

2.4 EXTERIOR META DOORS AND WOOD FRAMES

- A. Construct metal doors and wood frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Pre-hung Metcal Doors and Wood Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 3; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level A.
 - 1. Doors:
 - a. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches or manufacturer's standard.
 - b. Face Primed: Metallic-coated steel sheet.
 - c. Edge Construction: Manufacturer's Standard.
 - d. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
 - e. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with flush closures.
 - f. Bottom Edges: Close bottom edges of doors where required for attachment of weather stripping with end closures.
 - g. Core: Manufacturer's standard, Polyurethane, and wood.
 - h. Glazing stops: flush style.
 - i. Glass: Manufacturer's tempered clear low-E insulating glass and integrated grills.
 - j. Sweep: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 2. Frames:
 - a. Materials: Primed wood with composite bottom.

- b. Construction: One piece wood with integral stop and weather stripping
 - c. Threshold: .Manufacturer's standard aluminum.
 - d. Brick Mold: Primed wood on exterior side.
3. Exposed Finish: Prime.
- C. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare metal doors and wood frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to ANSI/SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
- 1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

2.5 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
- 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install metal doors and wood frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Wood Frames:
- 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.
 - 1. Solidly fill frame perimeter with expanding foam.
 - 2. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:
 - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Metal Doors: Fit and adjust metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.
- 1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8 guide specification indicated.

3.2 REPAIR

- A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.

END OF SECTION 081113

SECTION 08 11 16 - CLADDED ALUMINUM FRAMED ALL-GLASS ENTRANCE DOORS

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Aluminum-Framed All Glass Entrance Doors
- B. Infill panels of glass
- C. Aluminum doors and frames
- D. Weatherstripping
- E. Door hardware
- F. Perimeter sealant

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section _____ - _____: Preparation of adjacent work to receive work of this section
- B. Section 05 1200 - Structural Steel Framing: Steel attachment members
- C. Section 05 5000 - Metal Fabrications: Steel attachment devices
- D. Section 07 2500 - Weather Barriers: Perimeter air and vapor seal between glazing system and adjacent construction
- E. Section 07 9005 - Joint Sealers: Perimeter sealant and back-up materials
- F. Section 08 7100 - Door Hardware: Hardware items other than specified in this section
- G. Section 08 8000 - Glazing: Glass and glazing accessories
- H. Section 08 4413 - Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA CW-10 - Care and Handling of Architectural Aluminum from Shop to Site; American Architectural Manufacturers Association; 2012
- B. AAMA 501.2 - Field Check of Metal Storefronts, Curtain Walls, and Sloped Glazing Systems for Water Leakage; American Architectural Manufacturers Association; 2009 (part of AAMA 501)
- C. AAMA 1503 - Voluntary Test Method for Thermal Transmittance and Condensation Resistance of Windows, Doors and Glazed Wall Sections; American Architectural Manufacturers Association; 2009
- D. AAMA 2605 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels; 2011
- E. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes; 2012
- F. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes [Metric]; 2012

1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate with installation of other components that comprise the exterior enclosure

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures
- B. Product Data: Provide component dimensions, describe components within assembly, anchorage and fasteners, glass and infill, door hardware, internal drainage details and _____
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate system dimensions, framed opening requirements and tolerances, affected related Work, expansion and contraction joint location and details, and field welding required

- D. Hardware Schedule: Complete itemization of each item of hardware to be provided for each door, cross-referenced to door identification numbers in Contract Documents
- E. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer and Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing aluminum glazing systems with minimum three years of documented experience

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handle products of this section in accordance with AAMA CW-10
- B. Protect finished aluminum surfaces with wrapping. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings that bond to aluminum when exposed to sunlight or weather

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install sealants when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F (5 degrees C). Maintain this minimum temperature during and 48 hours after installation

1.09 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.01 BASIS OF DESIGN -- SWINGING DOORS

- A. Ultra Narrow Stile, Fully Assembled with Insulating Glazing, Thermally Broken:
 - 1. Basis of Design: C.R. Laurence Co., Inc; Entice Series 104
 - 2. Basis of Design: C.R. Laurence Co., Inc, Entice Series 110

Stiles: 1-1/8 inches (28.5 mm) Ultra Narrow Stile Thermal Entrance Door.

Thickness: 2-1/2 inches (57.1 mm).

Top Rail: 4"

Bottom Rail: 4" Series 104

Bottom Rail: 10" Series 110

Intermediate Vertical: 2"

- D. Other Manufacturers: Provide either the product identified as "Basis of Design" or an equivalent product of one of the manufacturers listed below:
 - 1. C.R. Laurence Co., Inc; www.crlaurence.com
- E. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.
 - 1. For any product not identified as "Basis of Design", submit information as specified for substitutions.

2.02 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Aluminum-Framed Storefront and Doors:
 - 1. C.R. Laurence Co., Inc; www.crlaurence.com.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

2.03 STOREFRONT

- A. Aluminum-Ultra Framed Storefront: Factory fabricated, factory finished aluminum framing members for insulated glazing, and related flashings, anchorage, and attachment devices.
 - 1. Glazing Position: Centered (front to back).
 - 2. Vertical Mullion Dimensions: 1-1/4" inch face dimension by 2-9/16" inch depth (31.7 mm wide by 65 mm).
 - 3. Finish: Class I color anodized.
 - a. Factory finish all surfaces that will be exposed in completed assemblies.

- b. Touch-up surfaces cut during fabrication so that no natural aluminum is visible in completed assemblies, including joint edges.
 - c. Coat concealed metal surfaces that will be in contact with cementitious materials or dissimilar metals with bituminous paint.
4. Fabrication: Joints and corners flush, hairline, and weatherproof, accurately fitted and secured; prepared to receive anchors and hardware; fasteners and attachments concealed from view; reinforced as required for imposed loads.
 5. Construction: Eliminate noises caused by wind and thermal movement, prevent vibration harmonics, and prevent "stack effect" in internal spaces.
 6. System Internal Drainage: Drain to the exterior by means of a weep drainage network any water entering joints, condensation occurring in glazing channel, and migrating moisture occurring within system.
 7. Expansion/Contraction: Provide for expansion and contraction within system components caused by cycling temperature range of 170 degrees F (95 degrees C) over a 12-hour period without causing detrimental effect to system components, anchorages, and other building elements.
 8. Movement: Allow for movement between storefront and adjacent construction, without damage to components or deterioration of seals.
 9. Perimeter Clearance: Minimize space between framing members and adjacent construction while allowing expected movement.

2.04 MATERIALS

- A. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).
- B. Perimeter Sealant: Type _____ specified in Section 07 9005.
- C. Glazing Accessories: As specified in Section 08 8000.

2.05 FINISHES

- A. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

2.06 HARDWARE

- A. Locks: Equip exterior doors with manufactures lockset compatible with 2-1/2" thick door
 1. Location and function: Provide round throw deadbolt in continues bottom fitting.
 2. Lock to be operated by key outside and thumb turn inside with end load capability.
- B. Cylinders or Magnetic Locks: Consult with Factory
- C. Deadbolt Lock Handles: Shall be C.R. Laurence's DB100, DB110, DB130, DB140, DB150, DB160, DB170
- D. Concealed Vertical Rod Panics: Shall be 1-1/4" diameter C.R. Laurence's PA100 or PA110
- E. Push/Pull Hardware: Shall be provided by C.R. Laurence and selected by architect.
- F. Medium and Heavy-Duty Floor Closers: CRL/J990, Rixon 27 or 28, Dorma BTS80, ... with Top Pivot
- G. Heavy Duty OHCC: Shall CRL 9200 Series.
Arms can be secured to top or bottom rails; all Non-Hold Open Closers must comply with A.D.A. requirements.
- H. Electronic Egress Control Handles: Shall be C.R. Laurence's EG100 or EG110
- I. Electric Strike: Shall be Folger Adams 310-1
- J. Weatherstripping: CRL Fin, continuous and replaceable; provided on all doors.
- K. Threshold: Extruded aluminum, one piece per door opening, ribbed surface; provide on All Doors.
- L. Adjusting Mechanism: Shall be CRL Kwick-Adjust Mechanism
- M. All Hardware must comply with Manufactures specifications items include closer size, exposure to weather, and traffic conditions moderate to heavy.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify dimensions, tolerances, and method of attachment with other work.
- B. Verify that wall openings and adjoining air and vapor seal materials are ready to receive work of this section.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Attach to structure to permit sufficient adjustment to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities.
- C. Provide alignment attachments and shims to permanently fasten system to building structure.
- D. Align assembly plumb and level, free of warp or twist. Maintain assembly dimensional tolerances, aligning with adjacent work.
- E. Provide thermal isolation where components penetrate or disrupt building insulation.
- F. Install sill flashings. Turn up ends and edges; seal to adjacent work to form watertight dam.
- G. Where fasteners penetrate sill flashings, make watertight by seating and sealing fastener heads to sill flashing.
- H. Coordinate attachment and seal of perimeter air and vapor barrier materials.
- I. Pack fibrous insulation in shim spaces at perimeter of assembly to maintain continuity of thermal barrier.
- J. Set thresholds in bed of mastic and secure.
- K. Install hardware using templates provided.
 - 1. See Section 08 7100 for hardware installation requirements.
- L. Install glass and infill panels in accordance with Section 08 8000, using glazing method required to achieve performance criteria.
- M. Install perimeter sealant in accordance with Section 07 9005.
- N. Touch-up minor damage to factory applied finish; replace components that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 0.06 inches every 3 ft (1.5 mm/m) non-cumulative or 1/16 inches per 10 ft (1.5 mm/3 m), whichever is less.
- B. Maximum Misalignment of Two Adjoining Members Abutting in Plane: 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operating hardware and sash for smooth operation.

3.05 CLEANING

- A. Remove protective material from pre-finished aluminum surfaces.
- B. Wash down surfaces with a solution of mild detergent in warm water, applied with soft, clean wiping cloths. Take care to remove dirt from corners. Wipe surfaces clean.
- C. Remove excess sealant by method acceptable to sealant manufacturer.

3.06 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage during subsequent construction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 081416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Five-ply flush wood veneer-faced doors for transparent finish.
2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
3. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:

1. Door core materials and construction.
2. Door edge construction
3. Door face type and characteristics.
4. Factory-machining criteria.
5. Factory- finishing specifications.

- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each type of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:

1. Door schedule indicating door location, type, size, fire protection rating, and swing.
2. Door elevations, dimension and locations of hardware, lite and louver cutouts, and glazing thicknesses.
3. Details of frame for each frame type, including dimensions and profile.
4. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
5. Dimensions and locations of blocking for hardware attachment.
6. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
7. Clearances and undercuts.
8. Requirements for veneer matching.
9. Doors to be factory finished and application requirements.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For factory-finished doors.

- D. Samples for Verification:

1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches, for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three Samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in finished Work.
2. Corner sections of doors, approximately 8 by 10 inches, with door faces and edges representing actual materials to be used.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For door inspector.
 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1.
 2. Egress Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4.
 3. Submit copy of DHI's Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certificate.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.
- D. Test results for screw withdrawal for each door assembly.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Special warranties.
- B. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
- B. Vendor Qualifications: A vendor that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
- C. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies shall comply with qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1 and the following:
 1. DHI's Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.
- D. Egress Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of egress door assemblies shall comply with qualifications set forth in NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4 and the following:
 1. DHI's Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons.

- C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels designed for building occupants for the remainder of construction period.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed and weathertight, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature within ranges designed for the completed and occupied building and relative humidity during remainder of construction period.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Delamination of veneer.
 - b. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section.
 - c. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
 - 2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
 - 3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Wood Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with UL 10C or NFPA 252.

2.3 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A.
- B. Adhesives: Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.
- C. Composite Wood Products: Products shall be made without urea formaldehyde.

2.4 SOLID-CORE FIVE-PLY FLUSH WOOD VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Interior Doors:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. VT Industries Inc. – Basis-of-Design
 - b. Algoma Hardwoods, Inc.
 - c. Eggers Industries.
 - d. Lambton Doors.
 - e. Marshfield Door Systems, Inc.
2. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Extra Heavy Duty.
3. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Grade: Custom.
4. Faces: Single-ply wood veneer not less than 1/50 inch thick.
 - a. Species: White Oak.
 - b. Cut: Plain sliced.
 - c. Match between Veneer Leaves: Book match.
 - d. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Running match.
 - e. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.
 - f. Room Match: Match door faces within each separate room or area of building. Corridor-door faces do not need to match where they are separated by 20 feet or more.
 - g. Room Match: Provide door faces of compatible color and grain within each separate room or area of building.
5. Exposed Vertical and Top Edges: Same species as faces or a compatible species - Architectural Woodwork Standards edge Type A.
 - a. Fire-Rated Single Doors: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed vertical edges.
 - b. Fire-Rated Pairs of Doors: Provide formed-steel edges and astragals with intumescent seals.
 - 1) Pairs of wood doors with a 45, 60, and 90 min. rating with 3 point latching, lockset and flush bolts, shall be supplied with manufacturer's standard steel edges and steel astragal, factory applied and factory prepared for hardware as scheduled. Astragal shall be mounted on key side of doors. Where active leaf is RH (right hand) or LH (left hand), the astragal shall be mounted on the inactive leaf and overlap the active leaf. Where the active leaf is RHR (right hand reverse) or LHR (left hand reverse), the astragal shall be mounted on the active leaf and overlap the inactive leaf.
 - 2) Where pairs of labeled doors are used in a means of egress with vertical rod exit devices, top and bottom rods or (LBR) less bottom rods, the doors shall be provided with manufacturer's standard meeting edges (metal edges, veneered treated edges, or Category "A" edge construction with intumescent material concealed by outer stile matching face veneer).
 - a) Labeled doors scheduled with 2 vertical rod exit devices less bottom rods ("LBR") shall be furnished with a door-to-door thermal bolt. Door-to-floor thermal bolts or pins are not acceptable. Verify with door manufacturer their labeling requirements for this application prior to bid.
 - b) Where labeled doors are scheduled to receive protection plates over 16 inches high, furnish doors with blocking as required by door manufacturer for attachment of plates with screws. Verify with door manufacturer their

labeling requirements for this application prior to bid. Indicate blocking in door schedule submittals.

- c. Mineral-Core Doors: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
 - 1) Screw-Holding Capability: 550 lbf in accordance with WDMA T.M. 10.
- 6. Core for Non-Fire-Rated Doors:
 - a. ANSI A208.1, particleboard, grade as required to meet performance specifications.
 - 1) Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware. Minimum dimension x length as required below:
 - a) 5-inch top-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have closers and exit rod hardware.
 - b) 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, for doors indicated to have kick, mop, armor plates, or exit rod hardware.
 - c) 5-inch midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have exit devices.
 - d) 5-inch for mortise or bored locksets.
 - 2) Provide doors with glued-wood-stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural-composite-lumber cores instead of particleboard cores for doors scheduled to receive exit devices in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
 - b. Glued wood stave.
 - c. WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
 - 1) Screw Withdrawal, Door Face: 700 lbf.
 - 2) Screw Withdrawal, Vertical Door Edge: 550 lbf.
- 7. Core for Fire-Rated Doors: As required to achieve fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Blocking for Mineral-Core Doors: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware. Minimum dimension x length as required below:
 - 1) 5-inch top-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have closers and exit rod hardware.
 - 2) 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, for doors indicated to have kick, mop, armor plates, or exit rod hardware.
 - 3) 5-inch midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have exit rods.
 - 4) 5-inch for mortise or bored locksets.
- 8. Construction: Five plies, hot-pressed bonded (vertical and horizontal edging is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.

2.5 LIGHT FRAMES AND LOUVERS

- A. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads unless otherwise indicated.

1. Wood Species: Same species as door faces.
 2. Profile: Flush rectangular beads.
- B. Metal Frames for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard frame formed of 0.048-inch-thick, cold-rolled steel sheet; factory primed for paint finish; and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated.
1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.
- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied.
1. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3.
 2. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, ANSI/BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.
 3. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames, to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
 4. For doors scheduled to receive electrified locksets, provide factory-installed raceway and wiring to accommodate specified hardware.
 5. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.
- C. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.
1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
 2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in non-rated doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."
 3. Glazing: Factory install glazing in fire-rated doors indicated to be factory finished as stipulated in Section 088813 "Fire-Rated Glazing"

2.7 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing.
1. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
 2. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
 3. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- B. Factory finish doors.
- C. Transparent Finish:
1. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Grade: Custom.
 2. Finish: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A TR-4 Conversion Varnish.
 3. Finish: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A TR-6 Catalyzed Polyurethane.
 4. Sheen: Satin.
 5. Color: Match VT Industries Onyx, ON18.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.
 - 1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
 - 2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- B. Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
- C. Job-Fitted Doors:
 - 1. Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below.
 - a. Do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors.
 - 2. Machine doors for hardware.
 - 3. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
 - 4. Clearances:
 - a. Provide 1/8 inch at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors.
 - b. Provide 1/8 inch from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - c. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
 - d. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
 - 5. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock and hinge edges.
 - 6. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
- D. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- E. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection Agency: Owner will engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Inspections:

1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
 2. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements in accordance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.
- C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
 - D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
 - E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.
- 3.4 ADJUSTING
- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
 - B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 081416

SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Aluminum-framed storefront systems.
2. Aluminum-framed entrance door systems.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 081216 "Aluminum Frames" for interior aluminum framing.
2. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for storefront door hardware.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- ##### A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.

1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
2. Include full-size isometric details of each type of vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, showing the following:
 - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - b. Anchorage.
 - c. Expansion provisions.
 - d. Glazing.
 - e. Flashing and drainage.
3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
4. Include point-to-point wiring diagrams showing the following:
 - a. Power requirements for each electrically operated door hardware.
 - b. Location and types of switches, signal device, conduit sizes, and number and size of wires.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- E. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Statements:
 - 1. For Installer.
 - 2. For egress door inspector.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
 - 1. Installers: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer and that employs a qualified glazing contractor for this Project who is certified under the North American Contractor Certification Program (NACC) for Architectural Glass & Metal (AG&M) contractors.
 - 2. Testing Agency: Qualified in accordance with ASTM E699 for testing indicated and acceptable to Owner and Architect.
- B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
 - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

1.7 MOCKUPS

- A. Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures, including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - c. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
 - d. Failure of operating components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty, Anodized Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of anodized finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system, including framing and accessories, from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
 - 1. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure, including, but not limited to, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 - 2. Failure also includes the following:
 - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - e. Failure of operating units.
- B. Structural Loads:
 - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Structural: Test in accordance with ASTM E330/E330M as follows:

1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, storefront assemblies, including entrance doors, do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
 2. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.
- D. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test in accordance with ASTM E331 as follows:
1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas, including entrance doors, when tested in accordance with a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- E. Energy Performance: Certified and labeled by manufacturer for energy performance as follows:
1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor):
 - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: U-factor for the system of not more than 0.66 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (3.75 W/sq. m x K) as determined in accordance with NFRC 100.
 - b. Entrance Doors: U-factor of not more than 0.83 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (4.71 W/sq. m x K) as determined in accordance with NFRC 100.
 2. Air Leakage:
 - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: Air leakage for the system of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. when tested in accordance with ASTM E283.
 - b. Entrance Doors: Air leakage of not more than 1.0 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
 3. Condensation Resistance Factor (CRF):
 - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: CRF for the system of not less than 53 as determined in accordance with AAMA 1503.
 - b. Entrance Doors: CRF of not less than 63 as determined in accordance with AAMA 1503.
- F. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes.
1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- 2.3 STOREFRONT SYSTEMS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope – Basis of Design.
 2. Kawneer North America
 3. YKK AP America Inc.
- B. Basis of Design Systems:
1. 1¾" x 4 1/2": Series 3000 Thermal Multi Pane
 2. Applicability: As indicated on drawings
- C. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.

1. Exterior Framing Construction: Thermally broken.
2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
3. Glazing Plane: Center.
4. Finish: Base bid: High performance organic finish. Alternate: Color anodized.
5. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
6. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
7. Steel Reinforcement: As required by manufacturer.

D. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.

E. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

2.4 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing or automatic operation.

1. Door Construction: 1-3/4-inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.125-inch- thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
 - a. Thermal Construction: High-performance plastic connectors separate aluminum members exposed to the exterior from members exposed to the interior.
2. Door Design: As indicated.
3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Beveled, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
 - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.

2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

A. Refer to Section 087100 "Door Hardware"

2.6 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers.
- C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.

2.7 MATERIALS

- A. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B209.
- B. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B221.
- C. Structural Profiles: ASTM B308/B308M.

D. Steel Reinforcement:

1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A1008/A1008M.
3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A1011/A1011M.

E. Steel Reinforcement Primer: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods in accordance with recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces in accordance with applicable SSPC standard.

2.8 ACCESSORIES

A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.

B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.

1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M requirements.

C. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.

D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

2.9 FABRICATION

A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.

B. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:

1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior.
6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.

C. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.

D. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.

1. At interior and exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
- E. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
 2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- F. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.
- G. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project in accordance with Shop Drawings.

2.10 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. High Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat PVDF (base bid): Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.
 2. Color and Gloss: Match architect's sample.
- B. Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, or thicker (see alternates).
1. Color:
 - a. Doors: Black anodized.
 - b. Storefront framing: black anodized.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not install damaged components.
- C. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
- D. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.

- E. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
- F. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Metal Protection:
 - 1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
 - 2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- H. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed, as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," to produce weathertight installation.
- I. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- J. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF GLAZING

- A. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF WEATHERSEAL SEALANT

- A. After structural sealant has completely cured, remove temporary retainers and insert backer rod between lites of glass as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- B. Install weatherseal sealant to completely fill cavity, in accordance with sealant manufacturer's written instructions, to produce weatherproof joints.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCE DOORS

- A. Install entrance doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
 - 1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
 - 2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware in accordance with entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

3.6 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
 - 1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
 - 2. Level: 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
 - 3. Alignment:

- a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
 - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
 - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.
4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operating entrance door hardware to function smoothly as recommended by manufacturer.
1. For entrance doors accessible to people with disabilities, adjust closers to provide a 3 second closer sweep period for doors to move from a 70-degree open position to 3" from the latch, measured to the leading door edge.

END OF SECTION 084113

SECTION 084413 - GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Section 01 81 13 – Sustainability Specifications for requirements associated with sustainability requirements.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Related Documents: Conditions of the Contract, Division 1 - General Requirements, and Drawings apply to Work of this Section.

- B. Section Includes:

- 1. Aluminum curtain wall systems, complete with reinforcing, shims, anchors, and attachment devices.
- 2. Accessories necessary to complete Work.

- C. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under this Section: Inserts and anchoring devices that are to be built into structure.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Aluminum Association (AA):

- 1. DAF-45 Designation System for Aluminum Finishes.

- B. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):

- 1. CW-DG-1 Aluminum Curtain Wall Design Guide Manual.
- 2. 501.2 Field Check of Metal Curtain Walls for Water Leakage.
- 3. 2605 Voluntary Specification for High Performance Organic Coatings on Architectural Extrusions and Panels.
- 4. 611 Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum..

- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):

- 1. Z97.1 Specifications and Methods of Test for Safety Glazing Material Used in Buildings.

- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

- 1. A36 Structural Steel.
- 2. A123 Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products.
- 3. A525 General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process.
- 4. A526 Sheet Steel, Zinc Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process, Commercial Quality.
- 5. B209 Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate.
- 6. B221 Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Shapes, and Tubes.
- 7. B308 Aluminum-Alloy 6061-T6 Standard Structural Shapes, Rolled or Extruded.
- 8. C716 Installing Lock-Strip Gaskets and Infill Glazing Materials.
- 9. C920 Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
- 10. E283 Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and

- Doors.
 - 11. E330 Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
 - 12. E331 Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
 - 13. E773 Test Method for Seal Durability of Sealed Insulating Glass Units.
 - 14. E774 Sealed Insulating Glass Units.

 - E. Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC):
 - 1. 16 CFR 1201 Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials.

 - F. Federal Specifications (FS):
 - 1. TT-P-645A Primer, Paint, Zinc Chromate, Alkyd Type.

 - G. Glass Association of North America (GANA):
 - 1. Glazing Manual.

 - H. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC):
 - 1. SP2 Hand Tool Cleaning.
 - 2. SP3 Power Tool Cleaning.
 - 3. Paint 12 Cold-Applied Asphalt Mastic (Extra Thick Film).
- 1.4 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS
- A. General Standard: In addition to requirements shown or specified, comply with applicable provisions of Aluminum Curtain Wall Design Guide Manual for design, materials, fabrication and installation of component parts.

 - B. Design Requirements:
 - 1. Metal stick framed systems with interior and exterior exposed metal framing.
 - 2. System manufacturer shall provide low profile entrance frames as an integral part of the curtain wall system.
 - 3. System manufacturer shall provide curtainwall systems, including necessary modifications to meet specified requirements and maintaining visual design concepts.
 - 4. Fabricate glazing systems for exterior glazing at vision areas.
 - 5. Perimeter conditions shall allow for installation tolerances, expansion and contraction of adjacent materials, and sealant manufacturer's recommended joint design.
 - 6. Drawings are diagrammatic and do not purport to identify nor solve problems of thermal or structural movement, glazing, anchorage or moisture disposal.
 - 7. Requirements shown by details are intended to establish basic dimension of unit, sight lines and profiles of members.
 - 8. Do not assume glass, sealants, and interior finishes contribute to framing member strength, stiffness, or lateral stability.
 - 9. Attachment considerations are to take into account site peculiarities and expansion and contraction movements so there is no possibility of loosening, weakening or fracturing connection between units and building structure or between units themselves.
 - 10. Allow for expansion and contraction due to structural movement without detriment to appearance or performance.
 - 11. System shall drain to exterior face of wall, water entering joints and condensation occurring within system by drain holes and gutters of adequate size to evacuate water without infiltration to interior or the top of lower lites of glass.
 - 12. Provide concealed fastening.
 - 13. Metal faces are required to be visually flat under all lighting conditions, subject to acceptance of

Architect.

14. Use dense EPDM isolators to maintain adequate compression on glazing material.
15. Provide uniform color and profile appearance at components exposed to view.
16. Provide interior dense EPDM [closed cell EPDM sponge] gasket with sealed corners, with maximum 30% compression when glazed, to create a water and air seal. Provide exterior dense EPDM wedge gasket at the verticals and exterior EPDM gasket at the horizontals, with a maximum 30% compression when glazed, to create a water & air seal.
17. Provide pre-punched pressure plates to ensure correct quantity and spacing of fasteners.
18. Stresses placed on structural silicone sealants shall be kept within sealant manufacturer's recommended maximum.
19. Not Permitted: Vibration harmonics, wind whistles, noises caused by thermal movement, thermal movement transmitted to other building elements, loosening, weakening, or fracturing of attachments or components of system.
20. Provide two-piece split vertical mullions for screw spline assembly of frames that allows for assembly and sealing of bays in the shop.

C. Performance Requirements:

1. Air infiltration: Air leakage shall not exceed 0.06 cfm per square foot of surface area when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at differential static pressure of 1.57 psf.
2. Water Resistance (static): No uncontrolled leakage when tested in accordance with ASTM E331 at test pressure of 15.0 psf as defined in AAMA 501.
3. Water Resistance (dynamic): No uncontrolled leakage when tested in accordance with ASTM E331 at test pressure of 15.0 psf as defined in AAMA 501.
4. Uniform Load: A static air design load of 40 psf shall be applied in a positive and negative direction in accordance with ASTM E 330. At structural test load equal to 1.5 times the specified design load, no glass breakage or permanent set in the framing members in excess of 0.2% of their clear spans shall occur.

D. Structural Requirements:

1. Wind loading: As noted on drawings.
2. Deflection under uniform loading: When tested in accordance with ASTM E330 at design pressure, maximum deflection of exterior member shall not exceed $L/175$ for spans up to 13'-6" or $L/240 + 1/4"$ for spans greater than 13'-6".
3. Parallel to wall and corner mullion deflections: 75% of glass edge bite or 3/8 inch, whichever is less.
4. Compression flanges of flexural members may be assumed to receive effective lateral bracing only from:
 - a. Anchors to building structure and
 - b. Horizontal glazing rails or interior trim, which are in actual contact with compression flange.
5. Do not regard points of contra-flexure as lateral braces or as end points of un-braced length; un-braced length is actual distance between effective lateral braces as defined above.
6. Where framing member reaction is resisted by continuous element, maximum assumed effective length of the resisting element is 4 times bearing length, but not more than 12 inches.

E. Thermal Requirements: Framing systems shall accommodate expansion and contraction movement due to surface temperature differential of 180°F without causing buckling, stress on glass, failure of joint seals, excessive stress on structural elements, reduction of performance or other detrimental effects.

F. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): When tested to AAMA Specification 1503, the thermal transmittance (U-Factor) shall not be more than 0.43 or 0.44 depending on Basis of Design glazing used. See Drawings.

- G. Condensation Resistance (CRF): When tested to AAMA Specification 1503, the condensation resistance factor shall not be less than 65 (for the frame).
- H. Seismic: When tested to AAMA 501.4, system must meet design displacement of 0.010 x the story height and ultimate displacement of 1.5 x the design displacement, 0.015 x the story height, and 0.025 x the story height.
- I. Sound Transmission: When tested to ASTM E90, the Sound Transmission Class (STC) shall not be less than 32 based upon 1" insulating glass (1/4", 1/2" AS, 1/4"); OR, not less than 37 based upon 1" insulating laminated glass (1/4" Lam, 1/2" AS, 1/4" Lam).
- J. Laboratory Testing: Refer to Section 01411 for requirements.
- K. Interface:
 - 1. Furnish inserts and anchoring devices, which need to be preset and built into structure to appropriate trade.
 - 2. Supply on timely basis to avoid delay in Work.
 - 3. Instruct other trades of proper location and position.
 - 4. Furnish setting drawings, diagrams, templates and installation instructions.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Submit manufacturer's descriptive literature for each manufactured products.
 - 2. Include information for factory finishes, accessories and other required components.
 - 3. Include color charts for finish indicating manufacturer's standard colors available for selection.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Submit drawings indicating elevations, detailed design, dimensions, member profiles, joint locations, arrangement of units, member connections, and thickness of various components.
 - 2. Show following items:
 - a. Details of special shapes.
 - b. Reinforcing.
 - c. Drainage details and flow diagrams.
 - d. Anchorage system.
 - e. Interfacing with building construction.
 - f. Provisions for system expansion and contraction
 - g. Thermal breaks.
 - 3. Indicate glazing details, methods, locations of various types and thickness of glass , emergency breakout locations, and internal sealant requirements.
 - 4. Clearly indicate locations of exposed fasteners and joints for Architect's acceptance.
 - 5. Clearly show where and how manufacturer's system deviates from Contract Drawings and these Specifications.
- C. Mock-up Drawings: Submit drawings for mock-ups; refer to Section 01430 for mock-up requirements.
- D. Samples:

1. Submit manufactures samples indicating quality of finish in required colors.
 2. Where normal texture or color variations are expected, include additional samples illustrating range of variation.
 3. Submit samples of structural glazing gaskets, 12 inch lengths.
 4. Submit samples of sealants for color selection.
- E. Test Reports: Submit certified copies of previous tests reports by independent laboratory substantiating performance of system. Include other supportive data as necessary.
- F. Certificates:
1. Submit manufacturer's certification stating that installed system is in compliance with specified requirements.
- G. Manufacturer's Instructions: Submit manufacturer's printed installation instructions. Include detailed instructions describing each step of re-glazing procedures.
- H. Warranty: Submit specified warranties.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Single Source Responsibility:
1. Provide curtainwall systems that are products of a single manufacturer.
- B. Engineer Qualifications: Professional Structural Engineer registered in State where Project is located.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Certified in writing by system manufacturer as qualified for specified systems.

1.7 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE

- A. Conduct pre-installation conference in accordance with Section 01200.
- B. Conference Purpose and Agenda:
1. Arrange with Architect and representatives of window and sealant manufacturer to visit Project site before beginning glazing operations to analyze site conditions, and inspect surfaces and joints to be sealed in order that recommendations may be made should adverse conditions exist.
 2. Discuss following items:
 - a. Weather conditions under which work will be done.
 - b. Anticipated frequency and extent of joint movement.
 - c. Joint design.
 - d. Glazing procedures.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of Section 01600.
- B. Protect finished surfaces to prevent damage.

- C. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings, which become firmly bonded when exposed to sun.
- D. Do not leave coating residue on surfaces.
- E. Deliver glass units with manufacturer's labels intact on interior side of glass. Ensure labels indicate glass thickness, unit location, glass strength and orientation of units in vertical position.
- F. Protect glass edges and corners to prevent chipping, cracking, and other similar damages.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Ensure ambient and surface temperatures and joint conditions are suitable for installation of materials.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Provide written warranty in form acceptable to Owner jointly signed by manufacturer, installer and Contractor warranting work to be watertight, free from defective materials, defective workmanship, glass breakage due to defective design, and agreeing to replace components which fail within 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Warranty shall cover following:
 - 1. Complete watertight and airtight system installation within specified tolerances.
 - 2. Glass and glazing gaskets will not break or "pop" from frames due to design wind, expansion or contraction movement or structural loading.
 - 3. Glazing sealants and gaskets will remain free from abnormal deterioration or dislocation due to sunlight, weather or oxidation.
- C. Provide written warranty stating organic coating finish will be free from fading more than 5 hunter units per ASTM D 2244, chalking in excess of a No. B rating per ASTM D 4214, yellowing, peeling, cracking, pitting, corroding or non-uniformity of color, or gloss deterioration beyond manufacturer's descriptive standards for 20 years from date of Substantial Completion and agreeing to promptly correct defects.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 Refer to Section 018113 Sustainability Specifications for product requirements associated with the Project's sustainability goals.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS AND PRODUCTS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements indicated, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. YKK AP America, Inc: YCW 750XT (Basis of Design)
 - 2. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope®, Terrell, TX
 - 3. Kawneer North America: 1600 Wall UT
 - 4. EFCO: Product 5500X System

- A. See Drawings for size and locations

2.3 FRAMING MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES

A. Aluminum:

1. ASTM B221, alloy 6063-T5 for extrusions; ASTM B209, alloy 5005-H16 for sheets; or other alloys and temper recommended by manufacturer appropriate for specified finish.

B. Internal Reinforcing:

1. ASTM A36 for carbon steel; or ASTM B308 for structural aluminum.
2. Shapes and sizes to suit installation.
3. Shop coat steel components after fabrication with alkyd type zinc chromate primer complying with FS TT-P-645.

C. Inserts and Anchorage Devices:

1. Manufacturer's standard formed or fabricated assemblies, steel or aluminum, of shapes, plates, bars or tubes.
2. Hot-dip galvanize steel assemblies after fabrication, comply with ASTM A123, 2.0 ounce minimum coating.
3. Shop coat steel assemblies after fabrication with alkyd type zinc chromate primer complying with FS TT-P-645.

D. Fasteners:

1. Non-magnetic stainless steel or cadmium plated steel coated with yellow or silver iridescence plating, compatible with materials being fastened.
2. Series 300 stainless steel for exposed locations. Cadmium plated steel with 0.0005 inch plating thickness and color chromate coated for concealed locations.
3. Provide nuts or washers of design having the means to prevent disengagement; deforming of fastener threads is not acceptable.
4. Provide concealed fasteners wherever possible.
5. For exposed locations, provide countersunk flathead fasteners with finish matching item fastened.

E. Expansion Anchor Devices: Lead-shield or toothed-steel, drilled-in, expansion bolt anchors.

F. Shims: Non-staining, non-ferrous, type as recommended by system manufacturer.

G. Protective Coatings: Cold applied asphalt mastic complying with SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 30 mil thickness for each coat; or alkyd type zinc chromate primer complying with FS TT-P-645.

H. Glazing Gaskets:

1. Compression type design, exterior replaceable, extruded EPDM. Interior is a dense EPDM gasket.
2. Comply with ASTM C509 or C864.
3. Profile and hardness as necessary to maintain uniform pressure for watertight seal.
4. Manufacturer's standard black color.

I. Internal Sealants: Types recommended by system manufacturer to remain permanently non-hardening, non-migrating and weather-tight.

2.4 GLASS AND GLAZING ACCESSORIES

- A. Refer to Section 088000.

2.5 SYSTEM FABRICATION

- A. Take accurate field measurements to verify required dimensions prior to fabrication.
- B. Location of exposed joints is subject to Architect's acceptance.
- C. Provide dense EPDM continuous isolator to separate exterior pressure plates and interior framing members.
- D. Fabricate components in accord with approved shop drawings. Remove burrs and ease edges. Shop fabricate to greatest extent practicable to minimize field cutting, splicing, and assembly. Disassemble only to extent necessary for shipping and handling limitations.
- E. Steel Components:
 - 1. Clean surfaces after fabrication and immediately prior to application of primer in accord with SSPC-SP2 or SSPC-SP3 at manufacturer's option.
 - 2. Apply specified shop coat primer in accord with manufacturer's instructions to provide 2.0 minimum dry film thickness.
- F. Fabricate components true to detail and free from defects impairing appearance, strength or durability. Fabricate custom extrusions indicated and as necessary for complete installation.
- G. Fabricate components to allow for accurate and rigid fit of joints and corners. Match components carefully ensuring continuity of line and design. Ensure joints and connections will be flush and weather-tight. Ensure slip joints make full, tight contact and are weather-tight.
- H. Reinforce components as required at anchorage and support points, at joints, and at attachment points for interfacing work.
- I. Provide structural reinforcing within framing members where required to maintain rigidity and accommodate design loads.
- J. System design and sealants to accommodate internal weep and drainage system not visible to the exterior.
- K. Head and sill extrusions act as gutter and weep water to exterior; do not penetrate sections with fasteners.
- L. Allow for adequate clearance around perimeter of system to enable proper installation and for thermal movement within system.
- M. Separate dissimilar metals with protective coating or preformed separators to prevent contact and corrosion.
- N. Provide framing members to rigidly glaze spandrel panels and column covers within framing system.
- O. Provide special shapes and filler pieces with tight corners.

2.6 FINISH

- A. Color selected from manufacturer's full color line.
- B. Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, or thicker.
 - 1. Color: Dark Bronze Anodized Plus

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions and proceed with Work in accordance with Section 01400.
- B. Verify dimensions, tolerances, and method of attachment with other Work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and applicable provisions of AAMA Aluminum Curtain Wall Design Guide Manual.
- B. Align assemblies plumb and level, free of warp or twist, aligning with adjacent Work.
- C. Tolerances:
 - 1. Limit variations from plumb and level:
 - a. 1/8 inch in 20'-0" vertically and horizontally.
 - b. 1/4 inch in 40'-0" either direction.
 - 2. Limit offsets in theoretical end-to-end and edge-to-edge alignment:
 - a. 1/16 inch where surfaces are flush or less than 1/2 inch out of flush and separated by not more than 2 inches.
 - b. 1/8 inch for surfaces separated by more than 2 inches.
 - 3. Step in face: 1/16 inch maximum.
 - 4. Jog in alignment: 1/16 inch maximum.
 - 5. Location: 1/4 inch maximum deviation of any member at any location.
 - 6. Tolerances are not accumulative.
- D. Provide attachments and shims to permanently fasten system to building structure.
- E. Anchor securely in place, allowing for required movement, including expansion and contraction.
- F. Separate dissimilar materials at contact points, including metal in contact with masonry or concrete surfaces, with protective coating or preformed separators to prevent contact and electrolytic action.
- G. Set sill members in bed of sealant. Set other members with internal sealants and baffles to provide weather-tight construction.
- H. Water Drainage: Each light of glass shall be compartmentalized using joint plugs and silicone sealant to

divert water to the horizontal weep locations. Weep holes shall be located in the horizontal pressure plates and covers to divert water to the exterior of the building.

- I. Do not apply mullion covers until building is closed in, roofing is installed and no alkaline substances can be washed from building onto curtain wall system.

- J. Glazing:

- 1. Install glazing gaskets and sealants in accordance with manufacturer's instructions without exception; including surface preparations. Refer to Section 08810 for additional requirements.
 - 2. Outside glazed and held in place with extruded aluminum pressure plates anchored to the mullion using Drill-Flex fasteners spaced no greater than 9" on center.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Tests: Independent testing laboratory will perform air infiltration, water infiltration, and hose test; refer to Section 01411 for requirements.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean surfaces in compliance with manufacturer's recommendations; remove excess mastic, mastic smears, and other foreign materials.
- B. Clean metal surfaces exercising care to avoid damage.

END OF SECTION 084413

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sloped glazing assemblies.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 084413 "Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls" for vertical curtain walls.
2. Section 088000 "Glazing" for glass requirements.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- #### A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For sloped glazing assemblies. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.

1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
2. Include full-size isometric details of each type of vertical-to-horizontal intersection of sloped glazing assemblies, showing the following:
 - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - b. Anchorage.
 - c. Expansion provisions.
 - d. Glazing.
 - e. Flashing and drainage.

3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.

E. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of assemblies, made from 12-inch (300-mm) lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:

1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
2. Anchorage.
3. Expansion provisions.
4. Glazing.
5. Flashing and drainage.

- F. Delegated-Design Submittal: For sloped glazing assemblies, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data:

1. For Installer.
2. For professional engineer's experience with providing delegated-design engineering services of the type indicated, including documentation that engineer is licensed in the state in which Project is located.

- B. Energy Performance Certificates: For sloped glazing assemblies, accessories, and components from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each sloped glazing assembly.

- C. Product Test Reports: For sloped glazing assemblies, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

- D. Quality-Control Program: Developed specifically for Project, including fabrication and installation, in accordance with recommendations in ASTM C1401. Include periodic quality-control reports.

- E. Source quality-control reports.

- F. Field quality-control reports.

- G. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sloped glazing assemblies to include in maintenance manuals.

- B. Maintenance Data for Structural Sealant: For sloped glazing assemblies with structural glazing, to include in maintenance manuals. Include ASTM C1401 recommendations for postinstallation-phase quality-control program.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer and that employs a qualified glazing contractor for this Project who

is certified under the North American Contractor Certification Program (NACC) for Architectural Glass & Metal (AGM) contractors.

- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with ASTM E699 for testing indicated and accredited by IAS or ILAC Mutual Recognition Arrangement as complying with ISO/IEC 17025 and acceptable to Owner and Architect.
- C. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
 - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- D. Structural-Sealant Glazing: Comply with ASTM C1401 for design and installation of structural-sealant-glazed sloped glazing assemblies.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Assembly Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace components of sloped glazing assemblies that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures, including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
 - e. Failure of operating components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty, Factory-Applied Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Warranty Period: **[Five] [10] [20] <Insert number>** years from date of Substantial Completion.

- C. Special Finish Warranty, Anodized Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of anodized finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, peeling, or chipping.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design sloped glazing assemblies.
- B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of sloped glazing assemblies representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
 - 1. Sloped glazing assemblies shall withstand movements of supporting structure, including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 - 2. Failure also includes the following:
 - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
- C. Structural Loads:
 - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Deflection of Framing Members Supporting Glass: At design wind load, as follows:
 - 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of clear span for spans of up to 13 feet 6 inches (4.1 m) and to 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch (6.35 mm) for spans of greater than 13 feet 6 inches (4.1 m).
 - 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to amount not exceeding that which reduces glazing bite to less than 75 percent of design dimension and that which reduces edge clearance between framing members and glazing or other fixed components to less than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).

3. Cantilever Deflection: Limited to 2l/175 at unsupported cantilevers.
- E. Structural: Test in accordance with ASTM E330/E330M as follows:
1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.
- F. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test in accordance with ASTM E331 as follows:
1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested in accordance with a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than **6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa)** **10 lbf/sq. ft. (480 Pa)**.
- G. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: Test in accordance with AAMA 501.1 as follows:
1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested at dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than **6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa)**.
 2. Maximum Water Leakage: In accordance with AAMA 501.1. Water leakage does not include water controlled by flashing and gutters, or water that is drained to exterior.
- H. Energy Performance: Certified and labelled by manufacturer for energy performance as follows:
1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor); refer to Section 088000-Glazing:
 - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: Air leakage for the system of not more than **0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.30 L/s per sq. m)** at a static-air-pressure differential of **1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa)** when tested in accordance with ASTM E283.
 2. Condensation Resistance Factor (CRF):
 - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: CRF for the system of not less than 29 as determined in accordance with AAMA 1503.
- I. Noise Reduction: Test in accordance with ASTM E90, with ratings determined by ASTM E1332, as follows:
- J. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes:
1. Temperature Change: **120 deg F (67 deg C)**, ambient; **180 deg F (100 deg C)**, material surfaces.
 2. Thermal Cycling: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested in accordance with AAMA 501.5.

- a. High Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: That which produces an exterior metal-surface temperature of **180 deg F (82 deg C)**.
- b. Low Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: [**0 deg F (minus 18 deg C)**].

K. Structural-Sealant Joints:

1. Designed to carry gravity loads of glazing.

L. Structural Sealant: ASTM C1184. Capable of withstanding tensile and shear stresses imposed by sloped glazing assemblies without failing adhesively or cohesively. When tested for preconstruction adhesion and compatibility, cohesive failure of sealant shall occur before adhesive failure.

1. Adhesive failure occurs when sealant pulls away from substrate cleanly, leaving no sealant material behind.
2. Cohesive failure occurs when sealant breaks or tears within itself but does not separate from each substrate, because sealant-to-substrate bond strength exceeds sealant's internal strength.

2.2 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain all components of sloped glazing assemblies and glazed aluminum curtain walls, including framing and accessories, from single manufacturer.

2.3 SLOPED GLAZING ASSEMBLIES

- A. Refer to Section 084113 – Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefronts for list of acceptable manufacturers.

- B. Framing Members: Manufacturer's standard, formed- or extruded-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.

1. Construction: Thermally broken.
2. Framing-Member Type: Self-supporting.
3. Glazing System: Field-installed pressure caps on four sides.
4. Finish: Color anodic finish alternate, High-performance organic finish (base bid).
5. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
6. Steel Reinforcement: As required by manufacturer.

- C. Pressure Caps: Manufacturer's standard aluminum components that mechanically retain glazing.

1. Include snap-on aluminum trim that conceals fasteners.

- D. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

2.4 GLAZING

- A. Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing". and as required by the Ohio Building Code for sloped glass.
- B. Glazing Gaskets:
 - 1. ASTM C509 or ASTM C864. Manufacturer's standard.
 - a. Color: Black.
 - 2. Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- C. Glazing Sealants:

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Sheet and Plate: **ASTM B209** (ASTM B209M).
- B. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: **ASTM B221** (ASTM B221M).
- C. Structural Profiles: ASTM B308/B308M.
- D. Steel Reinforcement:
 - 1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
 - 2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A1008/A1008M.
 - 3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- E. Steel Reinforcement Primer: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods in accordance with recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces in accordance with applicable SSPC standard.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
 - 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
 - 3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of **1 inch (25.4 mm)** that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.

1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M requirements.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil (0.762-mm) thickness per coat.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior.
 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
 7. Components curved to indicated radii.
- D. Fabricate components with internal guttering system or other means to drain water-passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within sloped glazing assemblies to exterior.
- E. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project in accordance with Shop Drawings.

2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker (see alternates).
 1. Color: Black.
- B. High-Performance Organic Finish, Two-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 (base bid) and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
 1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 2. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

- C. Superior-Performance Organic Finish, Three-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat.
1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions [**for seacoast and severe environments**].
 2. Color and Gloss: [**As indicated by manufacturer's designations**] [**Match Architect's sample**] [**As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range**] <Insert color and gloss>.
- D. Superior-Performance Organic Finish, Four-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat.
1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions [**for seacoast and severe environments**].
 2. Color and Gloss: [**As indicated by manufacturer's designations**] [**Match Architect's sample**] [**As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range**] <Insert color and gloss>.

"Superior-Performance Organic Finish, Single-Coat FEVE" Paragraph below is not suitable for seacoast and severe environments.

- E. Superior-Performance Organic Finish, Single-Coat FEVE: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605.
1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 2. Color and Gloss: [**As indicated by manufacturer's designations**] [**Match Architect's sample**] [**As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range**] <Insert color and gloss>.
- F. Superior-Performance Organic Finish, Two-Coat FEVE: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not install damaged components.

- C. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
- D. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
- E. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
- F. Where welding is required, weld components in concealed locations to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Protect glazing surfaces from welding.
- G. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Metal Protection:
 - 1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer, applying sealant or tape, or installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
 - 2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- I. Install components to drain water-passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within sloped glazing assemblies to exterior.
- J. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF GLAZING

- A. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Install sloped glazing assemblies to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
 - 1. Plumb: **1/8 inch in 10 feet (3.2 mm in 3 m); 1/4 inch in 40 feet (6.35 mm in 12.2 m).**
 - 2. Level: **1/8 inch in 20 feet (3.2 mm in 6 m); 1/4 inch in 40 feet (6.35 mm in 12.2 m).**
 - 3. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** wide, limit offset from true alignment to **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**.
 - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from **1/2 to 1 inch (12.7 to 25.4 mm)** wide, limit offset from true alignment to **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)**.
 - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of **1 inch (25.4 mm)** wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
 - 4. Location: Limit variation from plane to **1/8 inch in 12 feet (3.2 mm in 3.6 m); 1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** over total length.

END OF SECTION 084433

SECTION 08 7100 – PANIC AND DEADBOLT HANDLES FOR ALL GLASS ENTRANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 **SUMMARY**

- A. This section includes:
1. Access Control Handles for 'all-glass' doors.
- B. Related work in other sections:
1. Section 08 80 00 - Glazing
 2. Section 08 4210 - All Glass Entrances.
 3. Section 08 8100 - Glass and Glazing.

1.02 **SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Submit Manufacturer's product data for Access Control Handles for 'all-glass' entrance systems including:
1. Manufacturer's standard details and fabrication method.
 2. Data on finishes, hardware, and accessories.
 3. Recommendations for maintenance and cleaning of finish surfaces.
 4. Test data and UL Certificates (if applicable.)
- B. Shop drawings for each 'all-glass' entrance system with access control handles are required, including:
1. Layout and installation details.
 2. Elevations at 1/4-inch scale.
 3. Detail sections of fittings.
 4. Hardware mounting heights.
 5. Glazing details.
- C. Samples for approval:
1. Submit pairs of samples of each specified metal color and finish on sections of extrusions or formed shapes.

1.03 **QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who has completed installations of 'all-glass' entrances with access control handles similar in design and extent to those required for the project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in service performance.
- B. Manufacturer's qualifications: Provide Access Control Handles for 'all-glass' entrances produced by a firm experienced in manufacturing entrance systems that are similar to those indicated for this project and

that have a proven record of success in service performance. All Access Control Handles must be tested.

- C. Single source responsibility: Obtain Access Control Handles for 'all-glass' entrance systems from a single manufacturer, to ensure full compatibility and warranty of parts.
- D. Design criteria: The drawings indicate the size, diameter, and dimensional requirements of the Access Control Handles for the 'all-glass' entrance system required and are based on the specific types and models indicated.
- E. 1/2" (12 mm) or 3/4" (19 mm) Safety glass standard: Provide tempered glass components that comply with ANSI Z97.1 and testing requirements of CPSC 16 CFR 1201 Category II. (*See Section 08 81 00 Glass and Glazing as supplied by others*).
- F. Testing criteria for Access Control Handles:
 - 1. **Panics:** UL305, ULC-S132-07, and ANSI/BHMA A156.3-2008 Grade 1 Certified
 - 2. **Deadbolts:** UL Classified to ANSI A156.16-1997 Standard
 - 3. **Electric Egress:** UL294-2001 and ULC-S533-2002 Recognized Components, tested to NFPA 101-2002 Life and Safety Code Standards.

1.04 **DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver Access Control Handles and related components in the manufacturer's original protective packaging. Do not deliver entrance units until the work is ready for their installation.
 - 1. Inspect components for damage upon delivery. Unless minor defects in metal components can be made to meet the Architect's specifications and satisfaction, damaged parts should be removed and replaced.

1.05 **PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. **Field Measurements:** Check opening by accurate field measurement before fabrication. Show recorder measurements on shop drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delay of the work and possible damage to the finished product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 **ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURER'S**

- A. Basis of design: Design is based on Access Control Handles for 'All-Glass' Entrances featuring heavy tempered glass as manufactured by:

CRL-Blumcraft

Tel: (800) 421-6144 Fax: (800) 587-7501

Email: architectural@crlaurence.com

www.crlaurence.com

www.crl-arch.com

2.02 **MATERIALS**

A. **Access Control handles:**

1. **Concealed Panic Handles:** Panic device shall be 1-1/4" (32 mm) diameter **CRL-Blumcraft PA100** with interior operating panic handle in combination with exterior fixed pull handles designated by letters. Panic mechanism shall be concealed within the brass or stainless-steel tubing and the latch bolt is retracted by pushing the interior 'L' shaped crash bar. Entrance from exterior by a keyed cylinder is optional. Dogging shall be standard and conveniently located with a built-in dogging pin that keeps the latch bolt in the retracted position and the crash bar fixed.

- C. **Deadbolt Lock Handles:** Shall be **CRL-Blumcraft DB100, DB110, DB130, DB140, DB150, DB160, DB170** with interior fixed handle and any of the fixed exterior pull

handles designated by letters. Operating mechanism shall be concealed within the 1-1/4" (32 mm) brass or stainless-steel tubing. There shall be a keyed cylinder on both sides or a thumbturn on the interior side where indicated. The locking mechanism shall be on the interior side of the door.

CRL Recommends that Door Height be Limited to:

1/2" (12 mm) Glass:

Exterior Openings: 8'-0" (2.44 m)

Interior Openings: 8'-6" (2.59 m)

3/4" (19 mm) Glass:

Exterior Openings: 8'-6" (2.59 m)

Interior Opening: 9'-0" (2.74 m)

NOTE: If doors exceeding these recommendations are required, the designer should take into account the following factors:

- Volume of Daily Usage (Number of Anticipated Cycles)
- Deflection of Door Due to Wind and/or Stack Load Pressures
- Stability of Door Under Operation (How Much the Door Flexes When Pushed)

Final determination should be made by the architect's structural engineer.

- E. **Glass:** Provide flat, fully tempered glass in thickness indicated for doors and sidelites. Comply with requirements of ASTM C 1048 for FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated surfaces), Type 1 (transparent) Class 1 (clear) glass. Provide products of thickness indicated that have been tested for surface and edge compression according to ASTM C 1048 and for impact strength according to 16 CFR Part 1201 for Category II materials.

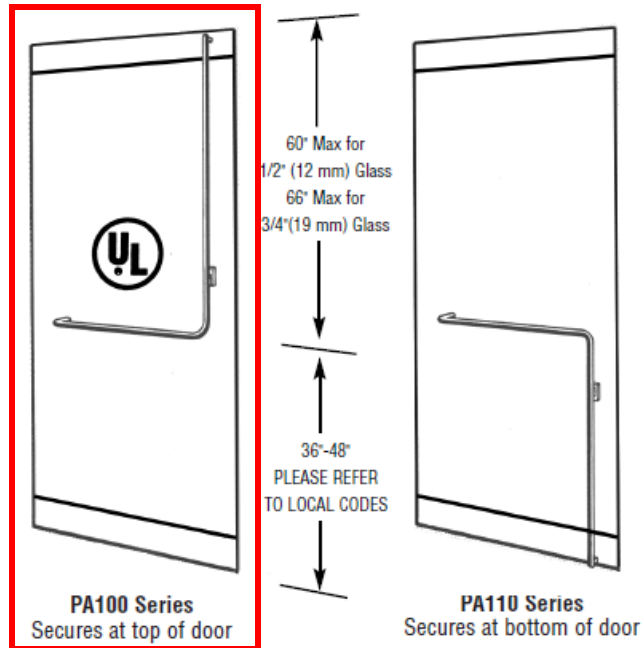
1. Thickness: 1/2 inch (12 mm)
2. Thickness: 3/4 inch (19 mm)
3. Edge treatment: Provide machine ground and polished edges for exposed glass edges of doors and sidelites and flat ground edges for butting glass edges.
4. Glass Manufacturers: _____.

INTERIOR DOOR HANDLES

CRL Panic Handles

- For 1/2" (12 mm) or 3/4" (19 mm) Tempered Glass
- Can Be Used as Replacement for Older Panics
- Custom Sizes of Stock Finishes Ship Within Three to Five Business Days
- Optional Keyed Access
- Optional Electric Strike
- Optional Exterior Fixed Handles
- Available in Polished or Brushed Stainless Steel, Polished or Satin Brass, and Oil Rubbed Bronze

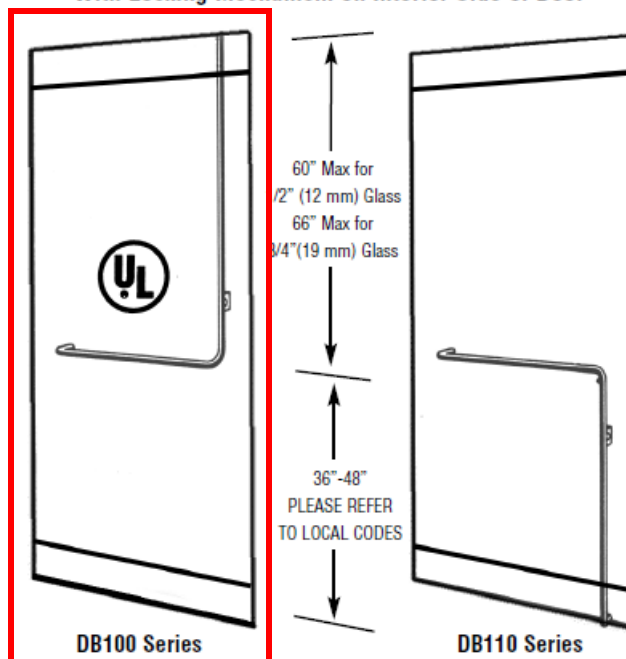
Operating Handles on Interior Side of Door



CRL Deadbolt Handles

- For 1/2" (12 mm) or 3/4" (19 mm) Tempered Glass
- Can Be Used as Replacement for Older Deadbolts
- Custom Sizes of Stock Finishes Ship Within Three to Five Business Days
- Optional Keyed Access
- Optional Electric Strike
- Optional Exterior Fixed Handles
- Available in Polished or Brushed Stainless Steel, Polished or Satin Brass, and Oil Rubbed Bronze

With Locking Mechanism on Interior Side of Door



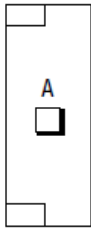
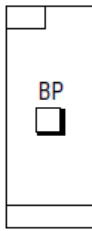
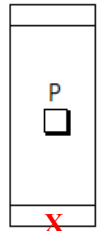
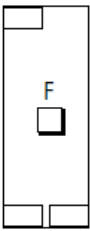


Certification: ANSI/BHMA A156.16 Grade 1

CRL EXTERIOR PUSH/PULL HANDLE COMBINATIONS FOR PANIC AND DEADBOLT HANDLES

Exterior Fixed Pull Handles



NOTE: Any Exterior Fixed Pull Handle on this page can be used in combination with any Panic Device or Deadbolt Handle

Door Type: Check One	 A	 BP	<div style="border: 2px solid red; padding: 2px;"> P X</div>	 F		Stile <input type="checkbox"/> Medium <input type="checkbox"/> Wide		<input type="checkbox"/> Metal or <input type="checkbox"/> Wood _____" Thick
Glass Thickness: 1/2" (12 mm) <input type="checkbox"/> 3/4" (19 mm) <input type="checkbox"/>								
Actual Door Size: _____ Horizontal Centers: _____ (CRL Will Calculate)								
Crash Bar Height Above Bottom of Door: 42" <input type="checkbox"/> Other <input type="checkbox"/> Specify: _____								
Finish: <input type="checkbox"/> Stainless Steel: #4 Satin <input type="checkbox"/> #8 Polished <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Brass: #4 Satin <input type="checkbox"/> #8 Polished <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Custom Specify: _____								

2.03 HARDWARE

- A. **General:** Provide heavy-duty hardware units as indicated, scheduled or required for operation of each type of door, including the following items of sizes, numbers, and type recommended by the manufacturer for the type of service required. Provide metal and finish for exposed parts to match the finish of the door.
- B. **Electric Strikes:** Shall be Folger Adams 310-1 with 3/4" straight latch bolt keeper without signal switches using PA100 Panic Handles. Electric strikes are mounted in the header or transom bar.
- C. **Cylinders or Magnetic Locks:** Supplied as described under Division 8 section, for keying into building system.
- K. **Threshold:** Provide manufacturer's standard extruded aluminum threshold in mill finish. Coordinate cutouts with operating hardware. Include anchors and jamb clips.

2.04 FABRICATION

- A. **General:** Fabricate Access Control Handles for 'all-glass' entrance to designs and sizes indicated. Size of door and profile requirements of fittings and hardware are indicated on the drawings.
 - 1. Locate and provide holes and cutouts in glass to receive hardware before tempering glass. Do not permit cutting, drilling or other alterations to glass after tempering.
 - 2. Fabricate work to accommodate required fittings, hardware, anchors, reinforcement, and accessory items.

- B. **Prefabrication:** Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application and other work to the greatest extent possible before shipment to the project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.

2.05 **METAL FINISHES:** (*Architect to Specify during shop drawing review*)

- A. Brushed Stainless Steel Polished
Stainless Steel Satin Brass
Polished Brass
Oil Rubbed Bronze
Other Custom Metal and Powder Coat finishes available (*Architect to Specify during shop drawing review*)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 **EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine handle with the installer, present for compliance with requirements indicated, installation tolerances and other conditions that affect the installation of the 'all-glass' entrances and storefronts. Correct unsatisfactory conditions before proceeding with the installation.
 - 1. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

3.02 **INSTALLATION**

- A. Install access control handles and associated components in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions and recommendations.
 - 1. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.

3.03 **ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust doors and hardware to provide a smooth operation at latching points for a secure, tight closure.
- B. Hardware: Adjust operating hardware to ensure proper operation. Set, seal, and grout floor closer cases. Coordinate cylinder installation.

3.04 **CLEANING**

- A. Clean handle, door, and frame surfaces after installation, exercising care to avoid damage to the finish.
- B. Clean glass surfaces after installation, complying with requirements contained in the "Glass and Glazing" section for cleaning and maintenance. Remove excess glazing sealant compounds, dirt or other substances.

3.05 **PROTECTION**

- A. Institute protective measures required throughout the remainder of the construction period to ensure that the 'all-glass' entrances do not incur any damage or deterioration, other than normal weathering, at the time of acceptance.

-END OF SECTION-

SECTION 08 71 00 – DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Mechanical door hardware for swinging doors

B. Section excludes:

1. Windows
2. Cabinets (casework), including locks in cabinets
3. Signage
4. Toilet accessories
5. Overhead doors
6. Sliding doors
7. Electronic access control system components
8. Field verification, preparation and modification of existing doors and frames to receive new door hardware.

C. Related Sections:

1. Division 01 Section "Alternates" for alternates affecting this section.
2. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry"
3. Division 06 Section "Finish Carpentry"
4. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealant requirements applicable to threshold installation specified in this section.
5. Division 08 Sections:
 - a. "Metal Doors and Frames"
 - b. "Flush Wood Doors"
 - c. "Stile and Rail Wood Doors"
 - d. "Interior Aluminum Doors and Frames"
 - e. "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts"
 - f. "Stainless Steel Doors and Frames"
 - g. "Special Function Doors"
 - h. "Entrances"
6. Division 09 sections for touchup, finishing or refinishing of existing openings modified by this section.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. UL - Underwriters Laboratories

1. UL 10B - Fire Test of Door Assemblies
2. UL 10C - Positive Pressure Test of Fire Door Assemblies
3. UL 1784 - Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies

4. UL 305 - Panic Hardware
- B. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute
 1. Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule
 2. Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware
 3. Keying Systems and Nomenclature
- C. NFPA – National Fire Protection Association
 1. NFPA 70 – National Electric Code
 2. NFPA 80 – 2016 Edition – Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
 3. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code
 4. NFPA 105 – Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies
 5. NFPA 252 – Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
- D. ANSI - American National Standards Institute
 1. ANSI/BHMA A156.1 - A156.29, and ANSI/BHMA A156.31 - Standards for Hardware and Specialties
 2. ANSI/BHMA A156.28 - Recommended Practices for Keying Systems

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. General:
 1. Submit in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 01 Submittal Procedures.
 2. Prior to forwarding submittal:
 - a. Comply with procedures for verifying existing door and frame compatibility for new hardware, as specified in PART 3, "EXAMINATION" article, herein.
 - b. Review drawings and Sections from related trades to verify compatibility with specified hardware.
 - c. Highlight, encircle, or otherwise specifically identify on submittals: deviations from Contract Documents, issues of incompatibility or other issues which may detrimentally affect the Work.
- B. Action Submittals:
 1. Product Data: Submit technical product data for each item of door hardware, installation instructions, maintenance of operating parts and finish, and other information necessary to show compliance with requirements.
 2. Riser and Wiring Diagrams: After final approval of hardware schedule, submit details of electrified door hardware, indicating:
 - a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring and including:
 - 1) Details of interface of electrified door hardware and building safety and security systems.
 - 2) Schematic diagram of systems that interface with electrified door hardware.
 - 3) Point-to-point wiring.
 - 4) Risers.
 3. Samples for Verification: If requested by Architect, submit production sample of requested door hardware unit in finish indicated and tagged with full description for coordination with schedule.

- a. Samples will be returned to supplier. Units that are acceptable to Architect may, after final check of operations, be incorporated into Work, within limitations of key coordination requirements.

4. Door Hardware Schedule:

- a. Submit concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate fabrication of other work critical in Project construction schedule.
- b. Submit under direct supervision of a Door Hardware Institute (DHI) certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) with hardware sets in vertical format as illustrated by Sequence of Format for the Hardware Schedule published by DHI.
- c. Indicate complete designations of each item required for each opening, include:
 - 1) Door Index: door number, heading number, and Architect's hardware set number.
 - 2) Quantity, type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
 - 3) Name and manufacturer of each item.
 - 4) Fastenings and other pertinent information.
 - 5) Location of each hardware set cross-referenced to indications on Drawings.
 - 6) Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
 - 7) Mounting locations for hardware.
 - 8) Door and frame sizes and materials.
 - 9) Degree of door swing and handing.
 - 10) Operational Description of openings with electrified hardware covering egress, ingress (access), and fire/smoke alarm connections.

5. Key Schedule:

- a. After Keying Conference, provide keying schedule that includes levels of keying, explanations of key system's function, key symbols used, and door numbers controlled.
- b. Use ANSI/BHMA A156.28 "Recommended Practices for Keying Systems" as guideline for nomenclature, definitions, and approach for selecting optimal keying system.
- c. Provide 3 copies of keying schedule for review prepared and detailed in accordance with referenced DHI publication. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key to unique door designations.
- d. Index keying schedule by door number, keyset, hardware heading number, cross keying instructions, and special key stamping instructions.
- e. Provide one complete bitting list of key cuts and one key system schematic illustrating system usage and expansion. Forward bitting list, key cuts and key system schematic directly to Owner, by means as directed by Owner.
- f. Prepare key schedule by or under supervision of supplier, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks.

6. Templates: After final approval of hardware schedule, provide templates for doors, frames and other work specified to be factory or shop prepared for door hardware installation.

C. Informational Submittals:

1. Provide Qualification Data for Supplier, Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.
2. Provide Product Data:

- a. Certify that door hardware approved for use on types and sizes of labeled fire-rated doors complies with listed fire-rated door assemblies.
- b. Include warranties for specified door hardware.

D. Closeout Submittals:

1. Operations and Maintenance Data: Provide in accordance with Division 01 and include:
 - a. Complete information on care, maintenance, and adjustment; data on repair and replacement parts, and information on preservation of finishes.
 - b. Catalog pages for each product.
 - c. Factory order acknowledgement numbers (for warranty and service)
 - d. Name, address, and phone number of local representative for each manufacturer.
 - e. Parts list for each product.
 - f. Final approved hardware schedule edited to reflect conditions as-installed.
 - g. Final keying schedule
 - h. Copies of floor plans with keying nomenclature
 - i. Copy of warranties including appropriate reference numbers for manufacturers to identify project.
 - j. As-installed wiring diagrams for each opening connected to power, both low voltage and 110 volts.

E. Inspection and Testing:

1. Submit a written report of the results of functional testing and inspection for fire door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 80.
 - a. Written report to be provided to the Owner and be made available to the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).
 - b. Report to include the door number for each fire door assembly, door location, door and frame material, fire rating, and summary of deficiencies.
2. Submit a written report of the results of functional testing and inspection for required egress door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 101.
 - a. Written report to be provided to the Owner and be made available to the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).
 - b. Report to include the door number for each required egress door assembly, door location, door and frame material, fire rating, and summary of deficiencies.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications and Responsibilities:

1. Supplier: Recognized architectural hardware supplier with record of successful in-service performance for supplying door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality to that indicated for this Project and that provides certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) available to Owner, Architect, and Contractor, at reasonable times during the Work for consultation.
 - a. Warehousing Facilities: In Project's vicinity.
 - b. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedules.
 - c. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for electrified door hardware, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.

- d. Coordination Responsibility: Assist in coordinating installation of electronic security hardware with Architect and electrical engineers and provide installation and technical data to Architect and other related subcontractors.
 - 1) Upon completion of electronic security hardware installation, inspect and verify that all components are working properly.
 2. Installer: Qualified tradesperson skilled in the application of commercial grade hardware with experience installing door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality as indicated for this Project.
 3. Architectural Hardware Consultant: Person who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and meets these requirements:
 - a. For door hardware: DHI certified AHC or DHC.
 - b. Can provide installation and technical data to Architect and other related subcontractors.
 - c. Can inspect and verify components are in working order upon completion of installation.
 - d. Capable of producing wiring diagram and coordinating installation of electrified hardware with Architect and electrical engineers.
 4. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.
- B. Certifications:
1. Fire-Rated Door Openings:
 - a. Provide door hardware for fire-rated openings that complies with NFPA 80 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Provide only items of door hardware that are listed products tested by Underwriters Laboratories, Intertek Testing Services, or other testing and inspecting organizations acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on types and sizes of doors indicated, based on testing at positive pressure and according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C and in compliance with requirements of fire-rated door and door frame labels.
 2. Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies:
 - a. Provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105
 - b. Comply with the maximum air leakage of 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. (3 cu. m per minute/sq. m) at tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg (75 Pa) of water.
 3. Electrified Door Hardware
 - a. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Accessibility Requirements:
 - a. Comply with governing accessibility regulations cited in "REFERENCES" article, herein for door hardware on doors in an accessible route.
- C. Pre-Installation Meetings
1. Keying Conference

- a. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including:
 - 1) Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
 - 2) Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
 - 3) Requirements for key control system.
 - 4) Requirements for access control.
 - 5) Address for delivery of keys.

2. Pre-installation Conference

- a. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
- b. Inspect and discuss preparatory work performed by other trades.
- c. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in for electrified door hardware.
- d. Review sequence of operation for each type of electrified door hardware.
- e. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.
- f. Review questions or concerns related to proper installation and adjustment of door hardware.

3. Electrified Hardware Coordination Conference:

- a. Prior to ordering electrified hardware, schedule and hold meeting to coordinate door hardware with security, electrical, doors and frames, and other related suppliers.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for hardware delivered to Project site. Promptly replace products damaged during shipping.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package. Deliver each article of hardware in manufacturer's original packaging.
- C. Maintain manufacturer-recommended environmental conditions throughout storage and installation periods.
- D. Provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project. Control handling and installation of hardware items so that completion of Work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.
- E. Handle hardware in manner to avoid damage, marring, or scratching. Correct, replace or repair products damaged during Work. Protect products against malfunction due to paint, solvent, cleanser, or any chemical agent.
- F. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.

1.06 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of floor-recessed door hardware with floor construction. Cast anchoring inserts into concrete.

- B. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory or shop prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- C. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.
- D. Electrical System Roughing-In: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies and building safety and security systems.
- E. Existing Openings: Where existing doors, frames and/or hardware are to remain, field verify existing functions, conditions and preparations and coordinate to suit opening conditions and to provide proper door operation.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within published warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty does not cover damage or faulty operation due to improper installation, improper use or abuse.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Beginning from date of Substantial Completion, for durations indicated in manufacturer's published listings.

1.08 MAINTENANCE

- A. Furnish complete set of special tools required for maintenance and adjustment of hardware, including changing of cylinders.
- B. Turn over unused materials to Owner for maintenance purposes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Approval of manufacturers and/or products other than those listed as "Scheduled Manufacturer" or "Acceptable Manufacturers" in the individual article for the product category shall be in accordance with QUALITY ASSURANCE article, herein.
- B. Approval of products from manufacturers indicated in "Acceptable Manufacturers" is contingent upon those products providing all functions and features and meeting all requirements of scheduled manufacturer's product.
- C. Where specified hardware is not adaptable to finished shape or size of members requiring hardware, furnish suitable types having same operation and quality as type specified, subject to Architect's approval.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners

1. Provide hardware manufactured to conform to published templates, generally prepared for machine screw installation.
 2. Furnish screws for installation with each hardware item. Finish exposed (exposed under any condition) screws to match hardware finish, or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of this other work including prepared for paint surfaces to receive painted finish.
 3. Provide concealed fasteners for hardware units exposed when door is closed except when no standard units of type specified are available with concealed fasteners. Do not use thru-bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed in other work unless thru-bolts are required to fasten hardware securely. Review door specification and advise Architect if thru-bolts are required.
 4. Install hardware with fasteners provided by hardware manufacturer.
- B. Modification and Preparation of Existing Doors: Where existing door hardware is indicated to be removed and reinstalled.
1. Provide necessary fillers, Dutchmen, reinforcements, and fasteners, compatible with existing materials, as required for mounting new opening hardware and to cover existing door and frame preparations.
 2. Use materials which match materials of adjacent modified areas.
 3. When modifying existing fire-rated openings, provide materials permitted by NFPA 80 as required to maintain fire-rating.
- C. Provide screws, bolts, expansion shields, drop plates and other devices necessary for hardware installation.
1. Where fasteners are exposed to view: Finish to match adjacent door hardware material.

2.03 HINGES

- A. Manufacturers and Products:
1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. McKinney TA/T4A series
 2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Hager BB series
 - b. Best FBB Series
- B. Requirements:
1. Provide hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.1.
 2. Provide five knuckle, ball bearing hinges.
 3. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors, up to and including 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
 - a. Exterior: Standard weight, bronze or stainless steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Standard weight, steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
 4. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors over 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
 - a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze/stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high

5. 2 inches or thicker doors:
 - a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze or stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
6. Adjust hinge width for door, frame, and wall conditions to allow proper degree of opening.
7. Provide three hinges per door leaf for doors 90 inches (2286 mm) or less in height, and one additional hinge for each 30 inches (762 mm) of additional door height.
8. Where new hinges are specified for existing doors or existing frames, provide new hinges of identical size to hinge preparation present in existing door or existing frame.
9. Hinge Pins: Except as otherwise indicated, provide hinge pins as follows:
 - a. Steel Hinges: Steel pins
 - b. Non-Ferrous Hinges: Stainless steel pins
 - c. Out-Swinging Exterior Doors: Non-removable pins
 - d. Out-Swinging Interior Lockable Doors: Non-removable pins
 - e. Interior Non-lockable Doors: Non-rising pins
10. Provide hinges with electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with sufficient number and wire gage to accommodate electric function of specified hardware. Locate electric hinge at second hinge from bottom or nearest to electrified locking component. Provide mortar guard for each electrified hinge specified.

2.04 CONTINUOUS HINGES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Pemko
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. ABH
 - b. Hager-Roton

B. Requirements:

1. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.26, Grade 1.
2. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges, where specified in the hardware sets, fabricated from 6063-T6 aluminum.
3. Provide split nylon bearings at each hinge knuckle for quiet, smooth, self-lubricating operation.
4. Provide hinges capable of supporting door weights up to 450 pounds, and successfully tested for 1,500,000 cycles.
5. On fire-rated doors, provide aluminum geared continuous hinges classified for use on rated doors by testing agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.
6. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges with electrified option scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with sufficient number and wire gage to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
7. Provide hinges 1 inch (25 mm) shorter in length than nominal height of door, unless otherwise noted or door details require shorter length and with symmetrical hole pattern.

2.05 CYLINDRICAL LOCKS – GRADE 1

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Corbin-Russwin CLX3300 series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Best 9K series

B. Requirements:

1. Provide cylindrical locks conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Series 4000, Grade 1, and UL Listed for 3 hour fire doors.
2. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
3. Provide locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset, unless noted otherwise, with 1/2 inch latch throw. Provide proper latch throw for UL listing at pairs.
4. Provide locksets with separate anti-rotation thru-bolts, and no exposed screws.
5. Provide independently operating levers with two external return spring cassettes mounted under roses to prevent lever sag.
6. Provide standard ASA strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim.
7. Provide electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets.
8. Lever Trim: Solid cast levers without plastic inserts and wrought roses on both sides.
 - a. Lever Design: Corbin Russwin Princeton

2.06 CYLINDRICAL LOCKS – GRADE 2

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Corbin Russwin CL3800 series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Best 7KC series

B. Requirements

1. Provide cylindrical locks conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Series 4000, Grade 2, and UL Listed for 3-hour fire doors with a minimum cycle life of 1 million.
2. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
3. Provide locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset, unless noted otherwise, with 1/2-inch latch throw. Provide 3/4" latch throw for UL listing at pairs.
4. Provide locksets with separate anti-rotation thru-bolts, and no exposed screws.
5. Provide independently operating levers with two external return spring cassettes mounted under roses to prevent lever sag.
6. Provide a minimum of 5 points of lever engagement between the cassette spindle and lever shank to prevent lever sag.
7. Provide standard ASA strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim.
8. Plug-n-Play – Provide modular lockset allowing lock functions to be created for 7 typical functions by inserting/installing parts into the exterior of a fully assembled chassis

9. Reconfigurable Chassis - Provide modular lockset that allows the function to be reconfigured by removing external components from the chassis
10. Lever Trim: Solid cast levers and wrought roses on both sides.
 - a. Lever Design: Corbin Russwin Princeton

2.07 EXIT DEVICES

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Corbin Russwin ED5000 series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Sargent 80 series

B. Requirements:

1. Provide exit devices tested to ANSI/BHMA A156.3 Grade 1 and UL listed for Panic Exit or Fire Exit Hardware.
2. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
3. Provide touchpad type exit devices, fabricated of brass, bronze, stainless steel, or aluminum, plated to standard architectural finishes to match balance of door hardware.
4. Touchpad must extend a minimum of one half of door width. No plastic inserts are allowed in touchpads.
5. Provide exit devices with deadlatching feature for security and for future addition of alarm kits and/or other electrified requirements.
6. Provide exit devices with weather resistant components that can withstand harsh conditions of various climates and corrosive cleaners used in outdoor pool environments.
7. Provide flush end caps for exit devices.
8. Provide exit devices with manufacturer's approved strikes.
9. Provide exit devices cut to door width and height. Install exit devices at height recommended by exit device manufacturer, allowable by governing building codes, and approved by Architect.
10. Mount mechanism case flush on face of doors or provide spacers to fill gaps behind devices. Where glass trim or molding projects off face of door, provide glass bead kits.
11. Provide cylinder or hex-key dogging as specified at non fire-rated openings.
12. Removable Mullions: 2 inches (51 mm) x 3 inches (76 mm) steel tube. Where scheduled as keyed removable mullion, provide type that can be removed by use of a keyed cylinder, which is self-locking when re-installed.
13. Provide factory drilled weep holes for exit devices used in full exterior application, highly corrosive areas, and where noted in hardware sets.
14. Top latch mounting: double or single tab mount for steel doors, face mount for aluminum doors eliminating requirement of tabs, and double tab mount for wood doors.
15. Provide exit devices with optional trim designs to match other lever and pull designs used on the project.

2.08 CYLINDERS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:

- a. Corbin-Russwin
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Best
- B. Requirements:
 1. Provide cylinders/cores, from the same manufacturer of locksets, compliant with ANSI/BHMA A156.5; latest revision; cylinder face finished to match lockset, manufacturer's series as indicated. Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
 2. Provide cylinders in the below-listed configuration(s), distributed throughout the Project as indicated.
 - a. Conventional Open: cylinder with open keyway

2.09 KEYING

- A. Provide a factory registered keying system, complying with guidelines in ANSI/BHMA A156.28, incorporating decisions made at keying conference.
- B. Requirements:
 1. Provide permanent cylinders/cores keyed by the manufacturer according to the following key system.
 - a. Master Keying system as directed by the Owner.
 2. Forward bitting list and keys separately from cylinders, by means as directed by Owner. Failure to comply with forwarding requirements will be cause for replacement of cylinders/cores involved at no additional cost to Owner.
 3. Provide keys with the following features:
 - a. Material: Nickel silver; minimum thickness of .107-inch (2.3mm)
 - b. Patent Protection: Keys and blanks protected by one or more utility patent(s)
 4. Identification:
 - a. Mark permanent cylinders/cores and keys with applicable blind code for identification. Do not provide blind code marks with actual key cuts.
 - b. Identification stamping provisions must be approved by the Architect and Owner.
 - c. Stamp cylinders/cores and keys with Owner's unique key system facility code as established by the manufacturer; key symbol and embossed or stamped with "DO NOT DUPLICATE" along with the "PATENTED" or patent number to enforce the patent protection.
 - d. Failure to comply with stamping requirements will be cause for replacement of keys involved at no additional cost to Owner.
 - e. Forward permanent cylinders/cores to Owner, separately from keys, by means as directed by Owner.
 5. Quantity: Furnish in the following quantities.
 - a. Change (Day) Keys: 3 per cylinder/core.
 - b. Master Keys: 6.

2.10 BARN DOOR HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Pemko
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Hager
 - b. KN Crowder

B. Requirements:

1. Provide complete sets of sliding door hardware as recommended by manufacturer for door type and weight.
 - a. Include track, channels, brackets, hangers, fasteners, guides, pulls, stops, and other hardware as required for complete installation.

2.11 DOOR CLOSERS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Norton 7500/8500 series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Corbin-Russwin DC8000/DC6000 series

B. Requirements:

1. Provide door closers conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1 requirements by BHMA certified independent testing laboratory. ISO 9000 certify closers. Stamp units with date of manufacture code.
2. Provide door closers with fully hydraulic, full rack and pinion action with high strength cast iron cylinder, and full complement bearings at shaft.
3. Cylinder Body: 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) diameter with 5/8 inch (16 mm) diameter double heat-treated pinion journal.
4. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees F to -30 degrees F.
5. Spring Power: Continuously adjustable over full range of closer sizes, and providing reduced opening force as required by accessibility codes and standards.
6. Hydraulic Regulation: By tamper-proof, non-critical valves, with separate adjustment for latch speed, general speed, and backcheck.
7. Provide closers with solid forged steel main arms and factory assembled heavy-duty forged forearms for parallel arm closers.
8. Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) Technology: Not permitted.
9. Finish for Closer Cylinders, Arms, Adapter Plates, and Metal Covers: Powder coating finish which has been certified to exceed 100 hours salt spray testing as described in ANSI Standard A156.4 and ASTM B117, or has special rust inhibitor (SRI).

10. Provide special templates, drop plates, mounting brackets, or adapters for arms as required for details, overhead stops, and other door hardware items interfering with closer mounting.

2.12 DOOR TRIM

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Rockwood
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Trimco
 - b. Burns

B. Requirements:

1. Provide push plates, push bars, pull plates, and pulls with diameter and length as scheduled.

2.13 PROTECTION PLATES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Rockwood
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Burns
 - b. Trimco

B. Requirements:

1. Provide protection plates with a minimum of 0.050 inch (1 mm) thick, beveled four edges as scheduled. Furnish with sheet metal or wood screws, finished to match plates.
2. Size plates 2 inches (51 mm) less width of door on single doors, pairs of doors with a mullion, and doors with edge guards. Size plates 1 inch (25 mm) less width of door on pairs without a mullion or edge guards.
3. At fire rated doors, provide protection plates over 16 inches high with UL label.

2.14 OVERHEAD STOPS AND OVERHEAD STOP/HOLDERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturers:
 - a. Rixson
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. Sargent
- b. ABH

B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide overhead stop at any door where conditions do not allow for a wall stop or floor stop presents tripping hazard.
- 2. Provide friction type at doors without closer and positive type at doors with closer.

2.15 DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Rockwood
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Trimco
 - b. Burns

B. Provide door stops at each door leaf:

- 1. Provide wall stops wherever possible. Provide concave type where lockset has a push button or thumbturn.
- 2. Where a wall stop cannot be used, provide universal floor stops.
- 3. Where wall or floor stop cannot be used, provide overhead stop.
- 4. Provide roller bumper where doors open into each other and overhead stop cannot be used.

2.16 THRESHOLDS, SEALS, DOOR SWEEPS, AUTOMATIC DOOR BOTTOMS, AND GASKETING

A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Pemko
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. National Guard
 - b. Reese

B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide thresholds, weather-stripping, and gasketing systems as specified and per architectural details. Match finish of other items.
- 2. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
- 3. Provide door sweeps, seals, astragals, and auto door bottoms only of type where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available.

4. Size thresholds 1/2 inch (13 mm) high by 5 inches (127 mm) wide by door width unless otherwise specified in the hardware sets or detailed in the drawings.

2.17 FINISHES

- A. Finish: BHMA 613E (US10BE); except:
 1. Continuous Hinges: BHMA 710 (US10BE)
 2. Door Closers: Powder Coat to Match.
 3. Sliding Door Hardware: Black Powder Coat
 4. Weatherstripping: Dark Bronze Anodized Aluminum.
 5. Thresholds: Dark Bronze Anodized Aluminum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Prior to installation of hardware, examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance. Verify doors, frames, and walls have been properly reinforced for hardware installation.
- B. Field verify existing doors and frames receiving new hardware and existing conditions receiving new openings. Verify that new hardware is compatible with existing door and frame preparation and existing conditions.
- C. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.
- D. Submit a list of deficiencies in writing and proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Where on-site modification of doors and frames is required:
 1. Carefully remove existing door hardware and components being reused. Clean, protect, tag, and store in accordance with storage and handling requirements specified herein.
 2. Field modify and prepare existing doors and frames for new hardware being installed.
 3. When modifications are exposed to view, use concealed fasteners, when possible.
 4. Prepare hardware locations and reinstall in accordance with installation requirements for new door hardware and with:
 - a. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI/SDI A250.6.
 - b. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.5 "Recommended Hardware Reinforcement Locations for Mineral Core Wood Flush Doors."
 - c. Doors in rated assemblies: NFPA 80 for restrictions on on-site door hardware preparation.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following, unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
 - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 - 2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
 - 3. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."
- B. Install each hardware item in compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, using only fasteners provided by manufacturer.
- C. Do not install surface mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrate. Protect all installed hardware during painting.
- D. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.
- E. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- F. Install operating parts so they move freely and smoothly without binding, sticking, or excessive clearance.
- G. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than quantity recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
- H. Door Closers: Mount closers on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors from corridors. Mount closers so they are not visible in corridors, lobbies and other public spaces unless approved by Architect.
- I. Closer/holders: Mount closer/holders on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors.
- J. Thresholds: Set thresholds in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- K. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they may impede traffic or present tripping hazard.
- L. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
- M. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
- N. Door Bottoms and Sweeps: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection and Testing:

1. Provide functional testing and inspection of fire door assemblies by a qualified person in accordance with NFPA 80.
 - a. Schedule fire door assembly inspection within 90 days of Substantial Completion of the Project.
 - b. Submit a signed, written final report as specified in Paragraph 1.03.E.1.
 - c. Correct all deficiencies and schedule a reinspection of fire door assemblies noted as deficient on the inspection report.
 - d. Inspector to reinspect fire door assemblies after repairs are made.
2. Provide inspection of required egress door assemblies by a qualified person in accordance with NFPA 101.
 - a. Schedule egress door assembly inspection within 90 days of Substantial Completion of the Project for the required openings.
 - b. Submit a signed, written final report as specified in Paragraph 1.03.E.2.
 - c. Correct all deficiencies and schedule a reinspection of egress door assemblies noted as deficient on the inspection report.
 - d. Inspector to reinspect required egress door assemblies after repairs are made.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
 1. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three to six months after date of Substantial Completion, examine and readjust each item of door hardware, including adjusting operating forces, as necessary to ensure function of doors and door hardware.

3.06 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items per manufacturer's instructions to restore proper function and finish.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.07 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

- A. The intent of the hardware specification is to specify the hardware for interior and exterior doors, and to establish a type, continuity, and standard of quality. However, it is the door hardware supplier's responsibility to thoroughly review existing conditions, schedules, specifications, drawings, and other Contract Documents to verify the suitability of the hardware specified.
- B. Discrepancies, conflicting hardware, and missing items are to be brought to the attention of the architect with corrections made prior to the bidding process. Omitted items not included in

Benham's Grove Barn & Cottage
LWC Incorporated

a hardware set should be scheduled with the appropriate additional hardware required for proper application.

C. Hardware items are referenced in the following hardware schedule. Refer to the above specifications for special features, options, cylinders/keying, and other requirements.

D. Hardware Sets:

Set 01

Openings: B001

1 ea	Sliding Track Hardware System	CS-W60D/6	BLK	Pemko
2 ea	ADA Flush Pull	BF97	BLK	Rockwood

Set 02

Openings: C101

ea	Hinge	As specified above	613E	McKinney
1 ea	Classroom Lock	CL3855 PZD	613E	Corbin Russwin
1 ea	Surface Overhead Stop	10 series	690	Rixson

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 71 00 – DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Mechanical and electrified door hardware for swinging doors

B. Section excludes:

1. Windows
2. Cabinets (casework), including locks in cabinets
3. Signage
4. Toilet accessories
5. Overhead doors
6. Gates.
7. Electronic access control system components
8. Field verification, preparation and modification of existing doors and frames to receive new door hardware.

C. Related Sections:

1. Division 01 Section "Alternates" for alternates affecting this section.
2. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry"
3. Division 06 Section "Finish Carpentry"
4. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealant requirements applicable to threshold installation specified in this section.
5. Division 08 Sections:
 - a. "Metal Doors and Frames"
 - b. "Flush Wood Doors"
 - c. "Stile and Rail Wood Doors"
 - d. "Interior Aluminum Doors and Frames"
 - e. "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts"
 - f. "Stainless Steel Doors and Frames"
 - g. "Special Function Doors"
 - h. "Entrances"
6. Division 09 sections for touchup, finishing or refinishing of existing openings modified by this section.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. UL - Underwriters Laboratories

1. UL 10B - Fire Test of Door Assemblies

2. UL 10C - Positive Pressure Test of Fire Door Assemblies
 3. UL 1784 - Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies
 4. UL 305 - Panic Hardware
- B. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute
1. Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule
 2. Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware
 3. Keying Systems and Nomenclature
- C. NFPA – National Fire Protection Association
1. NFPA 70 – National Electric Code
 2. NFPA 80 – 2016 Edition – Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
 3. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code
 4. NFPA 105 – Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies
 5. NFPA 252 – Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
- D. ANSI - American National Standards Institute
1. ANSI/BHMA A156.1 - A156.29, and ANSI/BHMA A156.31 - Standards for Hardware and Specialties
 2. ANSI/BHMA A156.28 - Recommended Practices for Keying Systems

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. General:
1. Submit in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 01 Submittal Procedures.
 2. Prior to forwarding submittal:
 - a. Comply with procedures for verifying existing door and frame compatibility for new hardware, as specified in PART 3, "EXAMINATION" article, herein.
 - b. Review drawings and Sections from related trades to verify compatibility with specified hardware.
 - c. Highlight, encircle, or otherwise specifically identify on submittals: deviations from Contract Documents, issues of incompatibility or other issues which may detrimentally affect the Work.
- B. Action Submittals:
1. Product Data: Submit technical product data for each item of door hardware, installation instructions, maintenance of operating parts and finish, and other information necessary to show compliance with requirements.
 2. Riser and Wiring Diagrams: After final approval of hardware schedule, submit details of electrified door hardware, indicating:
 - a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring and including:
 - 1) Details of interface of electrified door hardware and building safety and security systems.
 - 2) Schematic diagram of systems that interface with electrified door hardware.
 - 3) Point-to-point wiring.

- 4) Risers.
3. Samples for Verification: If requested by Architect, submit production sample of requested door hardware unit in finish indicated and tagged with full description for coordination with schedule.
 - a. Samples will be returned to supplier. Units that are acceptable to Architect may, after final check of operations, be incorporated into Work, within limitations of key coordination requirements.
4. Door Hardware Schedule:
 - a. Submit concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate fabrication of other work critical in Project construction schedule.
 - b. Submit under direct supervision of a Door Hardware Institute (DHI) certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) with hardware sets in vertical format as illustrated by Sequence of Format for the Hardware Schedule published by DHI.
 - c. Indicate complete designations of each item required for each opening, include:
 - 1) Door Index: door number, heading number, and Architect's hardware set number.
 - 2) Quantity, type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
 - 3) Name and manufacturer of each item.
 - 4) Fastenings and other pertinent information.
 - 5) Location of each hardware set cross-referenced to indications on Drawings.
 - 6) Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
 - 7) Mounting locations for hardware.
 - 8) Door and frame sizes and materials.
 - 9) Degree of door swing and handing.
 - 10) Operational Description of openings with electrified hardware covering egress, ingress (access), and fire/smoke alarm connections.
5. Key Schedule:
 - a. After Keying Conference, provide keying schedule that includes levels of keying, explanations of key system's function, key symbols used, and door numbers controlled.
 - b. Use ANSI/BHMA A156.28 "Recommended Practices for Keying Systems" as guideline for nomenclature, definitions, and approach for selecting optimal keying system.
 - c. Provide 3 copies of keying schedule for review prepared and detailed in accordance with referenced DHI publication. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key to unique door designations.
 - d. Index keying schedule by door number, keyset, hardware heading number, cross keying instructions, and special key stamping instructions.
 - e. Provide one complete bitting list of key cuts and one key system schematic illustrating system usage and expansion. Forward bitting list, key cuts and key system schematic directly to Owner, by means as directed by Owner.
 - f. Prepare key schedule by or under supervision of supplier, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks.

6. Templates: After final approval of hardware schedule, provide templates for doors, frames and other work specified to be factory or shop prepared for door hardware installation.
- C. Informational Submittals:
1. Provide Qualification Data for Supplier, Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.
 2. Provide Product Data:
 - a. Certify that door hardware approved for use on types and sizes of labeled fire-rated doors complies with listed fire-rated door assemblies.
 - b. Include warranties for specified door hardware.
- D. Closeout Submittals:
1. Operations and Maintenance Data: Provide in accordance with Division 01 and include:
 - a. Complete information on care, maintenance, and adjustment; data on repair and replacement parts, and information on preservation of finishes.
 - b. Catalog pages for each product.
 - c. Factory order acknowledgement numbers (for warranty and service)
 - d. Name, address, and phone number of local representative for each manufacturer.
 - e. Parts list for each product.
 - f. Final approved hardware schedule edited to reflect conditions as-installed.
 - g. Final keying schedule
 - h. Copies of floor plans with keying nomenclature
 - i. Copy of warranties including appropriate reference numbers for manufacturers to identify project.
 - j. As-installed wiring diagrams for each opening connected to power, both low voltage and 110 volts.
- E. Inspection and Testing:
1. Submit a written report of the results of functional testing and inspection for fire door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 80.
 - a. Written report to be provided to the Owner and be made available to the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).
 - b. Report to include the door number for each fire door assembly, door location, door and frame material, fire rating, and summary of deficiencies.
 2. Submit a written report of the results of functional testing and inspection for required egress door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 101.
 - a. Written report to be provided to the Owner and be made available to the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).
 - b. Report to include the door number for each required egress door assembly, door location, door and frame material, fire rating, and summary of deficiencies.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications and Responsibilities:

1. Supplier: Recognized architectural hardware supplier with record of successful in-service performance for supplying door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality to that indicated for this Project and that provides certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) available to Owner, Architect, and Contractor, at reasonable times during the Work for consultation.
 - a. Warehousing Facilities: In Project's vicinity.
 - b. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedules.
 - c. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for electrified door hardware, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.
 - d. Coordination Responsibility: Assist in coordinating installation of electronic security hardware with Architect and electrical engineers and provide installation and technical data to Architect and other related subcontractors.
 - 1) Upon completion of electronic security hardware installation, inspect and verify that all components are working properly.
 2. Installer: Qualified tradesperson skilled in the application of commercial grade hardware with experience installing door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality as indicated for this Project.
 3. Architectural Hardware Consultant: Person who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and meets these requirements:
 - a. For door hardware: DHI certified AHC or DHC.
 - b. Can provide installation and technical data to Architect and other related subcontractors.
 - c. Can inspect and verify components are in working order upon completion of installation.
 - d. Capable of producing wiring diagram and coordinating installation of electrified hardware with Architect and electrical engineers.
 4. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.
- B. Certifications:
1. Fire-Rated Door Openings:
 - a. Provide door hardware for fire-rated openings that complies with NFPA 80 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Provide only items of door hardware that are listed products tested by Underwriters Laboratories, Intertek Testing Services, or other testing and inspecting organizations acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on types and sizes of doors indicated, based on testing at positive pressure and according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C and in compliance with requirements of fire-rated door and door frame labels.
 2. Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies:
 - a. Provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105
 - b. Comply with the maximum air leakage of 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. (3 cu. m per minute/sq. m) at tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg (75 Pa) of water.

3. Electrified Door Hardware
 - a. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Accessibility Requirements:
 - a. Comply with governing accessibility regulations cited in "REFERENCES" article, herein for door hardware on doors in an accessible route.
- C. Pre-Installation Meetings
1. Keying Conference
 - a. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including:
 - 1) Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
 - 2) Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
 - 3) Requirements for key control system.
 - 4) Requirements for access control.
 - 5) Address for delivery of keys.
 2. Pre-installation Conference
 - a. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Inspect and discuss preparatory work performed by other trades.
 - c. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in for electrified door hardware.
 - d. Review sequence of operation for each type of electrified door hardware.
 - e. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.
 - f. Review questions or concerns related to proper installation and adjustment of door hardware.
 3. Electrified Hardware Coordination Conference:
 - a. Prior to ordering electrified hardware, schedule and hold meeting to coordinate door hardware with security, electrical, doors and frames, and other related suppliers.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for hardware delivered to Project site. Promptly replace products damaged during shipping.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package. Deliver each article of hardware in manufacturer's original packaging.
- C. Maintain manufacturer-recommended environmental conditions throughout storage and installation periods.

- D. Provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project. Control handling and installation of hardware items so that completion of Work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.
- E. Handle hardware in manner to avoid damage, marring, or scratching. Correct, replace or repair products damaged during Work. Protect products against malfunction due to paint, solvent, cleanser, or any chemical agent.
- F. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.

1.06 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of floor-recessed door hardware with floor construction. Cast anchoring inserts into concrete.
- B. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory or shop prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- C. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.
- D. Electrical System Roughing-In: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies and building safety and security systems.
- E. Existing Openings: Where existing doors, frames and/or hardware are to remain, field verify existing functions, conditions and preparations and coordinate to suit opening conditions and to provide proper door operation.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within published warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty does not cover damage or faulty operation due to improper installation, improper use or abuse.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Beginning from date of Substantial Completion, for durations indicated in manufacturer's published listings.

1.08 MAINTENANCE

- A. Furnish complete set of special tools required for maintenance and adjustment of hardware, including changing of cylinders.
- B. Turn over unused materials to Owner for maintenance purposes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Approval of manufacturers and/or products other than those listed as "Scheduled Manufacturer" or "Acceptable Manufacturers" in the individual article for the product category shall be in accordance with QUALITY ASSURANCE article, herein.
- B. Approval of products from manufacturers indicated in "Acceptable Manufacturers" is contingent upon those products providing all functions and features and meeting all requirements of scheduled manufacturer's product.
- C. Where specified hardware is not adaptable to finished shape or size of members requiring hardware, furnish suitable types having same operation and quality as type specified, subject to Architect's approval.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners
 - 1. Provide hardware manufactured to conform to published templates, generally prepared for machine screw installation.
 - 2. Furnish screws for installation with each hardware item. Finish exposed (exposed under any condition) screws to match hardware finish, or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of this other work including prepared for paint surfaces to receive painted finish.
 - 3. Provide concealed fasteners for hardware units exposed when door is closed except when no standard units of type specified are available with concealed fasteners. Do not use thru-bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed in other work unless thru-bolts are required to fasten hardware securely. Review door specification and advise Architect if thru-bolts are required.
 - 4. Install hardware with fasteners provided by hardware manufacturer.
- B. Modification and Preparation of Existing Doors: Where existing door hardware is indicated to be removed and reinstalled.
 - 1. Provide necessary fillers, Dutchmen, reinforcements, and fasteners, compatible with existing materials, as required for mounting new opening hardware and to cover existing door and frame preparations.
 - 2. Use materials which match materials of adjacent modified areas.
 - 3. When modifying existing fire-rated openings, provide materials permitted by NFPA 80 as required to maintain fire-rating.
- C. Provide screws, bolts, expansion shields, drop plates and other devices necessary for hardware installation.
 - 1. Where fasteners are exposed to view: Finish to match adjacent door hardware material.

2.03 HINGES

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. McKinney TA/T4A series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Hager BB series
 - b. Best FBB Series

B. Requirements:

1. Provide hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.1.
2. Provide five knuckle, ball bearing hinges.
3. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors, up to and including 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
 - a. Exterior: Standard weight, bronze or stainless steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Standard weight, steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
4. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors over 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
 - a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze/stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
5. 2 inches or thicker doors:
 - a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze or stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
6. Adjust hinge width for door, frame, and wall conditions to allow proper degree of opening.
7. Provide three hinges per door leaf for doors 90 inches (2286 mm) or less in height, and one additional hinge for each 30 inches (762 mm) of additional door height.
8. Where new hinges are specified for existing doors or existing frames, provide new hinges of identical size to hinge preparation present in existing door or existing frame.
9. Hinge Pins: Except as otherwise indicated, provide hinge pins as follows:
 - a. Steel Hinges: Steel pins
 - b. Non-Ferrous Hinges: Stainless steel pins
 - c. Out-Swinging Exterior Doors: Non-removable pins
 - d. Out-Swinging Interior Lockable Doors: Non-removable pins
 - e. Interior Non-lockable Doors: Non-rising pins
10. Provide hinges with electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with sufficient number and wire gage to accommodate electric function of specified hardware. Locate electric hinge at second hinge from bottom or nearest to electrified locking component. Provide mortar guard for each electrified hinge specified.

2.04 CONTINUOUS HINGES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Pemko
 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. ABH
 - b. Hager-Roton
- B. Requirements:
1. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.26, Grade 1.
 2. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges, where specified in the hardware sets, fabricated from 6063-T6 aluminum.
 3. Provide split nylon bearings at each hinge knuckle for quiet, smooth, self-lubricating operation.
 4. Provide hinges capable of supporting door weights up to 450 pounds, and successfully tested for 1,500,000 cycles.
 5. On fire-rated doors, provide aluminum geared continuous hinges classified for use on rated doors by testing agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.
 6. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges with electrified option scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with sufficient number and wire gage to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
 7. Provide hinges 1 inch (25 mm) shorter in length than nominal height of door, unless otherwise noted or door details require shorter length and with symmetrical hole pattern.

2.05 CYLINDRICAL LOCKS – GRADE 1

- A. Manufacturers and Products:
1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Corbin-Russwin CLX3300 series
 2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Best 9K series
- B. Requirements:
1. Provide cylindrical locks conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Series 4000, Grade 1, and UL Listed for 3 hour fire doors.
 2. Cylinders: Refer to “KEYING” article, herein.
 3. Provide locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset, unless noted otherwise, with 1/2 inch latch throw. Provide proper latch throw for UL listing at pairs.
 4. Provide locksets with separate anti-rotation thru-bolts, and no exposed screws.
 5. Provide independently operating levers with two external return spring cassettes mounted under roses to prevent lever sag.
 6. Provide standard ASA strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim.
 7. Provide electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets.
 8. Lever Trim: Solid cast levers without plastic inserts and wrought roses on both sides.

- a. Lever Design: Corbin Russwin Princeton

2.06 CYLINDRICAL LOCKS – GRADE 2

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Corbin Russwin CL3800 series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Best 7KC series

B. Requirements

1. Provide cylindrical locks conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Series 4000, Grade 2, and UL Listed for 3-hour fire doors with a minimum cycle life of 1 million.
2. Cylinders: Refer to “KEYING” article, herein.
3. Provide locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset, unless noted otherwise, with 1/2-inch latch throw. Provide 3/4” latch throw for UL listing at pairs.
4. Provide locksets with separate anti-rotation thru-bolts, and no exposed screws.
5. Provide independently operating levers with two external return spring cassettes mounted under roses to prevent lever sag.
6. Provide a minimum of 5 points of lever engagement between the cassette spindle and lever shank to prevent lever sag.
7. Provide standard ASA strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim.
8. Plug-n-Play – Provide modular lockset allowing lock functions to be created for 7 typical functions by inserting/installing parts into the exterior of a fully assembled chassis
9. Reconfigurable Chassis - Provide modular lockset that allows the function to be reconfigured by removing external components from the chassis
10. Lever Trim: Solid cast levers and wrought roses on both sides.
 - a. Lever Design: Corbin Russwin Princeton

2.07 EXIT DEVICES

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Corbin Russwin ED5000 series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Sargent 80 series

B. Requirements:

1. Provide exit devices tested to ANSI/BHMA A156.3 Grade 1 and UL listed for Panic Exit or Fire Exit Hardware.
2. Cylinders: Refer to “KEYING” article, herein.

3. Provide touchpad type exit devices, fabricated of brass, bronze, stainless steel, or aluminum, plated to standard architectural finishes to match balance of door hardware.
4. Touchpad must extend a minimum of one half of door width. No plastic inserts are allowed in touchpads.
5. Provide exit devices with deadlatching feature for security and for future addition of alarm kits and/or other electrified requirements.
6. Provide exit devices with weather resistant components that can withstand harsh conditions of various climates and corrosive cleaners used in outdoor pool environments.
7. Provide flush end caps for exit devices.
8. Provide exit devices with manufacturer's approved strikes.
9. Provide exit devices cut to door width and height. Install exit devices at height recommended by exit device manufacturer, allowable by governing building codes, and approved by Architect.
10. Mount mechanism case flush on face of doors or provide spacers to fill gaps behind devices. Where glass trim or molding projects off face of door, provide glass bead kits.
11. Provide cylinder or hex-key dogging as specified at non fire-rated openings.
12. Removable Mullions: 2 inches (51 mm) x 3 inches (76 mm) steel tube. Where scheduled as keyed removable mullion, provide type that can be removed by use of a keyed cylinder, which is self-locking when re-installed.
13. Provide factory drilled weep holes for exit devices used in full exterior application, highly corrosive areas, and where noted in hardware sets.
14. Top latch mounting: double or single tab mount for steel doors, face mount for aluminum doors eliminating requirement of tabs, and double tab mount for wood doors.
15. Provide exit devices with optional trim designs to match other lever and pull designs used on the project.

2.08 CYLINDERS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Corbin-Russwin
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Best

B. Requirements:

1. Provide cylinders/cores, from the same manufacturer of locksets, compliant with ANSI/BHMA A156.5; latest revision; cylinder face finished to match lockset, manufacturer's series as indicated. Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
2. Provide cylinders in the below-listed configuration(s), distributed throughout the Project as indicated.
 - a. Conventional Open: cylinder with open keyway

2.09 KEYING

- A. Provide a factory registered keying system, complying with guidelines in ANSI/BHMA A156.28, incorporating decisions made at keying conference.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide permanent cylinders/cores keyed by the manufacturer according to the following key system.
 - a. Master Keying system as directed by the Owner.
2. Forward bitting list and keys separately from cylinders, by means as directed by Owner. Failure to comply with forwarding requirements will be cause for replacement of cylinders/cores involved at no additional cost to Owner.
3. Provide keys with the following features:
 - a. Material: Nickel silver; minimum thickness of .107-inch (2.3mm)
 - b. Patent Protection: Keys and blanks protected by one or more utility patent(s)
4. Identification:
 - a. Mark permanent cylinders/cores and keys with applicable blind code for identification. Do not provide blind code marks with actual key cuts.
 - b. Identification stamping provisions must be approved by the Architect and Owner.
 - c. Stamp cylinders/cores and keys with Owner's unique key system facility code as established by the manufacturer; key symbol and embossed or stamped with "DO NOT DUPLICATE" along with the "PATENTED" or patent number to enforce the patent protection.
 - d. Failure to comply with stamping requirements will be cause for replacement of keys involved at no additional cost to Owner.
 - e. Forward permanent cylinders/cores to Owner, separately from keys, by means as directed by Owner.
5. Quantity: Furnish in the following quantities.
 - a. Change (Day) Keys: 3 per cylinder/core.
 - b. Master Keys: 6.

2.10 DOOR CLOSERS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Norton 7500/8500 series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Corbin-Russwin DC8000/DC6000 series

B. Requirements:

1. Provide door closers conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1 requirements by BHMA certified independent testing laboratory. ISO 9000 certify closers. Stamp units with date of manufacture code.
2. Provide door closers with fully hydraulic, full rack and pinion action with high strength cast iron cylinder, and full complement bearings at shaft.

3. Cylinder Body: 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) diameter with 5/8 inch (16 mm) diameter double heat-treated pinion journal.
4. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees F to -30 degrees F.
5. Spring Power: Continuously adjustable over full range of closer sizes, and providing reduced opening force as required by accessibility codes and standards.
6. Hydraulic Regulation: By tamper-proof, non-critical valves, with separate adjustment for latch speed, general speed, and backcheck.
7. Provide closers with solid forged steel main arms and factory assembled heavy-duty forged forearms for parallel arm closers.
8. Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) Technology: Not permitted.
9. Finish for Closer Cylinders, Arms, Adapter Plates, and Metal Covers: Powder coating finish which has been certified to exceed 100 hours salt spray testing as described in ANSI Standard A156.4 and ASTM B117, or has special rust inhibitor (SRI).
10. Provide special templates, drop plates, mounting brackets, or adapters for arms as required for details, overhead stops, and other door hardware items interfering with closer mounting.

2.11 DOOR TRIM

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Rockwood
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Trimco
 - b. Burns

B. Requirements:

1. Provide push plates, push bars, pull plates, and pulls with diameter and length as scheduled.

2.12 PROTECTION PLATES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Rockwood
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Burns
 - b. Trimco

B. Requirements:

1. Provide protection plates with a minimum of 0.050 inch (1 mm) thick, beveled four edges as scheduled. Furnish with sheet metal or wood screws, finished to match plates.
2. Sizes plates 2 inches (51 mm) less width of door on single doors, pairs of doors with a mullion, and doors with edge guards. Size plates 1 inch (25 mm) less width of door on pairs without a mullion or edge guards.
3. At fire rated doors, provide protection plates over 16 inches high with UL label.

2.13 OVERHEAD STOPS AND OVERHEAD STOP/HOLDERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturers:

- a. Rixson

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. Sargent
- b. ABH

B. Requirements:

1. Provide overhead stop at any door where conditions do not allow for a wall stop or floor stop presents tripping hazard.
2. Provide friction type at doors without closer and positive type at doors with closer.

2.14 DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:

- a. Rockwood

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. Trimco
- b. Burns

B. Provide door stops at each door leaf:

1. Provide wall stops wherever possible. Provide concave type where lockset has a push button or thumbturn.
2. Where a wall stop cannot be used, provide universal floor stops.
3. Where wall or floor stop cannot be used, provide overhead stop.
4. Provide roller bumper where doors open into each other and overhead stop cannot be used.

2.15 THRESHOLDS, SEALS, DOOR SWEEPS, AUTOMATIC DOOR BOTTOMS, AND GASKETING

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Pemko
 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. National Guard
 - b. Reese
- B. Requirements:
1. Provide thresholds, weather-stripping, and gasketing systems as specified and per architectural details. Match finish of other items.
 2. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
 3. Provide door sweeps, seals, astragals, and auto door bottoms only of type where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available.
 4. Size thresholds 1/2 inch (13 mm) high by 5 inches (127 mm) wide by door width unless otherwise specified in the hardware sets or detailed in the drawings.

2.16 FINISHES

- A. Finish: BHMA 613E (US10BE); except:
1. Continuous Hinges: BHMA 710 (US10BE)
 2. Door Closers: Powder Coat to Match.
 3. Weatherstripping: Dark Bronze Anodized Aluminum.
 4. Thresholds: Dark Bronze Anodized Aluminum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Prior to installation of hardware, examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance. Verify doors, frames, and walls have been properly reinforced for hardware installation.
- B. Field verify existing doors and frames receiving new hardware and existing conditions receiving new openings. Verify that new hardware is compatible with existing door and frame preparation and existing conditions.
- C. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.
- D. Submit a list of deficiencies in writing and proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Where on-site modification of doors and frames is required:
1. Carefully remove existing door hardware and components being reused. Clean, protect, tag, and store in accordance with storage and handling requirements specified herein.
 2. Field modify and prepare existing doors and frames for new hardware being installed.
 3. When modifications are exposed to view, use concealed fasteners, when possible.
 4. Prepare hardware locations and reinstall in accordance with installation requirements for new door hardware and with:
 - a. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI/SDI A250.6.
 - b. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.5 "Recommended Hardware Reinforcement Locations for Mineral Core Wood Flush Doors."
 - c. Doors in rated assemblies: NFPA 80 for restrictions on on-site door hardware preparation.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following, unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
 3. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."
- B. Install each hardware item in compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, using only fasteners provided by manufacturer.
- C. Do not install surface mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrate. Protect all installed hardware during painting.
- D. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.
- E. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- F. Install operating parts so they move freely and smoothly without binding, sticking, or excessive clearance.
- G. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than quantity recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
- H. Door Closers: Mount closers on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors from corridors. Mount closers so they are not visible in corridors, lobbies and other public spaces unless approved by Architect.
- I. Closer/holders: Mount closer/holders on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors.

- J. Power Supplies: Locate power supplies as indicated or, if not indicated, above accessible ceilings or in equipment room, or alternate location as directed by Architect.
- K. Thresholds: Set thresholds in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- L. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they may impede traffic or present tripping hazard.
- M. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
- N. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
- O. Door Bottoms and Sweeps: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspection and Testing:

1. Provide functional testing and inspection of fire door assemblies by a qualified person in accordance with NFPA 80.
 - a. Schedule fire door assembly inspection within 90 days of Substantial Completion of the Project.
 - b. Submit a signed, written final report as specified in Paragraph 1.03.E.1.
 - c. Correct all deficiencies and schedule a reinspection of fire door assemblies noted as deficient on the inspection report.
 - d. Inspector to reinspect fire door assemblies after repairs are made.
2. Provide inspection of required egress door assemblies by a qualified person in accordance with NFPA 101.
 - a. Schedule egress door assembly inspection within 90 days of Substantial Completion of the Project for the required openings.
 - b. Submit a signed, written final report as specified in Paragraph 1.03.E.2.
 - c. Correct all deficiencies and schedule a reinspection of egress door assemblies noted as deficient on the inspection report.
 - d. Inspector to reinspect required egress door assemblies after repairs are made.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
 1. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three to six months after date of Substantial Completion, examine and readjust each item of door hardware, including adjusting operating forces, as necessary to ensure function of doors and door hardware.

3.06 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items per manufacturer's instructions to restore proper function and finish.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.07 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

- A. The intent of the hardware specification is to specify the hardware for interior and exterior doors, and to establish a type, continuity, and standard of quality. However, it is the door hardware supplier's responsibility to thoroughly review existing conditions, schedules, specifications, drawings, and other Contract Documents to verify the suitability of the hardware specified.
- B. Discrepancies, conflicting hardware, and missing items are to be brought to the attention of the architect with corrections made prior to the bidding process. Omitted items not included in a hardware set should be scheduled with the appropriate additional hardware required for proper application.
- C. Hardware items are referenced in the following hardware schedule. Refer to the above specifications for special features, options, cylinders/keying, and other requirements.
- D. Hardware Sets: see drawings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 71 00 – DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Mechanical door hardware for swinging doors

B. Section excludes:

1. Windows
2. Cabinets (casework), including locks in cabinets
3. Signage
4. Toilet accessories
5. Overhead doors
6. Gates
7. Electronic access control system components
8. Field verification, preparation and modification of existing doors and frames to receive new door hardware.

C. Related Sections:

1. Division 01 Section "Alternates" for alternates affecting this section.
2. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry"
3. Division 06 Section "Finish Carpentry"
4. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealant requirements applicable to threshold installation specified in this section.
5. Division 08 Sections:
 - a. "Metal Doors and Frames"
 - b. "Flush Wood Doors"
 - c. "Stile and Rail Wood Doors"
 - d. "Interior Aluminum Doors and Frames"
 - e. "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts"
 - f. "Stainless Steel Doors and Frames"
 - g. "Special Function Doors"
 - h. "Entrances"
6. Division 09 sections for touchup, finishing or refinishing of existing openings modified by this section.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. UL - Underwriters Laboratories

1. UL 10B - Fire Test of Door Assemblies
2. UL 10C - Positive Pressure Test of Fire Door Assemblies
3. UL 1784 - Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies

4. UL 305 - Panic Hardware
- B. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute
 1. Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule
 2. Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware
 3. Keying Systems and Nomenclature
- C. NFPA – National Fire Protection Association
 1. NFPA 70 – National Electric Code
 2. NFPA 80 – 2016 Edition – Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
 3. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code
 4. NFPA 105 – Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies
 5. NFPA 252 – Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
- D. ANSI - American National Standards Institute
 1. ANSI/BHMA A156.1 - A156.29, and ANSI/BHMA A156.31 - Standards for Hardware and Specialties
 2. ANSI/BHMA A156.28 - Recommended Practices for Keying Systems

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. General:
 1. Submit in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 01 Submittal Procedures.
 2. Prior to forwarding submittal:
 - a. Comply with procedures for verifying existing door and frame compatibility for new hardware, as specified in PART 3, "EXAMINATION" article, herein.
 - b. Review drawings and Sections from related trades to verify compatibility with specified hardware.
 - c. Highlight, encircle, or otherwise specifically identify on submittals: deviations from Contract Documents, issues of incompatibility or other issues which may detrimentally affect the Work.
- B. Action Submittals:
 1. Product Data: Submit technical product data for each item of door hardware, installation instructions, maintenance of operating parts and finish, and other information necessary to show compliance with requirements.
 2. Riser and Wiring Diagrams: After final approval of hardware schedule, submit details of electrified door hardware, indicating:
 - a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring and including:
 - 1) Details of interface of electrified door hardware and building safety and security systems.
 - 2) Schematic diagram of systems that interface with electrified door hardware.
 - 3) Point-to-point wiring.
 - 4) Risers.
 3. Samples for Verification: If requested by Architect, submit production sample of requested door hardware unit in finish indicated and tagged with full description for coordination with schedule.

- a. Samples will be returned to supplier. Units that are acceptable to Architect may, after final check of operations, be incorporated into Work, within limitations of key coordination requirements.

4. Door Hardware Schedule:

- a. Submit concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate fabrication of other work critical in Project construction schedule.
- b. Submit under direct supervision of a Door Hardware Institute (DHI) certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) with hardware sets in vertical format as illustrated by Sequence of Format for the Hardware Schedule published by DHI.
- c. Indicate complete designations of each item required for each opening, include:
 - 1) Door Index: door number, heading number, and Architect's hardware set number.
 - 2) Quantity, type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
 - 3) Name and manufacturer of each item.
 - 4) Fastenings and other pertinent information.
 - 5) Location of each hardware set cross-referenced to indications on Drawings.
 - 6) Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
 - 7) Mounting locations for hardware.
 - 8) Door and frame sizes and materials.
 - 9) Degree of door swing and handing.
 - 10) Operational Description of openings with electrified hardware covering egress, ingress (access), and fire/smoke alarm connections.

5. Key Schedule:

- a. After Keying Conference, provide keying schedule that includes levels of keying, explanations of key system's function, key symbols used, and door numbers controlled.
- b. Use ANSI/BHMA A156.28 "Recommended Practices for Keying Systems" as guideline for nomenclature, definitions, and approach for selecting optimal keying system.
- c. Provide 3 copies of keying schedule for review prepared and detailed in accordance with referenced DHI publication. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key to unique door designations.
- d. Index keying schedule by door number, keyset, hardware heading number, cross keying instructions, and special key stamping instructions.
- e. Provide one complete bitting list of key cuts and one key system schematic illustrating system usage and expansion. Forward bitting list, key cuts and key system schematic directly to Owner, by means as directed by Owner.
- f. Prepare key schedule by or under supervision of supplier, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks.

6. Templates: After final approval of hardware schedule, provide templates for doors, frames and other work specified to be factory or shop prepared for door hardware installation.

C. Informational Submittals:

1. Provide Qualification Data for Supplier, Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.
2. Provide Product Data:

- a. Certify that door hardware approved for use on types and sizes of labeled fire-rated doors complies with listed fire-rated door assemblies.
- b. Include warranties for specified door hardware.

D. Closeout Submittals:

1. Operations and Maintenance Data: Provide in accordance with Division 01 and include:
 - a. Complete information on care, maintenance, and adjustment; data on repair and replacement parts, and information on preservation of finishes.
 - b. Catalog pages for each product.
 - c. Factory order acknowledgement numbers (for warranty and service)
 - d. Name, address, and phone number of local representative for each manufacturer.
 - e. Parts list for each product.
 - f. Final approved hardware schedule edited to reflect conditions as-installed.
 - g. Final keying schedule
 - h. Copies of floor plans with keying nomenclature
 - i. Copy of warranties including appropriate reference numbers for manufacturers to identify project.
 - j. As-installed wiring diagrams for each opening connected to power, both low voltage and 110 volts.

E. Inspection and Testing:

1. Submit a written report of the results of functional testing and inspection for fire door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 80.
 - a. Written report to be provided to the Owner and be made available to the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).
 - b. Report to include the door number for each fire door assembly, door location, door and frame material, fire rating, and summary of deficiencies.
2. Submit a written report of the results of functional testing and inspection for required egress door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 101.
 - a. Written report to be provided to the Owner and be made available to the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).
 - b. Report to include the door number for each required egress door assembly, door location, door and frame material, fire rating, and summary of deficiencies.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications and Responsibilities:

1. Supplier: Recognized architectural hardware supplier with record of successful in-service performance for supplying door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality to that indicated for this Project and that provides certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) available to Owner, Architect, and Contractor, at reasonable times during the Work for consultation.
 - a. Warehousing Facilities: In Project's vicinity.
 - b. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedules.
 - c. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for electrified door hardware, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.

- d. Coordination Responsibility: Assist in coordinating installation of electronic security hardware with Architect and electrical engineers and provide installation and technical data to Architect and other related subcontractors.
 - 1) Upon completion of electronic security hardware installation, inspect and verify that all components are working properly.
 2. Installer: Qualified tradesperson skilled in the application of commercial grade hardware with experience installing door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality as indicated for this Project.
 3. Architectural Hardware Consultant: Person who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and meets these requirements:
 - a. For door hardware: DHI certified AHC or DHC.
 - b. Can provide installation and technical data to Architect and other related subcontractors.
 - c. Can inspect and verify components are in working order upon completion of installation.
 - d. Capable of producing wiring diagram and coordinating installation of electrified hardware with Architect and electrical engineers.
 4. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.
- B. Certifications:
1. Fire-Rated Door Openings:
 - a. Provide door hardware for fire-rated openings that complies with NFPA 80 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Provide only items of door hardware that are listed products tested by Underwriters Laboratories, Intertek Testing Services, or other testing and inspecting organizations acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on types and sizes of doors indicated, based on testing at positive pressure and according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C and in compliance with requirements of fire-rated door and door frame labels.
 2. Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies:
 - a. Provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105
 - b. Comply with the maximum air leakage of 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. (3 cu. m per minute/sq. m) at tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg (75 Pa) of water.
 3. Electrified Door Hardware
 - a. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Accessibility Requirements:
 - a. Comply with governing accessibility regulations cited in "REFERENCES" article, herein for door hardware on doors in an accessible route.
- C. Pre-Installation Meetings
1. Keying Conference

- a. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including:
 - 1) Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
 - 2) Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
 - 3) Requirements for key control system.
 - 4) Requirements for access control.
 - 5) Address for delivery of keys.

2. Pre-installation Conference

- a. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
- b. Inspect and discuss preparatory work performed by other trades.
- c. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in for electrified door hardware.
- d. Review sequence of operation for each type of electrified door hardware.
- e. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.
- f. Review questions or concerns related to proper installation and adjustment of door hardware.

3. Electrified Hardware Coordination Conference:

- a. Prior to ordering electrified hardware, schedule and hold meeting to coordinate door hardware with security, electrical, doors and frames, and other related suppliers.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for hardware delivered to Project site. Promptly replace products damaged during shipping.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package. Deliver each article of hardware in manufacturer's original packaging.
- C. Maintain manufacturer-recommended environmental conditions throughout storage and installation periods.
- D. Provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project. Control handling and installation of hardware items so that completion of Work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.
- E. Handle hardware in manner to avoid damage, marring, or scratching. Correct, replace or repair products damaged during Work. Protect products against malfunction due to paint, solvent, cleanser, or any chemical agent.
- F. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.

1.06 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of floor-recessed door hardware with floor construction. Cast anchoring inserts into concrete.

- B. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory or shop prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- C. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.
- D. Electrical System Roughing-In: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies and building safety and security systems.
- E. Existing Openings: Where existing doors, frames and/or hardware are to remain, field verify existing functions, conditions and preparations and coordinate to suit opening conditions and to provide proper door operation.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within published warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty does not cover damage or faulty operation due to improper installation, improper use or abuse.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Beginning from date of Substantial Completion, for durations indicated in manufacturer's published listings.

1.08 MAINTENANCE

- A. Furnish complete set of special tools required for maintenance and adjustment of hardware, including changing of cylinders.
- B. Turn over unused materials to Owner for maintenance purposes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Approval of manufacturers and/or products other than those listed as "Scheduled Manufacturer" or "Acceptable Manufacturers" in the individual article for the product category shall be in accordance with QUALITY ASSURANCE article, herein.
- B. Approval of products from manufacturers indicated in "Acceptable Manufacturers" is contingent upon those products providing all functions and features and meeting all requirements of scheduled manufacturer's product.
- C. Where specified hardware is not adaptable to finished shape or size of members requiring hardware, furnish suitable types having same operation and quality as type specified, subject to Architect's approval.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners

1. Provide hardware manufactured to conform to published templates, generally prepared for machine screw installation.
 2. Furnish screws for installation with each hardware item. Finish exposed (exposed under any condition) screws to match hardware finish, or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of this other work including prepared for paint surfaces to receive painted finish.
 3. Provide concealed fasteners for hardware units exposed when door is closed except when no standard units of type specified are available with concealed fasteners. Do not use thru-bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed in other work unless thru-bolts are required to fasten hardware securely. Review door specification and advise Architect if thru-bolts are required.
 4. Install hardware with fasteners provided by hardware manufacturer.
- B. Modification and Preparation of Existing Doors: Where existing door hardware is indicated to be removed and reinstalled.
1. Provide necessary fillers, Dutchmen, reinforcements, and fasteners, compatible with existing materials, as required for mounting new opening hardware and to cover existing door and frame preparations.
 2. Use materials which match materials of adjacent modified areas.
 3. When modifying existing fire-rated openings, provide materials permitted by NFPA 80 as required to maintain fire-rating.
- C. Provide screws, bolts, expansion shields, drop plates and other devices necessary for hardware installation.
1. Where fasteners are exposed to view: Finish to match adjacent door hardware material.

2.03 HINGES

- A. Manufacturers and Products:
1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. McKinney TA/T4A series
 2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Hager BB series
 - b. Best FBB Series
- B. Requirements:
1. Provide hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.1.
 2. Provide five knuckle, ball bearing hinges.
 3. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors, up to and including 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
 - a. Exterior: Standard weight, bronze or stainless steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Standard weight, steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
 4. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors over 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
 - a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze/stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high

5. 2 inches or thicker doors:
 - a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze or stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
6. Adjust hinge width for door, frame, and wall conditions to allow proper degree of opening.
7. Provide three hinges per door leaf for doors 90 inches (2286 mm) or less in height, and one additional hinge for each 30 inches (762 mm) of additional door height.
8. Where new hinges are specified for existing doors or existing frames, provide new hinges of identical size to hinge preparation present in existing door or existing frame.
9. Hinge Pins: Except as otherwise indicated, provide hinge pins as follows:
 - a. Steel Hinges: Steel pins
 - b. Non-Ferrous Hinges: Stainless steel pins
 - c. Out-Swinging Exterior Doors: Non-removable pins
 - d. Out-Swinging Interior Lockable Doors: Non-removable pins
 - e. Interior Non-lockable Doors: Non-rising pins
10. Provide hinges with electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with sufficient number and wire gage to accommodate electric function of specified hardware. Locate electric hinge at second hinge from bottom or nearest to electrified locking component. Provide mortar guard for each electrified hinge specified.

2.04 CONTINUOUS HINGES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Pemko
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. ABH
 - b. Hager-Roton

B. Requirements:

1. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.26, Grade 1.
2. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges, where specified in the hardware sets, fabricated from 6063-T6 aluminum.
3. Provide split nylon bearings at each hinge knuckle for quiet, smooth, self-lubricating operation.
4. Provide hinges capable of supporting door weights up to 450 pounds, and successfully tested for 1,500,000 cycles.
5. On fire-rated doors, provide aluminum geared continuous hinges classified for use on rated doors by testing agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.
6. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges with electrified option scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with sufficient number and wire gage to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
7. Provide hinges 1 inch (25 mm) shorter in length than nominal height of door, unless otherwise noted or door details require shorter length and with symmetrical hole pattern.

2.05 CYLINDRICAL LOCKS – GRADE 1

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Corbin-Russwin CLX3300 series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Best 9K series

B. Requirements:

1. Provide cylindrical locks conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Series 4000, Grade 1, and UL Listed for 3 hour fire doors.
2. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
3. Provide locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset, unless noted otherwise, with 1/2 inch latch throw. Provide proper latch throw for UL listing at pairs.
4. Provide locksets with separate anti-rotation thru-bolts, and no exposed screws.
5. Provide independently operating levers with two external return spring cassettes mounted under roses to prevent lever sag.
6. Provide standard ASA strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim.
7. Provide electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets.
8. Lever Trim: Solid cast levers without plastic inserts and wrought roses on both sides.
 - a. Lever Design: Corbin Russwin Princeton

2.06 CYLINDRICAL LOCKS – GRADE 2

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Corbin Russwin CL3800 series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Best 7KC series

B. Requirements

1. Provide cylindrical locks conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Series 4000, Grade 2, and UL Listed for 3-hour fire doors with a minimum cycle life of 1 million.
2. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
3. Provide locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset, unless noted otherwise, with 1/2-inch latch throw. Provide 3/4" latch throw for UL listing at pairs.
4. Provide locksets with separate anti-rotation thru-bolts, and no exposed screws.
5. Provide independently operating levers with two external return spring cassettes mounted under roses to prevent lever sag.
6. Provide a minimum of 5 points of lever engagement between the cassette spindle and lever shank to prevent lever sag.
7. Provide standard ASA strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim.
8. Plug-n-Play – Provide modular lockset allowing lock functions to be created for 7 typical functions by inserting/installing parts into the exterior of a fully assembled chassis

9. Reconfigurable Chassis - Provide modular lockset that allows the function to be reconfigured by removing external components from the chassis
10. Lever Trim: Solid cast levers and wrought roses on both sides.
 - a. Lever Design: Corbin Russwin Princeton

2.07 EXIT DEVICES

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Corbin Russwin ED5000 series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Sargent 80 series

B. Requirements:

1. Provide exit devices tested to ANSI/BHMA A156.3 Grade 1 and UL listed for Panic Exit or Fire Exit Hardware.
2. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
3. Provide touchpad type exit devices, fabricated of brass, bronze, stainless steel, or aluminum, plated to standard architectural finishes to match balance of door hardware.
4. Touchpad must extend a minimum of one half of door width. No plastic inserts are allowed in touchpads.
5. Provide exit devices with deadlatching feature for security and for future addition of alarm kits and/or other electrified requirements.
6. Provide exit devices with weather resistant components that can withstand harsh conditions of various climates and corrosive cleaners used in outdoor pool environments.
7. Provide flush end caps for exit devices.
8. Provide exit devices with manufacturer's approved strikes.
9. Provide exit devices cut to door width and height. Install exit devices at height recommended by exit device manufacturer, allowable by governing building codes, and approved by Architect.
10. Mount mechanism case flush on face of doors or provide spacers to fill gaps behind devices. Where glass trim or molding projects off face of door, provide glass bead kits.
11. Provide cylinder or hex-key dogging as specified at non fire-rated openings.
12. Removable Mullions: 2 inches (51 mm) x 3 inches (76 mm) steel tube. Where scheduled as keyed removable mullion, provide type that can be removed by use of a keyed cylinder, which is self-locking when re-installed.
13. Provide factory drilled weep holes for exit devices used in full exterior application, highly corrosive areas, and where noted in hardware sets.
14. Top latch mounting: double or single tab mount for steel doors, face mount for aluminum doors eliminating requirement of tabs, and double tab mount for wood doors.
15. Provide exit devices with optional trim designs to match other lever and pull designs used on the project.

2.08 CYLINDERS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:

- a. Corbin-Ruswin
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Best
- B. Requirements:
 1. Provide cylinders/cores, from the same manufacturer of locksets, compliant with ANSI/BHMA A156.5; latest revision; cylinder face finished to match lockset, manufacturer's series as indicated. Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
 2. Provide cylinders in the below-listed configuration(s), distributed throughout the Project as indicated.
 - a. Conventional Open: cylinder with open keyway

2.09 KEYING

- A. Provide a factory registered keying system, complying with guidelines in ANSI/BHMA A156.28, incorporating decisions made at keying conference.
- B. Requirements:
 1. Provide permanent cylinders/cores keyed by the manufacturer according to the following key system.
 - a. Master Keying system as directed by the Owner.
 2. Forward bitting list and keys separately from cylinders, by means as directed by Owner. Failure to comply with forwarding requirements will be cause for replacement of cylinders/cores involved at no additional cost to Owner.
 3. Provide keys with the following features:
 - a. Material: Nickel silver; minimum thickness of .107-inch (2.3mm)
 - b. Patent Protection: Keys and blanks protected by one or more utility patent(s)
 4. Identification:
 - a. Mark permanent cylinders/cores and keys with applicable blind code for identification. Do not provide blind code marks with actual key cuts.
 - b. Identification stamping provisions must be approved by the Architect and Owner.
 - c. Stamp cylinders/cores and keys with Owner's unique key system facility code as established by the manufacturer; key symbol and embossed or stamped with "DO NOT DUPLICATE" along with the "PATENTED" or patent number to enforce the patent protection.
 - d. Failure to comply with stamping requirements will be cause for replacement of keys involved at no additional cost to Owner.
 - e. Forward permanent cylinders/cores to Owner, separately from keys, by means as directed by Owner.
 5. Quantity: Furnish in the following quantities.
 - a. Change (Day) Keys: 3 per cylinder/core.
 - b. Master Keys: 6.

2.10 BARN DOOR HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Pemko
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Hager
 - b. KN Crowder

B. Requirements:

1. Provide complete sets of sliding door hardware as recommended by manufacturer for door type and weight.
 - a. Include track, channels, brackets, hangers, fasteners, guides, pulls, stops, and other hardware as required for complete installation.

2.11 DOOR CLOSERS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Norton 7500/8500 series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Corbin-Russwin DC8000/DC6000 series

B. Requirements:

1. Provide door closers conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1 requirements by BHMA certified independent testing laboratory. ISO 9000 certify closers. Stamp units with date of manufacture code.
2. Provide door closers with fully hydraulic, full rack and pinion action with high strength cast iron cylinder, and full complement bearings at shaft.
3. Cylinder Body: 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) diameter with 5/8 inch (16 mm) diameter double heat-treated pinion journal.
4. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees F to -30 degrees F.
5. Spring Power: Continuously adjustable over full range of closer sizes, and providing reduced opening force as required by accessibility codes and standards.
6. Hydraulic Regulation: By tamper-proof, non-critical valves, with separate adjustment for latch speed, general speed, and backcheck.
7. Provide closers with solid forged steel main arms and factory assembled heavy-duty forged forearms for parallel arm closers.
8. Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) Technology: Not permitted.
9. Finish for Closer Cylinders, Arms, Adapter Plates, and Metal Covers: Powder coating finish which has been certified to exceed 100 hours salt spray testing as described in ANSI Standard A156.4 and ASTM B117, or has special rust inhibitor (SRI).

10. Provide special templates, drop plates, mounting brackets, or adapters for arms as required for details, overhead stops, and other door hardware items interfering with closer mounting.

2.12 DOOR TRIM

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Rockwood
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Trimco
 - b. Burns

B. Requirements:

1. Provide push plates, push bars, pull plates, and pulls with diameter and length as scheduled.

2.13 PROTECTION PLATES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Rockwood
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Burns
 - b. Trimco

B. Requirements:

1. Provide protection plates with a minimum of 0.050 inch (1 mm) thick, beveled four edges as scheduled. Furnish with sheet metal or wood screws, finished to match plates.
2. Size plates 2 inches (51 mm) less width of door on single doors, pairs of doors with a mullion, and doors with edge guards. Size plates 1 inch (25 mm) less width of door on pairs without a mullion or edge guards.
3. At fire rated doors, provide protection plates over 16 inches high with UL label.

2.14 OVERHEAD STOPS AND OVERHEAD STOP/HOLDERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturers:
 - a. Rixson
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. Sargent
- b. ABH

B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide overhead stop at any door where conditions do not allow for a wall stop or floor stop presents tripping hazard.
- 2. Provide friction type at doors without closer and positive type at doors with closer.

2.15 DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Rockwood
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Trimco
 - b. Burns

B. Provide door stops at each door leaf:

- 1. Provide wall stops wherever possible. Provide concave type where lockset has a push button or thumbturn.
- 2. Where a wall stop cannot be used, provide universal floor stops.
- 3. Where wall or floor stop cannot be used, provide overhead stop.
- 4. Provide roller bumper where doors open into each other and overhead stop cannot be used.

2.16 THRESHOLDS, SEALS, DOOR SWEEPS, AUTOMATIC DOOR BOTTOMS, AND GASKETING

A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Pemko
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. National Guard
 - b. Reese

B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide thresholds, weather-stripping, and gasketing systems as specified and per architectural details. Match finish of other items.
- 2. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
- 3. Provide door sweeps, seals, astragals, and auto door bottoms only of type where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available.

4. Size thresholds 1/2 inch (13 mm) high by 5 inches (127 mm) wide by door width unless otherwise specified in the hardware sets or detailed in the drawings.

2.17 FINISHES

- A. Finish: BHMA 613E (US10BE); except:
 1. Continuous Hinges: BHMA 710 (US10BE)
 2. Door Closers: Powder Coat to Match.
 3. Sliding Door Hardware: Black Powder Coat
 4. Weatherstripping: Dark Bronze Anodized Aluminum.
 5. Thresholds: Dark Bronze Anodized Aluminum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Prior to installation of hardware, examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance. Verify doors, frames, and walls have been properly reinforced for hardware installation.
- B. Field verify existing doors and frames receiving new hardware and existing conditions receiving new openings. Verify that new hardware is compatible with existing door and frame preparation and existing conditions.
- C. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.
- D. Submit a list of deficiencies in writing and proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Where on-site modification of doors and frames is required:
 1. Carefully remove existing door hardware and components being reused. Clean, protect, tag, and store in accordance with storage and handling requirements specified herein.
 2. Field modify and prepare existing doors and frames for new hardware being installed.
 3. When modifications are exposed to view, use concealed fasteners, when possible.
 4. Prepare hardware locations and reinstall in accordance with installation requirements for new door hardware and with:
 - a. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI/SDI A250.6.
 - b. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.5 "Recommended Hardware Reinforcement Locations for Mineral Core Wood Flush Doors."
 - c. Doors in rated assemblies: NFPA 80 for restrictions on on-site door hardware preparation.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following, unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
 - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 - 2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
 - 3. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."
- B. Install each hardware item in compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, using only fasteners provided by manufacturer.
- C. Do not install surface mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrate. Protect all installed hardware during painting.
- D. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.
- E. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- F. Install operating parts so they move freely and smoothly without binding, sticking, or excessive clearance.
- G. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than quantity recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
- H. Door Closers: Mount closers on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors from corridors. Mount closers so they are not visible in corridors, lobbies and other public spaces unless approved by Architect.
- I. Closer/holders: Mount closer/holders on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors.
- J. Thresholds: Set thresholds in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- K. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they may impede traffic or present tripping hazard.
- L. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
- M. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
- N. Door Bottoms and Sweeps: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection and Testing:

1. Provide functional testing and inspection of fire door assemblies by a qualified person in accordance with NFPA 80.
 - a. Schedule fire door assembly inspection within 90 days of Substantial Completion of the Project.
 - b. Submit a signed, written final report as specified in Paragraph 1.03.E.1.
 - c. Correct all deficiencies and schedule a reinspection of fire door assemblies noted as deficient on the inspection report.
 - d. Inspector to reinspect fire door assemblies after repairs are made.
2. Provide inspection of required egress door assemblies by a qualified person in accordance with NFPA 101.
 - a. Schedule egress door assembly inspection within 90 days of Substantial Completion of the Project for the required openings.
 - b. Submit a signed, written final report as specified in Paragraph 1.03.E.2.
 - c. Correct all deficiencies and schedule a reinspection of egress door assemblies noted as deficient on the inspection report.
 - d. Inspector to reinspect required egress door assemblies after repairs are made.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
 1. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three to six months after date of Substantial Completion, examine and readjust each item of door hardware, including adjusting operating forces, as necessary to ensure function of doors and door hardware.

3.06 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items per manufacturer's instructions to restore proper function and finish.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.07 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

- A. The intent of the hardware specification is to specify the hardware for interior and exterior doors, and to establish a type, continuity, and standard of quality. However, it is the door hardware supplier's responsibility to thoroughly review existing conditions, schedules, specifications, drawings, and other Contract Documents to verify the suitability of the hardware specified.
- B. Discrepancies, conflicting hardware, and missing items are to be brought to the attention of the architect with corrections made prior to the bidding process. Omitted items not included in

a hardware set should be scheduled with the appropriate additional hardware required for proper application.

- C. At existing openings, Contractor is responsible for verifying existing doors and frames will accommodate new hardware as specified, prior to ordering.
- D. Hardware items are referenced in the following hardware schedule. Refer to the above specifications for special features, options, cylinders/keying, and other requirements.
- E. Hardware Sets:

Set 01

Openings: C001, G001, G002, G006, G015, G018

ea	Hinge	As specified above	613E	McKinney
1 ea	Entrance Lock	CL3851 PZD	613E	Corbin Russwin
1 ea	Surface Closer w/ Stop	CPS-8501	690	Norton
1 ea	Threshold	171D	710	Pemko
1 ea	Sweep	315DN	710	Pemko
1 set	Gasketing	S88BL	BLK	Pemko
1 ea	Rain Drip	346D	710	Pemko

* Contractor to confirm compatibility of new hardware with existing door and/or frame preps prior to ordering.

Set 02

Openings: G004

ea	Hinge	As specified above	613E	McKinney
1 ea	Push Plate	70C	613E	Rockwood
1 ea	Pull Plate	110 x 70C	613E	Rockwood
1 ea	Delay Action Surface Closer w/ Stop & Hold Open	CLP-T-8501-DA	690	Norton

* Contractor to confirm compatibility of new hardware with existing door and/or frame preps prior to ordering.

Set 03

Openings: G016, G017

1 ea	Sliding Track Hardware System	CS-W60D/6	BLK	Pemko
2 ea	ADA Flush Pull	BF97	613E	Rockwood

Set 04

Openings: G019

ea	Hinge	As specified above	613E	McKinney
1 ea	Privacy Set	CL3820 PZD	613E	Corbin Russwin
1 ea	Floor Stop	441H	613E	Rockwood

END OF SECTION

SECTION 088000 - GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Glass for windows, doors, interior borrowed lites, and storefront framing.
 - 2. Glazing sealants and accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C1036.
- C. IBC: International Building Code.
- D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 2. Review temporary protection requirements for glazing during and after installation.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- C. Glass Samples: For each type of the following products; 12 inches square.
1. Tinted glass.
 2. Coated glass.
 3. Insulating glass.
- D. Glazing Accessory Samples: For sealants and colored spacers, in 12-inch lengths.
- E. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- F. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturers of insulating-glass units with sputter-coated, low-E coatings, glass testing agency, and sealant testing agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For glass.
- C. Product Test Reports: For tinted glass, coated glass, insulating glass, and glazing sealants, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
 1. For glazing sealants, provide test reports based on testing current sealant formulations within previous 36-month period.
- D. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.
- E. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved and certified by coated-glass manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.
- C. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.
- D. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- E. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Install glazing in mockups specified in Section 084113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts" and Section 085113 "Aluminum Windows" to match glazing systems required for Project, including glazing methods.
2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
3. Coordinate mockup with other sections requiring a mockup.

1.9 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Test each glass product, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member for adhesion to and compatibility with elastomeric glazing sealants.
1. Testing is not required if data are submitted based on previous testing of current sealant products and glazing materials matching those submitted.
 2. Use ASTM C1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint-preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.
 3. Test no fewer than eight Samples of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
 4. Schedule enough time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 5. For materials failing tests, submit sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including the use of specially formulated primers.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

1.11 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Guardian Glass; SunGuard
 2. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope™.
 3. Pilkington North America.
 4. Viracon, Inc.
 5. Vitro Architectural Glass.
- B. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type.
1. Obtain tinted glass from single source from single manufacturer.
 2. Obtain reflective-coated glass from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design glazing.
- C. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined according to the IBC and ASTM E1300.
1. Design Wind Pressures:
 - a. As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Design Snow Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 3. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or 1 inch, whichever is less.
 4. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.

- D. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- E. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
 - 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
 - 2. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
 - 3. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
 - 4. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program.
 - 5. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.
- F. Assembly thermal performance shall not be less than the value determined by the mechanical engineer's requirements from Building Modeling, for each glass type.
- G. Glazing shall comply with the Consumer Product Safety Commission CPSC 16 CFR 1201 and applicable recommendation of the Flat Glass Marketing Association.

2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- C. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.
- D. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than the thickness indicated.
 - 1. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: 6 mm.
 - 2. Thickness of Tinted Glass: Provide same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.
- E. Strength: Where annealed float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.

- B. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
 - 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
 - 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E2190.
 - 1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard primary and secondary sealants.
 - 2. Perimeter Spacer: Thermally broken aluminum, color as selected by Architect.
 - 3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or a blend of both.

2.6 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General:
 - 1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
 - 3. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 - 4. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - 5. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Glazing Sealant:
 - 1. Compatibility: Provide glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturer's written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
 - 3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealant: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.7 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
 2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
 3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, with requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks:
1. Elastomeric with a Shore A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
 2. Type recommended by sealant or glass manufacturer.
- D. Spacers:
1. Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
 2. Type recommended by sealant or glass manufacturer.
- E. Edge Blocks:
1. Elastomeric with a Shore A durometer hardness per manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Type recommended by sealant or glass manufacturer.

2.9 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
 - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
 - 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
 - 2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
 - 3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
 - 4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
 - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
 - 2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.

- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
- J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
- K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

3.4 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward

centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

3.6 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
 - 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.
- D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

3.8 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Glass Type : Clear fully tempered float glass.
 - 1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
 - 2. Safety glazing required.
- B. Glass Type : Clear laminated safety glass.
 - 1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.

3.9 INSULATING GLASS SCHEDULE

A. Glass Insulating: Low-E-coated, clear insulating glass.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Viracon VE1-48.
2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.
3. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6 mm.
4. Outdoor Lite: ¼" VE1-2M Clear with VE-48 #2.
5. Interspace Content: Argon with black spacer.
6. Indoor Lite: ¼" Clear.
7. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second surface.
8. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: 0.27.
9. Summer U-Factor: 0.24
10. Visible Light Transmittance: 47 percent minimum.
11. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.37 maximum.
12. Light to Solar Gain: 1.27.
13. UV Transmission: 20 percent

B. Spandrel Insulating Glass.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Viracon VE1-48 insulating laminated HS/HS V# FFFF
2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 5/16".
3. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6 mm.
4. Outdoor Lite: ¼" (6 mm) clear with VE-48 #2.
5. Interspace Content: ½" Argon filled with black spacer.
6. Indoor Lite: ¼" (6mm) Clear.
7. Indoor Lite (inner-most): 1/4" (6mm) spandrel.
8. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: 0.27.
9. Summer U-Factor: 0.24

SECTION 088700 - WINDOW FILMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract, including Instructions to Bidders, General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to the Work of this Section.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

A. CUSTOM PRINTED WINDOW FILM

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ASTM International (ASTM):

1. ASTM E 903 - Standard Methods of Test for Solar Absorbance, Reflectance and Transmittance of Materials Using Integrating Spheres.

C. Consumer Products Safety Commission 16 CFR, Part 1201 - Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide decorative films with UV absorbing materials that limit the weighted UV transmission.
- B. Provide decorative film that does not have a masking sheet.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:

1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
3. Installation methods.

B. Verification Samples for each film specified, two samples representing actual film color and pattern.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: All primary products specified in this section will be supplied by a single manufacturer with a minimum of ten years experience.

Provide documentation that the adhesive used on the specified films is a Pressure Sensitive Adhesive (PSA).

B. Installer Qualifications:

1. All products listed in this section are to be installed by an installer with a minimum of five years demonstrated experience in installing products of the same type and scope as specified.
2. Provide documentation that the installer is authorized by the Manufacturer to perform Work specified in this section.
3. Provide a commercial building reference list of 5 properties where the installer has applied window film.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation. Store and dispose of hazardous materials, and materials contaminated by hazardous materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Material must be stored in an undamaged condition in original packaging, maintained in a clean dry, protected area where temperature and humidity remains stable and within the acceptable ranges for commercial wallcoverings.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's recommended limits. Window and glass panels should be clean and free of any dirt particles. See Manufacturer's installation instructions for additional details.
- B. The contractor will provide sufficient lighting during the installation process. If required, temporary lighting is to be provided to augment insufficient or low level permanent lighting.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Solar Tint
ST Graphics, which is located at 5042 Montgomery Rd. Cincinnati, OH 45212 (888) 616-1488

2.2 Custom Printing

- A. General: custom printed scratch resistant window film with the following performance characteristics when applied to the surface of single-pane, 3-mm clear glass.

1. Film thickness:
 - a. 2mil clear hard-coated PET
 - b. 1mil clear permanent adhesive
2. Visible Light Transmission: 0-90% transmission dependent upon design
 - a. Design to be specified in drawings
3. Material: Polyester
4. Usage: interior glazing
5. Film width: 61"
6. Printable area: 60"

- B. Printing technology:

7. UV Curable inkjet printing
 - a. Suitable ink: 3M EFI H1625
 - b. Colors: per architect, as indicated in drawings

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Film Examination:

- 1.1 If preparation of glass surfaces is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect in writing of deviations from manufacturer's recommended installation tolerances and conditions.
 - A. Glass surfaces receiving new film should first be examined to verify that they are free from defects and imperfections, which will affect the final appearance.
- 1.2 Do not proceed with installation until glass surfaces have been properly prepared and deviations from manufacturer's recommended tolerances are corrected. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result under the project conditions.
- 1.3 Commencement of installation constitutes acceptance of conditions.

- 3.2 Film Installation, General:

- 1.4 Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- 1.5 Cut film edges neatly and square at a uniform distance of 1/8 inch of window sealant. Use new blade tips after 3 to 4 cuts.
- 1.6 Spray the slip solution, composed of one capful of baby shampoo or dishwashing liquid to 1 gallon of water, on window glass and adhesive to facilitate proper positioning of film.
- 1.7 Apply film to glass and lightly spray film with slip solution.
- 1.8 Squeegee from top to bottom of window. Spray slip solution to film and squeegee a second

- time.
- 1.9 Bump film edge with lint-free towel wrapped around edge of a 5-way tool.
 - 1.10 Upon completion of film application, allow 30 days for moisture from film installation to dry thoroughly, and to allow film to dry flat with no moisture dimples when viewed under normal viewing conditions.
 - 1.11 If completing an exterior application, check with the manufacturer as to whether edge sealing is required.

END OF SECTION 088700
WINDOW

9

DIVISION

FINISHES

SECTION 092216 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior partitions.
 - 2. Suspension systems for interior ceilings and soffits.
 - 3. Grid suspension systems for gypsum board ceilings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of code-compliance certification for studs and tracks.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For post-installed anchors and power-actuated fasteners, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Code-Compliance Certification of Studs and Tracks: Provide documentation that framing members are certified according to the product-certification program of the Certified Steel Stud Association the Steel Framing Industry Association or the Steel Stud Manufacturers Association.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated on Drawings, according to ASTM E90 and classified according to ASTM E413 by an independent testing agency.

- C. Horizontal Deflection: For composite wall assemblies, limited to 1/360 of the wall height based on horizontal loading of 5 lbf/sq. ft.

2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C754 for conditions indicated.

1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C645 requirements for steel unless otherwise indicated.
2. Protective Coating: ASTM A653/A653M, G40, hot-dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Studs and Tracks: ASTM C645. Use either conventional steel studs and tracks.

1. Steel Studs and Tracks:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- 1) Clark Dietrich
- 2) MarinoWARE
- 3) MBA Building Supplies
- 4) MRI Steel Framing, LLC
- 5) SCAFCO Steel Stud Company
- 6) Steel Construction Systems

- b. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0296 inch.
- c. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

- C. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:

1. Single Long-Leg Track System: ASTM C645 top track with 2-inch-deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs, installed with studs friction fit into top track and with continuous bridging located within 12 inches of the top of studs to provide lateral bracing.
2. Double-Track System: ASTM C645 top outer tracks, inside track with 2-inch-deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs and fastened to studs, and outer track sized to friction-fit over inner track.
3. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top track manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.

- D. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. ClarkDietrich.
- b. MarinoWARE.
- c. MBA Building Supplies.
- d. MRI Steel Framing, LLC.
- e. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
- f. Steel Construction Systems.

2. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0329 inch.

- E. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.0538-inch minimum base-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
 - 1. Depth: 1-1/2 inches.
 - 2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches thick galvanized steel.

- F. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C645.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ClarkDietrich.
 - b. Jaimes Industries.
 - c. MarinoWARE.
 - d. MBA Building Supplies.
 - e. MRI Steel Framing, LLC.
 - f. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
 - g. Steel Construction Systems.
 - 2. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0296 inch.
 - 3. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

- G. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
 - 1. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.

- H. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch, minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.0179 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.

- B. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:
 - 1. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01, AC193, AC58 or AC308 as appropriate for the substrate.
 - a. Uses: Securing hangers to structure.
 - b. Type: torque-controlled, adhesive anchor or adhesive anchor.
 - c. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
 - d. Material for Exterior or Interior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594.
 - 2. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

- C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch in diameter.

- D. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, 1 by 3/16 inch by length indicated.
- E. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-steel thickness of 0.0538 inch and minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
 - 1. Depth: 2-1/2 inches 2 inches 1-1/2 inches.
- F. Furring Channels (Furring Members):
 - 1. Steel Studs and Tracks: ASTM C645.
 - a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0296 inch.
 - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C645, 7/8 inch deep.
 - a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0296 inch.
 - 3. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.
 - a. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.
- G. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - b. USG Corporation.

2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
 - 1. Fasteners for Steel Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
- B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide the following:
 - 1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), nonperforated.
 - 2. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
 - 1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C754.
 - 1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.
- C. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- D. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- E. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
 - 1. Single-Layer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Multilayer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Tile Backing Panels: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- D. Install tracks at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts that penetrate partitions above ceiling.
 - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
 - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.

- a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
 - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
 4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
 - a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
 5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
 6. Curved Partitions:
 - a. Bend track to uniform curve and locate straight lengths so they are tangent to arcs.
 - b. Begin and end each arc with a stud, and space intermediate studs equally along arcs. On straight lengths of no fewer than two studs at ends of arcs, place studs 6 inches o.c.
- E. Direct Furring:
1. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
- F. Z-Shaped Furring Members:
1. Erect insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," vertically and hold in place with Z-shaped furring members spaced 24 inches o.c.
 2. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
 3. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than 12 inches from corner and cut insulation to fit.
- G. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

3.5 INSTALLING CEILING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:

1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
 - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
 3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
 4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
 5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
 6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
 7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
 8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.
- E. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
- F. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION 092216

SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Interior gypsum board.
 - 2. Tile backing panels.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
 - 1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch-long length for each trim accessory indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups of at least 100 sq. ft. in surface area to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups for the following:
 - a. Each level of gypsum board finish indicated for use in exposed locations.
 - 2. Apply or install final decoration indicated, including painting and wallcoverings, on exposed surfaces for review of mockups.
 - 3. Simulate finished lighting conditions for review of mockups.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E90 and classified according to ASTM E413 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Ceiling and wall materials shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 20 percent.
- B. Regional Materials: Products shall be manufactured within 500 miles (800 km) of Project site from materials that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles (800 km) of Project site.
- C. Regional Materials: Products shall be manufactured within 500 miles (800 km) of Project site.
- D. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Abuse-Resistant and Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M gypsum board, tested according to ASTM C1629/C1629M.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Gypsum.
 - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - c. CertainTeed Gypsum.
 - d. Continental Building Products, LLC.
 - e. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - f. National Gypsum Company.
 - g. PABCO Gypsum.
 - h. USG Corporation.
2. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
3. Surface Abrasion: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 1 requirements.
4. Indentation: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 1 requirements.
5. Soft-Body Impact: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 1 requirements.
6. Long Edges: Tapered.
7. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

2.4 EXTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD FOR CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

- A. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Gypsum.
 - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - c. CertainTeed Gypsum.
 - d. Continental Building Products, LLC.
 - e. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - f. National Gypsum Company.
 - g. PABCO Gypsum.
 - h. USG Corporation.
 2. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.

2.5 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C1288 or ASTM C1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. C-Cure.
 - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - c. Custom Building Products.
 - d. FinPan, Inc.
 - e. James Hardie Building Products, Inc.
 - f. National Gypsum Company.
 - g. USG Corporation.

2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

2.6 TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. Interior Trim: ASTM C1047.

1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
2. Shapes:
 - a. Bullnose bead.
 - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - c. Expansion (control) joint.
 - d. 1" wide x 5/8" deep reveal reglet similar to Fry Reglet DRM-625-100. For use in Lobby 102.

B. Exterior Trim: ASTM C1047.

1. Material: Hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet or rolled zinc.
2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - c. Expansion (Control) Joint: One-piece, rolled zinc with V-shaped slot and removable strip covering slot opening.

2.7 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M.

B. Joint Tape:

1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
2. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Paper.
3. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
4. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.

C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.

1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping compound.
3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.

D. Joint Compound for Exterior Applications:

1. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.

E. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:

1. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.

2.8 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.

1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise indicated.

1. Use screws complying with ASTM C954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.

D. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.

1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
2. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 20 percent.

E. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E90.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Accumetric LLC.
 - b. Everkem Diversified Products, Inc.
 - c. Franklin International.
 - d. Grabber Construction Products.
 - e. Hilti, Inc.
 - f. Pecora Corporation.
 - g. Specified Technologies, Inc.
 - h. USG Corporation.
2. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
3. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

F. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
 - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
 - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
 - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch-wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch-wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919 and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.

- J. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:

- 1. Type X: As indicated on Drawings.
- 2. Ceiling Type: Ceiling surfaces.
- 3. Abuse-Resistant Type: As indicated on Drawings.
- 4. Mold-Resistant Type: As indicated on Drawings.

- B. Single-Layer Application:

- 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
- 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels horizontally (perpendicular to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
 - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
 - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
- 3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
- 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

- C. Multilayer Application:

- 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
- 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
- 3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
- 4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.

- D. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

3.4 APPLYING TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.11, at showers, tubs, and locations indicated to receive tile.
- B. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

3.5 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints at locations indicated on Drawings and 30' o.c. max..
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
 - 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
- D. Exterior Trim: Install in the following locations:
 - 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
 - 2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.

3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C840:
 - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
 - 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile and Panels that are substrate for acoustical panels.
 - 3. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 - 4. Level 5: At all bulkheads. At all corridors and hallways, ceilings and underside of soffits.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- E. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092900

SECTION 093013 - PORCELAIN TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Porcelain mosaic tile.
 - 2. Porcelain tile.
 - 3. Stone thresholds.
 - 4. Waterproof and crack isolation membrane for thinset applications.
 - 5. Metal edge strips.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. ANSI A108 Series: ANSI A108.01, ANSI A108.02, ANSI A108.1A, ANSI A108.1B, ANSI A108.1C, ANSI A108.4, ANSI A108.5, ANSI A108.6, ANSI A108.8, ANSI A108.9, ANSI A108.10, ANSI A108.11, ANSI A108.12, ANSI A108.13, ANSI A108.14, ANSI A108.15, ANSI A108.16, and ANSI A108.17, which are contained in its "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile."
- C. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.
- D. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review requirements in ANSI A108.01 for substrates and for preparation by other trades.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For tile, grout, and accessories involving color selection.

D. Samples for Verification:

1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required. For ceramic mosaic tile in color blend patterns, provide full sheets of each color blend.
2. Assembled samples mounted on a rigid panel, with grouted joints, for each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required. Make samples at least 12 inches square, but not fewer than four tiles. Use grout of type and in color or colors approved for completed Work.
3. Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory for each color and finish required.
4. Stone thresholds in 6-inch lengths.
5. Metal edge strips in 6-inch lengths.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- D. Product Test Reports: For tile-setting and -grouting products, and special purpose tile, and certified porcelain tile.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.
 2. Grout: Furnish quantity of grout equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, and color indicated.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. GENERAL
 1. Qualitative requirements for manufactured surfacing units of impervious, vitreous, semi-vitreous, and non-vitreous materials; glazed, unglazed, abrasive, and textures surfaces and related mortar, grout, trim, antifracture membranes and accessories.
- B. Installer Qualifications:
 1. Installer employs at least one installer for Project that has completed the Advanced Certification for Tile Installers (ACT) certification for installation of mud floors, mud walls, membranes, shower receptors, gauged porcelain tile/gauged porcelain tile panels and slabs, and large format tile.
- C. Mockups: Upon request, build, mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 1. Build mockup of each type of floor tile installation.

2. Build mockup of each type of wall tile installation.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.
- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from single source or producer.
 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.
- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer:
 1. Stone thresholds.
 2. Waterproof membrane.
 3. Crack isolation membrane.
 4. Cementitious backer units.
 5. Metal edge strips.

2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
 1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements unless otherwise indicated.

- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
- D. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Where tile is indicated for installation in wet areas, do not use back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies unless tile manufacturer specifies in writing that this type of mounting is suitable for installation indicated and has a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Factory-Applied Temporary Protective Coating: Where indicated under tile type, protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout by precoating with continuous film of petroleum paraffin wax, applied hot. Do not coat unexposed tile surfaces.
- F. Products of other manufacturers will be considered for acceptance provided they are equal to or exceed the specified material requirements and functional qualities of the specified product. Request for A/# approval must be accompanied by the required Substitution Request Form and completed technical data for evaluation. All material for evaluation must be received by the Project Manager and Specification Department at least 10 days prior to bid due date. Additional approved manufacturers will be issued by Addendum

2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Refer to the Finish Material Schedule in the Drawings for tile manufacturers and products.

2.4 THRESHOLDS

- A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
 - 1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to 1/16 inch above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit height of threshold to 1/2 inch or less above adjacent floor surface.
- B. Marble Thresholds: ASTM C503/C503M, with a minimum abrasion resistance of 12 according to ASTM C1353 or ASTM C241/C241M and with honed finish.
 - 1. Description: Uniform, fine- to medium-grained white stone with gray veining.

2.5 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Refer to Section 092900 – Gypsum Board.

2.6 WATERPROOF and CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, that complies with ANSI A118.10 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Fabric-Reinforced, Fluid-Applied Membrane: System consisting of liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer and continuous fabric reinforcement.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Boiardi Products Corporation; a QEP company.](#)
 - b. [Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.](#)
 - c. [Bostik, Inc.](#)
 - d. [Custom Building Products.](#)
 - e. [LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.](#)
 - f. [MAPEI Corporation.](#)
 - g. [Summitville Tiles, Inc.](#)

2.7 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement Mortar (Thickset) Installation Materials: ANSI A108.02.
 - 1. Cleavage Membrane: Asphalt felt, ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15); or polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D4397, 4.0 mils thick.
 - 2. Reinforcing Wire Fabric: Galvanized, welded-wire fabric, 2 by 2 inches by 0.062-inch diameter; comply with ASTM A185/A185M and ASTM A82/A82M, except for minimum wire size.
 - 3. Latex Additive: Manufacturer's standard water emulsion, serving as replacement for part or all of gaging water, of type specifically recommended by latex-additive manufacturer for use with field-mixed portland cement and aggregate mortar bed.
- B. Standard Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.1.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Boiardi Products Corporation; a QEP company.](#)
 - b. [Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.](#)
 - c. [Bostik, Inc.](#)
 - d. [C-Cure.](#)
 - e. [Custom Building Products.](#)
 - f. [LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.](#)
 - g. [MAPEI Corporation.](#)
 - h. [Summitville Tiles, Inc.](#)
 - 2. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.1.
- C. Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Boiardi Products Corporation; a QEP company.](#)
 - b. [Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.](#)
 - c. [Bostik, Inc.](#)
 - d. [C-Cure.](#)
 - e. [Custom Building Products.](#)
 - f. [LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.](#)
 - g. [MAPEI Corporation.](#)
 - h. [Summitville Tiles, Inc.](#)
2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
 3. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with liquid-latex additive at Project site.
 4. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.

2.8 GROUT MATERIALS

A. High-Performance Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7.

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Boiardi Products Corporation; a QEP company.](#)
 - b. [Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.](#)
 - c. [Bostik, Inc.](#)
 - d. [C-Cure.](#)
 - e. [Custom Building Products.](#)
 - f. [LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.](#)
 - g. [MAPEI Corporation.](#)
 - h. [Summitville Tiles, Inc.](#)
2. Polymer Type: Acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene rubber in liquid-latex form for addition to prepackaged dry-grout mix.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Membrane: Polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D4397, 4.0 mils thick.
- C. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shaped, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for flooring applications; white zinc alloy, nickel silver, or stainless steel, ASTM A276/A276M or ASTM A666, 300 Series exposed-edge material.
- D. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.
- E. Temporary Protective Coating: Product indicated below that is formulated to protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout; compatible with tile, mortar, and grout products; and easily removable after grouting is completed without damaging grout or tile.

1. Petroleum paraffin wax, fully refined and odorless, containing at least 0.5 percent oil with a melting point of 120 to 140 deg F per ASTM D 87.
2. Grout release in form of manufacturer's standard proprietary liquid coating that is specially formulated and recommended for use as temporary protective coating for tile.

2.10 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with bonded mortar bed or thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
 - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with adhesives or thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproof membrane by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped 1/4 inch per foot toward drains.

- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.
- D. Field-Applied Temporary Protective Coating: If indicated under tile type or needed to prevent grout from staining or adhering to exposed tile surfaces, precoat them with continuous film of temporary protective coating, taking care not to coat unexposed tile surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PORCELAIN TILE

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
- B. First Floor Areas (Slabs on Grade):
 - 1. Porcelain Paver Tile (Restroom Areas) - Slab on Grade, Thinset – TCA F115 – Water cleanable Low VOC Epoxy Grout
 - 2. Porcelain Mosaic Floor Tile - Slab on Grade – TCA F112 – Water cleanable, Low VOC, Epoxy Grout
 - 3. Tile Shower Areas: - Slab on Grade, Masonry Walls, - TCA W201 (Shower Walls); TCA B414 (Shower Floors) – Water cleanable, Low VOC, Epoxy Grout
- C. Elevated Slab Areas
 - 1. Porcelain Paver Tile (Restroom Areas) – Elevated Slab, Thinset, Waterproof / Antifracture Membrane – TCA F122 – Water cleanable, Low VOC, Epoxy Grout
 - 2. Porcelain Mosaic Floor Tile - Elevated Slab – TCA F122 – Water cleanable, Low VOC, Epoxy Grout
 - 3. Tile Shower Areas: - Slab on Grade, Masonry Walls, TCA W201 (Shower Walls); TCA B414 (Shower Floors) – Water cleanable, Low VOC, Epoxy Grout
- D. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- E. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- F. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.
 - 2. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
 - 3. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:

1. Porcelain Mosaic Tile: 1/8 inch, or as recommended by manufacturer.
 2. Porcelain Tile: 1/8 inch, or as recommended by manufacturer.
- H. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
- I. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds in same type of setting bed as adjacent floor unless otherwise indicated.
1. At locations where mortar bed (thickset) would otherwise be exposed above adjacent floor finishes, set thresholds in latex-portland mortar (thinset).
- J. Metal Edge Strips: Install where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with or below top of tile and no threshold is indicated.
- K. Floor Sealer: Apply floor sealer to[**cementitious**] grout joints[**in tile floors**] according to floor-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as floor sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF WATERPROOF AND CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE

- A. Install waterproof membrane to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
1. Install waterproofing-crack isolation membrane in all elevated slab locations and at all shower areas.
- B. Allow waterproof membrane to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or setting materials over it.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.
 3. Remove temporary protective coating by method recommended by coating manufacturer and that is acceptable to tile and grout manufacturer. Trap and remove coating to prevent drain clogging.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

END OF SECTION 093013

SECTION 093033 - STONE TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Stone tile.
 - 2. Stone thresholds.
 - 3. Waterproof membranes.
 - 4. Crack isolation membranes.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. Dimension Stone Tile: Modular stone units less than **3/4 inch (19 mm)** thick.
- C. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width.
- D. Polished Finish: Smooth surface that produces sharp, mirrorlike reflections. Reflected images of overhead fluorescent tubes have straight lines without visible distortion when viewed at arm's length.
- E. Honed Finish: Smooth, nonreflective surface similar to that produced by grinding with a 400- to 1200-grit abrasive; with a gap not exceeding **0.005 inch (0.13 mm)** when faces are tested for flatness with a **24-inch (610-mm)** straightedge.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Sequence stone tile installation with other work to minimize possibility of damage and soiling during remainder of construction period.
- B. Install stone tile and accessories only after other finishing operations, including painting, are completed.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of stone tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in substrates and finished stone tile surfaces. Show stone thresholds.
- C. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Full-size units of each type of stone tile.
 - 2. Assembled Samples with grouted joints for each type of stone tile and for each finish required, at least 36 inches (900 mm) square and mounted on a rigid panel. Use grout of type and in color(s) approved for completed Work.
 - 3. Range Samples consisting of at least three full-size units of each type of stone tile, exhibiting extremes of the full range of color and other visual characteristics expected. Range Samples establish the standard by which individual stone tiles[and thresholds] are judged.
 - 4. Stone thresholds in 6-inch (150-mm) lengths.
 - 5. Metal edge strips in 6-inch (150-mm) lengths.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For tile-setting and -grouting products[and stone tile].

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For dimension stone tile to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Extra Stock Material: Furnish extra materials, from same production run, to Owner that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Dimension Stone Tile: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed, for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.
 - 2. Grout: Furnish quantity of grout equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, and color indicated.

1.9 MOCKUPS

- A. Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations by Change Order.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use.
- B. Store stone tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.
- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

1.11 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install stone tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Stone Tile and Thresholds: Obtain each stone product type from single source from single producer.
 - 1. For each stone product type, provide one stone variety.
 - 2. Where two or more stone product types are identical, except for size or finish, provide same variety for each type.
 - 3. Where threshold types are identical to stone tile types, except for size or finish, provide same variety.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified Portland cement and aggregate, from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Obtain crack isolation membrane, except for sheet products, from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.
- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer:
 - 1. Crack isolation membrane.
 - 2. Metal edge strips.

2.2 STONE PRODUCTS

- A. Varieties and Sources: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide those indicated.
- B. Manufacturer: Daltile Gascoigne Blue Limestone, honed finish.
- C. Provide stone products that are free of defects impairing their function for use indicated, including cracks, seams, and starts.
- D. Pattern Orientation: For stone varieties with a directional pattern, provide tile with pattern randomly oriented at various angles to sides of tiles.
 - 1. For stone varieties that exhibit a directional pattern, provide thresholds with pattern oriented parallel to long edges of thresholds.
- E. Stone Tile Type:
 - 1. Limestone: Complying with ASTM C568/C568M, Classification .
 - 2. Finish: Honed.
 - 3. Edges: Square.
 - 4. Module Size: Random sizes as shown on drawings .
 - 5. Nominal Tile Thickness: Manufacturer's standard .
 - 6. Joint Width: 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- F. Stone Threshold Type:
 - 1. Limestone: Complying with ASTM C568/C568M, Classification .
 - 2. Finish: Honed.
 - 3. Edges: Eased.
 - 4. Nominal Threshold Thickness: Manufacturer's Standard.

5. CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANES

- G. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, that complies with ANSI A118.12 for standard performance and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- H. Crack Isolation Membrane, Chlorinated Polyethylene Sheet: Nonplasticized, chlorinated polyethylene faced on both sides with nonwoven polyester fabric; 0.030-inch (0.76-mm) nominal thickness.
- I. Crack Isolation Membrane, PVC Sheet: PVC heat-fused on both sides to facings of nonwoven polyester; 0.040-inch (1-mm) nominal thickness.
- J. Crack Isolation Membrane, Polyethylene Sheet: Polyethylene faced on both sides with fleece webbing; 0.008-inch (0.203-mm) nominal thickness.

2.3 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement Mortar (Thickset) Installation Materials: ANSI A108.02.

1. Cleavage Membrane: Asphalt felt, ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15); or polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D4397, 4.0 mils (0.1 mm) thick.
 2. Reinforcing Wire Fabric: Galvanized, welded-wire fabric, 2 by 2 inches (50.8 by 50.8 mm) by 0.062 inch (1.57 mm) in diameter; comply with ASTM A185/A185M and ASTM A82/A82M except for minimum wire size.
 3. Expanded Metal Lath: Diamond-mesh lath complying with ASTM C847.
 - a. Base Metal and Finish for Interior Applications: Uncoated or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, with uncoated steel sheet painted after fabrication into lath.
 - b. Base Metal and Finish for Exterior Applications: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.
 4. Latex Additive: Manufacturer's standard water emulsion, serving as replacement for part or all of gaging water, of type specifically recommended by latex-additive manufacturer for use with field-mixed portland cement and aggregate mortar bed.
- B. Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4.
1. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
 2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene-rubber liquid-latex additive at Project site.
- C. Medium-Bed, Modified Dry-Set Mortar: Comply with requirements in ANSI A118.4. Provide product that is approved by manufacturer for application thickness of [5/8 inch (16 mm)].
1. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
 2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with acrylic resin liquid-latex additive at Project site.

2.4 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, consisting of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate as required to produce color indicated.
- B. Standard Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6.
- a. Ethylene vinyl acetate or acrylic additive, in dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients.
 - b. [Acrylic resin] [or] [styrene-butadiene rubber] in liquid-latex form for addition to prepackaged dry-grout mix.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Membrane: Polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D4397, 4.0 mils (0.1 mm) thick.

- C. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shaped, height to match stone tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for flooring applications; white zinc alloy nickel silver stainless steel, or ASTM A276/A276M or ASTM A666, 300 Series exposed-edge material.
- D. Protective Coating: Liquid grout-release coating that is formulated to protect exposed surfaces of stone tile against adherence of mortar and grout; compatible with stone, mortar, and grout products; easily removable after grouting is completed without damaging grout or stone tile; and recommended for use as temporary protective coating for stone tile.
- E. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming stone tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by stone tile producers and grout manufacturers.
- F. Floor Sealer: Colorless, stain- and slip-resistant sealer, not affecting color or physical properties of stone surfaces as recommended by stone tile producers for application indicated.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Facial Dimensions of Stone Tiles with Honed Faces: Do not vary facial dimensions from specified dimensions by more than plus or minus **1/64 inch (0.4 mm)**.
- B. Thickness of Stone Tiles with Honed Finish: Do not vary from specified thickness by more than plus or minus **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)**.
- C. Joint Surfaces: Except for specified beveled or eased edges if any, dress joint surfaces square for full depth of stone tile.
- D. Backs of Tiles: Gage units by dressing backs of tiles smooth and flat. When tested with a **24-inch (600-mm)** straightedge, gap shall not exceed **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)**.
- E. Thresholds: Fabricate to size and profile as indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
 - 1. Bevel edges of thresholds at 1:2 slope, aligning lower edge of bevel with adjacent floor finish. Limit height of bevel to **1/2 inch (13 mm)** or less, and finish bevel to match face of threshold.

2.7 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where stone tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates for setting stone tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for stone tile floors installed with thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
 - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
 - 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind stone tile has been completed.
 - 4. Verify that joints and cracks in stone tile substrates are coordinated with stone tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for stone tile floors installed with thinset mortar with trowelable patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproof membrane by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped **1/4 inch per foot (1:50)** toward drains.
- C. Lay out stone tile patterns by marking joint lines on substrates to verify joint placement at edges, corners, doors, and other critical elements.
 - 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when layout will be done.
 - 2. Obtain Architect's approval of layout before starting stone tile installation.
- D. Field-Applied Temporary Protective Coating: If indicated under stone tile type or needed to prevent grout from staining or adhering to exposed stone tile surfaces, precoat stone tiles with continuous film of temporary protective coating, taking care not to coat unexposed stone tile surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF STONE TILE

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in stone tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods specified in stone tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
- B. Wipe backs of stone tiles with a damp cloth to remove dirt and dust before units are installed.
- C. Extend stone tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- D. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of stone tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of stone tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit stone tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap stone tile.
- E. Finish cut stone tile edges that will not be concealed by other construction by grinding and honing cut surfaces and easing edges to match factory-fabricated edges.
- F. Jointing Pattern: Lay stone tile in pattern indicated. Lay out stone tile work and center stone tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out stone tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Where adjoining stone tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
 - 2. Where stone tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining stone tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Match stone tiles within each space by selecting tiles to achieve uniformity of color and pattern. Reject or relocate stone tiles that do not match color and pattern of adjacent tiles.
- H. Mix stone tiles to achieve a uniformly random distribution of color shadings and patterns.
- I. Pattern Orientation: For stone varieties with directional pattern, orient pattern as indicated directed by Architect.
- J. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds in same type of setting bed as adjacent floor unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. At locations where mortar bed (thickset) would otherwise be exposed above adjacent floor finishes, set thresholds in modified dry-set mortar (thinset).
 - 2. Do not extend crack isolation membrane under thresholds set in modified dry-set mortar. Fill joints between such thresholds and adjoining stone tile with elastomeric sealant.
- K. Metal Edge Strips: Install at locations indicated.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF WATERPROOFING MEMBRANES

- A. Install waterproof membrane to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness and bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow waterproof membrane to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or setting materials over it.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANES

- A. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness and bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow crack isolation membrane to cure before installing tile or setting materials over it.

3.6 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb: For vertical joints, external corners, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed **1/8 inch in 8 ft. (3 mm in 2.4 m)**.
- B. Variation in Level: For horizontal joints and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed **1/8 inch in 10 ft. (3 mm in 3 m)**, or **1/2 inch (12 mm)**.
- C. Variation in Surface Plane of Flooring: Do not exceed **1/8 inch in 10 ft. (3 mm in 3 m)** from level or slope indicated when tested with a **10-foot (3-m)** straightedge.
- D. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Units (Lipping): Do not exceed the following differences between faces of adjacent units as measured from a straightedge parallel to stone tiled surface:
 - 1. Units with Honed Faces: **1/64 inch (0.4 mm)**.
- E. Variation in Joint Width: Do not vary joint thickness more than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** or one-fourth of nominal joint width, whichever is less.

3.7 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining stone tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean stone tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
 - 1. Remove grout residue from stone tile as soon as possible.
 - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from stone tile in accordance with stone tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by stone tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of stone tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

3. Remove temporary protective coating by method recommended by coating manufacturer and acceptable to stone tile and grout manufacturer. Trap and remove coating to prevent drain clogging.
- C. Apply sealer to cleaned stone tile flooring in accordance with sealer manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed stone tile floors with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by stone tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed stone tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from stone tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from stone tile surfaces.

3.9 INTERIOR STONE TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Subfloor:
 1. TCNA F111 STONE and ANSI A108.1C: Cement mortar bed (thickset) with cleavage membrane.
 - a. Bond Coat for Cured-Bed Method: Modified dry-set mortar or Medium-bed, modified dry-set mortar.
 - b. Grout: Standard sanded cement grout.
 2. TCNA F112 STONE and ANSI A108.1C: Cement mortar bed (thickset) bonded to concrete.
 - a. Bond Coat for Cured-Bed Method: Modified dry-set mortar or Medium-bed, modified dry-set mortar.
 - b. Grout: Standard sanded cement grout.

END OF SECTION 093033

SECTION 096400 – ENGINEERED WOOD FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Factory-finished engineered wood flooring.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type of floor assembly and accessory. Include plans, sections, and attachment details. Include expansion provisions and trim details.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, approximately 12 inches (300 mm) long and of same thickness and material indicated for the Work and showing the full range of normal color and texture variations expected.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors and finishes available for wood flooring.

1. Include Samples of accessories involving color and finish selection.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of wood flooring and accessory, with stain color and finish required, approximately 12 inches (300 mm) long and of same thickness and material indicated for the Work and showing the full range of normal color and texture variations expected.

1.3 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Wood Flooring: Equal to 1 percent of amount installed for each type, color, and finish of wood flooring indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5 MOCKUPS

- A. Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver wood flooring materials in unopened cartons or bundles.
- B. Protect wood flooring from exposure to moisture. Do not deliver wood flooring until after concrete, masonry, plaster, ceramic tile, and similar wet-work is complete and dry.
- C. Store wood flooring materials in a dry, warm, ventilated, weathertight location.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Conditioning period begins not less than seven days before wood flooring installation, is continuous through installation, and continues not less than seven days after wood flooring installation.
 - 1. Environmental Conditioning: Maintain ambient temperature between 65 and 75 deg F (18 and 24 deg C) and relative humidity planned for building occupants in spaces to receive wood flooring during the conditioning period.
 - 2. Wood Flooring Conditioning: Move wood flooring into spaces where it will be installed, no later than the beginning of the conditioning period.
 - a. Do not install flooring until it adjusts to relative humidity of, and is at same temperature as, space where it is to be installed.
 - b. Open sealed packages to allow wood flooring to acclimatize immediately on moving flooring into spaces in which it will be installed.
- B. After conditioning period, maintain relative humidity and ambient temperature planned for building occupants.
- C. Install factory-finished wood flooring after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hardwood Flooring: Comply with NWFA A500 for species, grade, and cut.
 - 1. Certification: Provide flooring that carries NWFA grade stamp on each bundle or piece.
- B. Engineered-Wood Flooring, Factory-Finished: HPVA EF, complying with requirements for composite wood products.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design: Nydree Flooring, acrylic-infused engineered wood flooring; www.nydreeflooring.com.
 - 2. Species: Reclaimed oak.
 - 3. Thickness: 9/16" (0.54").
 - 4. Construction: Five ply minimum.
 - 5. Face Width: 7.5" (190.5 mm).
 - 6. Length: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 7. Edge Style: Micro-Beveled (eased).
 - 8. Finish: Standard pedestrian 2.0 uncured urethane with ceramic particle, low gloss.

2.2 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Wood Sleepers and Subfloor: As specified in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" and Section 061600 "Sheathing."
- B. Wood Underlayment: As specified in Section 061600 "Sheathing."
- C. Wood Flooring Adhesive: Mastic recommended by flooring and adhesive manufacturers for application indicated.
- D. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compound: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation approved by wood flooring manufacturer.
- E. Thresholds and Saddles: To match wood flooring. Tapered on each side.
- F. Reducer Strips: To match wood flooring. **2 inches (51 mm)** wide, tapered, and in thickness required to match height of flooring.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of wood flooring.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

- C. Concrete Slabs: Verify that concrete substrates are dry and moisture-vapor emissions are within acceptable levels according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft. (18.6 sq. m), and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
 - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. (1.36 kg of water/92.9 sq. m) in 24 hours.
 - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 80 percent relative humidity level measurement.
 - c. Perform additional moisture tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Concrete Slabs:
1. Grind high spots and fill low spots to produce a maximum 1/8-inch (3-mm) deviation in any direction when checked with a 10-foot (3-m) straight edge.
 2. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates.
 3. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances on substrates that are incompatible with installation adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
- B. Existing Wood Subfloors:
1. Provide leveling by means of leveling compound, underlayment, sleepers, and subflooring, or similar means to bring existing wood subfloors to produce a maximum 1/4" deviation in any direction when checked with a 10-foot straight edge. Work to existing edges at doors and other transitions to extent possible.
- C. Broom or vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before product installation. After cleaning, examine substrates for moisture, alkaline salts, carbonation, or dust. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with flooring manufacturer's written installation instructions, but not less than applicable recommendations in NWFA's "Installation Guidelines."
- B. Wood Sleepers and Subfloor: Install according to requirements in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" and Section 061600 "Sheathing."
- C. Wood Underlayment: Install according to requirements in Section 061600 "Sheathing."

- D. Provide expansion space at walls and other obstructions and terminations of flooring as recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Engineered-Wood Flooring: Set in adhesive.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed wood flooring during remainder of construction period with covering of heavy kraft paper or other suitable material. Do not use plastic sheet or film that might cause condensation.
 - 1. Do not move heavy and sharp objects directly over kraft-paper-covered wood flooring. Protect flooring with plywood or hardboard panels to prevent damage from storing or moving objects over flooring.

END OF SECTION 096400

SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Thermoset-rubber base.
 - 2. Rubber molding accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, not less than 12 inches long.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product indicated.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated and for each color, texture, and pattern required in manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 12 inches long.
- E. Product Schedule: For resilient base and accessory products. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following periods:
 - 1. 48 hours before installation.
 - 2. During installation.
 - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Products shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.2 THERMOSET-RUBBER BASE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Burke Mercer Flooring Products; a division of Burke Industries Inc.
 - 2. Tarkett.
 - 3. Nora Systems.
 - 4. Roppe Corporation, USA.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F1861, Type TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset), Group I (solid, homogeneous).
 - 1. Style and Location:
 - a. Profile
 - b. Refer to finish material schedule on drawings.
- C. Height: 4 inches.
- D. Outside Corners: Job formed.
- E. Inside Corners: Job formed.
- F. Colors: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.

2.3 RUBBER MOLDING ACCESSORY

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. [Roppe Corporation, USA.](#)
2. [VPI Corporation.](#)
3. [Tarkett.](#)

- B. Description: Carpet edge for glue-down applications, nosing for carpet, nosing for resilient floor covering, reducer strip for resilient floor covering, joiner for tile and carpet, and transition strips.
- C. Profile and Dimensions: As indicated.
- D. Locations: Provide rubber molding accessories in areas indicated.
- E. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
1. [Adhesives shall have a VOC](#) content of 50 g/L or less.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates for Resilient Stair Accessories: Prepare horizontal surfaces according to ASTM F710.
1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.

2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing.
4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
 - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
 - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- G. Preformed Corners: Install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.
- H. Job-Formed Corners:
 1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
 - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.

2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.

3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Resilient Stair Accessories:
 1. Use stair-tread-nose filler to fill nosing substrates that do not conform to tread contours.
 2. Tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece.
 3. For treads installed as separate, equal-length units, install to produce a flush joint between units.
- C. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
 2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
 3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Floor Polish: Remove soil, adhesive, and blemishes from resilient stair treads before applying liquid floor polish.
 1. Apply two coat(s).
- E. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096513

SECTION 096813 - TILE CARPETING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Modular carpet tile.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to carpet tile installation including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Review delivery, storage, and handling procedures.
 - b. Review ambient conditions and ventilation procedures.
 - c. Review subfloor preparation procedures.
 - d. Review design layout of carpet tile for intent, pile direction.
 - e. Review specific conditions as necessary.
 - f. Post installation flooring protection measures.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's written data on physical and performance, sizes, patterns, colors, characteristics, durability, and fade resistance sustainability attributes.
 - 2. Include manufacturer's written installation instructions for each type of substrate.
- B. Shop Drawings: For carpet tile installation, plans showing the following:
 - 1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet tiles.
 - 2. Carpet tile type, color, and dye lot.
 - 3. Type of subfloor.
 - 4. Type of installation.
 - 5. Pattern of installation.
 - 6. Pattern type, location, and direction.
 - 7. Pile direction.
 - 8. Type, color, and location of insets and borders.

9. Type, color, and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
10. Transition details to other flooring materials.

C. Samples: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.
2. Exposed Edge, Transition, and Other Accessory Stripping: 12-inch-long Samples.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of carpet tile.

1. Include Samples of exposed edge, transition, and other accessory stripping involving color or finish selection.

E. Samples for Verification: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.
2. Exposed Edge, Transition, and Other Accessory Stripping: 12-inch-long Samples.

F. Product Schedule: For carpet tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

G. Sustainable Product Certification: Provide ANSI/NSF 140 certification for carpet products.

H. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance procedures, recommendations for maintenance materials and equipment, and suggested schedule for cleaning.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: (See Quality Assurance 1.8)
- B. Product Test Reports: For carpet tile, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For carpet tiles to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:
 1. Methods for maintaining carpet tile, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
 2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet tile.
 3. Recommendations for maintenance materials and equipment.
 4. Suggested schedule for cleaning.
 5. Training session for maintenance between carpet rep and Owner.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Carpet Tile: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of amount installed for each type indicated, but not less than 10 sq. yd..

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications

1. Company specializing in manufacturing specified carpet with minimum 15 years documented experience in the production of modular carpet.
2. Upon request, manufacturer to provide representative to assist in project start-up and to inspect installation while in process and upon completion. Representative will notify designated contact if any installation instructions are not followed.
3. Manufacturer must provide verification of its registration to the ISO 9001 Quality Management System, ISO 14001 Environmental Management System, ISO 14040 Life Cycle Assessment and NVLAP standards.
4. Manufacturer must demonstrate environmental responsibility and a commitment to sustainability through programs of source reduction, recycling, reuse and conservation. All products must be certified "carbon neutral" by an independent third party.
5. Carpet manufacturer must have a reclamation and recycling program that specifically allows for reclamation of carpet tile and broadloom carpet, separation of carpet face and backing and recycling of type 6 and 6.6 nylon into new type 6 and 6.6 nylon as well as recycling vinyl backed carpet backing into new carpet backing.

B. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the International Certified Floorcovering Installers Association at the Commercial II certification level.

1. Flooring contractor to be a specialty contractor normally engaged in this type of work and shall have five (5) years prior experience in the installation of these types of materials.
2. Flooring contractor possessing Contract for the product installation shall not sub-contract the labor without written approval of the Project Manager.
3. Flooring contractor will be responsible for proper product installation, including floor testing and preparation as specified by the manufacturer.
4. Flooring contractor to provide Owner a written installation warranty that guarantees the completed installation to be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one year after job completion.

C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. Build mockups at locations and in sizes indicated by architect.
2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104.

- B. Deliver materials to the site in manufacturer's original packaging listing manufacturer's name, product name, identification number, and related information.
- C. Store in a dry location, between 65 degrees F and 90 degrees F and a relative humidity below 65%. Protect from damage and soiling.
- D. Make stored materials available for inspection by the Owner's representative.
- E. Store materials in area of installation for minimum period of 48 hours prior to installation.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104 for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install carpet tiles until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at values near those indicated for final occupancy.
- C. Do not install carpet tiles over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet tile manufacturer or maintain minimum of 65 degrees F ambient temperature and 65% relative humidity for 72 hours prior to, during, and 48 hours after installation. (Use method providing strictest requirements.)
- D. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet tiles, install carpet tiles before installing these items.
- E. All material used in sub-floor preparation and repair shall be recommended by the carpet manufacturer and shall be chemically and physically compatible with carpet system provided.
- F. Subfloor preparation is to include all required work to prepare the existing or new floor for installation of the products as specified in this document and manufacturer's installation instructions.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet tile due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
 - 2. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Warranty to be sole source responsibility of the Manufacturer.
 - b. If the product fails to perform as warranted when properly installed and maintained, the affected area will be either repaired or replaced, at the discretion of the Manufacturer.
 - c. Chair pads are not required
 - d. Warranty shall not exclude carpet product installed on stairs provided it is properly installed and maintained.
 - e. The 10 year non-prorated warranty shall specifically warrant:
 - 1) Against loss of more than 10% by weight of face fiber
 - 2) Against edge ravel, backing separation, shrinking, stretching, cupping, doming, snags, and runs.

- 3) Against excessive static electricity
- 4) Antimicrobial effectiveness.
- 5) 100% solution dyed yarns against excessive color loss

3. Warranty Period: 10 year non-prorated warranty from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECYCLED CONTENT

2.3 FIBER

- A. Fiber: Pet, 100% Solution Dyed.
- B. Construction: Non-woven composite.
- C. Stain inhibitor should be applied to the fiber during fiber manufacturing to resist staining and soiling.

2.4 BACKING CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Backing should be inherently stable. Easy removal, reclamation and clean recycling into new carpet tile can be expedited.
- B. Secondary Backing: High density non-woven pet composite.
- C. Product Size: 12"x48".

2.5 PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Test reports for the following performance assurance testing to be submitted upon request. Submitted results shall represent average results for production goods of the referenced style. Requirements listed below must be met by all products.

1. 100% Solution Dyed.
2. Pet fiber
3. Flooring Radiant Panel
ASTM E-648 / NFPA 253: Class 1 (CRF: 0.45 watts/sq cm or greater)
4. Federal Flammability
CPSC FF 1-70: Passes
5. Smoke Density
ASTM E-662 / NFPA 258: ≤ 450 Flaming Mode
6. Electrostatic Propensity
AATCC 134 (Step & Scuff): 3.0 kV or less
7. Colorfastness: Light

2.7 PRODUCT MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Refer to the Finish Material Schedule in the Drawings for manufacturers and products.
- B. Colors – As specified on schedule in Drawings.

C. Substitutes/Alternates

1. Subject to compliance with all requirements, "or equal" must match the selected colors, have similar aesthetic appearance and sustainability requirements. Substitution samples and submittals must be submitted for written approval of quality and color at least ten days prior to bid to be considered. (Actual samples required.)

2.8 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining, pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that comply with flammability requirements for installed carpet tile, and are recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.
 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/l or less.
 2. Adhesives shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers".

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet tile performance.
- B. Examine carpet tile for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.
- C. Concrete Slabs: Verify that finishes comply with requirements specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and that surfaces are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits. Conduct moisture and pH testing. Results must be within units recommended by manufacturer.
 1. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft (18.6 sq.m), and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
 - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
 - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
 - c. Perform additional moisture tests recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet tile manufacturers. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
NOTE: Flooring contractor is responsible for providing installation, with manufacturers recommended adhesives, where levels elevate to 95 percent relative humidity measurement testing.
 - d. pH range 5-9, unless indicated differently by manufacturer.

- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104 and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet tile.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch wide or wider, and protrusions more than 1/32 inch unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions. Verify that sub-floor is smooth and flat.
- C. Concrete Substrates: Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet tile manufacturers.
- D. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered dust free immediately before installing carpet tile.
- E. There will be no exceptions to the provisions stated in Manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104, Section 10, "Carpet Tile," and with carpet tile Manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Installation Method: Glue down; install every tile with full-spread, releasable, pressure-sensitive adhesive. Adhesives must meet requirements of CRI's Green Label Plus program for adhesive. Provide documentation from manufacturer of carpet tile.
- C. Maintain dye-lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.
- D. Maintain pile-direction patterns indicated on Drawings.
- E. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- F. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- G. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on carpet tile as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.
- H. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders or as indicated on drawings.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet tile:
 - 1. Remove excess adhesive and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.

2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
 3. Vacuum carpet tile using commercial machine with beater element.
- B. Protect installed carpet tile to comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104, Section 13.7.
- C. After each area is installed protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. All rubbish, wrappings, debris, trimmings, etc. to be removed from site daily and recycled or disposed of properly.

END OF SECTION 096813

SECTION 096816 - SHEET CARPETING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Tufted carpet with edge binding.
 - 2. For area in Gerber House.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 096813 "Tile Carpeting" for modular carpet tiles.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's written data on physical characteristics and durability.
- B. Shop Drawings: For carpet installation, showing the following:
- C. Samples for Verification: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
 - 1. Carpet: 12-inch- (300-mm-) square Sample.
 - 2. Leather edge binding.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For carpet to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:
 - 1. Methods for maintaining carpet, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
 - 2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Carpet: Full-width rolls equal to [5] <Insert number> percent of amount installed for each type indicated, but not less than 10 sq. yd. (8.3 sq. m).

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104.
- B. Deliver carpet in original mill protective covering with mill register numbers and tags attached.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104 for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install carpet until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. Do not install carpet over concrete slabs until slabs have cured, are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive, and have pH range recommended by carpet manufacturer.
- D. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet, install carpet before installing these items.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Carpet: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
 - 2. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. More than 10 percent loss of face fiber, edge raveling, snags, and runs.
 - b. Loss of tuft bind strength.
 - c. Delamination.
 - 3. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TUFTED CARPET

- A. Refer to finish material schedule on drawings.

2.2 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Custom leather binding edge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet performance.
- B. Examine carpet for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.
- C. Wood Subfloors: Verify the following:
 - 1. Wood floor surface is free of irregularities and substances that may interfere with adhesive bond or show through surface.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet:
 - 1. Remove excess adhesive, seam sealer, and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet manufacturer.
 - 2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet surface.
 - 3. Vacuum carpet using commercial machine with face-beater element.
- B. Protect installed carpet to comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104.
- C. Protect carpet against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods recommended in writing by carpet manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 096816

SECTION 097200 - WALL COVERINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Vinyl wall covering.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include data on physical characteristics, durability, fade resistance, and fire-test-response characteristics.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of wall covering and for each color, pattern, texture, and finish specified, full width by 36 inches long in size.
 - 1. Wall-Covering Sample: From same production run to be used for the Work.
- C. Product Schedule: For wall coverings. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each wall covering, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For wall coverings to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same production run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Wall-Covering Materials: For each type, color, texture, and finish, full width by length to equal to 5 percent of amount installed.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for installation.
 1. Build mockups for each type of wall covering on each substrate required. Comply with requirements in ASTM F1141 for appearance shading characteristics.
 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install wall coverings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at levels intended for occupants after Project completion during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Lighting: Do not install wall covering until lighting that matches conditions intended for occupants after Project completion is provided on the surfaces to receive wall covering.
- C. Ventilation: Provide continuous ventilation during installation and for not less than the time recommended by wall-covering manufacturer for full drying or curing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical wall coverings applied with identical adhesives to substrates in accordance with test method indicated below by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

2.2 VINYL WALL COVERING

- A. Refer to Interior Finish Material Schedule for wall covering products and descriptions.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: Mildew-resistant, nonstaining, strippable adhesive, for use with specific wall covering and substrate application indicated and as recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
- B. Primer/Sealer: Mildew resistant, complying with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and recommended in writing by primer/sealer and wall-covering manufacturers for intended substrate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation surfaces being true in plane and vertical and horizontal alignment, maximum moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of wall covering, including dirt, oil, grease, mold, and mildew.
- C. Prepare substrates to achieve a smooth, dry, clean, structurally sound surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, and defects.
 - 1. Gypsum Board: Apply primer/sealer as recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
 - 2. Painted Surfaces:
 - a. Check for pigment bleeding. Apply primer/sealer to areas susceptible to pigment bleeding as recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer.
 - b. Sand gloss, semigloss, and eggshell finishes with fine sandpaper.
- D. Remove hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.
- E. Acclimatize wall-covering materials by removing them from packaging in the installation areas not less than 24 hours before installation.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF WALL COVERING

- A. Comply with wall-covering manufacturers' written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- B. Cut wall-covering strips in roll number sequence. Change the roll numbers at partition breaks and corners.

- C. Install strips in same order as cut from roll.
- D. Install wall covering without lifted or curling edges and without visible shrinkage.
- E. Install seams vertical and plumb at least 6 inches from outside corners and 3 inches from inside corners unless a change of pattern or color exists at corner. Horizontal seams are not permitted.
- F. Trim edges and seams for color uniformity, pattern match, and tight closure. Butt seams without overlaps or gaps between strips.
- G. Fully bond wall covering to substrate. Remove air bubbles, wrinkles, blisters, and other defects.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess adhesive at seams, perimeter edges, and adjacent surfaces.
- B. Use cleaning methods recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
- C. Replace strips that cannot be cleaned.
- D. Reinstall hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.

END OF SECTION 097200

Section 098129
Sprayed-On Acoustic Insulation
Specification Guide

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 Section Includes

- A. Sprayed cellulose thermal insulation. (07 21 29)
- B. Sprayed cellulose acoustical insulation. (09 83 16)
- C. For use in Event Center at glulam deck panel space gaps.

1.02 Related Items

- A. Clips, hangers, supports, sleeves and other attachments to spray bases are to be placed by other trades prior to the application of sprayed insulation.
- B. Ducts, piping, conduit or other suspended equipment shall not be positioned until after the application of sprayed insulation.
- C. Roof penetrations to be installed prior to application.

1.03 Quality Assurance

- A. Manufacturer must have a current Underwriters Laboratories (UL) Code Evaluation Report.
- B. Manufacturer must be in compliance with the 2009-2021 International Building Code.
- C. Manufacturer must be ISO 9001:2015 Certified.
- D. Applicator: Licensed by manufacturer.
- E. Manufacturer must subscribe to independent laboratory follow-up inspection services of Underwriters Laboratories and Factory Mutual. Each bag shall be labeled accordingly.
- F. Mock-up: Apply a 100 square foot representative sample to be reviewed by the Architect and/or Owner prior to proceeding.
- G. Manufacturer shall have a minimum 10-year successful performance history of producing and installing spray-applied cellulose on similar projects
- H. Material must be tested in accordance with ASTM E 1042 by a NVLAP accredited testing laboratory.

1.04 Submittals

- A. Submit product data that the product meets or exceeds the following specified requirements.
 - 1. Bond strength shall be greater than 150 psf per ASTM E 736.
 - 2. Product shall be Class 1 Class A per ASTM E 84/ UL 723.
 - 3. Non-corrosive per ASTM C 1149
 - 4. Bond Deflection per ASTM E 759: 6" Deflection in 10' Span – No Spalling or Delamination.
 - 5. R-Value to be 3.70 per inch per ASTM C 518.
 - 6. Comply with 2015 IBC Section 803.12 stability requirements for interior finishes.
 - 7. Meet ASTM C 1149
 - 8. Product must have a publicly available Health Product Declaration (HPD) to 100 PPM
 - 9. Manufacturer's written certification that product contains no asbestos, fiberglass or other man-made mineral fibers.
 - 10. Minimum Fiber Recycled Content to be 80%.
 - 11. Cannot contain any added Urea-Formaldehyde Resins.

1.06 Delivery, Storage and Handling

Section 098129
Sprayed-On Acoustic Insulation
Specification Guide

- A. Deliver in original, unopened containers bearing name of manufacturer, product identification and reference to U.L. testing.
- B. Store materials dry, off ground, and under cover.
- C. Protect liquid adhesive from freezing.
- D. Water to be potable.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 Acceptable Manufacturers

- A. International Cellulose Corporation
12315 Robin Boulevard
Houston, Texas 77045
Phone: (713) 433-6701 or (800) 444-1252
Fax: (713) 433-2029
Website: www.spray-on.com
Email: icc@spray-on.com
- B. For approved applicators contact ICC at (800) 444-1252.

2.02 Materials

- A. K-13 Spray-On-Systems.
 - 1. Color shall be Manufacturer's standard black color as noted and can be through the full thickness of the product.
 - 2. Each bag must be labeled with appropriate UL classification and FM markings
 - 3. Each drum of adhesive must be labeled "SK-2000 adhesive to be used with K-13"

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 Examination

- A. Examine surfaces and report unsatisfactory conditions in writing. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.
- B. Verify surfaces to receive spray insulation to determine if priming/sealing is required to insure bonding and/or to prevent discoloration caused by migratory stains.

3.02 Preparation

- A. Provide masking, drop cloths or other satisfactory coverings for materials/surfaces that are not to receive insulation to protect from over-spray.
- B. Coordinate installation of the sprayed cellulose fiber with work of other trades.
- C. Prime surfaces as required by manufacturer's instructions or as determined by examination.
- D. Prime all gypsum board surfaces with high quality, commercial, gypsum board primer

3.03 Installation

- A. Install spray applied insulation according to manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Comply with local Building Code requirements.
- C. Install spray applied insulation to achieve an average 2" thickness.

K-13 Sprayed Thermal and Acoustical Insulation on Solid Backing:

Section 098129
Sprayed-On Acoustic Insulation
Specification Guide

- D. Cure insulation with continuous natural or mechanical ventilation.
 - a. Continuous ventilation must be maintained until the material has properly cured.
- E. Remove and dispose of over-spray.

4.01 Protection

- A. Protect finished installation under provision of Division 1.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 098436 - SOUND-ABSORBING CEILING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes shop-fabricated, acoustical panel units tested for acoustical performance, including the following:
 - 1. Sound-absorbing ceiling panels.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NRC: Noise Reduction Coefficient.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include panel edge, core material, and mounting indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For unit assembly and installation.
 - 1. Include reflected ceiling plans, elevations, sections, and mounting devices and details.
 - 2. Include details at joints and corners; and details at ceiling intersections and intersections with walls. Indicate panel edge profile and core materials.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
 - 1. Panel Material: 12-inch-square Sample.
 - 2. Mounting Devices: Full-size Samples.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of unit.
- B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of unit to include in maintenance manuals. Include fabric manufacturer's written cleaning and stain-removal instructions.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials, fabrication, and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical ceiling area as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with fabric and unit manufacturers' written instructions for minimum and maximum temperature and humidity requirements for shipment, storage, and handling.
- B. Deliver materials and units in unopened bundles and store in a temperature-controlled dry place with adequate air circulation.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install units until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work at and above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Lighting: Do not install units until a lighting level of not less than 50 fc is provided on surfaces to receive the units.
- C. Air-Quality Limitations: Protect units from exposure to airborne odors, such as tobacco smoke, and install units under conditions free from odor contamination of ambient air.
- D. Field Measurements: Verify unit locations and actual dimensions of openings and penetrations by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate them on Shop Drawings.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace units and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Acoustical performance.
 - b. Warping of core.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain ceiling units specified in this Section from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Units shall comply with "Surface-Burning Characteristics" or "Fire Growth Contribution" Subparagraph below, or both, as determined by testing identical products by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
 2. Fire Growth Contribution: Comply with acceptance criteria of local code and authorities having jurisdiction when tested according to NFPA 286.

2.3 SOUND-ABSORBING CEILING UNITS

- A. Sound-Absorbing Ceiling Panel: Manufacturer's standard panel construction consisting of fiberglass scrim facing material laminated to front face border of fiberglass or mineral wool core.
1. Basis-of-Design: MBI Products 1000-Tb-2030-0, www.mbiproducts.com
 2. Panel Shape: Flat.
 3. Mounting: Back mounted with manufacturer's standard metal clips, secured to substrate.
 4. Core: Manufacturer's standard Glass-fiber board or Mineral-fiber board.
 5. Edge Construction: Manufacturer's standard.
 6. Edge Profile: Square.
 7. Corner Detail in Elevation: Square with continuous edge profile indicated.
 8. Acoustical Performance: Sound absorption NRC of 1.07 @ 1000 Hz according to ASTM C423 for mounting according to ASTM E795.
 9. Nominal Overall Panel Thickness: 2 inches.
 10. Panel Width: 48 inches.
 11. Panel Height: 96 inches.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Core Materials: Manufacturer's standard.
1. Glass-Fiber Board: ASTM C612; of type standard with manufacturer; nominal density of 6 to 7 lb/cu. ft., unfaced, and dimensionally stable, molded rigid board; and with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: Maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 10, respectively; minimum density of 13 lb/cu. ft..

- B. Mounting Devices: As recommended by manufacturer to support weight of unit.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Standard Construction: Use manufacturer's standard construction unless otherwise indicated, with facing material applied to face, edges, and back border of dimensionally stable core and with rigid edges to reinforce panel perimeter against warpage and damage.
- B. Measure each area and establish layout of panels and joints of uniform size with balanced borders at opposite edges in sizes indicated on Drawings within a given area.
- C. Edge Hardening: For glass-fiber board and mineral-fiber board cores, chemically harden core edges and areas of core where mounting devices are attached.
- D. Dimensional Tolerances of Finished Units: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) for the following:
 - 1. Thickness.
 - 2. Edge straightness.
 - 3. Overall length and width.
 - 4. Squareness from corner to corner.
 - 5. Chords, radii, and diameters.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fabric, fabricated units, substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting unit performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units in locations indicated. Unless otherwise indicated, install units with edges in alignment with walls and other units, faces flush, and scribed to fit adjoining work accurately at borders and at penetrations.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installation of units using type of mounting devices indicated. Mount units securely to supporting substrate.

3.3 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Alignment with Surfaces: Plus or minus 1/16 inch in 48 inches, noncumulative.
- B. Variation from Level or Slope: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
- C. Variation of Joint Width: Not more than 1/16 inch wide from hairline or reveal line in 48 inches, noncumulative.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clip loose threads; remove pills and extraneous materials.
- B. Clean panels on completion of installation to remove dust and other foreign materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 098436

SECTION 099113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following exterior substrates:
 - 1. Concrete.
 - 2. Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
 - 3. Steel and iron.
 - 4. Galvanized metal.
 - 5. Wood.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
 - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat.

1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

D. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system.
 - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft..
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
2. Final approval of color selections will be based on benchmark samples.
 - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, provide additional samples of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.

B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 2. Coronado Paint; Benjamin Moore Company.
 3. Dulux Canada; a licensed product of PPG Architectural Coatings.
 4. PPG Paints.
 5. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to products listed in the Exterior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. Colors: Match Architect's samples and as indicated in a color schedule.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
1. Concrete: 12 percent.
 2. Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
 - 3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
 - 4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
 - 5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 - 6. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat, but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
 - 1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
 - a. Uninsulated metal piping.
 - b. Uninsulated plastic piping.
 - c. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - d. Metal conduit.
 - e. Plastic conduit.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
 - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
 - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Concrete Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces:
 - 1. Latex System MPI EXT 3.1A:
 - a. Prime Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.

- c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, (MPI Gloss Level 1), MPI Glass Level 4.
- B. CMU Substrates:
- 1. Latex System MPI EXT 4.2A:
 - a. Prime Coat: High Solids Pigmented Block filler, latex, interior/exterior.
 - b. Intermediate and Top Coat of Sherwin Williams Emerald Acrylic Latex..
- C. Steel and Iron Substrates:
- 1. Light Industrial Coating System:
 - a. Prime Coat two (2) coats: Primer, Sherwin Williams rust inhibitive, exterior oil base primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
- D. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:
- 1. Light industrial coating system:
 - a. Prime Coats: Same as steel and iron.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Same as steel and iron.
 - c. Topcoat: Same as steel and iron.
- E. Wood and Cementitious Composition Substrates
- 1. Latex system:
 - a. Prime Coat: Sherwin Williams Emerald primer. For rusted nailheads use Sherwin Williams oil based primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Sherwin Williams Emerald acrylic latex, satin.
 - c. Top Coat: Sherwin Williams Emerald Acrylic latex, satin.

END OF SECTION 099113

SECTION 099123 - INTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following interior substrates:
 - 1. Concrete.
 - 2. Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
 - 3. Steel and iron.
 - 4. Galvanized metal.
 - 5. Wood.
 - 6. Gypsum board.
 - 7. Cotton or canvas insulation covering.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- G. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.

2. Indicate VOC content.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.

1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

D. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system.
 - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft..
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
2. Final approval of color selections will be based on benchmark samples.
 - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, provide additional samples of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.
3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - 2. Coronado Paint; Benjamin Moore Company.
 - 3. Dulux Canada; a licensed product of PPG Architectural Coatings.
 - 4. PPG Paints.
 - 5. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to products listed in the Interior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
 - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. VOC Content: For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, paints and coatings shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction and the following VOC content limits:
 - 1. Flat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
 - 2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: 150 g/L.
 - 3. Dry-Fog Coatings: 400 g/L.
 - 4. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 200 g/L.
 - 5. Anticorrosive and Antirust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: 250 g/L.
 - 6. Zinc-Rich Industrial Maintenance Primers: 340 g/L.
 - 7. Pretreatment Wash Primers: 420 g/L.
 - 8. Shellacs, Clear: 730 g/L.
 - 9. Shellacs, Pigmented: 550 g/L.

- D. Low-Emitting Materials: Interior paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- E. Colors: Match Architect's samples and As indicated in a color schedule.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
 - 2. Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
 - 3. Wood: 15 percent.
 - 4. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- E. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- I. Wood Substrates:
 - 1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
 - 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
 - 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
 - 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.
- J. Cotton or Canvas Insulation Covering Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 - 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
 - 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 - 5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
 - 1. Paint the following work where exposed in equipment rooms:

- a. Uninsulated metal piping.
 - b. Uninsulated plastic piping.
 - c. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - d. Metal conduit.
 - e. Plastic conduit.
 - f. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
 - g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
 - h. Mechanical equipment indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.
2. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
- a. Equipment indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.
 - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
 - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
 - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - e. Metal conduit.
 - f. Plastic conduit.
 - g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
 - h. Other items as directed by Architect.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Concrete Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces:

1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 3.1M:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, interior, institutional low odor/VOC.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5).

- B. CMU Substrates:
 1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 4.2E:
 - a. Block Filler: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5).

- C. Steel Substrates:
 1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 5.1S:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, rust inhibitive, water based.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #147.
 2. Water-Based Dry-Fall System MPI INT 5.1CC:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, quick dry, for metal.

- D. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:
 1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 5.3N:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5).
 2. Water-Based Dry-Fall System MPI INT 5.3H:
 - a. Prime Coat: Dry fall, water based, for galvanized steel, matching topcoat.
 - b. Topcoat: Dry fall, water based, for galvanized steel, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1).

- E. Wood Substrates: Architectural woodwork and wood board paneling.
 1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 6.3V:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex, for interior wood.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5).

- F. Gypsum Board Substrates:
 1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 9.2M:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, interior, institutional low odor/VOC.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, matching topcoat.

- c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1). See schedule for locations.
- d. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC (MPI Gloss Level 3). See schedule for locations.
- e. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5).

G. Cotton or Canvas Insulation-Covering Substrates: Including pipe and duct coverings.

1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 10.1D:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC (MPI Gloss Level 3).

END OF SECTION 099123

SECTION 099300 - STAINING AND TRANSPARENT FINISHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Primers
2. Wood stains.
3. Transparent finishes.
4. For wood floors and trim.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for stains and transparent finishes on concrete floors.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.
2. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
3. Indicate VOC content.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors for each type of exposed finish.

C. Samples for Verification: Sample for each type of finish system and in each color and gloss of finish required on representative samples of actual wood substrates.

1. Size: **8 inches (200 mm)** long.
2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

D. Product List: Cross-reference to finish system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

1.3 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Extra Stock Material: Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Stains and Transparent Finishes: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. (3.8 L) of each material and color applied.

1.4 MOCKUPS

- A. Apply mockups of each finish system indicated and each color selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each type of finish system and substrate.
 - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m).
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
 2. Final approval of stain color selections will be based on mockups.
 - a. If preliminary stain color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional stain colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.
 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply finishes only when temperature of surfaces to be finished and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).
- B. Do not apply finishes when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, at temperatures of less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point, or to damp or wet surfaces.
- C. Do not apply exterior finishes in snow, rain, fog, or mist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each coating product from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Material Compatibility:

1. Provide materials for use within each coating system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

B. Stain Colors: Match Architect's samples.

2.3 PRIMERS

- A. Alkyd Sanding Sealer, Interior, Solvent Based, Clear: Solvent-based, quick-drying, clear, sandable alkyd sealer used on new interior wood surfaces that are to be top-coated with an alkyd varnish.

2.4 WOOD STAINS

- A. Stain, Interior, Semitransparent, for Interior Wood: Solvent-based, oil or oil/alkyd, semitransparent, pigmented stain for new interior wood surfaces that are to be finished with a clear varnish.

2.5 TRANSPARENT FINISHES

- A. Varnish, Interior Polyurethane, Moisture Cured, Satin: Solvent-based, moisture-curing polyurethane clear-coating with a gloss finish for interior wood surfaces,
 1. Gloss Level: Manufacturer's standard satin finish.
- B. Varnish, Interior, Polyurethane, Oil Modified, Satin: Solvent-based, one-component, oil-modified polyurethane clear gloss varnish for new or previously varnished or stained interior wood surfaces.
 1. Gloss Level: Manufacturer's standard satin finish.
- C. Varnish, Interior, Polyurethane, Oil Modified, Satin: Solvent-based, one-component, oil-modified polyurethane clear satin varnish for new or previously varnished or stained interior wood surfaces.
 1. Gloss and Sheen Level: Manufacturer's standard low-sheen finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Exterior Wood Substrates: 15 percent, when measured with an electronic moisture meter.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with finish application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Beginning finish application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and finishing.
 - 1. After completing finishing operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to be finished according to manufacturer's written instructions for each substrate condition and as specified.
 - 1. Remove dust, dirt, oil, and grease by washing with a detergent solution; rinse thoroughly with clean water and allow to dry. Remove grade stamps and pencil marks by sanding lightly. Remove loose wood fibers by brushing.
 - 2. Remove mildew by scrubbing with a commercial wash formulated for mildew removal and as recommended by stain manufacturer.
- C. Interior Wood Substrates:
 - 1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
 - 2. Apply wood filler paste to open-grain woods to produce smooth, glasslike finish.
 - 3. Sand surfaces exposed to view and dust off.
 - 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dry.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply finishes according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for finish and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Finish surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces.
 - 3. Do not apply finishes over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
- B. Apply finishes to produce surface films without cloudiness, holidays, lap marks, brush marks, runs, ropiness, or other surface imperfections.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing finish application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered materials by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from finish application. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced finished wood surfaces.

3.5 INTERIOR WOOD-FINISH-SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Wood Substrates, Wood Trim and Architectural Woodwork:
 - 1. Polyurethane Varnish over Stain System:
 - a. Stain Coat: Stain, semitransparent, for interior wood.
 - b. First Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane varnish matching topcoat.
 - c. Second Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane varnish matching topcoat.
 - d. Topcoat: Varnish, interior, polyurethane, oil modified, satin.
 - 2. Moisture-Cured Clear Polyurethane over Stain System:
 - a. Stain Coat: Stain, semitransparent, for interior wood.
 - b. First Intermediate Coat: Moisture-cured polyurethane matching topcoat.
 - c. Second Intermediate Coat: Moisture-cured polyurethane matching topcoat.
 - d. Topcoat: Varnish, polyurethane, moisture cured, satin.
- B. Wood Substrates, Traffic Surfaces, Including Floors and Stairs:
 - 1. Polyurethane Varnish over Stain System:
 - a. Stain Coat: Stain, semitransparent, for interior wood.
 - b. First Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane varnish matching topcoat.
 - c. Second Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane varnish matching topcoat.
 - d. Topcoat: Varnish, interior, polyurethane, oil modified, satin.
 - e. Prime Coat: Polyurethane varnish matching topcoat.
 - f. Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane varnish matching topcoat.
 - g. Topcoat: Varnish, interior, polyurethane, oil modified, gloss.
 - 2. Moisture-Cured Clear Polyurethane over Stain System:
 - a. Stain Coat: Stain, semitransparent, for interior wood.
 - b. First Intermediate Coat: Moisture-cured polyurethane matching topcoat.

- c. Second Intermediate Coat: Moisture-cured polyurethane matching topcoat.
- d. Topcoat: Varnish, polyurethane, moisture cured, satin.

END OF SECTION 099300

SECTION 099600 - HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of high-performance coating systems[.] on the following substrates:
 - 1. Exterior Substrates:
 - a. Glulam Arch.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
 - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product indicated.
- C. Product List: Cross-reference to coating system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Coatings: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each coating system indicated to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each coating system.
 - a. Wall and Ceiling Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft..
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
 - 2. Final approval of color selections will be based on benchmark samples.
 - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional benchmark samples of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be coated and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply coatings when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
- C. Do not apply exterior coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - 2. Coronado Paint; Benjamin Moore Company.

3. [PPG Paints.](#)
4. [Sherwin-Williams Company \(The\).](#)
5. [Sikkens Wood Coatings.](#)

B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to products listed in the Exterior High-Performance Coating Schedule or Interior High-Performance Coating Schedule for the coating category indicated.

2.2 HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS, GENERAL

A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."

B. Material Compatibility:

1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
3. Products shall be of same manufacturer for each coat in a coating system.

C. **VOC Content:** For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, paints and coatings shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction and the following VOC content limits:

1. Flat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: 150 g/L.
3. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 200 g/L.
4. Anticorrosive and Antirust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: 250 g/L.
5. Zinc-Rich Industrial Maintenance Primers: 340 g/L.
6. Pretreatment Wash Primers: 420 g/L.
7. Floor Coatings: 100 g/L.
8. Shellacs, Clear: 730 g/L.
9. Shellacs, Pigmented: 550 g/L.

D. Colors: As indicated in color schedule.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing of Coating Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:

1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample coating materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If coating materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying coatings if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying coating materials

from Project site, pay for testing, and recoat surfaces coated with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously coated surfaces if, on recoating with complying materials, the two coatings are incompatible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - 1. Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and coating systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce coating systems indicated.
- D. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content, alkalinity of surfaces, or alkalinity of mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply high-performance coatings according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for coating and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Coat surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, coat surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 - 3. Coat backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
 - 4. Do not apply coatings over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of the same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of finish coat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through final coat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform coating finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Produce sharp glass lines and color breaks.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test coatings for dry film thickness.
 - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore coated surfaces damaged by testing.
 - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied coating does not comply with coating manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with coating manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating operation. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.

3.6 HIGH-PERFORMANCE EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Steel Substrates (Gloss): Polyurethane, Pigmented, Over Epoxy Coating System, similar to MPI EXT 5.1H.
1. Primer: Cold curing epoxy primer, MPI #101.
 2. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, cold cured, glass MPI #77.
 3. First Top Coat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss MPI #72.
 4. Second Top Coat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss MPI #72.
 5. Surfaces: Exposed structural steel columns.

3.7 INTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATING SCHEDULE

- A. CMU Substrates:
1. Concrete Masonry Surfaces (Gloss): (Water Based Catalyzed Epoxy – High Humidity), similar to MPI INT 4.2G.
 2. Primer: Pigmented High Solids/High Build Epoxy Block Filler/Sealer, MPI #116.
 3. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, cold cured, glass, MPI #77.
 4. Top Coat: Epoxy cold cured, gloss MPI #77
 5. Surfaces: CMU walls in elevator shaft.

3.8 WOOD COATINGS

1. Surface: Glulam Arch

END OF SECTION 099600

10

DIVISION

SPECIALTIES

SECTION 101423.16 - ROOM-IDENTIFICATION PANEL SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes room-identification signs that are directly attached to the building.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible: In accordance with the accessibility standard.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish templates for placement of sign-anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers.
- B. Furnish templates for placement of electrical service embedded in permanent construction by other installers.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- C. Shop Drawings: For room-identification signs.
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
 - 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at least half size.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.
 - 1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.

- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of sign assembly showing all components and with the required finish(es), in manufacturer's standard size unless otherwise indicated and as follows:
 - 1. Room-Identification Signs: Full-size Sample.
 - 2. Variable Component Materials: Full-size Sample of each base material, character (letter, number, and graphic element) in each exposed color and finish not included in Samples above.
 - 3. Exposed Accessories: Full-size Sample of each accessory type.
 - 4. Full-size Samples, if approved, will be returned to Contractor for use in Project.
- F. Product Schedule: For room-identification signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Variable Component Materials: 12 replaceable text inserts and interchangeable characters (letters, numbers, and graphic elements) of each type.
 - 2. Tools: One set(s) of specialty tools for assembling signs and replacing variable sign components.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer of products or an entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
 - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
 - c. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design", the ABA standards of the Federal agency having jurisdiction and ICC A117.1.

2.2 ROOM-IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

- A. Room-Identification Sign: Sign system with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [ACE Sign Systems, Inc.](#)
 - b. [APCO Graphics, Inc.](#)
 - c. [ASI Sign Systems, Inc.](#)
 - d. [ASI-Modulex, Inc.](#)
 - e. [Best Sign Systems, Inc.](#)
 - f. [Gemini, Incorporated.](#)
 - g. [Innerface Sign Systems, Inc.](#)
 - h. [Inpro Corporation.](#)
 - i. [Mohawk Sign Systems](#)
 - j. [Nelson-Harkins Industries](#)
 - k. [Select Signs](#)
 - l. [Signature Signs, Inc.](#)
 - m. [Sign Solutions](#)
2. Laminated-Sheet Sign: Photopolymer face sheet with raised graphics laminated over subsurface graphics to acrylic backing sheet to produce composite sheet.
 - a. Composite-Sheet Thickness: 0.125 inch.
 - b. Surface-Applied Graphics: Applied vinyl film.
 - c. Subsurface Graphics: Color applied to back of face sheet
 - d. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
3. Sign-Panel Perimeter: Finish edges smooth.
 - a. Edge Condition: Square cut.
4. Frame: Unframed
5. Mounting: Surface mounted to wall with concealed anchors.
6. Text and Typeface: Accessible raised characters, Braille, and pictograms typeface as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range and variable content as scheduled. Finish raised characters to contrast with background color, and finish Braille to match background color.

2.3 SIGN MATERIALS

- A. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D4802, category as standard with manufacturer for each sign, Type UVF (UV filtering).
- B. Paints and Coatings for Sheet Materials: Inks, dyes, and paints that are recommended by manufacturer for optimum adherence to surface and are UV and water resistant for colors and exposure indicated.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
 - 1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
 - 2. Exposed Metal-Fastener Components, General:
 - a. Fabricated from same basic metal and finish of fastened sign unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Fastener Heads: Use screws and bolts with tamper-resistant slots unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Sign Mounting Fasteners:
 - a. Concealed Studs: Concealed (blind), threaded studs welded or brazed to back of sign material or screwed into back of sign assembly unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Adhesive: As recommended by sign manufacturer.
 - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less.
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
 - 1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
 - 2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
 - 3. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
 - 4. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.
- B. Subsurface-Applied Graphics: Apply graphics to back face of clear face-sheet material to produce precisely formed image. Image shall be free of rough edges.
- C. Signs with Changeable Message Capability: Fabricate signs to allow insertion of changeable messages as follows:

1. For slide-in changeable inserts, fabricate slot without burrs or constrictions that inhibit function. Furnish initial changeable insert. Subsequent changeable inserts are by Owner.

2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
 2. Install signs so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.
 3. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
- B. Mounting Methods:
 1. Concealed Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
 - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place sign in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
 - b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place sign in position and flush to surface, install washers and nuts on studs projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.
 2. Adhesive: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply linear beads or spots of adhesive symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign after cure without slippage. Keep adhesive away from edges to prevent adhesive extrusion as sign is applied and to prevent visibility of cured adhesive at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage adhesive. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.

- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

3.3 SIGN SCHEDULE

- A. Provide the types of signs and quantities indicated in the schedule below for interior exterior panel sign.
- B. Panel sign types are generally defined in the following graphics appended to this document section.
- C. The schedule below indicates the locations of interior and exterior panel signs, and quantities.
1. The symbol (*) Indicates posting of Occupant Load to be determined by Authority having Jurisdiction.

DOOR # / ROOM #	ROOM NAME	SIGN TYPE	PERMANENT TEXT	Placement
101	EVENT SPACE	O	MAXIMUM CAPACITY*	West Vestibule Wall
104	RESTROOM	R2	FAMILY RESTROOM	Right of Door
105	RESTROOM	R2	FAMILY RESTROOM	Left of Door
107	RESTROOM	R2	FAMILY RESTROOM	Right of Door
108	RESTROOM	R2	FAMILY RESTROOM	Left of Door
110	RESTROOM	R1	RESTROOM	Left of Door
202	RESTROOM	R2	FAMILY RESTROOM	Right of Door
201	BRIDAL SPACE	S	STAIRS	Column Left of Stair
201	BRIDAL SPACE	O	MAXIMUM CAPACITY*	Column Left of Stair
113	GROOMS LOUNGE	O	MAXIMUM CAPACITY*	Interior Right of Door



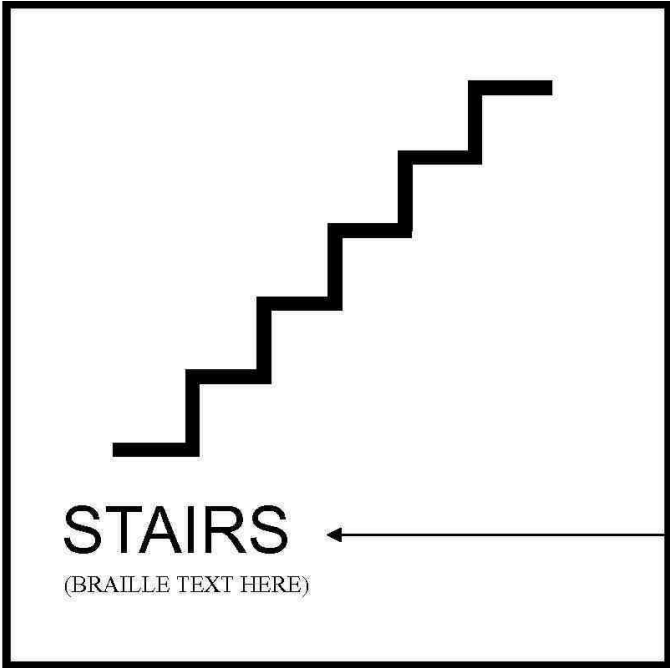
5/8" RAISED TEXT

SIGN TYPE "R1" - 8" X 8"

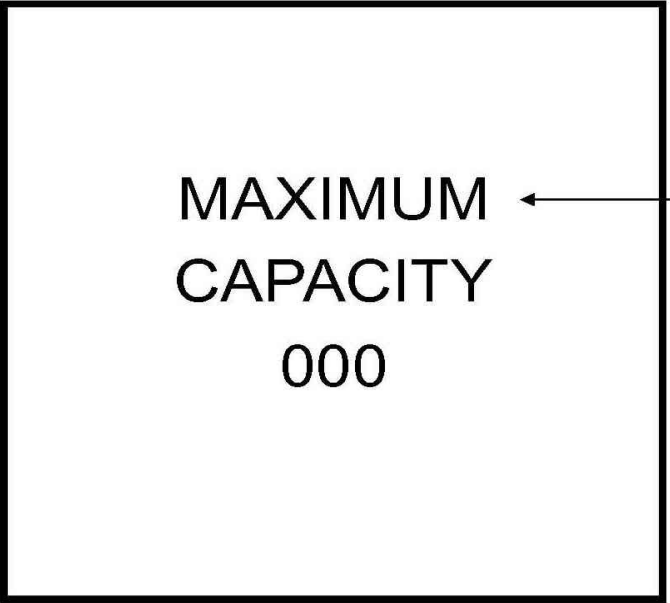


1/2" RAISED TEXT

SIGN TYPE "R2" - 8" X 8"



SIGN TYPE "S" - 8" X 8"



SIGN TYPE "O" - 8" X 8"

END OF SECTION 101423.16

SECTION 102800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Public-use washroom accessories.
2. Private-use bathroom accessories.
3. Childcare accessories.
4. Custodial accessories.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 102813.63 "Detention Toilet Accessories" for accessories designed for installation in detention facilities.

1.2 ALLOWANCES

- A. See Section 012100 "Allowances" for description of allowances affecting items specified in this Section.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

- A. See Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for description of unit prices affecting items specified in this Section.

1.4 ALTERNATES

- A. See Section 012300 "Alternates" for description of alternates affecting items specified in this Section.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

2. Include anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
 3. Include electrical characteristics.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each finish specified, full size.
1. Approved full-size Samples will be returned and may be used in the Work.
- C. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
 2. Identify accessories using designations indicated.
- D. Delegated Design Submittal: For grab bars.
1. Include structural design calculations indicating compliance with specified structural-performance requirements.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.8 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Mirrors: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace mirrors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, visible silver spoilage defects.
 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Toilet-Compartment Occupancy-Indicator Systems: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace toilet-compartment occupancy-indicator systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Hand Dryers: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace hand dryers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Structural Performance: Design accessories and fasteners to comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Grab Bars: Installed units are able to resist 250 lbf concentrated load applied in any direction and at any point.

2.2 WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of public-use washroom accessory from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Refer to equipment schedules on the drawings.

2.3 CHILDCARE ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain childcare accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Diaper-Changing Station: Refer to equipment schedule on drawings.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design: Koala Kare Products KB200
 - 2. Description: Horizontal unit that opens by folding down from stored position and with child-protection strap.
 - a. Engineered to support minimum of 250-lb static load when opened.
 - 3. Mounting: Surface mounted, with unit projecting not more than 4 inches from wall when closed.
 - 4. Operation: By pneumatic shock-absorbing mechanism.
 - 5. Material and Finish: HDPE with plastic-laminate insert in color selected by Architect.
 - 6. Liner Dispenser: Provide built-in dispenser for disposable sanitary liners.

2.4 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain custodial accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Custodial Mop and Broom Holder with Shelf:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design: Bobrick B-239 x 34
 - 2. Description: Unit with shelf, hooks, holders, and rod suspended beneath shelf.
 - 3. Length: 36 inches.
 - 4. Hooks: Four.
 - 5. Mop/Broom Holders: Three, spring-loaded, rubber hat, cam type.
 - 6. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
 - a. Shelf: Not less than nominal 0.05-inch-thick stainless steel.

- b. Rod: Approximately 1/4-inch-diameter stainless steel.

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, 0.031-inch-minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B19, flat products; ASTM B16/B16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B30, castings.
- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch-minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, with G60 hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A153/A153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit, unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer or specified in this Section, and tamper and theft resistant where exposed, and of stainless or galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- H. Mirrors: ASTM C1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of ten keys to Owner's representative.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
 - 1. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to comply with specified structural-performance requirements.
- C. Shower Seats: Install to comply with specified structural-performance requirements.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Clean and polish exposed surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 102800

SECTION 104413 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:
 - a. Portable fire extinguisher.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION CONFERENCE

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to fire-protection cabinets, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Schedules and coordination requirements.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed-, semirecessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.
 - 2. Show location of knockouts for hose valves.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire-protection cabinets.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish required.
- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on samples 6 by 6 inches square.

- F. Product Schedule: For fire-protection cabinets. Indicate whether recessed, semirecessed, or surface mounted. Coordinate final fire-protection cabinet schedule with fire-extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.
 - 1. Maintain integrity of fire-rated walls.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-protection cabinets, accessories, and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Fire-Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Babcock-Davis.
 - b. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
 - c. GMR International Equipment Corporation.
 - d. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
 - e. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
 - f. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
 - g. Modern Metal Products, Division of Technico Inc.
 - h. MOON American.
 - i. Nystrom, Inc.

- j. [Potter Roemer LLC.](#)
- k. [Strike First Corporation of America \(The\).](#)

- B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated and Two-hour fire rated.
 - 1. Fire-Rated Cabinets: Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls fabricated from 0.043-inch-thick cold-rolled steel sheet lined with minimum 5/8-inch-thick fire-barrier material. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
- C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.
 - 1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.
- D. Recessed Cabinet:
 - 1. Trimless with Hidden Flange: Flange of same metal and finish as box overlaps surrounding wall finish and is concealed from view by an overlapping door.
- E. Cabinet Trim Material: Steel sheet.
- F. Door Material: Stainless steel sheet.
- G. Door Style: Vertical duo panel with frame.
 - 1. Typical unless noted otherwise.
- H. Door Style: Solid opaque panel, frameless, with no exposed hinges.
 - 1. Gymnasium locations.
- I. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (clear).
- J. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
 - 1. Provide recessed door pull and friction latch.
 - 2. Provide concealed hinge, permitting door to open 180 degrees.
- K. Accessories:
 - 1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
 - 2. Door Lock: Cam lock that allows door to be opened during emergency by pulling sharply on door handle.
 - 3. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as directed by Architect.
 - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
 - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet door.
 - 2) Application Process: Pressure-sensitive vinyl letters.
 - 3) Lettering Color: Red.

- 4) Orientation: Vertical.

L. Materials:

1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
 - a. Finish: Baked enamel, TGIC polyester powder coat, HAA polyester powder coat, epoxy powder coat, or polyester/epoxy hybrid powder coat, complying with AAMA 2603.
 - b. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
 - a. Finish: ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 directional satin finish,.
3. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 1 (clear).

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
 1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
 2. Miter corners and grind smooth.
 3. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
 4. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
 5. Install door locks at factory.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for recessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated.
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is inadequate for recessed cabinets, provide semirecessed fire-protection cabinets.
 - 2. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.
- C. Identification:
 - 1. Apply decals and vinyl lettering at locations indicated.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 104413

SECTION 104416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to fire extinguishers including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Schedules and coordination requirements.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.
- B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire-extinguisher schedule with fire-protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10 when testing interval required by NFPA 10 is within the warranty period.
 - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
 2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amerex Corporation.
 - b. Ansul by Johnson Controls Company.
 - c. Babcock-Davis.
 - d. Badger Fire Protection.
 - e. Buckeye Fire Equipment Company.
 - f. Fire End & Croker Corporation.
 - g. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
 - h. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
 - i. Kidde Residential and Commercial Division.
 - j. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
 - k. MOON American.
 - l. Nystrom, Inc.
 - m. Potter Roemer LLC.
 - n. Pyro-Chem; Tyco Fire Suppression & Building Products.
 - o. Strike First Corporation of America (The).
 2. Source Limitations: Obtain fire extinguishers, fire-protection cabinets, and accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
 3. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
 4. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.

5. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B, and bar coding for documenting fire-extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.
- B. Wet-Chemical Type <Purple-K>: UL-rated 120 B-C, 20 lb. nominal capacity, with potassium bi-carbonate-based chemical in stainless-steel container; with pressure-indicating gage.
 1. Kitchen Areas.
- C. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type: UL-rated 4-A60-B-C, 10 lb. nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in manufacturer's standard enameled container.
 1. Factory powder coat finish – Red.

2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or black baked-enamel finish.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Amerex Corporation.](#)
 - b. [Ansul by Johnson Controls Company.](#)
 - c. [Babcock-Davis.](#)
 - d. [Badger Fire Protection.](#)
 - e. [Buckeye Fire Equipment Company.](#)
 - f. [Fire End & Croker Corporation.](#)
 - g. [Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.](#)
 - h. [JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.](#)
 - i. [Kidde Residential and Commercial Division.](#)
 - j. [Larsens Manufacturing Company.](#)
 - k. [Nystrom, Inc.](#)
 - l. [Potter Roemer LLC.](#)
 - m. [Pyro-Chem; Tyco Fire Suppression & Building Products.](#)
 - n. [Strike First Corporation of America \(The\).](#)
 2. Source Limitations: Obtain mounting brackets and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.
 1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.
 - a. Orientation: Vertical.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
 - 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Mounting Brackets: Top of fire extinguisher to be at 42 inches above finished floor.
- B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

END OF SECTION 104416

Section 108113
BIRD CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes:
 - a. **Avishock™** electric bird deterrent shock track to prevent damage from droppings and nesting materials on exposed or protected ledges where birds perch, roost, or nest.

1.2 CONFORMANCE SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitute Products: No substitute products will be accepted.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's samples, catalog cuts, shop sketches and other descriptive materials.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Single Source Responsibility: All primary products specified in this section will be supplied by a single manufacturer.
- B. Obtain technical literature from the Avishock™ manufacturer, telephone consultation and plan/photograph evaluation.
- C. Utilize labor or Bird-X authorized installers who are certified in Bird-X product installations. Proof of certification is required.

1.5 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protect Avishock™ and hardware system from damage before, during and after installation.
- B. If damage occurs to Avihsock™, make all replacements immediately.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Avishock™ Track: 5-year minimum warranty against material defects and workmanship.
- B. Avishock™ Charger Systems: 2-year minimum warranty

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1. BASIS OF DESIGN MANUFACTURER

- A. **Bird-X, Inc.**
845 N. Larch Ave, Suite #2
Elmhurst, IL. 60126
Phone: 800.662.5021
Fax: 312.226.2480
Email: solutions@bird-X.com
www.bird-x.com

2.2. AVISHOCK™ Electric Bird Deterrent Shock Track

A. Avishock™ Track

1. Flexible UV-stabilized PVC/Carbon base with **copper** conduction strips protected from weather and dirt.
2. Height: 0.31" at highest point
3. Width: 1.42"
4. Length: 65' rolls
5. Base Strip: Flexible 360° bend.
6. Color: black, stone, grey, brick red
7. Number of rows: As determined by the manufacturer based on project conditions
8. Mounting Systems: As determined by the manufacturer based on project conditions.

B. Recommended Avishock™ Charger Systems

1. 110V AC Battery Charger (SHK-C-110)

- a. Indoor/Outdoor Installation: Indoor only
- b. Range: 5 miles
- c. Joules Low: 0.65
- d. Joules High: 2.0+
- e. Power Source: 110v-120v AC
- f. Fence Voltage-Open Circuit: 9,500
- g. Fence Voltage-500 ohm: 2,450
- h. Display: Operational Light

2. Solar Battery Charger (SHK-C-SOL)

- a. Indoor/Outdoor Installation: Outdoor only
- b. Range: 25 Miles
- c. Joules Low: 0.75
- d. Joules High: 1.8+
- e. Power Source: 6V Solar/Battery
- f. Fence Voltage-Open Circuit: 11,500
- g. Fence Voltage-500 ohm: 2,650
- h. Display Performance Meter - Analog

C. Connectors

1. Straight, Corner, and Jump connectors

D. Lead wire

1. Color: Brown, Black
2. Length: 65 ft.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine installation area. Notify Owner's Agent of detrimental work conditions.
- B. Do not proceed until conditions are corrected.

3.2 AREA AND SURFACE PREPERATION

- A. Remove existing bird droppings in a safe manner. Large quantities shall be removed and disposed. Work areas shall be cleaned, and repair work shall be done in areas, which will be excluded by Avishock™.
- B. Remove or repair articles that may damage the Avishock™ after installation.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Avishock™ components are provided in finished form and do not require any assembly.
- B. It is necessary to follow the manufacturer's installation guide to ensure that the track is wired to an energizer in the appropriate manner.
- C. Examine installation area. Notify architect of detrimental work conditions. Do not proceed until conditions are corrected.
- D. Clean area before installation
- E. Position the Energizer near power source
- F. Prepare Intended Track Location
- G. Install jumper bases
- H. Layout track
- I. Glue to surface
- J. Attach connectors
- K. Attach warning signs
- L. Connect Lead wire to track
- M. Connect lead wire to energizer

3.4 INSPECTION

- A. Visually inspect Avishock™ for poor adherence to mounting surfaces, or other problems related to poor installation or surface preparation. Be sure all indicator lights are illuminated
- B. Repair as necessary immediately.

1 1

EQUIPMENT

DIVISION

SECTION 114000- FOOD SERVICE EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Modular Ice Machine.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, and finishes for each appliance.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranties: For manufacturers' special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each residential appliance to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Maintains, within 50 miles of Project site, a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranties: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace appliances or components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion and Five years for compressor and air-cooled condenser.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain appliances from single source.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Appliances: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 ICE MAKER

- A. Ice Cube Machine:
 - 1. Manitowac iT0450
 - a. Ice Maker, 30"W, air-cooled, self-contained condenser, production capacity up to 470 lb/24 hours at 70°/50° (358 lb AHRI certified at 90°/70°), stainless steel finish, compressed cubelet style ice, Advanced CleanCycle24™, R-404A refrigerant, 208-230v/60/1-ph, 5.6 amps, or 115v/60/1-ph 11.9 amps, NSF, UL
 - b. Warranty: 3-Year parts and labor on entire machine.
 - c. Warranty: 5-Year parts on compressor and air-cooled condenser.
 - d. Bin, 30"W, top-hinged front-opening door, 365-lb ice storage capacity, for top-mounted ice makers, stainless steel exterior, painted legs included, protected with Antimicrobial Agent, ETL, ETL-Sanitation.
 - e. Water Filtration System, single configuration.
 - f. Warranty: 1-Year on entire water filtration system and replaceable elements, standard.
 - g. Operation: Programmable ice production
 - h. Dimensions: 30" w x 34" d x 59.5" h.

2.4 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, power connections, and other conditions affecting installation and performance of residential appliances.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before appliance installation.
- C. Examine walls where appliance will be installed.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install appliances according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Freestanding Equipment: Place units in final locations after finishes have been completed in each area. Verify that clearances are adequate to properly operate equipment.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Perform visual, mechanical, and electrical inspection and testing for each appliance according to manufacturers' written recommendations. Certify compliance with each manufacturer's appliance-performance parameters.
 - 2. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: After installation, start units to confirm proper operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and components.
- B. An appliance will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain residential appliances.

END OF SECTION 113013

12

DIVISION

FURNISHINGS

SECTION 122413 – ROLLER WINDOW SHADES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Manually operated roller shades with single rollers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, features, finishes, and operating instructions for roller shades.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for roller shades, including shadeband materials, their orientation to rollers, and their seam and batten locations.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 10 inches long.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type and color of shadeband material.
 - 1. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of roller shade.
 - 1. Shadeband Material: Not less than 10 inches square. Mark interior face of material if applicable.
 - 2. Roller Shade: Full-size operating unit, not less than 16 inches wide by 36 inches long for each type of roller shade indicated.
 - 3. Installation Accessories: Full-size unit, not less than 10 inches long.
- F. Product Schedule: For roller shades. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of shadeband material.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roller shades to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Roller Shades: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of quantity installed for each size, color, and shadeband material indicated, but no fewer than two units.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator and Installer of products with minimum 10 years of experience with installations in projects of similar size.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roller shades in factory packages, marked with manufacturer, product name, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install roller shades until construction and finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and dry and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Field Measurements: Where roller shades are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operating hardware of operable glazed units through entire operating range. Notify Architect of installation conditions that vary from Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain roller shades from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 MANUALLY OPERATED SHADES WITH SINGLE ROLLERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. MechoSystems (Basis of Design) /Mecho/7 System
 2. Draper, Inc.
- B. Chain-and-Clutch Operating Mechanisms: With continuous-loop bead chain and clutch that stops shade movement when bead chain is released; permanently adjusted and lubricated.
1. Bead Chains: Stainless steel.
 - a. Loop Length: Full length of roller shade.
 - b. Limit Stops: Provide upper and lower ball stops.
 - c. Chain-Retainer Type: Chain tensioner, jamb mounted.
 2. Spring Lift-Assist Mechanisms: Manufacturer's standard for balancing roller shade weight and for lifting heavy roller shades.
 - a. Provide for shadebands that weigh more than 20 lb or for shades as recommended by manufacturer, whichever criterion is more stringent.
- C. Rollers: Corrosion-resistant steel or extruded-aluminum tubes of diameters and wall thicknesses required to accommodate operating mechanisms and weights and widths of shadebands indicated without deflection. Provide with permanently lubricated drive-end assemblies and idle-end assemblies designed to facilitate removal of shadebands for service.
1. Roller Drive-End Location: Universal drive for regular or reverse drive.
 2. Direction of Shadeband Roll: Reverse, from front (interior face) of roller.
 3. Shadeband-to-Roller Attachment: Removable spline fitting into integral channel in tube.
- D. Mounting Hardware: Brackets or endcaps, corrosion resistant and compatible with roller assembly, operating mechanism, installation accessories, and mounting location and conditions indicated.
1. Window jamb mounting.
 2. Span up to 8'-0" in one (1) unit.
- E. Roller-Coupling Assemblies: Coordinated with operating mechanism and designed to join up to three inline rollers into a multiband shade that is operated by one roller drive-end assembly.
- F. Shadebands:
1. Shadeband Material: Light-filtering fabric.
 2. Shadeband Bottom (Hem) Bar: Steel or extruded aluminum.
 - a. Type: Enclosed in sealed pocket of shadeband material.
 - b. Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- G. Installation Accessories:
1. Front Fascia: Aluminum extrusion that conceals front and underside of roller and operating mechanism and attaches to roller endcaps without exposed fasteners.
 - a. Shape: L-shaped.

- b. Height: Manufacturer's standard height required to conceal roller and shadeband assembly when shade is fully open, but not less than 3 inches.
- 2. Endcap Covers: To cover exposed endcaps.
- 3. Installation Accessories Color and Finish: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 SHADEBAND MATERIALS

- A. Shadeband Material Flame-Resistance Rating: Comply with NFPA 701. Testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- B. Light-Filtering Fabric: Woven fabric, stain and fade resistant.
 - 1. Source: Roller shade manufacturer.
 - 2. Type: Soho Series.
 - 3. Weave: Basketweave.
 - 4. Thickness: 0.024".
 - 5. Weight: 12.68 oz/yd.
 - 6. Roll Width: 126 inches.
 - 7. Orientation on Shadeband: Railroaded.
 - 8. Openness Factor: 5 percent.
 - 9. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 ROLLER SHADE FABRICATION

- A. Product Safety Standard: Fabricate roller shades to comply with WCMA A 100.1, including requirements for flexible, chain-loop devices; lead content of components; and warning labels.
- B. Unit Sizes: Fabricate units in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F:
 - 1. Outside of Jamb Installation: Width and length as indicated, with terminations between shades of end-to-end installations at centerlines of mullion or other defined vertical separations between openings.
- C. Shadeband Fabrication: Fabricate shadebands without battens or seams to extent possible, except as follows:
 - 1. Vertical Shades: Where width-to-length ratio of shadeband is equal to or greater than 1:4, provide battens and seams at uniform spacings along shadeband length to ensure shadeband tracking and alignment through its full range of movement without distortion of the material.
 - 2. Railroaded Materials: Railroad material where material roll width is less than the required width of shadeband and where indicated. Provide battens and seams as required by railroaded material to produce shadebands with full roll-width panel(s) plus, if required, one partial roll-width panel located at top of shadeband.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 ROLLER SHADE INSTALLATION

- A. Install roller shades level, plumb, and aligned with adjacent units according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Roller Shade Locations: As indicated on Drawings.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and balance roller shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean roller shade surfaces, after installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that roller shades are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Replace damaged roller shades that cannot be repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 122413

SECTION 123216 - MANUFACTURED PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD CASEWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Plastic-laminate-clad casework.
 - 2. ADA sink bowl and trap enclosure.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Definitions in the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" apply to the Work of this Section.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that casework can be supported and installed as indicated.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For plastic-laminate-clad casework.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachments to other work including blocking and reinforcements required for installation.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For casework and hardware finishes.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finished surfaces during handling and installation with protective covering of polyethylene film or other suitable material.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install casework until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels planned for building occupants during remainder of construction period. Maintain temperature and relative humidity during remainder of construction period in range recommended for Project location by the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
- B. Established Dimensions: Where casework is indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where casework is to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.
- C. Field Measurements: Where casework is indicated to fit to existing construction, verify dimensions of existing construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Provide fillers and scribes to allow for trimming and fitting.
- D. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support casework by field measurements before enclosing them, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of casework that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Delamination of components or other failures of glue bond.
 - b. Warping of components.
 - c. Failure of operating hardware.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CASEWORK

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for grades of casework indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
 - 1. Grade: Custom.

2.2 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD CASEWORK

- A. Design: Frameless cabinet construction with the following door and drawer-front style:
 - 1. Flush overlay.
- B. Exposed Materials:
 - 1. Plastic-Laminate Grade: VGS.

- a. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Edgebanding: PVC.
 - a. PVC Edgebanding Color: As selected by Architect from casework manufacturer's full range.
 - b. 3mm thick at doors and fronts.
 - c. 1mm thick elsewhere.
- C. Semiexposed Materials:
 1. Plastic Laminate: Grade VGS unless otherwise indicated. Provide plastic laminate for semiexposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - b. Provide plastic laminate of same grade as exposed surfaces for interior faces of doors and drawer fronts and other locations where opposite side of component is exposed.
 2. Hardboard: Use only for cabinet backs where exterior side of back is not exposed.
 3. Metal for Steel Drawer Pans: Cold-rolled, carbon-steel sheet complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M; matte finish; suitable for exposed applications.
 4. Unless otherwise indicated, provide specified edgebanding on all semiexposed edges.
- D. Concealed Materials:
 1. Plastic Laminate: Grade BKL.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Composite Wood Products: Products shall be made without urea formaldehyde.
- B. Composite Wood Products: Products shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Maximum Moisture Content for Lumber: 7 percent for hardwood and 12 percent for softwood.
- D. Hardwood Plywood: HPVA HP-1, particleboard core except where veneer core is indicated.
- E. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1.
- F. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
- G. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard, ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
- H. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4, Class 1 tempered.
- I. Plastic Laminate: High-pressure decorative laminate complying with NEMA LD 3.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Formica Corporation.
 - b. Nevamar; a Panolam Industries International, Inc. brand.

c. Wilsonart LLC.

2. Source Limitations: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

J. PVC Edgebanding for Plastic Laminate: Rigid PVC extrusions, through color with satin finish, 3.0 mm thick at doors and drawer fronts, 1.0 mm thick elsewhere.

K. Thermoset Decorative Panels: Particleboard or MDF finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper and complying with requirements of NEMA LD 3, Grade VGL, for Test Methods 3.3, 3.4, 3.6, 3.8, and 3.10.

1. Edgebanding for Thermoset Decorative Panels: PVC or polyester edgebanding matching thermoset decorative panels.

L. Adhesives: Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.

M. Adhesives: Use adhesives that meet the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.4 FABRICATION

A. Plastic-Laminate-Clad Cabinet Construction: As required by referenced quality standard, but not less than the following:

1. Bottoms and Ends of Cabinets, and Tops of Wall Cabinets and Tall Cabinets: 3/4-inch particleboard.
2. Shelves: 1-inch-thick particleboard.
3. Backs of Casework: 1/2-inch-thick particleboard or MDF where exposed, 1/4-inch-thick tempered hardboard dadoed into sides, bottoms, and tops where not exposed.
4. Drawer Fronts: 3/4-inch particleboard.
5. Drawer Sides and Backs: 1/2-inch-thick particleboard or 5/8" MDF, with glued dovetail or multiple-dowel joints.
6. Drawer Bottoms: Fully captured construction 1/4-inch-thick hardwood plywood glued and dadoed into front, back, and sides of drawers. Use 1/2-inch material for drawers more than 24 inches wide.
7. Doors: 3/4 inch thick, with particleboard or MDF cores.

B. Filler Strips: Provide as needed to close spaces between casework and walls, ceilings, and equipment. Fabricate from same material and with same finish as casework.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, location of framing and reinforcements, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install casework to comply with same quality standard grade as item to be installed.
- B. Install casework level, plumb, and true in line; shim as required using concealed shims. Where casework abuts other finished work, apply filler strips and scribe for accurate fit, with fasteners concealed where practical.

3.3 CLEANING

- A. Repair or remove and replace defective work as directed on completion of installation.
- B. Clean finished surfaces, touch up as required, and remove or refinish damaged or soiled areas to match original factory finish, as approved by Architect.

END OF SECTION 123216

SECTION 123530 - RESIDENTIAL CASEWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Custom kitchen cabinets.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking for anchoring casework.
2. Section 123640 "Stone Countertops."
3. Section 123661.16 "Solid Surfacing Countertops."
4. Section 123661.19 "Quartz Agglomerate Countertops."

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Concealed Surfaces of Casework: Surfaces not usually visible after installation, including sleepers, web frames, dust panels, bottoms of drawers, and ends of casework installed directly against and completely concealed by walls or other casework, and tops of wall cabinets and utility cabinets.
- B. Exposed Surfaces of Casework: Surfaces visible when doors and drawers are closed, including visible surfaces in open cabinets or behind glass doors.
- C. Semiexposed Surfaces of Casework: Surfaces behind opaque doors or drawer fronts, including interior faces of doors, interiors and sides of drawers, and bottoms of wall cabinets.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of blocking and reinforcement in partitions for support of casework.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, and profiles and finishes for casework.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, profiles, and finishes for hardware.

B. Shop Drawings: For residential casework.

1. Include plans, elevations, details, and attachments to other work.
2. Show materials, finishes, filler panels, and hardware.
3. Indicate manufacturer's catalog numbers for casework.

C. Samples: For casework and hardware finishes.

D. Samples for Verification: For the following:

1. Casework Finishes: **8-by-10-inch (200-by-250-mm)** Samples for each type of casework finish.
2. Hardware: One full-size Sample of each type of exposed hardware in each finish required.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.

B. Product Certificates: For casework.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install casework until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Established Dimensions: Where casework is indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where casework is to fit. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions. Provide fillers and scribes to allow for trimming and fitting.
- C. Field Measurements: Where casework is indicated to fit to existing construction, verify dimensions of existing construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Provide fillers and scribes to allow for trimming and fitting.
- D. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support casework by field measurements before enclosing them, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CABINETS

A. Quality Standard: Provide cabinets that comply with KCMA A161.1.

1. KCMA Certification: Provide cabinets with KCMA's "Certified Cabinet" seal affixed in a semiexposed location of each unit and showing compliance with KCMA A161.1

B. Door and Drawer Face Style: Flush overlay; faces cover cabinet fronts.

1. Door and Drawer Fronts:
 - a. Custom solid-wood stiles and rails, **3/4 inch (19 mm)** thick, with **3/8-inch- (9.6 mm-)** thick, with T&G V-groove panels as shown on drawings, including diagonal cross buck.
- C. Cabinet Style: Face frame.
 1. Face Frames:
 - a. **3/4-by-1-5/8-inch (19-by-41-mm)** solid wood with glued mortise and tenon or doweled joints.
 - b. **Semiexposed surfaces.**
- D. Exposed Cabinet End Finish: Wood veneer matching cabinet fronts.
- E. Cabinet End Construction: **5/8-inch- (16-mm-)** thick particleboard or **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** thick plywood.
- F. Cabinet Tops and Bottoms: **5/8-inch- (16-mm-)** thick particleboard or **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** thick plywood.
 1. Fully support in rabbets in and secure to end panels, front frame, and back rail.
- G. Back, Top, and Bottom Rails: **3/4-by-2-1/2-inch (19-by-63-mm)** solid wood, interlocking with end panels and rabbeted to receive top and bottom panels. Back rails secured under pressure with glue and with mechanical fasteners.
- H. Wall-Hung-Unit Back Panels: **3/16-inch- (4.8-mm-)** thick plywood fastened to rear edge of end panels and to top and bottom rails.
- I. Base-Unit Back Panels: **3/16-inch- (4.8-mm-)** thick plywood fastened to rear edge of end panels and to top and bottom rails.
- J. Front Frame Drawer Rails: **3/4-by-1-1/4-inch (19-by-32-mm)** solid wood mortised and fastened into face frame.
- K. Drawers: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.
 1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners or glued dovetail joints.
 2. Subfronts, Backs, and Sides: **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** thick solid wood or **3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-)** thick plywood.
 3. Bottoms: **1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-)** thick plywood.
- L. Shelves: **5/8-inch- (16-mm-)** thick particleboard or **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** thick plywood.
- M. Joinery: Rabbet backs flush into end panels and secure with concealed mechanical fasteners. Connect tops and bottoms of wall cabinets and bottoms and stretchers of base cabinets to ends and dividers with mechanical fasteners. Rabbet tops, bottoms, and backs into end panels.

- N. Factory Finishing: Finish cabinets at factory.

2.2 CABINET MATERIALS

- A. Hardwood Lumber: Kiln dried to 7 percent moisture content.
- B. Softwood Lumber: Kiln dried to 10 percent moisture content.
- C. Hardwood Plywood: HPVA HP-1.
- D. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
- E. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard, ANSI A208.2, Grade MD.
- F. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4, Class 1 tempered.
- G. Exposed Materials:
 - 1. Exposed Wood Species: Hickory with some knots.
 - a. Select materials for compatible color and grain. Do not use two adjacent exposed surfaces that are noticeably dissimilar in color, grain, figure, or natural character markings.
 - b. Staining and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 2. Solid Wood: Clear hardwood lumber of species indicated, free of defects.
 - 3. Plywood: Hardwood plywood with face veneer of species indicated, with Grade A faces and Grade C backs of same species as faces.
- H. Semiexposed Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:
 - 1. Solid Wood: Sound hardwood lumber, selected to eliminate appearance defects. Same species as exposed surfaces or stained to be compatible with exposed surfaces.
 - 2. Plywood: Hardwood plywood with Grade C faces and not less than Grade 3 backs of same species as faces. Face veneers of same species as exposed surfaces or stained to be compatible with exposed surfaces.
- I. Concealed Materials: Solid wood or plywood, of any hardwood or softwood species, with no defects affecting strength or utility; particleboard; MDF; or hardboard.

2.3 CABINET HARDWARE

- A. General: Manufacturer's custom units complying with BHMA A156.9, of type, size, style, material, and finish as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Door Pulls: Rejuvenation, Vernon, Mushroom cabinet knob, oil-rubbed bronze.
- C. Drawer Pulls: Rejuvenation, Vernon, Mushroom cabinet knob, oil-rubbed bronze
- D. Hinges: Concealed European-style, self-closing hinges.

- E. Drawer Guides: Epoxy-coated-metal, self-closing drawer guides; designed to prevent rebound when drawers are closed; with nylon-tired, ball-bearing rollers; and complying with BHMA A156.9, Type B05011 or Type B05091.
- F. Door and Drawer Bumpers: Self-adhering, clear silicone rubber.
 - 1. Doors: Provide one bumper at top and bottom of closing edge of each swinging door.
 - 2. Drawers: Provide one bumper on back side of drawer front at each corner.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, location of framing and reinforcements, and other conditions affecting performance of casework.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install casework with no variations in adjoining surfaces; use concealed shims. Where casework abuts other finished work, scribe and cut for accurate fit. Provide filler strips, scribe strips, and moldings in finish to match casework.
- B. Install casework without distortion so doors and drawers fit the openings, are aligned, and are uniformly spaced. Complete installation of hardware and accessories as indicated.
- C. Install casework level and plumb to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 8 feet (3 mm in 2.4 m)**.
- D. Fasten casework to adjacent units and to backing.
 - 1. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than **16 inches (400 mm)** o.c.
 - a. Fasteners: No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for not less than **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust hardware so doors and drawers are centered in openings and operate smoothly without warp or bind. Lubricate operating hardware as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Clean casework on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up as required to restore damaged or soiled areas to match original factory finish, as approved by Architect.

END OF SECTION 123530

SECTION 123661.16 - SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Solid surface material countertops.
 - 2. Solid surface material backsplashes.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For countertop materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.
 - 1. Show locations and details of joints.
 - 2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of material exposed to view.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For solid surface material countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOLID SURFACE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous-filled plastic resin complying with ICPA SS-1.
 - 1. Type: Provide Standard type unless Special Purpose type is indicated.
 - 2. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
- C. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

2.2 COUNTERTOP FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions and to the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
 - 1. Grade: Premium.
- B. Configuration:
 - 1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top.
 - 2. Backsplash: Straight, slightly eased at corner.
- C. Countertops: 1/4-inch-thick, solid surface material laminated to 3/4-inch-thick particleboard with exposed edges built up with 3/4-inch-thick, solid surface material.
- D. Backsplashes: 1/2-inch-thick, solid surface material with wood-trimmed edges.
- E. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges[**and backsplashes**] unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
 - 1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.
 - 2. Install integral sink bowls in countertops in the shop.
- F. Joints: Fabricate countertops without joints.
- G. Joints: Fabricate countertops in sections for joining in field, with joints at locations indicated.
 - 1. Joint Locations: Not within 18 inches of a sink or cooktop and not where a countertop section less than 36 inches long would result, unless unavoidable.

2. Splined Joints: Accurately cut kerfs in edges at joints for insertion of metal splines to maintain alignment of surfaces at joints. Make width of cuts slightly more than thickness of splines to provide snug fit.

H. Cutouts and Holes:

1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures[**in shop**] using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
 - a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting 3/16 inch into fixture opening.
 - b. Provide vertical edges, rounded to 3/8-inch radius at juncture of cutout edges with top surface of countertop, slightly eased at bottom, and projecting 3/16 inch into fixture opening.
 - c. Provide 3/4-inch full bullnose edges projecting 3/8 inch into fixture opening.
2. Counter-Mounted Plumbing Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for counter-mounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.
3. Fittings: Drill countertops in shop for plumbing fittings, undercounter soap dispensers, and similar items.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by solid surface material manufacturer.
- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive solid surface material countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet, 1/4 inch maximum. Do not exceed 1/64-inch difference between planes of adjacent units.
- B. Fasten countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- C. Fasten subtops to cabinets by screwing through subtops into cornerblocks of base cabinets. Shim as needed to align subtops in a level plane.

- D. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- E. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
 - 1. Install metal splines in kerfs in countertop edges at joints where indicated. Fill kerfs with adhesive before inserting splines and remove excess immediately after adjoining units are drawn into position.
 - 2. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.
- F. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- G. Install aprons to backing and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Fasten by screwing through backing. Pre-drill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer.
- H. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
 - 1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard subtops by saturating with varnish.
- I. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION 123661.16

SECTION 123661.19 - QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Quartz agglomerate countertops.
 - 2. Quartz agglomerate backsplashes.
 - 3. Quartz agglomerate end splashes.
 - 4. Quartz agglomerate apron fronts.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For countertop materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.
 - 1. Show locations and details of joints.
 - 2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
 - 1. Countertop material, 6 inches square.
 - 2. One full-size quartz agglomerate countertop, with front edge and backsplash, 8 by 10 inches, of construction and in configuration specified.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For quartz agglomerate countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and execution.

1. Build mockup of typical countertop as indicated on Drawings.
2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Quartz Agglomerate: Solid sheets consisting of quartz aggregates bound together with a matrix of polymers, resins, and pigment and complying with ISFA 3-01.
 1. Colors and Patterns: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
- B. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
- C. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops according to quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions and the AWI/AWMA/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
 1. Grade: Premium.
- B. Countertops: 1/2-inch- thick, quartz agglomerate with front edge built up with same material.
- C. Backsplashes: 1/2-inch- thick, quartz agglomerate.
- D. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges unless otherwise indicated. Comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
 1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.
- E. Joints:
 1. Fabricate countertops without joints to greatest extent possible.
 - a. Joint Locations: Not within 18 inches of a sink or cooktop and not where a countertop section less than 36 inches long would result, unless unavoidable.
 - b. Joint Type, Bonded: 1/32 inch or less in width.

- c. Splined Joints: Accurately cut kerfs in edges at joints for insertion of metal splines to maintain alignment of surfaces at joints. Make width of cuts slightly more than thickness of splines to provide snug fit. Provide at least three splines in each joint.

F. Cutouts and Holes:

1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures in shop using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
 - a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting 3/16 inch into fixture opening.
2. Counter-Mounted Plumbing Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for counter-mounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.
3. Fittings: Drill countertops in shop for plumbing fittings, undercounter soap dispensers, and similar items.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by quartz agglomerate manufacturer.
- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive quartz agglomerate countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet, 1/4 inch maximum. Do not exceed 1/64-inch difference between planes of adjacent units.
- B. Fasten countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Pre-drill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- C. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
 1. Install metal splines in kerfs in countertop edges at joints. Fill kerfs with adhesive before inserting splines and remove excess immediately after adjoining units are drawn into position.

- D. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- E. Install aprons to backing and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Fasten by screwing through backing. Pre-drill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer.
- F. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
 - 1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard subtops by saturating with varnish.
- G. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION 123661.19

SECTION 124813 - ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Resilient-tile entrance mats.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of recesses in concrete to receive floor mats and frames.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for floor mats and frames.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Items penetrating floor mats and frames, including door control devices.
 - 2. Divisions between mat sections.
 - 3. Perimeter floor moldings.
- C. Samples: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes:
 - 1. Floor Mat: Resilient-Tile entrance mat.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For floor mats and frames to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Resilient-Tile Entrance Mats: Full-size tile units equal to 2 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than 10 units.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS AND FRAMES, GENERAL

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the DOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" and ICC A117.1.

2.2 RESILIENT-TILE ENTRANCE MATS

- A. Products: Refer to the Finish Schedule in the Drawings for manufacturers and products.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Floor Mats: Shop fabricate units to greatest extent possible in sizes indicated. Unless otherwise indicated, provide single unit for each mat installation; do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum sizes for units that are removed for maintenance and cleaning. Where joints in mats are necessary, space symmetrically and away from normal traffic lanes. Miter corner joints in framing elements with hairline joints or provide prefabricated corner units without joints.
- B. Surface-Mounted Frames: As indicated for permanent surface-mounted installation, complete with corner connectors, splice plates or connecting pins, and postinstalled expansion anchors.
- C. Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum frames that contact cementitious material with manufacturer's standard protective coating.

2.4 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and floor conditions for compliance with requirements for location, sizes, and other conditions affecting installation of floor mats and frames.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PROTECTION

- A. After completing frame installation and concrete work, provide temporary filler of plywood or fiberboard in recesses and cover frames with plywood protective flooring. Maintain protection until construction traffic has ended and Project is near Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 124813

14

DIVISION

CONVEYING EQUIPMENT

SECTION 142123.16 - MACHINE ROOM-LESS ELECTRIC TRACTION PASSENGER ELEVATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Machine-room-less electric traction elevators.
2. This is an option to the machine-room less hydraulic elevator in Section 142400.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 011000 "Summary" for purchase contract for elevators negotiated by Owner and assigned to Contractor.
2. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary use of elevators for construction purposes.
3. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for setting sleeves, inserts, and anchoring devices in concrete.
4. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for setting sleeves, inserts, and anchoring devices in masonry and for grouting elevator entrance frames installed in masonry walls.
5. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for the following:
 - a. Attachment plates and angle brackets for supporting guide-rail brackets.
 - b. Hoist beams.
 - c. Structural-steel shapes for subsills.
 - d. Pit ladders.
 - e. Cants made from steel sheet in hoistways.
6. Section 221429 "Sump Pumps" for sump pumps, sumps, and sump covers in elevator pits.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Definitions in ASME A17.1/CSA B44 apply to work of this Section.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Machine-room-less electric traction elevators.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.

1. Include capacities, sizes, performances, operations, safety features, finishes, and similar information.

2. Include Product Data for car enclosures, hoistway entrances, and operation, control, and signal systems.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and large-scale details indicating service at each landing, coordination with building structure, relationships with other construction, and locations of equipment.
2. Include large-scale layout of car-control station and standby power operation control panel.
3. Indicate maximum dynamic and static loads imposed on building structure at points of support, and maximum and average power demands.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish involving color selection.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by elevator manufacturer certifying that hoistway and pit layout and dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, and electrical service including standby power generator, as shown and specified, are adequate for elevator system being provided.

C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For elevators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. Submit manufacturer's or Installer's standard operation and maintenance manual, in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 including diagnostic and repair information available to manufacturer's and Installer's maintenance personnel.

B. Inspection and Acceptance Certificates and Operating Permits: As required by authorities having jurisdiction for normal, unrestricted elevator use.

C. Continuing Maintenance Proposal:

1. Submit a continuing maintenance proposal from Installer to Owner, in the form of a standard one-year maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.
2. Submit a continuing maintenance proposal from Installer to Owner with terms, conditions, and obligations as set forth in, and in same form as, a "Draft of Elevator Maintenance Agreement" at end of this Section, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Elevator manufacturer or an authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle materials, components, and equipment in manufacturer's protective packaging. Store materials, components, and equipment off of ground, under cover, and in a dry location.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of inserts, sleeves, block outs, elevator equipment with integral anchors, and other items that are embedded in concrete or masonry for elevator equipment. Furnish templates, inserts, sleeves, elevator equipment with integral anchors, and installation instructions and deliver to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate locations and dimensions of work specified in other Sections that relates to electric traction elevators including pit ladders; sumps and floor drains in pits; entrance subsills; electrical service; and electrical outlets, lights, and switches in hoistways and pits.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair, restore, or replace elevator work that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, operation or control system failure, including excessive malfunctions; performances below specified ratings; excessive wear; unusual deterioration or aging of materials or finishes; unsafe conditions; need for excessive maintenance; abnormal noise or vibration; and similar unusual, unexpected, and unsatisfactory conditions.
 - 2. Warranty Period: one year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
- B. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with requirements for accessible elevators in the United States Access Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and with ICC A117.1.

2.2 ELEVATORS

- A. Elevator System, General: Manufacturer's standard elevator systems. Unless otherwise indicated, manufacturer's standard components shall be used, as included in standard elevator systems and as required for complete system.
- B. Elevator Description:
1. Rated Load: 2100 lb (953 kg).
 2. Rated Speed: 100 fpm (0.5 m/s).
 3. Operation System: Selective-collective automatic operation.
 4. Auxiliary Operations:
 - a. Battery-powered automatic evacuation.
 - b. Automatic dispatching of loaded car.
 - c. Nuisance-call cancel.
 - d. Loaded-car bypass.
 - e. Distributed parking.
 - f. Off-peak operation.
 - g. Automatic operation of lights and ventilation fans.
 5. Car Enclosures:
 - a. Inside Width: Not less than 68 inches (1727 mm).
 - b. Inside Depth: Not less than 53 inches (1346 mm) from back wall to front wall (return panels).
 - c. Inside Height: Not less than 93 inches (2362 mm) to underside of ceiling.
 - d. Front Walls (Return Panels): Satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.
 - e. Car Fixtures: Satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.
 - f. Side and Rear Wall Panels: Plastic laminate.
 - g. Reveals: Enameled or powder-coated steel.
 - h. Door Faces (Interior): Satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.
 - i. Door Sills: Aluminum.
 - j. Ceiling: Reflective metallic-finish, plastic-laminate, bronze.
 - k. Handrails: 1/2 by 2 inches (13 by 50 mm) rectangular satin stainless steel, at sides and rear of car.
 - l. Floor: Carpet to match elsewhere in building.
 6. Hoistway Entrances:
 - a. Width: 36 inches (914 mm).
 - b. Height: 84 inches (2134 mm).
 - c. Type: Single-speed side sliding.
 - d. Frames: Satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.
 - e. Doors and Transoms: Satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.
 - f. Sills: Aluminum.
 7. Hall Fixtures: Satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.
 8. Additional Requirements:
 - a. Provide inspection certificate in each car, mounted under acrylic cover with frame made from satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.

2.3 MACHINE ROOM-LESS ELECTRIC TRACTION ELEVATORS

A. Basis-of-Design: Schindler 3100.

1. Major elevator components, including driving machines, controllers, signal fixtures, door operators, car frames, cars, and entrances, shall be manufactured by single manufacturer.

2.4 TRACTION SYSTEMS

A. Elevator Machines: Permanent magnet, variable-voltage, variable-frequency, ac-type hoisting machines and solid-state power converters.

1. Provide regenerative or nonregenerative system.
2. Provide regenerative system that complies with the IgCC.
3. Limit total harmonic distortion of regenerated power to 5 percent in accordance with IEEE 519.
4. Provide means for absorbing regenerated power when elevator system is operating on standby power.
5. Provide line filters or chokes to prevent electrical peaks or spikes from feeding back into building power system.

B. Fluid for Hydraulic Buffers: Fire-resistant fluid.

C. Inserts: Furnish required concrete and masonry inserts and similar anchorage devices for installing guide rails, machinery, and other components of elevator work. Device installation is specified in another Section.

D. Machine Beams: Provide steel framing to support elevator hoisting machine and deflector sheaves from the building structure. Comply with Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for materials and fabrication.

E. Car Frame and Platform: Bolted- or welded-steel units.

F. Guides: Roller guides or polymer-coated, nonlubricated sliding guides. Provide guides at top and bottom of car and counterweight frames.

2.5 OPERATION SYSTEMS

A. Provide manufacturer's standard microprocessor operation systems as required to provide type of operation indicated.

B. Auxiliary Operations:

1. Single-Car Battery-Powered Automatic Evacuation: If power fails and car is at a floor, it remains at that floor, opens its doors, and shuts down. If car is between floors, it moves to the next floor above or below, opens its doors, and shuts down. System includes rechargeable battery and automatic recharging system.
2. Automatic Dispatching of Loaded Car: When car load exceeds 80 percent of rated capacity, doors begin closing.

3. Nuisance-Call Cancel: When car calls exceed a preset number while car load is less than a predetermined weight, all car calls are canceled. Preset number of calls and predetermined weight can be adjusted.
4. Loaded-Car Bypass: When car load exceeds 80 percent of rated capacity, car responds only to car calls, not to hall calls.
5. Automatic Operation of Lights and Fan: When elevator is stopped and unoccupied with doors closed, lighting, ventilation fan, and cab displays are de-energized after five minutes and are re-energized before car doors open.

C. Security features may not affect emergency firefighters' service.

2.6 DOOR REOPENING DEVICES

- A. Infrared Array: Provide door reopening device with uniform array of 36 or more microprocessor-controlled, infrared light beams projecting across car entrance. Interruption of one or more light beams causes doors to stop and reopen.
- B. Nudging Feature: After car doors are prevented from closing for predetermined adjustable time, through activating door reopening device, a loud buzzer sounds and doors begins to close at reduced kinetic energy.

2.7 CAR ENCLOSURES

- A. Provide enameled or powder-coated steel car enclosures to receive removable wall panels, with car roof, access doors, power door operators, and ventilation.
 1. Provide standard railings complying with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 on car tops where required by ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
- B. Materials and Finishes: Manufacturer's standards, but not less than the following:
 1. Subfloor:
 - a. Exterior, underlayment grade plywood, not less than **5/8-inch (15.9-mm)** nominal thickness.
 2. Floor Finish:
 - a. Specified in Section 096813 – Tile Carpeting.
 3. Plastic-Laminate Wall Panels: Plastic laminate adhesively applied to **1/2-inch (13-mm)** fire-retardant-treated particleboard with plastic-laminate panel backing and manufacturer's standard protective edge trim. Panels to have a flame-spread index of 25 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Plastic-laminate color, texture, and pattern as selected by Architect from plastic-laminate manufacturer's full range.
 4. Fabricate car with recesses and cutouts for signal equipment.
 5. Fabricate car door frame integrally with front wall of car.
 6. Stainless Steel Doors: Flush, hollow-metal construction; fabricated from stainless steel sheet or by laminating stainless steel sheet to exposed faces and edges of enameled or

powder-coated steel doors using adhesive that fully bonds metal to metal without telegraphing or oil-canning.

7. Sight Guards: Provide sight guards on car doors.
8. Sills: Extruded or machined metal, with grooved surface, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick.
9. Luminous Ceiling: Fluorescent or LED light fixtures and ceiling panels of translucent acrylic or other permanent rigid plastic.
10. Light Fixture Efficiency: Not less than 35 lumens/W.
11. Ventilation Fan Efficiency: Not less than 3.0 cfm/W (1.4 L/s per W).

2.8 HOISTWAY ENTRANCES

- A. Hoistway Entrance Assemblies: Manufacturer's standard horizontal-sliding, door-and-frame hoistway entrances complete with track systems, hardware, sills, and accessories. Frame size and profile to accommodate hoistway wall construction.
 1. Where gypsum board wall construction is indicated, frames to be self-supporting with reinforced head sections.
- B. Fire-Rated Hoistway Entrance Assemblies: Door and frame assemblies to comply with NFPA 80 and be listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction based on testing at as close-to-neutral pressure as possible in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10B.
 1. Fire-Protection Rating: 1 hour.
- C. Materials and Fabrication: Manufacturer's standards, but not less than the following:
 1. Stainless Steel Frames: Formed from stainless steel sheet.
 2. Stainless Steel Doors and Transoms: Flush, hollow-metal construction; fabricated from stainless steel sheet or by laminating stainless steel sheet to exposed faces and edges of enameled or powder-coated steel doors using adhesive that fully bonds metal to metal without telegraphing or oil-canning.
 3. Unfinished-Steel Doors and Transoms: Flush, hollow-metal construction; fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet, with factory-applied enamel or powder-coating.
 4. Sight Guards: Provide sight guards on doors matching door edges.
 5. Sills: Extruded or machined metal, with grooved surface, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick.
 6. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M.

2.9 SIGNAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Provide hall-call and car-call buttons that light when activated and remain lit until call has been fulfilled. Provide vandal-resistant buttons and lighted elements illuminated with LEDs.
- B. Car-Control Stations: Provide manufacturer's standard recessed car-control stations. Mount in return panel adjacent to car door unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Mark buttons and switches for required use or function. Use both tactile symbols and Braille.

2. Provide "No Smoking" sign matching car-control station, either integral with car-control station or mounted adjacent to it, with text and graphics as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Emergency Communication System: Two-way voice communication system, with visible signal, which dials preprogrammed number of monitoring station and does not require handset use. System is contained in flush-mounted cabinet, with identification, instructions for use, and battery backup power supply.
- D. Firefighters' Two-Way Telephone Communication Service: Provide flush-mounted cabinet in each car and required conductors in traveling cable for firefighters' two-way telephone communication service specified in.
- E. Car Position Indicator: Provide illuminated, digital-type car position indicator, located above car door or above car-control station. Also, provide audible signal to indicate to passengers that car is either stopping at or passing each of the floors served. Include travel direction arrows if not provided in car-control station.
- F. Hall Push-Button Stations: Provide one hall push-button station at each landing.
1. Provide manufacturer's standard wall-mounted units with flat faceplate for mounting with body of unit recessed in wall.
 2. Equip units with buttons for calling elevator and for indicating desired direction of travel.
 - a. Provide for connecting units to building security access system so a card reader can be used to register calls.
 3. Provide telephone jack in each unit for firefighters' two-way telephone communication service.
- G. Hall Lanterns: Units with illuminated arrows; but provide single arrow at terminal landings. Provide the following:
1. Units mounted in both jambs of entrance frame.
- H. Hall Annunciator: With each hall lantern, provide audible signals indicating car arrival and direction of travel. Signals sound once for up and twice for down.
1. At manufacturer's option, audible signals may be placed on cars.
- I. Hall Position Indicators: Provide illuminated, digital-display-type position indicators, located above hoistway entrance at ground floor. Provide units with flat faceplate and with body of unit recessed in wall.
1. Integrate ground-floor hall lanterns with hall position indicators.
- J. Fire-Command-Center Annunciator Panel: Provide panel containing illuminated position indicators for each elevator, clearly labeled with elevator designation; include illuminated signal that indicates when elevator is operational and when it is at the designated emergency return level with doors open. Provide standby power elevator selector switch(es), as required by ASME A17.1/CSA B44, adjacent to position indicators. Provide illuminated signal that indicates when normal power supply has failed.

- K. Emergency Pictorial Signs: Fabricate from materials matching hall push-button stations, with text and graphics as required by authorities having jurisdiction, indicating that in case of fire, elevators are out of service and exits should be used instead. Provide one sign at each hall push-button station unless otherwise indicated.
- L. FINISH MATERIALS
- M. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, commercial steel, Type B, exposed, matte finish.
- N. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1011/A1011M, commercial steel, Type B, pickled.
- O. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304.
- P. Stainless Steel Bars: ASTM A276/A276M, Type 304.
- Q. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B221** (**ASTM B221M**), Alloy 6063.
- R. Nickel Silver Extrusions: ASTM B151/B151M, Alloy UNS No. C74500 or UNS No. C77600.
- S. Plastic Laminate: High-pressure type complying with ISO 4586-3, Type HGS for flat applications Type HGL for flat applications Type HGP for postformed applications and Type BKV for panel backing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elevator areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Examine hoistways, hoistway openings, and pits as constructed; verify critical dimensions; and examine supporting structure and other conditions under which elevator work is to be installed.
- B. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF MACHINE ROOM-LESS ELECTRIC TRACTION ELEVATORS

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Welded Construction: Provide welded connections for installing elevator work where bolted connections are not required for subsequent removal or for normal operation, adjustment, inspection, maintenance, and replacement of worn parts. Comply with AWS standards for workmanship and for qualifications of welding operators.
- C. Sound Isolation: Mount rotating and vibrating equipment on vibration-isolating mounts to minimize vibration transmission to structure and structure-borne noise due to elevator system.

- D. Lubricate operating parts of systems, including ropes, as recommended by manufacturers.
- E. Alignment: Coordinate installation of hoistway entrances with installation of elevator guide rails for accurate alignment of entrances with car. Where possible, delay final adjustment of sills and doors until car is operable in shaft. Reduce clearances to minimum, safe, workable dimension at each landing.
- F. Leveling Tolerance: **1/8 inch (3 mm)**, up or down, regardless of load and travel direction.
- G. Set sills flush with finished floor surface at landing. Fill space under sill solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout.
- H. Locate hall signal equipment for elevators as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. For groups of elevators, locate hall push-button stations between two elevators at center of group or at location most convenient for approaching passengers.
 - 2. Place hall lanterns either above or beside each hoistway entrance.
 - 3. Mount hall lanterns at a minimum of **72 inches (1829 mm)** above finished floor.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Acceptance Testing: On completion of elevator installation and before permitting elevator use (either temporary or permanent), perform acceptance tests as required and recommended by ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and by governing regulations and agencies.
- B. Operating Test: Load elevator to rated capacity and operate continuously for 30 minutes over full travel distance, stopping at each level and proceeding immediately to the next. Record temperature rise of elevator machine during 30-minute test period. Record failure to perform as required.
- C. Advise Owner, Architect, and authorities having jurisdiction in advance of dates and times that tests are to be performed on elevators.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Use: Comply with the following requirements for elevator used for construction purposes:
 - 1. Provide car with temporary enclosure, either within finished car or in place of finished car, to protect finishes from damage.
 - 2. Provide strippable protective film on entrance and car doors and frames.
 - 3. Provide padded wood bumpers on entrance door frames covering jambs and frame faces.
 - 4. Provide other protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, and procedures as needed to protect elevator and elevator equipment.
 - 5. Do not load elevators beyond their rated weight capacity.
 - 6. Engage elevator Installer to provide full maintenance service. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleanup, and adjustment as necessary for proper elevator operation at rated speed and

capacity. Provide parts and supplies same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

7. Engage elevator Installer to restore damaged work, if any, so no evidence remains of correction. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop, make required repairs and refinish entire unit, or provide new units as required.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to operate elevator(s).
- B. Check operation of elevator with Owner's personnel present before date of Substantial Completion and again not more than one month before end of warranty period. Determine that operation systems and devices are functioning properly.

3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service to include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of elevator Installer. Include monthly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper elevator operation at rated speed and capacity. Parts and supplies to be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 1. Perform maintenance during normal working hours.
 2. Perform emergency callback service during normal working hours with response time of two hours or less.
 3. Include 24-hour-per-day, 7-day-per-week emergency callback service with response time of two hours or less.

END OF SECTION 142123.16

SECTION 142400 - MACHINE ROOM-LESS HYDRAULIC PASSENGER ELEVATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes: Machine room-less hydraulic passenger elevators as shown and specified rated at 2500 pound capacity. Elevator work includes:
1. This is an option to the machine-room less electric traction elevator in Section 142123.16
 2. Standard pre-engineered hydraulic passenger elevators.
 3. Elevator car enclosures, hoistway entrances and signal equipment.
 4. Operation and control systems.
 5. Jack.
 6. Accessibility provisions for physically disabled persons.
 7. Equipment, machines, controls, systems and devices as required for safely operating the specified elevators at their rated speed and capacity.
 8. Materials and accessories as required to complete the elevator installation.
- B. Related Sections:
1. Division 1 General Requirements: Meet or exceed all referenced sustainability requirements.
 2. Division 3 Concrete: Installing inserts, sleeves and anchors in concrete.
 3. Division 5 Metals:
 - a. Providing hoist beams, pit ladders, steel framing, auxiliary support steel and divider beams for supporting guide-rail brackets.
 - b. Providing steel angle sill supports and grouting hoistway entrance sills and frames.
 4. Division 9 Finishes: Providing elevator car finish flooring and field painting unfinished and shop primed ferrous materials.
 5. Division 16 Sections:
 - a. Providing electrical service to elevators, including fused disconnect switches where permitted. (note: fused disconnect switch to be provided as part of elevator manufacture product, see section 2.11 Miscellaneous elevator components for further details.)
 - b. Emergency power supply, transfer switch and auxiliary contacts.
 - c. Heat and smoke sensing devices.
 - d. Convenience outlets and illumination in control room (if applicable), hoistway and pit.
 6. Division 22 Plumbing
 - a. Sump pit and oil interceptor.
 7. Division 23 Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning
 - a. Heating and ventilating hoistways and/or control room.

- C. Work Not Included: General contractor shall provide the following in accordance with the requirements of the Model Building Code and ANSI A17.1 Code. For specific rules, refer to ANSI A17.1, Part 3 for hydraulic elevators. State or local requirements must be used if more stringent. The following is a part of the building construction.
1. Elevator hoist beam to be provided at top of elevator shaft. Beam must be able to accommodate proper loads and clearances for elevator installation and operation.
 2. Supply in ample time for installation by other trades, inserts, anchors, bearing plates, brackets, supports and bracing including all setting templates and diagrams for placement.
 3. Hatch walls require a minimum two hours of fire rating. Hoistway should be clear and plumb with variations not to exceed 1/2" at any point.
 4. Elevator hoistways shall have barricades, as required.
 5. Install bevel guards at 75° on all recesses, projections or setbacks over 2" (4" for A17.1 2000 areas) except for loading or unloading.
 6. Provide rail bracket supports at pit, each floor and roof. For guide rail bracket supports, provide divider beams between hoistway at each floor and roof.
 7. Pit floor shall be level and free of debris. Reinforce dry pit to sustain normal vertical forces from rails and buffers.
 8. Where pit access is by means of the lowest hoistway entrance, a vertical ladder of non-combustible material extending 42" minimum, (48" minimum for A17.1-2000 areas) shall be provided at the same height, above sill of access door or handgrips.
 9. All wire and conduit should run remote from the hoistways.
 10. When heat, smoke or combustion sensing devices are required, connect to elevator control cabinet terminals. Contacts on the sensors should be sided for 12 volt D.C.
 11. Install and furnish finished flooring in elevator cab.
 12. Finished floors and entrance walls are not to be constructed until after sills and door frames are in place. Consult elevator contractor for rough opening size. The general contractor shall supply the drywall framing so that the wall fire resistance rating is maintained, when drywall construction is used.
 13. Where sheet rock or drywall construction is used for front walls, it shall be of sufficient strength to maintain the doors in true lateral alignment. Drywall contractor to coordinate with elevator contractor.
 14. Before erection of rough walls and doors; erect hoistway sills, headers, and frames. After rough walls are finished; erect fascias and toe guards. Set sill level and slightly above finished floor at landings.
 15. The elevator wall shall interface with the hoistway entrance assembly and be in strict compliance with the elevator contractor's requirements.
 16. All walls and sill supports must be plumb where openings occur.
 17. Locate a light fixture (200 lx / 19 fc) and convenience outlet in pit with switch located adjacent to the access door.
 18. Provide telephone line, light fixture (200 lx / 19 fc), and convenience outlet in the hoistway at the landing where the elevator controller is located. Typically this will be at the landing above the 1st floor. Final location must be coordinated with elevator contractor.
 19. As indicated by elevator contractor, provide a light outlet for each elevator, in center of hoistway.
 20. For signal systems and power operated door: provide ground and branch wiring circuits.
 21. For car light and fan: provide a feeder and branch wiring circuits to elevator control cabinet.
 22. Controller landing wall thickness must be a minimum of 8 1/2 inches thick. This is due to the controller being mounted on the second floor landing in the door frame on the return side of the

door. For center opening doors, the controller is located on the right hand frame (from inside the elevator cab looking out). These requirements must be coordinated between the general contractor and the elevator contractor.

23. Cutting, patching and recesses to accommodate hall button boxes, signal fixtures, etc..

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product data: When requested, the elevator contractor shall provide standard cab, entrance and signal fixture data to describe product for approval.
- B. Shop drawings:
 - 1. Show equipment arrangement in the corridor, pit, and hoistway and/or optional control room. Provide plans, elevations, sections and details of assembly, erection, anchorage, and equipment location.
 - 2. Indicate elevator system capacities, sizes, performances, safety features, finishes and other pertinent information.
 - 3. Show floors served, travel distances, maximum loads imposed on the building structure at points of support and all similar considerations of the elevator work.
 - 4. Indicate electrical power requirements and branch circuit protection device recommendations.
- C. Powder Coat paint selection: Submit manufacturer's standard selection charts for exposed finishes and materials.
- D. Plastic laminate selection: Submit manufacturer's standard selection charts for exposed finishes and materials.
- E. Metal Finishes: Upon request, standard metal samples provided.
- F. Operation and maintenance data. Include the following:
 - 1. Owner's manuals and wiring diagrams.
 - 2. Parts list, with recommended parts inventory.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: An approved manufacturer with minimum 15 years of experience in manufacturing, installing, and servicing elevators of the type required for the project.
 - 1. The manufacturer of machines, controllers, signal fixtures, door operators cabs, entrances, and all other major parts of elevator operating equipment.
 - a. The major parts of the elevator equipment shall be manufactured by the installing company, and not be an assembled system.
 - 2. The manufacturer shall have a documented, on-going quality assurance program.
 - 3. ISO-9001:2000 Manufacturer Certified
 - 4. ISO-14001:2004 Environmental Management System Certified
 - 5. LEED Gold certified elevator manufacturing facility.

- B. Installer Qualifications: The manufacturer or an authorized agent of the manufacturer with not less than 15 years of satisfactory experience installing elevators equal in character and performance to the project elevators.

- C. Regulatory Requirements:
 - 1. ASME A17.1 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, latest edition or as required by the local building code.
 - 2. Building Code: National.
 - 3. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.
 - 4. NFPA 80 Fire Doors and Windows.
 - 5. Americans with Disabilities Act - Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG)
 - 6. Section 407 in ICC A117.1, when required by local authorities

- D. Fire-rated entrance assemblies: Opening protective assemblies including frames, hardware, and operation shall comply with ASTM E2074, CAN4-S104 (ULC-S104), UL10(b), and NFPA Standard 80. Provide entrance assembly units bearing Class B or 1 1/2 hour label by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (2 hour label in Canada).

- E. Inspection and testing:
 - 1. Elevator Installer shall obtain and pay for all required inspections, tests, permits and fees for elevator installation.
 - 2. Arrange for inspections and make required tests.
 - 3. Deliver to the Owner upon completion and acceptance of elevator work.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Manufacturing shall deliver elevator materials, components and equipment and the contractor is responsible to provide secure and safe storage on job site.

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use: Elevators shall not be used for temporary service or for any other purpose during the construction period before Substantial Completion and acceptance by the purchaser unless agreed upon by Elevator Contractor and General Contractor with signed temporary agreement.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Submit elevator manufacturer's standard written warranty agreeing to repair, restore or replace defects in elevator work materials and workmanship not due to ordinary wear and tear or improper use or care for 12 months after final acceptance.

1.07 MAINTENANCE

- A. Furnish maintenance and call back service for a period of 12 months for each elevator after completion of installation or acceptance thereof by beneficial use, whichever is earlier, during normal working hours excluding callbacks.

1. Service shall consist of periodic examination of the equipment, adjustment, lubrication, cleaning, supplies and parts to keep the elevators in proper operation. Maintenance work, including emergency call back repair service, shall be performed by trained employees of the elevator contractor during regular working hours.
2. Submit parts catalog and show evidence of local parts inventory with complete list of recommended spare parts. Parts shall be produced by manufacturer of original equipment.
3. Manufacturer shall have a service office and full time service personnel within a 100 mile radius of the project site.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturer: Design based around TK Elevator's endura Machine Room-Less hydraulic elevator. Subject to compliance with requirements, products from the following manufacturers are acceptable.
 1. Kone
 2. Otis
 3. Schindler

2.02 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. All Elevator Cab materials including frame, buttons, lighting, wall and ceiling assembly, laminates and carpet shall have an EPD and an HPD, and shall meet the California Department of Public Health Standard Method V1.1-2010, CA Section 01350 as mentioned in 1.03.9 of this specification.
- B. Colors, patterns, and finishes: As selected by the Architect from manufacturer's full range of standard colors, patterns, and finishes.
- C. Steel:
 1. Shapes and bars: Carbon.
 2. Sheet: Cold-rolled steel sheet, commercial quality, Class 1, matte finish.
 3. Finish: Factory-applied powder coat for structural and architectural parts. Color selection must be based on elevator manufacture's standard selections.
- D. Plastic laminate: Decorative high-pressure type, complying with NEMA LD3, Type GP-50 General Purpose Grade, nominal 0.050" thickness. Laminate selection must be based on elevator manufacture's standard selections.
- E. Flooring by others.

2.03 HOISTWAY EQUIPMENT

- A. Platform: Fabricated frame of formed or structural steel shapes, gusseted and rigidly welded with a wood sub-floor. Underside of the platform shall be fireproofed. The car platform shall be designed and fabricated to support one-piece loads weighing up to 25% of the rated capacity.
- B. Sling: Steel stiles bolted or welded to a steel crosshead and bolstered with bracing members to remove strain from the car enclosure.

- C. Guide Rails: Steel, omega shaped, fastened to the building structure with steel brackets.
- D. Guides: Slide guides shall be mounted on top and bottom of the car.
- E. Buffers: Provide substantial buffers in the elevator pit. Mount buffers on continuous channels fastened to the elevator guide rail or securely anchored to the pit floor. Provide extensions if required by project conditions.
- F. Jack: A jack unit shall be of sufficient size to lift the gross load the height specified. Factory test jack to ensure adequate strength and freedom from leakage. Brittle material, such as gray cast iron, is prohibited in the jack construction. Provide the following jack type: Twin post holeless. Two jacks piped together, mounted one on each side of the car with a polished steel hydraulic plunger housed in a sealed steel casing having sufficient clearance space to allow for alignment during installation. Each plunger shall have a high pressure sealing system which will not allow for seal movement or displacement during the course of operation. Each Jack Assembly shall have a check valve built into the assembly to allow for automatically re-syncing the two plunger sections by moving the jack to its fully contracted position. The jack shall be designed to be mounted on the pit floor or in a recess in the pit floor. Each jack section shall have a bleeder valve to discharge any air trapped in the section..
- G. Automatic Self-Leveling: Provide each elevator car with a self-leveling feature to automatically bring the car to the floor landings and correct for over travel or under travel. Self-leveling shall, within its zone, be automatic and independent of the operating device. The car shall be maintained approximately level with the landing irrespective of its load.
- H. Wiring, Piping, and Oil: Provide all necessary hoistway wiring in accordance with the National Electrical Code. All necessary code compliant pipe and fittings shall be provided to connect the power unit to the jack unit. Provide proper grade inherently biodegradable oil as specified by the manufacturer of the power unit (see Power Unit section 2.04.G for further details)
- I. Pit moisture/water sensor located approximately 1 foot above the pit floor to be provided. Once activated, elevator will perform “flooded pit operation”, which will run the car up to the designated floor, cycle the doors and shut down and trip the circuit breaker shunt to remove 3 phase power from all equipment, including pit equipment.
- J. Motorized oil line shut-off valve shall be provided that can be remotely operated from the controller landing service panel. Also a means for manual operation at the valve in the pit is required.

2.04 POWER UNIT

- A. Power Unit (Oil Pumping and Control Mechanism): A self-contained unit located in the elevator pit consisting of the following items:
 - 1. NEMA 4/Sealed Oil reservoir with tank cover including vapor removing tank breather
 - 2. An oil hydraulic pump.
 - 3. An electric motor.

4. Electronic oil control valve with the following components built into single housing; high pressure relief valve, check valve, automatic unloading up start valve, lowering and leveling valve, and electro-magnetic controlling solenoids.
- B. Pump: Positive displacement type pump specifically manufactured for oil-hydraulic elevator service. Pump shall be designed for steady discharge with minimum pulsation to give smooth and quiet operation. Output of pump shall not vary more than 10 percent between no load and full load on the elevator car.
- C. Motor: Standard manufacture motor specifically designed for oil-hydraulic elevator service. Duty rating – motors shall be capable of 80 starts per hour with a 30% motor run time during each start.
- D. Oil Control Unit: The following components shall be built into a single housing. Welded manifolds with separate valves to accomplish each function are not acceptable. Adjustments shall be accessible and be made without removing the assembly from the oil line.
1. Relief valve shall be adjustable and be capable of bypassing the total oil flow without increasing back pressure more than 10 percent above that required to barely open the valve.
 2. Up start and stop valve shall be adjustable and designed to bypass oil flow during start and stop of motor pump assembly. Valve shall close slowly, gradually diverting oil to or from the jack unit, ensuring smooth up starts and up stops.
 3. Check valve shall be designed to close quietly without permitting any perceptible reverse flow.
 4. Lowering valve and leveling valve shall be adjustable for down start speed, lowering speed, leveling speed and stopping speed to ensure smooth "down" starts and stops. The leveling valve shall be designed to level the car to the floor in the direction the car is traveling after slowdown is initiated.
 5. Provided with constant speed regulation in both up and down direction. Feature to compensate for load changes, oil temperature, and viscosity changes.
 6. Solid State Starting: Provide an electronic starter featuring adjustable starting currents.
 7. A secondary hydraulic power source (powered by 110VAC single phase) must be provided. This is required to be able to raise (reposition) the elevator in the event of a system component failure (i.e. pump motor, starter, etc.)
 8. Oil Type: Provide a zinc free, inherently biodegradable lubricant formulated with premium base stocks to provide outstanding protection for demanding hydraulic systems, especially those operating in environmentally sensitive areas.

2.05 HOISTWAY ENTRANCES

- A. Doors and Frames: Provide complete hollow metal type hoistway entrances at each hoistway opening bolted\knock down construction.
1. Manufacturer's standard entrance design consisting of hangers, doors, hanger supports, hanger covers, fascia plates (where required), sight guards, and necessary hardware.
 2. Main landing door & frame finish: A304 Stainless Steel with No. 4 finish.
 3. Typical door & frame finish: A304 Stainless Steel with No. 4 finish.
- B. Integrated Control System: the elevator controller to be mounted to hoistway entrance above 1st landing. The entrance at this level, shall be designed to accommodate the control system and provide a means of

access to critical electrical components and troubleshooting features. See section 2.09 Control System for additional requirements.

- C. At the controller landing, the hoistway entrance frame shall have space to accommodate and provide a lockable means of access (group 2 security) to a 3 phase circuit breaker. See section 2.11 Miscellaneous Elevator Components for further details
- D. Interlocks: Equip each hoistway entrance with an approved type interlock tested as required by code. Provide door restriction devices as required by code.
- E. Door Hanger and Tracks: Provide sheave type two point suspension hangers and tracks for each hoistway horizontal sliding door.
 - 1. Sheaves: Polyurethane tires with ball bearings properly sealed to retain grease.
 - 2. Hangers: Provide an adjustable device beneath the track to limit the up-thrust of the doors during operation.
 - 3. Tracks: Drawn steel shapes, smooth surface and shaped to conform to the hanger sheaves.
- F. Hoistway Sills: Extruded metal, with groove(s) in top surface. Provide mill finish on aluminum.

2.06 PASSENGER ELEVATOR CAR ENCLOSURE

- A. Car Enclosure:
 - 1. Walls: Cab type TKAP, reinforced cold-rolled steel with two coats factory applied baked enamel finish, with applied vertical wood core panels covered on both sides with high pressure plastic laminate.
 - 2. Reveals and frieze: a. Reveals and frieze: Stainless steel, no. 4 brushed finish
 - 3. Canopy: Cold-rolled steel with hinged exit.
 - 4. Ceiling: Suspended type, LED lighting with translucent diffuser mounted in a metal frame. Framework shall be finished with a factory applied powder coat finish.
 - 5. Cab Fronts, Return, Transom, Soffit and Strike: Provide panels faced with brushed stainless steel
 - 6. Doors: Horizontal sliding car doors reinforced with steel for panel rigidity. Hang doors on sheave type hangers with polyurethane tires that roll on a polished steel track and are guided at the bottom by non-metallic sliding guides.
 - a. Door Finish: Stainless steel panels: No. 4 brushed finish.
 - b. Cab Sills: Extruded aluminum, mill finish.
 - 7. Handrail: Provide 1.5' diameter cylindrical metal on side and rear walls on front opening cars and side walls only on front and rear opening cars. Handrails shall have a stainless steel, no. 4 brushed finish.
 - 8. Ventilation: Manufacturer's standard exhaust fan, mounted on the car top.
 - 9. Protection pads and buttons: Not required
- B. Car Top Inspection: Provide a car top inspection station with an "Auto-Inspection" switch, an "emergency stop" switch, and constant pressure "up and down" direction and safety buttons to make the normal operating devices inoperative. The station shall give the inspector complete control of the elevator. The car top inspection station shall be mounted in the door operator assembly.

2.07 DOOR OPERATION

- A. Door Operation: Provide a direct or alternating current motor driven heavy duty operator designed to operate the car and hoistway doors simultaneously. The door control system shall be digital closed loop and the closed loop circuit shall give constant feedback on the position and velocity of the elevator door. The motor torque shall be constantly adjusted to maintain the correct door speed based on its position and load. All adjustments and setup shall be through the computer based service tool. Door movements shall follow a field programmable speed pattern with smooth acceleration and deceleration at the ends of travel. The mechanical door operating mechanism shall be arranged for manual operation in event of power failure. Doors shall automatically open when the car arrives at the landing and automatically close after an adjustable time interval or when the car is dispatched to another landing. AC controlled units with oil checks, or other deviations are not acceptable.
1. No Un-Necessary Door Operation: The car door shall open only if the car is stopping for a car or hall call, answering a car or hall call at the present position or selected as a dispatch car.
 2. Door Open Time Saver: If a car is stopping in response to a car call assignment only (no coincident hall call), the current door hold open time is changed to a shorter field programmable time when the electronic door protection device is activated.
 3. Double Door Operation: When a car stops at a landing with concurrent up and down hall calls, no car calls, and no other hall call assignments, the car door opens to answer the hall call in the direction of the car's current travel. If an onward car call is not registered before the door closes to within 6 inches of fully closed, the travel shall reverse and the door shall reopen to answer the other call.
 4. Nudging Operation: The doors shall remain open as long as the electronic detector senses the presence of a passenger or object in the door opening. If door closing is prevented for a field programmable time, a buzzer shall sound. When the obstruction is removed, the door shall begin to close at reduced speed. If the infra-red door protection system detects a person or object while closing on nudging, the doors shall stop and resume closing only after the obstruction has been removed.
 5. Door Reversal: If the doors are closing and the infra-red beam(s) is interrupted, the doors shall reverse and reopen. After the obstruction is cleared, the doors shall begin to close.
 6. Door Open Watchdog: If the doors are opening, but do not fully open after a field adjustable time, the doors shall recycle closed then attempt to open six times to try and correct the fault.
 7. Door Close Watchdog: If the doors are closing, but do not fully close after a field adjustable time, the doors shall recycle open then attempt to close six times to try and correct the fault.
 8. Door Close Assist: When the doors have failed to fully close and are in the recycle mode, the door drive motor shall have increased torque applied to possibly overcome mechanical resistance or differential air pressure and allow the door to close.
- B. Door Protection Device: Provide a door protection system using microprocessor controlled infra-red light beams. The beams shall project across the car opening detecting the presence of a passenger or object. If door movement is obstructed, the doors shall immediately reopen.

2.08 CAR OPERATING STATION

- A. Car Operating Station, General: The main car control in each car shall contain the devices required for specific operation mounted in an integral swing return panel requiring no applied faceplate. Wrap return shall have a brushed stainless steel finish. The main car operating panel shall be mounted in the return and comply with handicap requirements. Pushbuttons that illuminate using long lasting LED's shall be included for each floor served, and emergency buttons and switches shall be provided per code. Switches for car light and accessories shall be provided.
- B. Emergency Communications System: Integral phone system provided.
- C. Auxiliary Operating Panel: Not Required
- D. Column Mounted Car Riding Lantern: A car riding lantern shall be installed in the elevator cab and located in the entrance. The lantern, when illuminated, will indicate the intended direction of travel. The lantern will illuminate and a signal will sound when the car arrives at a floor where it will stop. The lantern shall remain illuminated until the door(s) begin to close.
- E. Special Equipment: Not Applicable

2.09 CONTROL SYSTEMS

- A. Controller: Shall be integrated in a hoistway entrance jamb. Should be microprocessor based, software oriented and protected from environmental extremes and excessive vibrations in a NEMA 1 enclosure. Control of the elevator shall be automatic in operation by means of push buttons in the car numbered to correspond to floors served, for registering car stops, and by "up-down" push buttons at each intermediate landing and "call" push buttons at terminal landings.
- B. Service Panel – to be located outside the hoistway in the controller entrance jamb and shall provide the following functionality/features:
 - 1. Access to main control board and CPU
 - 2. Main controller diagnostics
 - 3. Main controller fuses
 - 4. Universal Interface Tool (UIT)
 - 5. Remote valve adjustment
 - 6. Electronic motor starter adjustment and diagnostics
 - 7. Operation of pit motorized shut-off valve with LED feedback to the state of the valve in the pit
 - 8. Operation of auxiliary pump/motor (secondary hydraulic power source)
 - 9. Operation of electrical assisted manual lowering
 - 10. Provide male plug to supply 110VAC into the controller
 - 11. Run/Stop button
- C. Automatic Light and Fan shut down: The control system shall evaluate the system activity and automatically turn off the cab lighting and ventilation fan during periods of inactivity. The settings shall be field programmable.
- D. Emergency Power Operation: (10-DOA) Upon loss of the normal power supply, building-supplied standby power is available on the same wires as the normal power supply. Once the loss of normal power is detected

and standby power is available, the elevator is lowered to a pre-designated landing and the doors are opened. After passengers have exited the elevator, the doors are closed and the car is shut down. When normal power is restored, the elevator automatically resumes operation.

- E. Special Operation: Not Applicable

2.10 HALL STATIONS

- A. Hall Stations, General: Buttons shall illuminate to indicate call has been registered at that floor for the indicated direction.
 - 1. Provide one pushbutton riser with faceplates having a brushed stainless steel finish.
 - a. Phase 1 firefighter's service key switch, with instructions, shall be incorporated into the hall station at the designated level.
- B. Floor Identification Pads: Provide door jamb pads at each floor. Jamb pads shall comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.
- C. Hall Position Indicator: Not Applicable
- D. Hall lanterns: Not Applicable
- E. Special Equipment: Not Applicable

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS ELEVATOR COMPONENTS

- A. Oil Hydraulic Silencer: Install multiple oil hydraulic silencers (muffler device) at the power unit location. The silencers shall contain pulsation absorbing material inserted in a blowout proof housing.
- B. Lockable three phase circuit breaker with auxiliary contact with shunt trip capability to be provided. Circuit breaker to be located behind locked panel (Group 2 security access) at controller landing entrance jamb and should be sized according to the National Electrical Code.
- C. Lockable single phase 110V circuit breaker for cab light and fan to be provided. Circuit breaker to be located behind locked panel (Group 2 security access) at controller landing entrance jamb should be sized according to the National Electrical Code

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Before starting elevator installation, inspect hoistway, hoistway openings, pits and/or control room, as constructed, verify all critical dimensions, and examine supporting structures and all other conditions under which elevator work is to be installed. Do not proceed with elevator installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the installer.

- B. Installation constitutes acceptance of existing conditions and responsibility for satisfactory performance.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install elevator systems components and coordinate installation of hoistway wall construction.
 - 1. Work shall be performed by competent elevator installation personnel in accordance with ASME A17.1, manufacturer's installation instructions and approved shop drawings.
 - 2. Comply with the National Electrical Code for electrical work required during installation.
- B. Perform work with competent, skilled workmen under the direct control and supervision of the elevator manufacturer's experienced foreman.
- C. Supply in ample time for installation by other trades, inserts, anchors, bearing plates, brackets, supports, and bracing including all setting templates and diagrams for placement.
- D. Welded construction: Provide welded connections for installation of elevator work where bolted connections are not required for subsequent removal or for normal operation, adjustment, inspection, maintenance, and replacement of worn parts. Comply with AWS standards for workmanship and for qualification of welding operators.
- E. Coordination: Coordinate elevator work with the work of other trades, for proper time and sequence to avoid construction delays. Use benchmarks, lines, and levels designated by the Contractor, to ensure dimensional coordination of the work.
- F. Install machinery, guides, controls, car and all equipment and accessories to provide a quiet, smoothly operating installation, free from side sway, oscillation or vibration.
- G. Alignment: Coordinate installation of hoistway entrances with installation of elevator guide rails for accurate alignment of entrances with cars. Where possible, delay final adjustment of sills and doors until car is operable in shaft. Reduce clearances to minimum safe, workable dimensions at each landing.
- H. Erect hoistway sills, headers, and frames before erection of rough walls and doors; erect fascia and toe guards after rough walls finished. Set sill units accurately aligned and slightly above finish floor at landings.
- I. Lubricate operating parts of system, where recommended by manufacturer.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Acceptance testing: Upon completion of the elevator installation and before permitting use of elevator, perform acceptance tests as required and recommended by Code and governing regulations or agencies. Perform other tests, if any, as required by governing regulations or agencies.

- B. Advise Owner, Contractor, Architect, and governing authorities in advance of dates and times tests are to be performed on the elevator.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Make necessary adjustments of operating devices and equipment to ensure elevator operates smoothly and accurately.

3.05 CLEANING

- A. Before final acceptance, remove protection from finished surfaces and clean and polish surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for type of material and finish provided. Stainless steel shall be cleaned with soap and water and dried with a non-abrasive surface; it shall not be cleaned with bleach-based cleansers.
- B. At completion of elevator work, remove tools, equipment, and surplus materials from site. Clean equipment rooms and hoistway. Remove trash and debris.
 - 1. Use environmentally preferable and low VOC emitting cleaners for each application type. Cleaners that contain solvents, pine and/or citrus oils are not permitted.

3.06 PROTECTION

- A. At time of Substantial Completion of elevator work, or portion thereof, provide suitable protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other such methods or procedures to protect elevator work from damage or deterioration. Maintain protective measures throughout remainder of construction period.

3.07 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Instruct Owner's personnel in proper use, operations, and daily maintenance of elevators. Review emergency provisions, including emergency access and procedures to be followed at time of failure in operation and other building emergencies. Train Owner's personnel in normal procedures to be followed in checking for sources of operational failures or malfunctions.
- B. Make a final check of each elevator operation, with Owner's personnel present, immediately before date of substantial completion. Determine that control systems and operating devices are functioning properly.

3.08 ELEVATOR SCHEDULE

- A. Elevator Qty. 1 – Basis-of-Design: TK Elevator:
 - 1. Elevator Model: endura MRL Twinpost above-ground 1-stage
 - 2. Elevator Type: Hydraulic Machine Room-Less, Passenger
 - 3. Rated Capacity: 2500 lbs.

4. Rated Speed: 110 ft./min.
5. Operation System: TAC32H
6. Travel: 15'-9"
7. Landings: 2 total
8. Openings:
 - a. Front: 2
 - b. Rear: 0

9. Clear Car Inside: 6'-8" wide x 4'-3" deep
10. Inside clear height: 7'-4" standard
11. Door clear height: 7'-0" standard
12. Hoistway Entrance Size: 3'-6" wide x 7'-0" high
13. Door Type: One-speed Center opening
14. Power Characteristics: 208 volts, 3 Phase, 60 Hz.
15. Seismic Requirements: No
16. Hoistway Dimensions: 8'-4" wide x 5'-9" deep
17. Pit Depth: 4'-0"
18. Button & Fixture Style: Traditional Signal Fixtures
19. Special Operations: None

END OF SECTION 142400